





*Presented to the*  
**LIBRARIES of the**  
**UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO**  
*by*  
**Ontario Institute for**  
**Studies in Education**

Joseph Dyke.

60-

August 1844.

Covered up Jan'y

" 19<sup>th</sup> Aug.

" 13<sup>th</sup> Nov. 45.

Diome 433









A  
THEORETICAL AND PRACTICAL  
GRAMMAR

OF THE  
FRENCH TONGUE.

BY M. DE LEVIZAC.

---

FIRST CANADIAN EDITION.

---

REVISED AND AMENDED.

---

KINGSTON: DESBARATS AND CARY.

QUEBEC: THOS. CARY AND CO.

AND TO BE HAD OF ALL BOOKSELLERS IN CANADA.

---

1843.

Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2019 with funding from  
University of Toronto

## NOTICE.

---

The knowledge of the French Language is indispensable to every person having any pretension to education. It is the language of polite literature, and spoken at all the Courts in Europe. The individual possessed of it can travel throughout that continent and make himself understood. In Canada it is more especially necessary to the man of business, who is daily brought in contact with a large population whose language is French. Desirous of rendering more easy the acquirement of this language, we lay before the Canadian public an edition of Levizac's French Grammar. The high reputation of Levizac as a Grammarian, both in England and in France, where he is quoted as an authority, and the excellence of his method, give his work the preference over all others. Advantage has been taken of such improvements as have taken place in the order of arrangement so as to facilitate the learner. The French Academy has been consulted on the orthography in which many difficulties have been removed. The *sound* is now in a great measure the guide to the pronunciation, especially in words ending in *ais*, *ois*, as *Anglais*, *Danois*, *paraître*, *croître*, and the learner can adopt it as a rule of pronunciation. It has also been deemed necessary by that learned body, in order to maintain the derivation that words ending in *ant*, *ent*, should have their plural formed by the addition of an *s* without dropping the *t* as practiced by some writers. Great pains have been taken to prevent the beginner from falling into idiomatic errors, whenever the two languages clash in their construction. A very ample TABLE OF CONTENTS is given, which the learner cannot too well make himself acquainted with, as it is of great moment that he should not only know what the Book contains but where it is to be found.



# CONTENTS.

*N. B.—The Figures on the left, show the number of the Rule, or of the Subject; the figures on the right, show the number of the page.*

	Page		Page
1, 2. Definition of Grammar; French Alphabet.....	1	7. Of the City. 8. Of Trades, Arts, and Professions. 9. Of the Country. 10. Of Flowers. 11. Of Fruits. 12. Of Herbs and Plants. 13. Of Trees and Shrubs. 14. Promiscuous Words. 15. Of Quadrupeds. 16. Of Birds. 17. Of Fishes. 18. Of Reptiles and Insects. 19. Of Metals. 20. Of Colours. 21. Of Precious Stones. 22. Of the Principal Countries. 23. Of common National Names.	33
3, 4 Of Letters in general; Of Accentuation.....	2		
5 Of the Sound of the Vowels.....	3		
6 Table of the Seventeen Simple Sounds of the French Tongue.....	4		
7 Table of Combinations of Letters representing several of the Simple Sounds	5		
8 Table of Diphthongs.....	6		
9 Observations on <i>M</i> , <i>N</i> , and various nassal sounds...	8		
10 Of the letter <i>Y</i> .....	9		
11 Of Consonants.....	9		
12, 13, 14 Practical Exercises on the Pronunciation of Monosyllables and Polysyllables.....	25		
15 Of GENDER.....	31		
16, 17, 18. General rules to ascertain the gender of nouns substantives.....	32		
19 A Table of Nouns Substantives, having two genders and two significations.....	36		
20, 21. Vocabularies: 1. Of the Universe. 2. Of Man. 3. Of the Mind and its faculties. 4. Of Meats and Drinks. 5. Of the Dressing Apparel. 6. Of a House and Furniture.			
		INTRODUCTION TO THE EXERCISES.	
		22, 23, 24 Of the Prepositions <i>of</i> , <i>from</i> , <i>to</i> ; and of the article <i>the</i> , <i>a</i> .....	61
		25 Of Elisions.....	63
		26 Of Negations.....	65
		27, 28 Of Words alike in both Languages, etc.....	66
		OF GRAMMAR.	
		Of Words considered in their nature and inflections...	67
		CHAPTER I.	
		29, 30, 31 Of the <i>Substantive</i> ; of <i>Genders</i> ; of <i>Numbers</i> .....	68

# CONTENTS.

32 Of the <i>Formation</i> of the <i>Plural</i> of Simple Sub- stantives .....	69
33 Of the <i>Formation</i> of the <i>Plural</i> of Compound Substantives .....	70

## CHAPTER II.

34, 35, 36, 37. Of the AR- TICLE, its Elision before Vowels, and Contraction with Consonants .....	72
38 Concord of the Article with the Noun .....	75
39, 40 PARTITIVE ARTICLE <i>du, de la, des, de</i> .....	75

## CHAPTER III.

41 ADJECTIVE, its nature and concord with the Noun ..	77
42 Formation of the Feminine of French Adjectives ....	77
43 Of Irregular Adjectives; Singularity of <i>demi, feu,</i> <i>nu,</i> .....	80
44. Remarks on <i>Tout, Quelque</i>	81
45 Formation of the Plural of Adjectives .....	83
46, 47, 48 Degrees of Compa- rison ; irregularity of <i>bon,</i> <i>mauvais, petit.</i> .....	84
49, 50, 51 Of the Superlative relative and absolute ....	87
52, 53, 54 Concord of the Ad- jective with one, or with several Nouns .....	88
55 Of Numbers .....	90

## CHAPTER IV.

56 PRONOUN, its Nature and different classes .....	92
57 to 61 Of <i>Personal Pro-</i> <i>nouns</i> ; Pronouns of the first, second and third person .....	92
62 The Pronoun after the Verb, in Interrogative Phrases, and <i>do not</i> expressed ...	95
63 Reflected and Reciprocal Pronouns .....	96

64 Of the Person and Rela- tive <i>en</i> .....	97
65 Of the Personal and Re- lative <i>Y</i> .....	98
66, 67, 68 <i>Possessive Pro-</i> <i>nouns</i> CONJUNCTIVE, <i>mon, ma, mes, etc.</i> their Concord .....	99
69 <i>Possessive Pronouns</i> RE- LATIVE <i>le mien, la mi-</i> <i>enne etc.</i> .....	101
70 to 74 <i>Demonstrative Pro-</i> <i>nouns</i> , RELATIVE and CONJUNCTIVE, etc. ....	102
75 <i>CE</i> , in explanatory senten- ces, used instead of <i>il,</i> <i>ils, elle, elles.</i> .....	104
76 to 80 <i>Relative Pronouns,</i> <i>Qui, Dont, à Qui, Que,</i>	105
81, 82 <i>Où, for Duquel Auquel,</i> <i>etc.</i> .....	109
83 <i>Quoi</i> after Prepositions ...	110
84 <i>Qui, Que, Quoi, Quel,</i> used in Interrogative Senten- ces .....	ib.
85 to 89 Indefinite Pronouns, <i>ON</i> .....	112

## CHAPTER V.

### VERB.

90, etc. VERB, its Definition, Persons, Numbers, Ten- ses .....	115
94 to 98 What are Verbs <i>Ac-</i> <i>tive, Passive, Neuter, Re-</i> <i>flexive and Impersonal.</i>	116
99 Of the different Conjug- ations and Auxiliaries ...	118
101 Conjugation of <i>Avoir</i> , and Exercise .....	119
102, etc. Use of <i>du, de la, des</i> before Nouns, and of <i>de</i> before Adjectives .....	119
105 <i>De</i> after <i>beaucoup, com-</i> <i>bien, peu, trop, etc.</i> .....	122
106 Repetition of the Article and preposition before each Noun of a sentence	123
107 <i>DE</i> , used after negative sentences .....	125
108 Of the <i>-t-</i> used in ques- tions before <i>il, etc.</i> .....	126

	Page		Page
109 Of the Verb Interrogative and Negative.....	128	joined to a Substantive, when implying <i>want</i> ....	173
110 Conjugation of ETRE....	130	134 Conjugation of Y AVOIR .	175
111 General Rule on the place of the Adverb.....	ib.	135 Irregular Verbs of the First Conjugation AL-	
112 Form of the <i>Imperative</i> in the third person.....	134	LER, ENVOYER.....	176
113 General Observation on the Use of the <i>Subjunctive Mood</i> in French.....	ib.	137 Conjugation of S'EN AL-	
114 Remarks on the Orthography of the Verbs of the First Conjugation.....	137	LER, to go away.....	177
115 Model of the First Conjugation, PARLER.....	ib.	138, etc. Irregular Verbs of the Second Conjugation, 1st Branch, <i>Punir</i> .....	179
116 SECOND CONJUGATION, its division into five branches.....	145	2nd Branch, <i>Sentir</i> .....	180
117 Models of the Second Conjugation PUNIR, SENTIR, OUVRIR, TENIR, COURIR.....	147	3rd Branch, <i>Ouvrir</i> .....	183
118 Model of the third Conjugation, RECEVOIR....	152	141 Irregular Verbs of the Third Conjugation.....	184
119 Fourth Conjugation divided into five branches .	156	142 etc. Irregular Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation, 1st Branch, <i>Rendre</i> .....	190
120 Models of the Fourth Conjugation, RENDRE, PLAIRE, PARAÎTRE, RÉDUIRE, JOINDRE.....	ib.	2nd Branch, <i>Plaire</i> .....	195
121, 2 <i>Pronominal</i> or <i>Réflexed Verbs</i> , and list of those which are most commonly used.....	161	3rd Branch, <i>Paraître</i> ... ..	196
123 Model of a Reflective Verb. SE REPENTIR... ..	163	4th Branch, <i>Réduire</i> ....	197
124 Interrogative and Negative forms of the Reflective Verb.....	ib.	5th Branch, <i>Joindre</i> ....	201
125 Conjugation of <i>Passive Verbs</i> .....	170	147 Table of the Primitive Tenses of the Four Regular Conjugations.....	202
126, etc. <i>Neuter Verbs</i> , their Government and Auxiliaries.....	171	148 Table of the Primitive Tenses of the irregular Verbs.....	203
129 <i>Impersonal Verbs</i> , list of the most common.....	172		
130 etc. Conjugation of FALLOIR; comparison between MUST and FALLOIR; <i>Falloir</i> joined to a Verb when implying <i>duty</i> or <i>necessity</i> ; and			
		CHAPTER VI.	
		149, etc. Prepositions.....	206
		Denoting <i>Place</i> .....	ib.
		<i>Order</i> .....	207
		<i>Union</i> .....	208
		<i>Opposition</i> .....	ib.
		<i>Separation</i> .....	209
		<i>End</i> .....	ib.
		<i>Cause and Means</i> .....	210
		156 Of the Prepositions A, DE, EN.....	ib.
		CHAPTER VII.	
		157, etc. Of the Adverbs, their Nature, Formation, etc. ....	212
		CHAPTER VIII.	
		166, etc. Of Conjunctions... ..	218
		168 Conjunction QUE never omitted after the Verb....	221



	Page		Page
CHAPTER IX.		191 Phrases in which the Article is omitted . . . . .	237
169 Interjections . . . . .	222		
PART II.		CHAPTER III.	
CHAPTER I.		ADJECTIVE.	
SUBSTANTIVE.		192 Concord of the Adjective with the Noun . . . . .	239
170 Explanation of the terms <i>Regimen direct, Regimen indirect</i> , or Cases . . . . .	223	193 Adjectives of Dimensions . . . . .	240
171 Order, place of the subject of the Verb, in the four forms . . . . .	224	194 Adjectives used Substantively, require the Article Definite . . . . .	241
172 Of Government or cases . . . . .	225	196 The Superlative takes the Article . . . . .	243
173 Difference between the two Languages, as to the Government of Verbs . . . . .	ib.	197 How to render <i>Equally with, as well as, nothing so pleasant as</i> , etc. . . . .	244
174 Necessity of attending to the Government of Verbs, with regard to the Relative Pronouns . . . . .	226	198, etc. Place of Adjectives . . . . .	ib.
175 How to render the <i>King's Palace</i> , and such like sentences . . . . .	227	201, etc. Government of Adjectives; of those which require <i>de</i> . . . . .	247
176 Compound Words, such as, <i>Silk Stockings, Dining Room</i> ; how to render them in French . . . . .	ib.	Of those which require <i>à</i> . . . . .	248
		Of those which require <i>envers</i> . . . . .	ib.
CHAPTER II.		208 Necessity of attending to the Government of Adjectives, when there are two joined to one Substantive . . . . .	ib.
177 Of the indefinite A, AN; when rendered, when not . . . . .	228	209 ETRE, with Adjectives expressing <i>gladness, regret</i> , requires the infinitive or the Subjunctive . . . . .	249
178-9 A, an, rendered by <i>le, la, par</i> . . . . .	229	210 Government of IL EST, joined to an Adjective . . . . .	ib.
130, etc. Of the definite Article <i>le, la, les</i> , when to use it . . . . .	230	211 NE used before the Verbs in comparisons . . . . .	250
183 Article definite omitted . . . . .	232	212 The <i>Subjunctive</i> and the <i>Genitive</i> used after an Adjective in the <i>Superlative</i> . . . . .	251
184, etc. <i>The</i> not rendered in French in <i>Louis the XIVth, Book the Tenth</i> , and such like . . . . .	233	213 By rendered by <i>de</i> , in comparisons . . . . .	ib.
185 <i>The</i> used after <i>dans</i> , never after <i>en</i> ; several cases when it is omitted . . . . .	234	215 Cardinal Numbers used in <i>dates</i> and other cases . . . . .	253
187 Proper names do not take the definite Article. Exceptions . . . . .	235		
188 Of the <i>Partitive Article</i> DU, DE LA, DES . . . . .	236	CHAPTER IV.	
		PRONOUNS.	
		217 PERSONAL PRONOUNS; Distinction between the Object and the subject . . . . .	253

	Page		Page
218, etc. <i>Moi, toi, lui, eux</i> , used instead of <i>j', tu, il, ils</i> .....	254	<i>j'ai mal à la tête, je me lave les mains, vous me blessez la main</i> , etc. etc....	278
221 <i>Il, elle, ils, elles</i> , used in speaking of inani- mate things.....	256	263, etc. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS. Remark about <i>c'est, ce sont</i> .....	281
222 <i>Aussi, peut-être, encore</i> , etc. require the interro- gative form.....	257	266 <i>CE</i> in Descriptive Sen- tences.....	282
223 Of Pronouns, being Di- rect and Indirect Regi- men.....	ib.	267 How to render <i>this is</i> , <i>these are</i> .....	ib.
224, etc. Place of the Per- sonal Pronouns.....	258	268 WHAT rendered by <i>ce qui, ce que, ce dont, ce à quoi</i> .....	283
230, etc. Directions on the Use of the proper Per- sonal Pronouns.....	261	269 <i>He who, she who, they who</i> , rendered by <i>celui qui, celle qui</i> , etc. ....	284
235, etc. Particular use of <i>Y, EN</i> .....	265	271 WHICH relative, stand- ing for <i>that which</i> .....	285
237 <i>CE</i> instead of <i>il, elle, ils, elles</i> , in descrip- tions.....	266	272, etc. How to render <i>this day week, this day month</i> , etc. ....	ib.
238, etc. Cases in which <i>lui, eux, elle, elles</i> , may ap- ply to things.....	ib.	274 <i>CECI, CELA</i> , neuter fami- liar use of <i>cela</i> .....	ib.
341, etc. Difficulty respect- ing the supplying Pro- noun <i>LE</i> , explained....	268	275 <i>It</i> rendered by <i>cela</i> .....	286
243, etc. Repetition of the Personal Pronouns.....	270	276 RELATIVE PRONOUNS, <i>lui</i> common in speaking of Persons and Things, when restricted to Persons	ib.
247 On the Pronoun <i>soi</i> ....	274	278, etc. WHAT, beginning questions, rendered by <i>que</i> .....	ib.
248 POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS, their Concord.....	275	280 The relative must be close to its antecedent.....	287
249 <i>EN</i> used to render <i>ITS</i> , <i>THEIR</i> , instead of <i>son, sa, ses, leur</i> .....	ib.	283 <i>Qui</i> governs the subjunc- tive mood after a negative or an interrogative phrase	289
250, etc. <i>Mine, thine, his</i> , with <i>to be</i> , rendered by <i>à moi, à toi, à lui</i> , etc....	276	284 <i>Que</i> accusative case, is <i>never omitted</i> .....	ib.
253 How to render <i>a friend of yours, a horse of mine</i> , etc.	277	287 <i>Lequel, duquel</i> , principal- ly used to mark distinc- tion.....	290
254 <i>Monsieur, madame</i> , etc. used before titles of rela- tionship.....	ib.	290 <i>Quoi</i> used after preposi- tions in speaking of things indeterminately..	292
255 Possessive Pronouns used before <i>mère, père, frère, sœur</i> , etc. ....	ib.	291 How to render <i>whose is, whose are?</i> .....	ib.
256, etc. Repetition of the Possessive Pronoun.....	ib.	292 How to render <i>in which case, on which account</i> ...	293
258, etc. PARTICULAR CON- STRUCTION relating to parts of the Body, such as,		293 <i>Où, d'où, par où</i> , stand- ing for <i>auquel, duquel</i> , etc.	ib.
		294 ABSOLUTE PRONOUNS...	294
		297, etc. Pronouns indefinite.	



	Page		Page
ON, its meaning and peculiar use; the active voice substituted to the passive, with ON for subject . . . . .	296	350 IMPORTANT REMARK on the prepositions <i>de, à pour</i> , used before the <i>infinitive</i> , governed by <i>another verb</i> <i>ib.</i>	
300, etc. <i>Quelqu'un, quiconque, chacun, autrui, tout, l'un l'autre</i> , etc. etc. . . . .	298	351, etc. Rules on the Prepositions to be used before the <i>infinitive</i> . . . . .	<i>ib.</i>
CAPTER V.		356, etc. Rules as to when the second Verb must be in the <i>indicative</i> , and when in the <i>subjunctive</i> mood..	327.
THE VERB.		360 NATURE AND USE OF MOODS AND TENSES. . . .	328
321, etc. Concord between the Verb and its subject. . . .	308	Of the Present Tense. . . .	<i>ib.</i>
327 Nouns of Multitude and Nouns Collective Partitive, require the Verb to be in the Singular. . . . .	312	362 Use of the <i>Imperfect</i> (JE PARLAIS) . . . . .	329
328 The Verb in the plural after <i>la plupart, infinité</i> . . . .	313	363 Use of the <i>Definite</i> (JE PARLAI) . . . . .	330
329 Place of the subject with regard of the Verb. . . . .	314	364, etc. Use of the <i>Preterit Indefinite</i> , ( <i>J'AI PARLÉ</i> ) and other tenses. . . . .	331
331 <i>Il, elle, ils, elles</i> suppressed in questions beginning with <i>que, où, combien, à quoi</i> . . . . .	315	367 Use of the <i>Future Absolute</i> (JE PARLERAI) . . . . .	333
332 Subject placed after the Verb in sentences beginning with <i>ainsi, tel</i> . . . .	<i>ib.</i>	368 The <i>Future</i> is used, after QUAND, in speaking of things to come. . . . .	<i>ib.</i>
333 The Verb in the interrogative form after <i>aussi, peut-être</i> , etc. See No. 222. . . . .	316	369 The <i>Future</i> is not used after <i>si</i> meaning <i>IF</i> , but after <i>si</i> , meaning <i>WHETHER</i> . How to render <i>as you please, as you like</i> . <i>ib.</i>	
334 Imperative of <i>Pouvoir, Devoir, Faire</i> , in imprecations. . . . .	<i>ib.</i>	370 Illustrative examples of the use of the tenses, JE PARLAIS, JE PARLAI, J'AI PARLÉ. . . . .	334.
338 Of a Noun governed by two Verbs. . . . .	318	371, etc. Of the <i>Conditional</i> , (JE PARLERAIS). . . . .	336
339 <i>Passive Verbs</i> require the prepositions <i>de, par</i> . . . .	319	374 How to render <i>THOUGH EVEN, WERE I TO</i> , etc. and peculiar use of the <i>Conditional</i> . . . . .	337
340, etc. <i>Neuter Verbs</i> , their different government. . . .	320	375 Of the <i>Imperative</i> . . . . .	338
342, etc. <i>Neuter Verbs</i> do not all and always require the same auxiliary; examples of those which require <i>ÊTRE</i> ; examples of those with which both are used. . . . .	<i>ib.</i>	377 Of the <i>SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD</i> ; the two Languages do not coincide with regard to this tense; illustrative Examples. . . . .	339
349 A Verb following another must be either in the <i>infinitive</i> , the <i>indicative</i> , or the <i>subjunctive mood</i> . . . .	325	378 List of <i>Conjunctions</i> , which require the <i>Subjunctive Mood</i> . . . . .	<i>ib.</i>
		379 QUE may require the <i>Subjunctive Mood</i> , when used instead of another Con-	

	Page		Page
junction . . . . .	341	417 Government of PREPO-	
381 An adjective in the su-		SITIONS . . . . .	367
perlative and <i>le premier</i> ,			
<i>le seul</i> , <i>personne</i> , etc. re-		CHAPTER VII.	
quire the subjunctive, . . .	342	ADVERBS.	
332 The relative <i>qui</i> , <i>que</i> , re-		418 Of the different sorts	
quire the subjunctive af-	ib.	of Adverbs . . . . .	368
ter a negative phrase . . .		419, etc. Of the Negations	
334 Nature of the Verbs which		<i>ne</i> , <i>pas</i> , <i>point</i> , where	
require the Subjunctive	ib.	are the latter to be used	370
Mood . . . . .		421 <i>De</i> must be used before	
335 ETRE RAVI, BIEN AISE,		the nouns after a nega-	
etc. have also the Sub-	343	tive sentence . . . . .	374
junctive Mood . . . . .		423 <i>Je ne saurais</i> used in-	
336 Remarks on the way of		stead of <i>Je ne puis</i> . . . .	376
rendering <i>do</i> , <i>did</i> , <i>will</i> ,	344		
<i>would</i> , <i>should</i> , <i>can</i> , <i>could</i> ,		CHAPTER VIII.	
<i>may</i> , <i>might</i> . . . . .		CONJUNCTIONS.	
337 Concord between the ten-	345	425 Great use of QUE . . . .	378
ses of the Indicative . . .		426 Particular use of <i>que</i> after	
338, etc. Concord between the	347	<i>c'est</i> . . . . .	379
tenses of the Subjunctive,		427, etc. Government of	
and those of the Indica-		Conjunctions . . . . .	381
tive . . . . .		CHAPTER IX.	
333 Of the INFINITIVE. Its	353	430 Grammatical construc-	
use after prepositions,		tion . . . . .	387
instead of the Participle	354	431 Of Inversion . . . . .	391
Present, used in English.		432 Of Ellipsis . . . . .	392
336 Of the PARTICIPLE PRE-	355	433 Of Pleonasm . . . . .	393
SENT, when declined,		434 Of the Syllepsis . . . .	394
when not . . . . .	356	435 Of Grammatical Discor-	
339 How to render the En-		dance . . . . .	394
glish Participle present,	357	436 Of Amphibologies . . . .	395
used Substantively . . . .		Gallicisms, example of	
400 The Participle present is	358	IL S'EN FAUT . . . . .	397
used after EN . . . . .		MISCELLANY.	
402 PARTICIPLE PAST. Some-	359	437 Free Exercises . . . . .	400
times declined, Sometimes		EXAMPLES OF PHRASES	
not. Example . . . . .	360	ON THE PRINCIPAL	
403 Participle Past, with		DIFFICULTIES OF THE	
ÊTRE, agrees with the	362	FRENCH LANGUAGE.	
subject . . . . .	ib.	1. Collective Partitive . . .	412
404, etc. Participle Past,		2. Verbs which cannot	
with AVOIR . . . . .	363	be conjugated with	
408 Difficulty on the Parti-		AVOIR . . . . .	ib.
ciple Past . . . . .			
410 Participle Past with			
REFLECTIVE VERBS . . .			
CHAPTER VI.			
PREPOSITIONS.			
411, etc. Rules on the Pre-			
positions . . . . .			

	Page		Page
3. On Words of Quantity.....	413	14. Continuation.....	424
4. On Personal Pronouns.....	ib.	15. Continuation.....	ib.
5. On <i>soi, lui, soi-même</i> .	414	16. On the Pronoun <i>le</i> ..	425
6. On the Relative Pronouns.....	415	17. On the Participle Past.	426
7. On the Relative Pronouns.....	416	18. Relations of Tenses..	427
8. On <i>il y a</i> .....	417	19. On <i>Devoir, Pouvoir, Aller, Venir de</i> .....	428
9. Phrases diverses.....	418	20. On <i>Should, Would, Could, Will, Shall</i> ....	429
10. Continuation.....	420	21. Continuation.....	ib.
11. Idem.....	ib.	22. On the Negative <i>Ne</i> ..	430
12. On the Article.....	422	23. Continuation.....	431
13. Article omitted.....	423	24. Niceties of the French Language.....	433



# EXPLANATION

OF THE

## ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE EXERCISES.

---

m.	stands for masculine.
f.	_____ feminine.
pl.	_____ plural.
s. or sing.	_____ singular.
h. m.	_____ h mute.
h asp.	_____ h aspirated.
pr. *	_____ preposition.
art. *	_____ article.
pr.-art.	_____ article and preposition contracted.
pron.	_____ pronoun.
inf-1	_____ present of the infinitive.
inf-2	_____ the past of the infinitive.
p. pr.	_____ participle present.
p. p-4	_____ participle past.
ind-1	_____ present of the indicative, <i>Je parle,</i>
ind-2	_____ imperfect. <i>Je parlais.</i>
ind-3	_____ preterit definite. <i>Je parlai.</i>
ind-4	_____ preterit indefinite. <i>J'ai parlé.</i>
ind-5	_____ preterit anterior. <i>J'eus parlé.</i>
ind-6	_____ pluperfect. <i>J'avais parlé.</i>
ind-7	_____ future absolute. <i>Je parlerai.</i>
ind-8	_____ future anterior. <i>J'aurai parlé.</i>
con-1	_____ present of the conditional. <i>Je parlerais.</i>
con-2	_____ first conditional past. <i>J'aurais parlé.</i>
con-3	_____ second conditional past. <i>J'aurais eu parlé.</i>
imp.	_____ imperative. <i>Aie.</i>
subj-1	_____ present of the subjunctive. <i>Que je parle.</i>
subj-2	_____ imperfect. <i>Que je parlasse.</i>
subj-3	_____ preterit. <i>Que j'aie parlé.</i>
subj-4	_____ pluperfect. <i>Que j'eusse parlé.</i>

\* In the Exercises, denotes that the word under which it is placed, is not expressed in French.

— Denotes that the English word is spelt alike in French, or at least the part under which this sign is placed.

\* Art. in the Exercises, before a word, shows that the definite article is used.

† Prep. shows the preposition is to be used.

= Denotes that the French word differs from the English only by its termination. See 27.

In filling the Exercises, the order of the figures placed sometimes in the phrases after the French words, is to be observed.

In the exercises, when several English words are included between a parenthesis, they must be translated by the only words placed under.

# FRENCH GRAMMAR.

1. GRAMMAR, in general, is the art of *speaking* and *writing* correctly.

To SPEAK—is to convey our thoughts by means of articulated sounds.

To WRITE—is to render those thoughts permanently visible by means of certain signs or characters, called *Letters*, and the latter disposed in proper order constitutes what is called the ALPHABET.

## 2. OF THE FRENCH ALPHABET.

Roman Letters.		Italic Letters.		Old Appellation.	New Appellation.
A	a	A	a	ah—	ah
B	b	B	b	bay*	be*
C	c	C	c	say	ke
D	d	D	d	day	de
E	e	E	e	a—	a
F	f	F	f	eff	fe
G	g	G	g	jay †	ghe
H	h	H	h	ash	he
I	i	I	i	e—	e
J	j	J	j	jee †	je §
K	k	K	k	kah	ke
L	l	L	l	ell	le
M	m	M	m	emm	me
N	n	N	n	enn	ne
O	o	O	o	o—	o
P	p	P	p	pay	pe
Q	q	Q	q	ku §	ke
R	r	R	r	heir	re
S	s	S	s	ess	se
T	t	T	t	tay	te
U	u	U	u	u §	u §
V	v	V	v	vay	ve
X	x	X	x	eeks	kse
Y	y	Y	y	è grec	e grec
Z	z	Z	z	zed	ze

\* Here both the old pronunciation and the new are expressed by sounds, and, in the new, the letter *e* after each consonant is sounded, as in the English word *battery*.

† When *g* is soft, it is sounded like *s* in *pleasure*, or *z* in *azure*. Such is also the sound of *j*, which is always soft.

See the second note, page 4.



## PRONUNCIATION,

OR SOUNDS OF THE FRENCH TONGUE.

## 3. OF LETTERS IN GENERAL.

The French ALPHABET contains, it is seen, *twenty-five letters*, which are divided into *Vowels* and *Consonants*.

A *vowel* is the simple emission of the *voice* forming an articulate sound by itself.

A *consonant*, on the contrary, cannot be articulated without the assistance of a *vowel*.

The *vowels* are *a, e, i, o, u*, and *y*, which sometimes has the sound of *one i*, and sometimes of *two*.

The nineteen remaining letters, *b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z*, are consonants.

## 4. OF ACCENTUATION.

In reading and writing, great attention must be paid to the accents ; for they not only change the sound of the vowels, but also the meaning of words. Ex. *pêche*, a peach ; *péché*, a sin ; *la*, the ; *là*, there ; *ou*, or ; *où*, where.

Three accents are used on the vowels ; they are the *acute* ( ' ) placed on *e* alone, as in *bonté*.\* The *grave* ( ` ) used solely on the letter *e*, as in *procès*, *prêt*, and on the three following words, *à*, to ; *là*, there ; *où*, where. The *circumflex* ( ^ ) used on every one of the five vowels, which it makes long, *plâtre*, *rêve*, *épître*, *apôtre*, *vous fûtes*.†

The *cedilla* ( ç ) *cédille*, placed under *c*, gives it the sound of *s* before *a, o, u*, as in *façade*, *façon*, *reçu*.

The *diæresis* or *tréma* ( ¨ ) is placed over the vowels *e, i, u*, whenever they form one distinct syllable, as *haïr*, *naïf*, *Esaü*, *ciguë*, *Raphaël*, which are pronounced *ha-ïr*, *na-ïf*, *E-sa-ü*, *ci-gu-ë*, *Ra-pha-ël*.

\* The acute accent is used on the final *e* of the part. past of the first conjugation, *aimé*, *estimé*, and of all nouns derived from those Latin words of the third declension, ending in *as*, *vérité*, *veritas* ; *cité*, *civitas* ; *cécité*, *cecitas* ; *générosité*, *generositas*, etc. etc.

† The ^ accent takes the place of the *s* or of the double vowel which were used in old orthography, *aage*, *fluste*, now *âge*, *flûte* ; it is also used in words derived from the Latin language, especially verbs, from which a syllable is cut off, *âme*, *anima* ; *vous aimâtes*, *amavistis*.

N. B. Recent authors omit the ( ^ ) in *ame*.

The *hyphen* or *tiret*, (-) is used in connecting compound words, as in *Belles-lettres*, *tout-puissant*, *arc-en-ciel*, &c.

## 5. OF THE SOUNDS OF THE VOWELS,

### AND OF THEIR COMBINATIONS.

Independently of the radical sounds of the five vowels, *a, e, i, o, u*, there are others which are formed by means of the accents which are placed upon them, according as the case requires, so that the number of *simple sounds* is altogether ten, *ā, â, e, é, è, ê, i, o, ô, u*.

The sound of *i* and of *u* is not affected by the apposition of the circumflex accent.

There are besides *three* other *simple sounds*, each represented by the following combinations of vowels, *eu, êu, ou*.

There are also *four nasal simple sounds*,‡ which for want of more appropriate signs, are represented by the combinations of *m* or *n* with each of the vowels, *an, em, an, en—im, in—om, on—um, un*.

All vowels are long which have the <sup>^</sup> accent upon them, as *pâte*; others may be long by position, as *rose*.

Besides the *simple*, there are also the *compound* sounds, in which two vowels are distinctly heard by a single emission of the voice; these are the *diphthongs*.—See Table III.

The sound of one or more letters, pronounced with a single emission of the voice, is called a syllable; one or more syllables make a word.

‡ Seventeen simple sounds. See TABLE I.

TABLE I.

## 6. THE SEVENTEEN SIMPLE SOUNDS OF THE FRENCH TONGUE.

<i>Sounds.</i>	<i>Examples.</i>	<i>Sounded as</i>
1. a <i>short</i>	ami, friend	a in amateur
2. â <i>long</i>	pâte, paste	a — bark
3. e	tenir, to hold	e — battery
4. é	été, summer	a — paper
5. è	modèle, model	e — met
6. ê (*)	tête, head	e — there
7. i	imiter, to imitate	i — timid
8. o <i>short</i>	école, school	o — scholar
9. ô <i>long</i>	côte, rib	o — note
10. u	vertu, virtue	(†)
11. eu <i>short</i>	jeune, young	u — shun
12. eû <i>long</i>	jeûne, fast	(†)
13. ou	soupe, soup	ou — soup
14. an } (†)	ange, angel	en — encore
15. in }	lin, flax	en — length
16. on }	long, long	on — long
17. un }	brun brown	un — —

\* Besides these four sorts of *e* there is one entirely mute at the end of many words, as in the above, *modèle, tête, école, côte*; and sometimes in the beginning and middle, as in *cependant, javeline, Roquefort, Souquenille, l'empereur, &c.*

† The sound of the French *u*, to which there is no similar, nor even approximate, sound in English, must be heard from the master; and it may be well to add, that, although we have attempted to give an idea of the French sounds by means of English ones, yet they can be correctly learnt only by hearing them from the lips of a native. The nasal sounds cannot be conveyed by any combination of English letters, but a correct notion of the way in which they are pronounced may be had by observation and comparison. In uttering *attention*, as it is pronounced in both languages, it will be seen that the lips do not move when spoken in French, whereas they do, when spoken in English. To stop the moving of the lips, is therefore the only way of arriving at the right utterance of French nasals.

## TABLE II.

## 7. COMBINATIONS OF LETTERS REPRESENTING SEVERAL OF THE SEVENTEEN SIMPLE SOUNDS.

The Figures refer to Table I.

1....	a....	ca.....	il gagea.....	he betted
2....	â .	{ acs, as, cât,.....	appats .....	charms
		ats*.....		
4....	é .	{ ai.....	aigu .....	sharp
		eai.....	geai .....	jay
		ée.....	année.....	year
		œ.....	œsophage.....	œsophagus
		ai.....	aide.....	aide
		aie.....	baie.....	bay
5....	è .	{ ei.....	baleine.....	whale
		coi.....	je nageois ..	I did swim
		oi.....	foible.....	weak
		oie.....	monnoie.....	money
6....	ê .	{ ai.....	ainé.....	eldest
		oi.....	paroître.....	to appear
7....	î .	ie.....	folie.....	folly
8....	o .	{ au.....	aurore.....	dawn
		eo.....	flageolet.....	flageolet
		au.....	auteur.....	author
9....	ô .	{ cau.....	marteau.....	hammer
		co.....	geole.....	gao
		eu.....	gageure.....	wager
10....	u .	{ cue.....	cue f.....	had
		ue.....	laitue.....	lettuce
11....	eu .	œu.....	sœur.....	sister
12....	cû	{ œu.....	nœud.....	knot
		cue.....	queue.....	tail
13....	ou	{ oue.....	il joue.....	he plays
		aoû.....	Août.....	August
		am.....	jambe.....	leg
14....	an	{ ean.....	affligeant.....	afflicting
		em.....	membre.....	member
		en.....	entendre.....	to hear
		aim.....	essaim.....	swarm
		ain.....	crainte.....	fear
15....	in	{ ein.....	peinture.....	picture
		im.....	impoli.....	impolite
		ym.....	symbole.....	symbol
		yn.....	syntaxe.....	syntax
16....	on	{ con.....	pigeon.....	pigeon
		on.....	ombre.....	shade
17....	un	{ eun.....	à jeun.....	fasting
		um.....	parfum.....	perfume

\* Final consonants are almost generally mute or silent in French. Thus *loup, tout* are sounded like *ou*, 13, *chant, champ, chants, champs*, are sounded like *an*, 14. Observe that the termination *ent* of the third persons of verbs is sounded like *e* mute *ils parlent*, pron. *ils parle*.



## TABLE III.

## DIPHTHONGS.

## 8. Compound Sounds represented by Examples.

7*	i	...	}	ia	{	fiacre	hackney-coach
1 or 2	a	...				galimatias	nonsense
7	i	...	}	iai	{	je défiai	I challenged
4	é	...				amitié	friendship
			}	iez	{	vous riez	you laugh
						biais	bias
7	i	...	}	iè	{	bière	beer
5	è	...				ciel	heaven
			}	ioi	{	je purifiois	I purified
7	i	...				iolon	violin
8 or 9	o	...	}	iau	{	miauler	to mew
7	i	...				iu	binding
10	u	...	}	ieu	{	relieur	bookbinder
7	i	...				mieux	better
11 or 12	eu	...	}	iou	{	chiourme	crew of a galley
7	i	...				viande	meat
13	ou	...	}	ian	{	audience	audience
7	i	...				chrétien	christian
14	an	...	}	ien	{	passion	passion
7	i	...				ion	passion
15	in	...	}	oi	{	bois	wood
7	i	...				oi	wood
16	on	...	}	oie	{	boîte	box
8	o	...				foie	liver
2	â	...	}	oe	{	moelle	marrow
8	o	...				voisin	neighbour
6	ê	...	}	eoi	{	nageoire	fin
8	o	...				oin	want
15	in	...	}	ua	{	nuage	cloud
10	u	...				uai	I moved
1	a	...	}	ue	{	éternuer	to sneeze
10	u	...				ué	stript
4	é	...	}	uée	{	nuée	cloud

\* These figures refer to the number of the sounds of the preceding page.



## TABLE III.

## DIPHTHONGS CONTINUED:

*Compound Sounds represented by Examples.*

10....	u ..	ue .....	menuet .....	minuet
5....	è ..	uoi .....	il suoit .....	he perspired
10....	u ..	ui .....	buisson .....	bush
7....	i ..	uie .....	parapluie ..	umbrella
10....	u ..	uo .....	impétuosité ..	impetuosity
8....	o ..			
10....	u ..	ueu .....	lueur .....	glimmering
11....	eu ..			
10....	u ..	ueu .....	majestueux ..	majestic
12....	eû ..			
10....	u ..	uan .....	nuance .....	shade
14....	an ..	uen .....	influence .....	influence
10....	u ..	uin .....	Juin .....	June
15....	in ..			
10....	u ..	uon .....	tuons .....	let us kill
16....	on ..			
13....	ou ..	oua .....	rouage .....	wheel-work
1....	a ..			
		oue .....	dénouer .....	to untie
13....	ou ..	oué .....	déjoué .....	frustrated
4....	é ..	ouée .....	filie enjouée ..	cheerful girl
		ouai .....	je jouai .....	I played
13....	ou ..	oue .....	fouetter .....	to whip
5....	è ..	ouoi .....	je dénouois ..	I untied
13....	ou ..	oui .....	carbouis .....	cart grease
7....	i ..	ouie .....	l'ouie .....	hearing
13....	ou ..	oueu .....	boueur .....	scavenger
11....	eu ..			
13....	ou ..	oueu .....	nouveux .....	knotty
12....	eû ..			
13....	ou ..	ouan .....	louange .....	praise
14....	an ..	ouen .....	Rouen .....	Rouen, a city
13....	ou ..	ouin .....	babouin .....	baboon
15....	in ..			
13....	ou ..	ouon .....	jouons .....	let us play
16....	on ..			

## 9. OBSERVATIONS

UPON THE TWO FIRST TABLES (SEE ALSO LETTERS M. N.)

*Am, an*, do not take the nasal sound when *m* or *n* are doubled, as in *constamment, année*. *Am* is not nasal at the end of some foreign names, as *Abraham, Roboam, Rotterdam, Potsdam, Cham, &c.*; except *Adam*.

*Em*, and *en* are articulated as in the English words *hem* and *men* :

1. In words from Latin, as *abdomen, amen, solen, hymen, item, décemvirat, décemvirs*, and proper names *Jérusalem, Sem*; except *examen, memento, agenda, mentor*, in which *en* has the sound of *in*.

2. *E* before double *nn*, is sounded like *è* as *étrennes, ennemi, moyennant*; also in some persons and tenses of the verbs, *tenir, venir, prendre*, and their compounds, as *que je vienne, que tu soutiennes, qu'il comprenne, &c.* in the pronouns feminine, *la mienne, la tienne, les siennes*, in many other words, as *antienne, magicienne, Vienne en Autriche, &c.* See letter N.

Also in many nouns and persons of verbs ending in *ène, ème*, as in *arène, ébène, je me promène, il égrène, il sème*, where, however, the *e* is somewhat more open.

*Aen* has the sound of the French nasal *an* in *Caen*, a town of Normandy. *Aon* is sounded *an* in *Laon*, another town of France, in *faon*, a fawn, and in *paon*, a peacock; but these letters have the sound of *on* in *taon*, an ox-fly.

*N*, in the monosyllable *en*, both when a preposition and when a pronoun, in *on, mon, ton, son*, pronouns, and in *bon, bien, rien*, ceases to be nasal when these words are immediately followed by a vowel or an *h* mute, as *en Italie, on en aura, mon ami, c'est un bon homme, on a bien essayé, je suis bien aise qu'il n'ait rien oublié*. But *en* and *on* remain nasal, when they are placed after verbs; as *donnez-en à votre sœur. A-t-on essayé? Va-t'en-au-logis*.

1. *Im, in*, are not nasal, 1. in the word *intérim*, and in proper names taken from foreign languages, as *Sélim, Ephraïm, Ibrahim*. However the nasal sound is preserved in *Benjamin, Joachim*.

2. In the beginning and middle of words when *m* or *n* is followed by a vowel or an *h* mute, as *inanimé, inimaginable, unanimité, &c.*

3. Whenever *m* or *n* is doubled, as *immoler*, *immersion*, *innover*, *inné*, *innocent*, though in this latter word only one *n* is sounded.

*Un* has the sound of *u* close, as in *une*, *unième*, *unanime*, when followed by a word beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute, as *un homme*, *un esprit*, *aucun ami*, *commun accord*.

*Um* is pronounced *omm*, in some words adopted from the Latin, as *centumvirs*, *album*, *quinquennium*, *ladanum*, *laurdanum*, *géranium*, except *pensum*, *factotum*.

*U* after the consonants *q* and *g* is generally silent, as in *quatre*, *guerre*, &c. See those letters.

## 10. OF THE Y.

This letter has the sound of *i*, in all words derived from Greek; *lyre*, *physique*, and in *y* adverb. In *pays*, *paysan*, *paysage*, it is sounded like two *i*, as if these words were spelled *pai-is*, *pai-i-san*, *pai-i-sage*. *Y*, placed between two vowels, is also pronounced as two *i*, one of which alters the sound of the first vowel, and the other making a diphthong with the second thus, *payer* is pronounced as if it were spelled *païer*, *monnoyer* or *monnayer* as if *mo-naïier*.\*

### EXAMPLES.

Ab-ba-ye	abbey	nous é-ga-yons	we enliven
a-bo-yer	to bark	es-su-yer	to wipe
ap-pu-yer	to support	mo-yen	means
ba-la-yer	to sweep	net-to-yer	to clean
bé-ga-yer	to stammer	je pa-yois	I was paying
cra-yon	pencil	je ra-ye-raïs	I would stripe
cro-ya-ble	credible	ro-yau-me	kingdom
é-cu-yer	esquire	vo-ya-ge	voyage
il ef-fra-ye	he frightens	vo-ya-geur	traveller

## 11. OF CONSONANTS.

*B*, *b*, at the beginning of a word or of a syllable, is sounded as in English.

Bal	ball	bo-bi-ne	bobbin
Ba-bel	Babel	bar-ba-ris-me	barbarism
ba-bil	prating	bi-bli-o-thè-que	library
ba-bouin	baboon	bur-les-que	burlesque

*B* is sounded in the middle of words, as *ab-di-quer*, *sub-venir*, *ob-vi-er*: and at the end of proper names, as *Job*, *Caleb*, *Moab*: also in the words, *radoub*, the refitting of a ship,

*Baïonnette*, *biscaïen*, *païen*, are sometimes spelt *bayonnette*, *biscayen*, *payen*, but the *y* must be sounded as one *i*.



*rum*b, point of the compass ; but it is not sounded in *plomb*, lead.

Double *bb* is not sounded, *abbé*, abbot ; *rabbin*, rabbin ; *sabbat*, sabbath ; which pronounce *a-bé*, *ra-bin*, *sa-bat*, but it is heard in *Abbatial*, *Abbeville*.

C, c, is { *Hard*, as in English, before *a*, *o*, *u*, *l*, *n*, *r*.  
                   { *Soft*, before *e*, *i*, *y*, and also before *a*, *o*, *u*, when  
                           it has the cedilla ç.

## HARD.

Cal-cul	<i>calculation</i>
ca-co-pho-nie	<i>cacophony</i>
clé-ri-cal	<i>clerical</i>
Cra-co-vie	<i>Cracow</i>
co-que-li-cot	<i>wild-poppy</i>
cro-co-di-le	<i>crocodile</i>
cris-tal	<i>crystal</i>
cu-cur-bi-te	<i>cucurbite</i>
A-rach-né	<i>Arachne</i>

## SOFT.

ce-ci	<i>this</i>
cé-ci-té	<i>blindness</i>
cé-ta-cée	<i>cetaceous</i>
cer-ceau	<i>hoop</i>
Cir-ce	<i>Circe</i>
ci-li-ce	<i>hair-cloth</i>
cy-ni-que	<i>cynic</i>
cy-près	<i>cypress</i>
le-çon	<i>lesson</i>

Double *cc* and *cq*, in the middle of words, are sounded as one *c* before *a*, *o*, *u*, *la*, *le*, *li*, *lo*, *lu*, *ro*, *re*, *ri* : thus *accabler*, &c. except, *pec-cable*, *pec-cant*, *pec-cadille*, *pec-cavi*, *sac-cholactique*, in which the sounds of the double *c* is distinctly heard. But before *é*, *i*, the two *cc* are heard distinctly ; *succès*, *accident*, *vaccine*, are therefore, pronounced, *suc-cès*, *ac-ci-dent*, *vac-cine*, &c.

*C* is sounded as *g* hard in *second* and its derivatives, and by many in *Claude*, and *Reine Claude*, and even by some, but improperly, in *secret*.

*C*, at the end of words, is usually sounded harsh, as in *cognac*, *lac*, (a lake), *avec*, *bec*, *pic*, *syndic*, *roc*, *froc*, *estoc*, *duc*, *aqueduc*, *agaric*, *arc*, *zinc*, &c. and in the singular of *échec* : but it is not sounded in *croc*, *accroc*, *arc-boutant*, *banc*, *broc*, *clerc*, *marc d'argent*, *cric*, *estomac*, *flanc*, *jonc*, *lacs* (toils,) *tabac*, *tronc*, *échecs*, nor in *donc*, before a consonant ; but

It is always sounded in *croc-en-jambe*, *franc étour-di*, *du blanc au noir*, and in both syllables of *mic-mac*, *tric-trac*, *ric-à-ric*, and *porc-épic*.

In words ending in *ct*, both consonants are generally sounded ; as in *tact*, *contact*, *intact*, *exact*, *inexact*, *abject*, *correct*, *direct*, *infect*, *strict*, *succinct* : *c* alone is heard in *respect* ; *ct* are silent in *amict*, *instinct*, *respects* ; both letters are always heard in *suspecte*, *circonspecte*, *respecte*, *distincte*, as well as in the middle of other words, such as *recteur*,



*vecteur, séducteur, rédacteur, humecter, injecter, dactyle, ductile, tactique, &c.*

*Ch* has two sounds { one, which is most general like *sh*,  
in *she, shake* ;  
the other, which very rarely occurs,  
is that of *k* in *chimera*.

EXAMPLES OF *sh*.

Chat	<i>cat</i>	ché-ru-bin	<i>cherubin</i>
che-val	<i>horse</i>	ca-té-chis-me	<i>catechism</i>
cher-cher	<i>to seek</i>	chou-et-te	<i>screech-owl</i>
chi-che	<i>stingy</i>	chu-te	<i>fall</i>
ar-chi-tec-te	<i>architect</i>	chu-cho-ter	<i>to whisper</i>
ar-chi-tra-ve	<i>architave</i>	chyle, &c. &c.	<i>chyle</i>

It has also sound in *Achille, Zachée, &c.*

EXAMPLES OF *ch* AS *k*.\*

Achab	Cham	Ma-chi-a-vel	Cal-chas
A-ché-lo-us	Cha-na-an	Mi-chel-ange	Bac-chus
An-ti-o-chus	Chi-o	Pul-ché-rie	Cha-ron
A-cha-ïe	Cho-rè-be	Ti-cho-Bra-hé	Zurich
A-nar-char-sis	Cho-ro-ès	Dyr-ra-chi-um	é-cho
a-na-cho-rète	Chal-da-i-que	chi-ro-man-cie	scho-lie
ar-chan-ge	Chal-dée	chœur	cha-li-bé
ar-chan-gel	cha-os	cho-ris-te	chon-dril-le
ar-ché-type	ché-li-doi-ne	or-ches-tre	chi-ra-gre
ar-chon-tes	cher-so-nè-se	i-cho-reux	ar-cha-is-me
ar-chi-é-pis-co- pal	chi-li-ar-que	cho-rè-ge	
chal-cé-doi-ne	chal-co-gra-phié	Na-bu-cho-do- no-sor	
eu-cha-ris-tie	ca-té-chu-mè-ne		
	Za-cha-rie		

EXAMPLES OF *cht* AS *k*.

Yatch } are pronounced { Yak } without sounding the *t*.  
U-trecht } { Utrek }  
Maes-tricht } { Matrik }

*Ch* has the hard sound of *g* in *drachme*, but is silent in *almanach*. On account of their Italian origin, *vermicelle* and *violoncelle* are, by some, pronounced *violonchelle* *vermichel*.

*Ch* has uniformly the sound of *k*, in all words where it is followed by a consonant, as *Christ, chrétien, chloris, chronique, isochrone, chronomètre, Arachné, ichneumon, technique, &c.*

\* The harsh sound of *ch* is heard in words of Greek or oriental etymology, which have not yet become popular and are not entirely Frenchified.

*D, d*, is sounded as in English.

Dé-da-le	labyrinth	Dry-a-de	Dryad
do du	plump	dro-ma-dai-re	dromedary
din-don	turkey	dé-di-ca-toi-re	dedicatory

*D* is always sounded in the middle of words, as *adjectif*, *adverbe*, *admirable*.

It is likewise heard at the end of proper names, as in *David*, *Obed*, *Gad*, *Alfred*, &c. and in some other words, as *Cid*, *Sud*, *Sund*, *Talmud*, *éphod*, *lamed*. *D* final, before a word beginning with a vowel, is sounded as *t*, as *quand il viendra* ; *un grand homme* ; *vend-il* ? which are pronounced *quan-til-viendra*, &c. The *d* final of the following words is always silent in *bond*, *gond*, *fond*, *nid*, *næud*, *muid*, and *pied* ; except in *de fond en comble*, *de pied en cap*, *tenir pied-à-boule*, *avoir un pied-à-terre*, where it is sounded as *t*.

Double *d* is heard in some few words derived from the Latin, as in *ad-dition*, *ad-ducteur*, *red-dition*.

*F, f*, is sounded like the same letter in English.

#### EXAMPLE.

Far-fa-det	hobgoblin	fé-bri-fuge	febrifuge
fau-fi-ler	to baste (in sewing)	fruc-ti-fi-er	to fructify
fet-fa	edict of the Mufti	fi-fire	fifer
fan-fa-ron	boaster	for-fait	crime

Final *f* is sounded in all nouns and adjectives ending in *af*, *ef*, *if*, *of*, as *bref*, *brief*, *chef*, *fief*, *nef*, *nerf*, *grief*, *serf*, *relief*, *méchef*, *Azof*, *lof*, *tof*, *tuf*, *ouf*, *pouf*, *œuf*, *veuf*, *bœuf*, and *neuf* (new) ; *f* is silent in *clef*, *êteuf*, *chef-d'œuvre*, *œuf frais*, and in these plurals *nerfs*, *œufs*, *bœufs*, *neufs* (new). In *neuf* (nine) when alone, or when it terminates the sentence, *f* is distinctly sounded, but it takes the sound of *v* before a vowel, and is silent before a consonant.

Double *f* is generally sounded, as one *f* alone ; however, in some few words, as *effusion*, *affadir*, *effraction*, it seems more proper to sound both.

*G, g*, has { before *a, o, u*, the hard sound of *g*, in the English word *go*,  
{ and before *e, i, y*, the soft sound of *s* in *pleasure*.

#### EXAMPLES OF *g* HARD.

Gan-grè-ne	gangrene	gut-tu-ral	guttural
Gro-nin-gue	Groningen	gom-me	gum
gai	cheerful	gla-ce	looking-glass
go-gue-nard	joker	Gor-go-ne	Gorgan

EXAMPLES OF *g* SOFT.

Geai	jay	gê-né-ral	general
gé-or-gi-ques	georgics	gens	people
gen-re	gender	gin-gem-bre	ginger
gé-mir	to groan	gym-ni-que	gymnastic

*G* final is hard in *joug*, and in proper names, as *Agag*, *Doeg*. When *rang*, *sang*, *long*, precede a word beginning with a vowel, *g* final is sounded as *k*. It is silent in *fau-bourg*, *Luxembourg*, *bourg*, *Bourg-l'abbé*, *Bourg-la-Reine*, &c.; and likewise in *sang-sue*, *de sang froid*, *sang-de-dragon*, in *rang*, *sang*, *long*, before a consonant, and always in *doigt*, *legs*, *poing*, *vieux-oing*, *hareng*, *étang*, *seing*, and *vingt*.

*Bourg-mestre* is pronounced *bourgüe-mestre*, and by some persons it is now, and not improperly, written in this latter manner.

*Gu* forms a distinct syllable in *ar-gu-er*, *aiguë*, *suraiguë*, *ciguë*, *ambiguë*, *contiguë*, *exiguë*, and *bésaiguë*. *Gui* is sounded as a diphthong, that is, the two vowels are heard in *aiguille*, *aiguillade*, *aiguillon*, and in the proper names, *d'Aiguillon*, *de Guise*, *le Guide*. But the *u*, in the inflections of more than forty verbs ending in *guer*, and in many other words, where it stands before *e* and *i*, as intended only to give to *g* the hard sound, is entirely silent, as in *anguille*, *aiguière*, *aiguade*, *bague*, *bègue*, *figue*, *dogue*, *fougue*, *fugue*, *onguent*, *langue*, *longue*, *nargue*, *vergue*, *morgue*, *distingue*, *gué*, *gui*, *guérir*, *guinder*, *guise*, *languir*, *guinguette*, &c.

*Gua* takes the mixed sound of the diphthong *goua* in some few words, as *lingual*, *paraguante*, *Guadeloupe*, *Guadalquivir*, *Guatemala*, *Guastalla*.

Double *g* is only sounded before *e* and *i*, then the first *g* retains the *hard*, and the second adopts the *soft* sound, as in *suggérer*, *suggillation*.

*G* before *h*, and before several consonants, in the middle of words, retains its hard sound, as in *Berghen*, *Enghien*, *église*, *énigme*, *segment*, *amygdales*. Before *l* there are two exceptions, in the words *imbroglio* and *de Broglio*, where it is sounded liquid, as in *seraglio*, and these words are generally pronounced as if written *imbroille*, *de Broille*.

*Gn* has two sounds: one *hard* as in the English word *ignorant*, and the other liquid, as in the last syllables of *onion*.



## EXAMPLES OF THE HARD SOUND.

Gni-de	gna-pha li-um	ag-na-ti-que	rég-ni-cole
Gno-me	gnos-ti-que	cog-na-ti-que	mag-né-sie
gno-mi-de	ag-nat	ag-nus	stag-nant
gno-mi-que	ag-na-ti-on	ig-née	stag-na ti-on
gno-mon	cog-nat	ig-ni-cole	di-ag-nos-ti-que
gno-mo-ni-que	cog-na-ti-on	ig-ni-ti-on	mag-nats

## EXAMPLES OF LIQUID SOUNDS.

di-gni-té	<i>dignity</i>	ré-gner	<i>to reign</i>
i-gno-rant	<i>ignorant</i>	cham-pa-gne	<i>Champaign</i>
com-pa-gnie	<i>company</i>	Bou-lo-gne	<i>Boulogne</i>
si-gner	<i>to sign</i>		
ré-pu-gner	<i>to feel a repug-</i> <i>nance</i>		

*G* is silent in *signet* and *Regnard*, which are pronounced *sinet*, *Renard*.

*H* is sometimes aspirate, sometimes mute, as in English ; thus, *l'homme*, *le héros* ; but there is this difference that the breathing is much softer in French than in English.

*h* IS ASPIRATED IN

'Habler	<i>to romance</i>
'ha-che	<i>axe</i>
'ha-ïr	<i>to hate</i>
'har-pe	<i>harp</i>
'haut	<i>high</i>
'hé-ros*	<i>hero</i>
'hé-ris-son	<i>hedge-hog</i>
'hideux	<i>hideous</i>
'hon-te	<i>shame</i>
'hur-ler	<i>to howl</i>

*h* IS MUTE IN

ha-bit	<i>coat</i>
her-be	<i>grass</i>
heu-re	<i>hour</i>
heu-reux	<i>happy</i>
hé-roïne*	<i>heroine</i>
hé-roïque*	<i>heroic</i>
hé-roïs-me*	<i>heroism</i>
his-toi-re	<i>history</i>
hi-ver	<i>winter</i>
hor-reur	<i>horror</i>

The aspirate *h* is generally marked in dictionaries, as no general rule can be given on the subject.

*H* is never aspirated in the middle of a word, except when that word is the compound of another, beginning with an *h* aspirated, as in *s'acheurter*, *déhaler*, *déhanché*, *déharnacher*, *enharnacher*, *s'enhardir*, *dehors*.

N. B.—Though there is no aspirated *h* before *onze*, *onzième*, and *oui*, it is customary to pronounce and write *le onze*, *le onzième*, and not *l'onze*, *l'onzième* ; we say likewise *le oui et le non* without elision. *S* final in *mes*, *tes*, *ses*, *nos*, *vos*, *leurs*, *ces*, and *lés*, is never sounded when placed before the words *oui*, *onze*, as *tous vos oui et vos non* ; *sur les onze heures*, nor even before *une* in *sur les une heure*.

\* Observe that *h* is aspirated in *héros*, but not in its derivatives.



For what concerns *h*, placed after *c* or *g*, see the remarks on those letters.

*H*, after *r* or *t*, is always silent, as *rhéteur*, *Rhône*, *rhubarbe*, *thé*, *Thomas*, *thym*.

*J*, *j*, has constantly the sound of *z* in *azure*, or of *s* in *pleasure*.

## EXAMPLE.

jus	gravy	jou-jou	toy
ja-mais	never	ju-ju-be	jujube
jo-vi-al	jovial	jeu-nes-se	youth

*K*, *k* has always a hard sound, as in the English word *king*.

This letter can hardly be considered as belonging to the French alphabet, as it is found only in some few words borrowed from foreign languages, as

Kan-ga-rou	kangaroo	ki-os-que	Turkish pavilion
ker-mès	cochineal	ky-ri-elle	tedious enumeration.

*L*, *l* has two sounds, the { first, is precisely the same as *l* in the English words *lily*, *law*, &c.  
second, resembles that of *ll* in *brilliant*, in which case *l* is called *l mouillée*, (liquid.)

## EXAMPLES OF THE FIRST.

La-té-ral	lateral	li-las	lilac
lé-gis-la-teur	legislator	lo-cal	local
li-bel-le	libel	lu-ni-so-lai-re	lunisolar

## SECOND SOUND.

It is impossible to define exactly the peculiar liquid sound which *l* has in French, in combinations of letters such as these, *ail*, *eil*, *œil*, *euil*, *ouil*, *aill*, *eill*, *euill*, *ouill*, &c. ; it must be heard from the mouth of a native. It may not be useless, however, to make the following observation, that that liquid sound does not in the least affect that of the vowel or combination of vowels which precede or follow *il*, *ill*. Thus, in *tailleur*, the sound of *ta* and *eur* must be pure and distinct ; nearly as if the word were thus spelt, *ta-ieur* ; the liquid sound of *ill*, forming a sort of diphthong with the last syllable. In *bouillon*, *bou* must be pure and distinct, thus

*bou-ion* ; in *treillage*, *trè* is also pure—thus, *trè-iage*. In *bail*, *travail*, *sommeil*, the liquid sound is final, and is sounded something between *ie* and *lie*, but rapidly and as it were whispered, *ba-ie*, *tra-va-ie*, *so-mè-ie* : when followed by a word beginning with a vowel, this final liquid sound blends itself with it thus, *travail utile*, *tra-va-iu-tile* ; *sommeil agréable*, *so-mmè-ia-gré-able*.

## EXAMPLES.

écureuil	é-cu-reu-ie	<i>a squirrel</i>
merveilleux	mer-vè-ieux	<i>wonderful</i>
gazouillage	ga-zou-iage	<i>warbling</i>
orgueil	or-gueu-ie	<i>pride</i>
orgueilleux	or-gueu-ieux	<i>proud</i>
œillade	eu-ia-de	<i>glance</i>
oreille	o-rè-ie	<i>ear</i>
périlleux	pé-ri-ieux	<i>dangerous</i>
treillage	trèi-age	<i>lattice work</i>
bouillon	bou-ion	<i>broth</i>

*Il* final is liquid in *babil*, *avril*, *Brésil*, *cil*, *mil*, *péril*, but the *l* is silent in *baril*, *chenil*, *coutil*, *fenil*, *fusil*, *outil*, *gril*, *nombril*, *sourcil*, *persil*. In *fil*s, a son, the *l* is silent, but it is sounded, though not liquidly, in *fil*, thread ; *fil*s, threads ; *poil*, hair.

Observe that *Milhaut*, *Pardalhac*, and *Sully*, proper names, are pronounced *liquid*, contrary to the established rule, and that the two latter are nearly the only known instances of an *l* or *ll* sounded *liquid*, without being immediately preceded by the vowel *i*.

*Ill*, is not liquid in *illégal*, *illuminer*, *distiller*, *instiller*, *osciller*, *scintiller*, *titiller*, *vaciller*, *fritillaire*, *imbécille*, *mille*, *tranquille*, *ville*, *Achille*, *campanille*, *codicille*, *fibrille*, *Gill*, *maxillaire*, *pupille*, *la Sibylle*, and *sille*. But it is liquid in *famille*, *fille*, *charmille*, *souquenille*, *carillon*, *piller*, *pillage*, &c.

Double *l* is sounded in the following words, *allégorie*, *allusion*, *appellatif*, *appellation*, *belligérant*, *belliqueux*, *collation de bénéfices*, *follicule*, *malléole*, *velléité*, *collusion*, *constellation*, *constellé*, *ébullition*, *Gallican*, *Gallicisme*, *intellect*, &c. *malléable*, *médullaire*, *palliatif*, *pellicule*, *équipoller*, *hellénisme*, and in proper names, as *Apollon*, *Bellone*, *Dolabella*, *Pallas*, *Sylla*, &c.

*M*, *m*, corresponds in sound with the same letter in English.

## EXAMPLES.

Mar-me-la-de	<i>marmalade</i>	mo-mie	<i>mummy</i>
mar-mot-te	<i>marmot</i>	mo-ment	<i>moment</i>
mé-mo-ra-ble	<i>memorable</i>	Mu-sul-man	<i>Mussulman</i>
mir-mi-don	<i>myrmidon</i>	mur-mu-re	<i>murmur</i>
mi-mi-que	<i>mimic</i>	mys-tè-re	<i>mystery</i>

*M* final is nasal and not sounded in *faim*, *daim*, *nom*, *renom*, *parfum*; it is not nasal, and is sounded in *Amsterdam*, *Rotterdam*, *Sem*, *Cham*, *item*, *Jérusalem*, *Sédim*, *Ibrahim*, and most proper names, except *Joachim*.

*M*, *n*, are both articulated in *amnistie*, *calomnie*, *hymne*, *insomnie*, *indemnité*, (pr. *indamnité*), *somnambule*, *automnal*, but are sounded as one *n* alone in *automne*, *damner*, and derivatives.

Double *m* is sounded as one *m*, except in words beginning with *imm*, such as *immortel*, *immensité*. In compound words such as *emmancher*, *emmener*, the preposition is heard distinctly *en-man-cher*; *Emmanuel* is pronounced *Emanuel*. In *femme*, *différemment*, *ardemment*, the *e* preceding *mm* is sounded *à fa-me*; but in *lemme*, *e* is sounded *è*. See Observations.

*N*, *n*, is sounded as in English.

## EXAMPLES.

Né-nu-far	<i>Nenuphar</i>	non-ne	<i>nun</i>
na-ti-o-nal	<i>national</i>	Ni-ni-ve	<i>Nineveh</i>
no-mi-nal	<i>nominal</i>	noc-tur-ne	<i>nocturnal</i>
no-na-gé-nai-re	<i>a man of ninety</i>	nym-phé	<i>nymph</i>

*N* nasal, see Tables I and II and observations following.

*Gn* have two sounds, which see at letter *g*.

The termination *ent* of the third person of verbs is sounded *e*, *ils parlent*, *ils aimeraient*, pr. *ils par-le*, *ils aimeraie*.

Double *n* is not sounded except in *an-nexe*, *an-nal*, *an-nuel*, *an-notation*, *an-nuler*, *in-né*, *in-nové*, *in-novation*, and a few other cases.

*En* final, and in all the persons of *venir*, *tenir*, and their compounds, is sounded like *in*, *ancien*, *mien*, *chien*, *citoyen*, *il vient*, *il tiendra*.

*En* is sounded nasally at the beginning of the following compound words, *enivrer*, *enamourer*, *enorgueillir*, *ennuyer*, *enhardir*, *enharmonique*.

*P*, *p*, is sounded as in English.

## EXAMPLES.

Pa-pil-lon	<i>butterfly</i>	pou-pée	<i>doll</i>
pe-pin	<i>pippin</i>	po-pu-lai-re	<i>popular</i>
pied-plat	<i>mean fellow</i>	pour-pre	<i>purple</i>
prin-ci-pe	<i>principle</i>	pur-pu-rin	<i>purplish</i>
pro-pos	<i>discourse</i>	py-ra-mi-de	<i>pyramid</i>

*Ph* is sounded as *f*, *philosophe*, *phosphore*, *physique*.

*P* is sounded distinctly in *adapter*, *adopter*, *capter*, *captieux*, *baptismal*, *aptitude*, *exception*, *exemption*, *inept*, *contempteur*, *gypse*, *Septembre*, *Septuagésime*, *corruption*, *rupture*, *apsides*, *rapsodies*, *symptôme*, *redemption*, *rédempteur*; but is silent, in *baptême*, *baptiser*, *baptistère*, *Baptiste*, *exempt*, *exempter*,



*sculpter, sculpteur, sculpture, je romps, il corrompt, sept, septième, temps, printemps, prompt, and derivatives.*

Final *p* is always sounded in *Alep, cap, Gap, jalap, and julep*, it is also heard in *trop, beaucoup, and coup*, when before a vowel, but never in *champ, camp, drap, loup, sirop, and galop*.

In *aps, relaps, and rapt*, both the final consonants are pronounced, but both are silent in *ceps de vigne*.

Double *p* is sounded as one only.

*Q* has generally the sound of *k* in *king*.

*Qu*, has three sounds, { *ke*, by far the most general before any vowel.  
                                   { *kou*, before *a* in some particular words.  
                                   { *ku*, before *e*, or *i* in some others.

#### EXAMPLES OF *k*.

Quai	<i>wharf</i>	ques-tion	<i>question</i>
qua-li-té	<i>quality</i>	sé-ques-tre	<i>sequestration</i>
quel-que	<i>some</i>	queue	<i>tail</i>
qui-con-que	<i>whosoever</i>	a-queux	<i>watery</i>
qui-pro-quo	<i>blunder</i>	a-que-duc	<i>aqueduct</i>
quo-li-bet	<i>pun</i>	é-qui-vo-que	<i>ambiguity</i>
quin-qui-na	<i>Peruvian bark</i>	se-re-quin-quer	{ <i>to trick oneself</i> <i>out</i>
que-nouil-le	<i>distaff</i>		

&c. &c. &c.

#### EXAMPLES OF *kou*.

A-qua-ti-que	<i>aquatic</i>	qua-ter-ne	<i>quaternion</i>
é-qua-teur	<i>equator</i>	qua-dra-gé-naire	<i>a man of forty</i>
é-qua-ti-on	<i>equation</i>	qua-dra-gé-si- }	<i>quadragesimal</i>
qua-cre	<i>quaker</i>	mal	
qua-dra-ture	<i>quadrature</i>	a-qua-ti-le	<i>aquatile</i>
	{ <i>ancient chariot</i>	a-quar-el-le	<i>water colour</i>
qua-dri-ge	{ <i>with four</i> <i>horses</i>	li-qua-tion	<i>liquation</i>
		in-quar-to	<i>quarto size</i>
qua-dru-pè-de	<i>quadruped</i>	lo-qua-ci-té	<i>loquacity</i>
qua-dru-ple	<i>quadruple</i>		

#### EXAMPLES OF *ku*.

E-ques-tre	<i>equestrian</i>	é-qui-mul-ti-ple	<i>equi-multiple</i>
li-qué-fac-tion	<i>liquefaction</i>	é-qui-ta-tion	<i>horsemanship</i>
ques-teur	<i>questor</i>	quin-tu-ple	<i>quintuple</i>
ques-tu-re	<i>questura</i>	quin-tile	<i>quintile</i>
quin-quen-nium	<i>quinquennium</i>	quin-quen-nal	<i>quinquennial</i>
é-qui-la-tè-re	{ <i>of equal di-</i> <i>mensions</i>	quin-dé-cem virs	<i>quindecimviri</i>
é-qui-la-té-ral	<i>equilateral</i>	quin-qué-rème	<i>ancient galley</i>
é-qui-an-gle	<i>equiangular</i>		{ <i>a term of the</i> <i>ancient gym-</i> <i>nasium</i>
é-qui-dis-tant	<i>equidistant</i>	quin-quer-ce	



In *quinquagénnaire*, a man of fifty, and *quinquagésime*, quinquagesima, the first syllable corresponds with the sound of *qu* in *équestre*, and the second corresponds with the sound of *qu* in *aquatique*. *Q* final is sounded in *coq*, *cing*, except when *cing* precedes a word beginning with a consonant, *cing livres*.

*R*, is sounded as in English.

## EXAMPLES.

Ra-re-té	<i>scarcity</i>	rhyth-me	<i>rhythm</i>
ras-su-rer	<i>to hearten</i>	sour-dre	<i>to spring</i>
ra-bou-gri	<i>stunted</i>	cour-roux	<i>wrath</i>
re-brous-ser	<i>to recoil</i>	il cour-ra	<i>he will run</i>
ri-gou-reux	<i>rigorous</i>	cor-ro-de-ra	<i>it will corrode</i>
rom-pre	<i>to break</i>	cor-ro-bo-re-ra	{ <i>it will corrobo- rate</i>
rou-vrir	<i>to open again</i>	ir-ra-dia-ti-on	
ru-gir	<i>to roar</i>	ir-ro-ra-ti-on	<i>irradiation</i>
ru-ral	<i>ru-ral</i>	tor-ré-fac-ti-on	<i>irrigation</i>
rus-tre	<i>a boor</i>		<i>torrefaction</i>

*R* is always sounded at the end of words after the vowels *a*, *i*, *o*, *u*, except in *Monsieur*, in which it is silent.

*Er*, *ier*, the terminations of the infinitive of verbs of the first conjugation, and of many adjectives and nouns, are pronounced *é* and *ié*. *Parler*, *marcher*, *bouger*, *premier*, *singulier*, *cordonnier*, *boulangier*.

But in the following words the termination *er*, is pronounced *air*.

## EXAMPLES.

Cher	<i>dear</i>	ou-tre-mer	<i>ultramarine</i>
fer	<i>iron</i>	bel-vé-der	<i>belvidere</i>
ver	<i>worm</i>	Lu-ci-fer	<i>Lucifer</i>
mer	<i>sea</i>	Pa-ter	{ <i>the Lord's prayer</i>
fier	<i>haughty</i>	fra-ter	
gas-ter	<i>stomach</i>	ma-gis-ter	{ <i>village school- master</i>
hi-er	<i>yesterday</i>	Stat-hou-der	
hi-ver	<i>winter</i>	Ju-pi-ter	<i>Statholder</i>
a-mer	<i>bitter</i>	Al-ger	<i>Jupiter</i>
can-cer	<i>cancer</i>	Gess-ner	<i>Algiers</i>
en-fer	<i>hell</i>	Ni-ger	<i>Gessner</i>
é-ther	<i>ether</i>	cuiller	<i>Niger, a river</i>
a-vant-hier	{ <i>the day before yesterday</i>		<i>a spoon</i>

In terminations like *ers*, *ert*, *erd*, *art*, *ard*, *arts*, *ort*, *ord*, *ords*, *orts*, *r* alone is sounded *canard*, *morts*, *pervers*.

When the following adjectives and a few others precede a substantive beginning with a vowel, the *r* is sounded, that is, there is what is called a *liaison*.

<i>R</i> sounded	{	Le premier acte	<i>the first act</i>
		son dernier ouvrage	<i>his last work</i>
		un singulier évènement	<i>a singular event</i>
		un entier abandon	<i>an entire cession</i>
<i>R</i> not sounded	{	un léger obstacle	<i>a slight obstacle</i>
		Il est le premier à vous promettre et le dernier à vous tenir parole.— <i>He is the first to promise, and the last to keep his word.</i>	
<i>R</i> not sounded	{	C'est un homme léger et inconstant, entier en tout ce qu'il veut, et singulier en tout ce qu'il fait.— <i>He is a light versatile character, positive in all he undertakes, and singular in all he does.</i>	

Final *r* in the present of the infinitive of all the verbs, of the first conjugation, may be sounded when preceding a word beginning with a vowel; in conversation, this distinction is, however, seldom observed.

*Rh.* See *h*.

Double *r* is not sounded, except, 1st, in *aberration*, *abhorrer*, *horreur*, *errer*, *torréfier*, and their derivatives. 2dly, in words beginning with *irr*, as *irrévocable*, *irrégulier*, *irruption*, &c.; 3rdly, in the future and conditional of the verbs *acquérir*, *courir*, *mourir*, and their derivatives—*j'acquerrai*, *je mourrais*, *nous courrions*, &c.

*S*, *s* has two { *hard*, as in the English word *sister*.  
sounds, { *soft*, as in *rose* and *please*.

*S* has the hard or hissing sound at the beginning of words, and the soft sound, in the middle, between vowels.

#### EXAMPLES.

Sai-son	<i>season</i>	sour-noi-se	<i>a sullen woman</i>
sai-sie	<i>seizure</i>	sup-po-sez	<i>suppose</i>
sé-sa me	<i>se-samum</i>	sé-dui-sant	<i>alluring</i>
si-se	<i>situate</i>	Su-se	<i>Susa</i>
sou-bi-sc	<i>soubise</i>	Sy-ra-cu-se	<i>Syracuse</i>
sot-ti-se	<i>silly action</i>	Syn thè-se	<i>Synthesis</i>
sous-en-ten-te	<i>mental reservation</i>		

In *Sbire*, *Svelte*, *Sganarelle* and *Sdili* for *Delos*, it has the soft sound; and, in familiar conversation, *aller à Sedan*, *il est le second de sa classe*, are pronounced as if these words were written *azdan*, *le zgon*. Before *ch*, *s* is mute, as in *Schall*, *Schaffhouse*, *Schelling*, *Schiste*, *Schorl*.

*Sh* in *shérif*, a sheriff, is sounded as in English,

*Sce*, *sei*, *scy*, are pronounced as *se*, *si*, *sci*, at the beginning of words, and as double *s*, in the middle, as *Scène*, *science*, *Scythie*, &c. *efferves-cences*, *efflores-cence*, *turges-cence*, *incandes-cence*, *reminis-cence*, *recipis-cence*, *mis-cible*,

*res-cinder, sus-ception, sus-citer, sus-citation, vis-cère, vis-céral, trans-cendance*, and a few others. But *sc* before *a*, *o*, *u*, and *l*, *r*, have the hard sound of *sk*, as *scapulaire, scolie, sclérotique, scribe, esclave, scrupule, &c.*

*S* has the *hard* sound, in the middle of a word, when preceded or followed by a consonant, as in *transe, transir, Transylvanie, convulsion, valse, espace, ustensile, statistique, jasmin, dispos, aspirant, prisme, digestion, austérité, obstacle, &c. &c. &c.* However, it takes the *soft* sound, or that of *z*, in *Alsace, Arsace, Asdrubal, asbeste, balsamine, balsamique, bisbile, Israël, Israélite, Esdras, Thisbé, presbitère, transaction, transiger, transitoire, intransitif, transalpin, Lesbos, Isboeth, Brigsaw, Ryswick, Louisbourg, Augsbourg, Presbourg, Philipsbourg*, and some few others.

*S* takes the *soft* sound when between two vowels, as in *base, Thèse, bise, rose, ruse, &c.* Except compound words, in which it has the *hard* sound of the *initial s* of the radical word, as in *désuétude, entresol, monosyllable, polysyllable, parasol, tournesol, préséance, présupposer, resaisir, resaluer, vraisemblable*, and some derivatives.

Final *s* is heard in *as, atlas, argus, bibus, blocus, bolus, agnus, fœtus, sinus, Phébus, les, us, virus, aloes, bis, jadis, irris, gratis, lapis, les, lis, la Lys*, (a river), *maïs, métis, vis, tournevis, Amadis, Adonis, Paris* (the shepherd), *pathos, Athos, Lesbos, Minos, Délos, Paros, Brutus, Vénus, Régulus, Protésilas, Blas, Gil Blas, Las Casas, Rheims, Sens, Mars, Rubens, Cérès, Damoclès*, finally in all Latin words not in common use, and in proper names, Greek, Latin and foreign, &c. But it is always silent as the mark of the plural, *les hommes, les chats, les livres, les canifs, les chefs, &c.* in all persons of verbs, *tu parlas, tu mangeais, nous rions, &c.* in all words in common use, *repas, des bas, cas, appas, trépas, tapis, souris, propos, clos, depuis, toujours, &c.* and in *Jésus-Christ, fleur-de-lis*.

The *s* final of an adjective, pronoun and adverb, is joined to the initial vowel of the next word, and has the *soft* sound, *vous avez, pron: vou zavez.*

Though there is no *s* in *quatre*, yet, before *yeux*, it is, in conversation, pronounced as if there were one, *quatre zieux*.

Finally, double *s* is commonly sounded as one, as in *je ressassasse, assassinasse, Mississipi, etc.* There are some words, however, in which the double *s* is heard, as *assation, assonnance, dissonance, accessible, inaccessible, admissible, inad-*



*missible, missive, scissile, scission, scissure, fissure, fissipède, assentiment, asservir.* Thus there is a difference in pronunciation between these phrases: *C'est un homme à SENTIMENS, il aime à SERVIR ses amis, and il faut son ASSENTIMENT, cet ambitieux voudrait ASSERVIR l'univers, and again between l'un de plume est SCISSILE, and LA SICILE est une île triangulaire, &c.*

*T'* is sounded as in English.

## EXAMPLES.

Tac-ti-que	<i>tactics</i>	a-mi-tié	<i>friendship</i>
tes-ta-teur	<i>testator</i>	sou-tien	<i>support</i>
thé-â-tre	<i>theatre</i>	nous par-tions	<i>we were going</i>
to-ta-li-té	<i>totality</i>	ti-are	<i>tiara</i>
tour-te-rel-le	<i>turtle</i>	bas-ti-on	<i>bastion</i>
ti tu lai-re	<i>titulary</i>	bi-jou-tier	<i>jeweller</i>
ti-thy-ma-le	<i>tithymal</i>	Ma-thi-as	<i>Mathias</i>
chré-tien	<i>christian</i>	Pon-thieu	<i>Ponthieu</i>
le tien	<i>thine</i>	tu sou-tiens	<i>thou supportest</i>
pitié	<i>pity</i>	&c. &c. &c.	

*Ti* is sounded *ci* in words derived from the Greek or the Latin languages, in all words ending in *tion, attention, portion, &c.* except *question, gestion, digestion, combustion, mixture.* In all words ending in *tie, démocratie, inertie, ineptie, &c.* except *partie, modestie, dynastie, Eucharistie, hostie, repartie.*

*Tieux, tial, tient,* are also sounded *cieux, cial, cient, ambiteux, captieux, patient, patienter.*

*Tien,* final is sounded *cien,* in names of nations and proper names, *Doclétien, Egyptien, Béotien.*

## EXAMPLES.

Par-tial	<i>partial</i>	pa-tient	<i>patient</i>
par-tia-li-té	<i>partiality</i>	pa-tien-ter	<i>to bear patiently</i>
par-tiel	<i>partial</i>	Ga-la-tie	<i>Galatia</i>
pa-tien-ce	<i>patience</i>	Bé-o-tie	<i>Beotia</i>
im-pa-tien-ce	<i>impatience</i>	ac-tion	<i>action</i>
quo-tient	<i>quotient</i>	bal-bu-tier	<i>to stammer</i>
cap-tieux	<i>captious</i>	in-i-tier	<i>to initiate</i>
ar gu-tie	<i>cavil</i>	bal-bu-tia	<i>he stuttered</i>
cau-tion-ne-ment	} <i>bail</i>	bal-bu-tie-ment	<i>stammering</i>
am-bi-tion		in-i-tié	<i>initiated</i>
am-bi-tion-ner	<i>ambition</i>	Vé-ni-tien	<i>Venetian</i>
	<i>to wish</i>		

*Th* is sounded as a single *t*, *théologie, théâtre, thé.* In the combinations *st*, the *s* and *t* are heard distinctly. *T'* final is not heard; *goût, rat, défaut, statut, &c.* except in the following words: *apt, rapt, fat, malt, mat, pat, opiat, exeat, transeat, rivat, spalt, spath, Goliath, net, fret, tacet, Thibet, aconit, déficit, granit, introit, prétérit, transit, subit, dot, Astaroth, azi-*



*mut, brut, comput, chut, bismuth, indult, lut, occiput, sinciput*; both *s* and *t* are articulated in *Le Christ, l'est* (east) *l'ouest, Brest, lest, test, Pest, toast*, and *entre le zist et le zest*; but neither of these letters is heard in *Jésus-Christ*, which is pronounced *Jésus-Cri*.

The final *t* of *sept, huit*, is heard at the end of a sentence; and before a vowel, but not before a consonant, *j'en ai huit, huit livres, sept ans*.

In words ending in *art, est, ort, ourt*, the *t* final is silent. *T* is always silent in the conjunction *et*, which is pronounced *é*.

Double *tt* is not heard except in *atticisme, attique, Atticus; guttural*, and *pittoresque*.

*V, v*, has the same sound in French as in English.

## EXAMPLES.

Val-ve	<i>valve</i>	vi-vo-ter	<i>to live poorly</i>
val-vu-le	<i>valvule</i>	vi-re-vol-te	<i>{ quick irregu-</i>
vau-de-vil-le	<i>ballad</i>		<i>lar walk. —</i>
ver-ve	<i>poetic fire</i>	vi-re-veau	<i>windlass</i>
vi-va-ce	<i>vivacious</i>	veu-ve	<i>widow</i>
vis-à-vis	<i>opposite</i>	veu-va-ge	<i>widowhood</i>
vi-vre	<i>to live.</i>		

*W* is generally pronounced as single *v* in *Wolfram, Warwick, Windsor, Walcourt, Wallon, Warsovie, Westphalia, Wirtemberg, Wolga, Weser, Wendover, Ryswick, &c.* except in *wist* and *wiski*, where it has the English sound; but, in *Newton*, the first syllable *new* is pronounced as *neu*, in *neutralité*.

*X, x*, has the four  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{ks, in axe, expense} \\ \textit{gz, in exhibit, exhale} \\ \textit{ss, in bliss, mossy} \\ \textit{z, in Xenophon} \end{array} \right.$  different sounds of

EXAMPLES OF THE FIRST SOUND, *ks*.

axe	<i>axis</i>	Xan-tip-pe	<i>Xantippe</i>
sexe	<i>sex</i>	o-xy-gène	<i>oxygen</i>
ri-xe	<i>altercation</i>	pa-ra do-xe	<i>paradox</i>
bo-xer	<i>to box</i>	flu-xi-on	<i>defluxion</i>
lu-xe	<i>luxury</i>	ex-sic-ca-tion	<i>exsiccation</i>
ex-cé-der	<i>to exceed</i>	ex-suc-cion	<i>exsuction</i>
ex-cel-ler	<i>to excel</i>	ex-su-da-ti-on	<i>exsudation</i>
ex-cès	<i>excess</i>	ex-su-der	<i>exude</i>
ex-cep-ter	<i>to except</i>	ex-ci-per	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{to plead an ex-} \\ \textit{ception.} \end{array} \right.$
ex-ci-se	<i>excise</i>		
A-lex-an-dre	<i>Alexander</i>		

EXAMPLES OF THE SECOND SOUND, *gz*.

Xa-vi-cr	<i>Xaverius</i>	ex-au-cer	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{to hear favor-} \\ \textit{ably} \end{array} \right.$
Xé-no-phon	<i>Xenophon</i>	ex-haus-ser	<i>to raise</i>
ex-il	<i>exile</i>	ex-hi-ber	<i>to produce</i>
ex-or-de	<i>exordium</i>	ex-hu-mer	<i>to disinter-</i>
ex-ubé-ran-ce	<i>exuberance</i>		
ex-a-men	<i>examination</i>		

EXAMPLES OF THE THIRD SOUND, *ss*.

Aix	<i>Aix</i>	Soixante	<i>Sixty</i>
Aix-la-Chapelle	<i>Aix-la-Chapelle</i>	Bruxelles	<i>Brussels</i>
Auxerre	<i>Auxerre</i>	Luxeuil	<i>Luxeuil</i>
Auxonne	<i>Auxonne.</i>		

EXAMPLES OF THE FOURTH SOUND, *z*.

Deuxième	<i>second</i>	dix écus	<i>ten crowns</i>
sixième	<i>sixth</i>	dix hommes	<i>ten men</i>
dixième	<i>tenth</i>	deux aunes	<i>two ells</i>
dix-huit	<i>eighteen</i>	beaux yeux	<i>fine eyes</i>
dix-neuf	<i>nineteen</i>	&c. &c.	

The first sound of this letter (*ks*,) is by far the most general, and is found in words beginning with *exce*, *exci* and *exs*.

The second sound (*gz*) takes place in all words beginning with *x* or *ex*, followed by a vowel, or the letter *h*, as *le Xanthé*, *Xénocrates*, *Ximènes*, *exorable*, and several others with those already mentioned in the second examples.

The third sound *ss* is only found in the above examples, and in *six* and *dix*, when unaccompanied by substantives, as in *de seize ôtez six*, *reste dix*, where *six* and *dix* are pronounced with the hissing sound of *ss* in the English word *bliss*.

The final *x* of adjectives, *doux*, *heureux*, and such like, is silent before a consonant, and has the fourth sound when before a vowel, *doux accent*, *heureux père*.

The *x* final of *six*, *dix*, is sounded like *ss* at the end of a sentence, *il en a dix*; like *z*, before a vowel, *il a dix ans*, and is silent before a consonant, *six livres*.

*X* final is silent, *je veux*, *prix*, *perdrix*, *feux*, *flux*, &c. except *Ajax*, *Astianax*, *borax*, *storax*, *Halifax*, *Hipponax*, *Dax*, *climax*, *thorax*, *Pertinax*, *Syphax*, *index*, *perplex*, *Beatrice*, *Erix*, *Félix*, *préfix*, *phénix*, *Fox*, *Palasfox*, *Coysevox*, *lynx*, *sphinx*, *larynx*, *syrinx*, *onyx*, *Styx* and *Pollux*.

N. B.—*X* takes the sound of *sh* only in *Don Quixote*, generally pronounced *Don Kishot*, or rather *Don Ghishot*.

*Z*, *z*, is generally pronounced as *z* in *zome*, or *s* in *rose*.

## EXAMPLES.

Zi-za-nie	<i>tare</i>	zig-zag	<i>zig-zag</i>
zé-nith	<i>zenith</i>	zin-zo-lin	<i>reddish purple</i>
zo-ne	<i>zone</i>	Zuy-der-zée	<i>Zuyder-see</i>

In *assez*, *chez*, *nez*, and in the second person of verbs, *vous avez*, *vous parlez*, the termination *ez* is pronounced *és*.

In proper names, especially Spanish names, the same termination *ez* is sounded *èce*, *Alvarez*, *Senecz*, and also in *Metz*.

*ZZ* in Italian words is either sounded as one *z* or according to Italian pronunciation, by those to whom it is familiar.

## 12. PRACTICAL EXERCISES

OF THE PRONUNCIATION OF MONOSYLLABLES.

Gras	fat	je vends	I sell
ma	my	je	I
ta	thy	me	me
sa	his, her, it	ne	not
la	the, her, it	te	thee
las	tired	ce	this, that
pas	step	se	himself, etc.
un plat	a disk	le	the, him, it
bac	ferry-boat	de	of
sac	sack, bag	lé	breadth
arc	arch, bow	né	born
pare	park	mais	but
bal	ball	mies	my, pl.
cap	cape	tes	thy, pl.
car	for	ses	his, her, its, pl.
par	by, through	les	the, them
part	share	pré	meadow
art	art	près	near
char	chariot	prêt	ready
dard	dart	ver	worm
lard	bacon	vers	towards
tard	late	vert	green
quand	when	il perd	he loses
rang	rank	il sert	he serves
blanc	white	peur	fear
sans	without	il meurt	he dies
dans	in	pleurs	tears
gland	acorn	leur	their, them
pan	skirt of a coat	sel	salt
cran	notch	tel	such
plant	plantation	quel	which
plan	plan	sec	dry
flanc	flank	bec	beak
grand	great	chef	chief
en	in	bref	short
il fend	he splits	neuf	new
gens	people	Est	East
lent	slow	vingt	twenty
main	hand	crin	horse-hair
il ment	he lies	lin	flax
il pend	he hangs	brin	sprig
il prend	he takes	pain	bread
ceint	girt	pin	pine
cinq	five	vin	wine
sain	wholesome	fi	fy
sein	bosom	fiis	son
saint	holy	frit	fried
seing	signature	lis	lily
il rend	he returns	pris	taken
il sent	he smells, feels	prix	price



ris	laugh	pont	bridge
riz	rice	long	long
ni	neither, nor	fond	bottom
nid	nest	ils font	they do
si	if	jonc	rush
il fit	he died	non	no
mis	put	gond	hinge
plis	folds	nom	name
fil	thread	plomb	lead
vil	vile	nu	naked
vif	lively	du	of the, sing. m.
sot	fool	il dut	he owed
tôt	soon	bru	daughter-in-law
clos	shut up	brut	rough
nos	our	il but	he drank
vos	your	cru	raw
gros	big	il crut	he believed
trop	too much	je fas	I was
trot	trot	jus	juice
croc	hook	lu	read
or	gold	il lut	he read
bord	edge	plus	more
fort	strong	tu	thou
tort	wrong	vu	seen
je sors	I go out	flux	flux
sort	fate	glu	bird-lime
port	port	duc	duke
il mord	he bites	suc	juice
vol	theft	sur	upon
choc	shock	mur	wall
roc	rock	nul	no, none
bloc	block	bout	end
troc	exchange	joug	yoke
dot (pr. dote)	dowry	nous	we, us
on	one, people, they	vous	you
bon	good	clou	nail
bond	bound	cou	neck
ton	thy	coup	blow, stroke
son	his, her, its	trou	hole
ils sont	they are	mou	soft
mon	my	tout	all
don	gift	toux	cough
dont	of which, etc	pou	louse
donc	therefore	cour	yard
front	forehead	il pleut	it rains
rond	round	peu	little, few
blond	light (hair)	il veut	he is willing

## 13. ON DISSYLLABLES.

OR WORDS OF TWO SYLLABLES.

A-bus	abuse	â-ge	age
a-chat	purchase	ai-greur	acidify
ac-teur	actor	â-me	soul

a-nneau	ring
ar-deur	ardour
ar-gent	money
as-tre	star
au-cun	none
a-veu	confession
a-vis	advice
au-tre	other
bal-con	balcony
ban-que	bank
bar-que	a bark
ba-teau	boat
bâ-ton	stick
beau-té	beauty
bè-gue	stammerer
bê-te	beast
keur-ro	butter
bi-ble	bible
blâ-me	blame
bon-heur, pr. bo- nheur	} happiness
bon-té	goodness
bos-quet	grove
bou-quet	nosegay
bour-geon	bud
bour-ru	sultry
bra-sseur	brewer
bri-gand	robber
brus-que	abrupt
bru-te	brute
bu-flet	cupboard
bu-reau	office
bus-te	bust
ca-deau	present
ca-fé	coffee
ca-hot	jolt
ca-non	cannon
ca-ve	cellar
cau-se	cause
cer-cle	circle
ci-seau	chisel
clé-ment	clement
cli-mat	climate
cloi-son	partition
co-hue	mob
co-mmun	common
com-pas	compasses
com-te	carl
con-gé	holiday
con-te	tale
co-quin	rogue
cor-deau	line
côté	side

cou-ple	couple
cou-reur	runner
cou-ssin	cushion
cou-vent	convent
crê-me	cream
cri-me	crime
crot-te	dirt
croû-te	crust
da-me	lady
dan-seur	dancer
dé-bit	sale
de-bout	} standing up- } right
de-mi	half
dé-pôt	deposit
dé-sert	wilderness
dessert	dessert
dis-cours	speech
dou-leur	pain
é-cu	crown
en-clin	inclined
en-fant	child
é-poux	spouse
es-poir	hope
é-tain	pewter
ex-cès	excess
fes-tin	feast
fê-te	festival
fi-lou	pickpocket
fla-con	decanter
flam-beau	flambeau
flû-te	flute
fo-rêt	forest
fou-dre	thunderbolt
four-mi	ant
fri-pon	knave
fu-reur	fury
gaie-té	cheerfulness
gar-çon	boy
gâ-teau	cake
ga-zon	turf
gen-dre	son-in-law
gen-re	gender
gi-got	leg of mutton
gla-çon	piece of ice
goû-té	luncheon
gout-te	drop
grâ-ce	fatour
gron-deur	grumbler
gru-au	gruel
guê-re	little
guer-re	war
gueu-le	mouth (of a beast)

gui-de	<i>guide</i>	pé-cheur	<i>sinner</i>
hai-ne	<i>hatred</i>	pei-ne	<i>trouble</i>
' hal-le	<i>market-hall</i>	pein-tre	<i>painter</i>
' har-pe	<i>harp</i>	pè-re	<i>father</i>
' hâ-te	<i>haste</i>	peu-ple	<i>people</i>
' hau-teur	<i>height</i>	peu-reux	<i>fearful</i>
' ha-sard	<i>chance</i>	pin-te	<i>pint</i>
' hê-tre	<i>beech</i>	plu-me	<i>feather</i>
hom-me, <i>pr.</i> ho-	} <i>man</i>	por-trait	<i>picture</i>
mme		pour-pré	<i>purple</i>
hon-neur, <i>pr</i> ho-	} <i>honour</i>	prin-ce	<i>prince</i>
nneur		pru-neau	<i>prune</i>
' hon-te	<i>shame</i>	ra-goût	<i>ragout</i>
hor-reur	<i>horror</i>	rè-gle	<i>rule</i>
hôte	<i>landlord</i>	rè-gne	<i>reign</i>
hu-main	<i>human</i>	rei-ne	<i>queen</i>
im-pie	<i>impious</i>	ren-te	<i>annuity</i>
ju-ge	<i>judge</i>	rê-ve	<i>dream</i>
jour-née	<i>day</i>	ri-re	<i>laughing</i>
lai-teux	<i>milky</i>	rou-te	<i>road</i>
la-quals	<i>footman</i>	ru-se	<i>trick</i>
lar-cin	<i>theft</i>	sa-bre	<i>sabre</i>
lar-geur	<i>breadth</i>	sa-lut	<i>salute</i>
li-queur	<i>liquor</i>	sa-tin	<i>satin</i>
lo-gis	<i>dwelling</i>	sau-ce	<i>sauce</i>
lon-gueur	<i>length</i>	sau-teur	<i>tumbler</i>
mar-bre	<i>marble</i>	sé-jour	<i>residence</i>
mar-chand	<i>tradesman</i>	si-gnal	<i>signal</i>
ma-rî	<i>husband</i>	si-gne	<i>sign</i>
mè-re	<i>mother</i>	som-bre	<i>dark</i>
meu-ble	<i>furniture</i>	sou-hait	<i>wish</i>
mon-de	<i>world</i>	sou-pe	<i>soup</i>
mons-tre	<i>monster</i>	sou-ris	<i>smile</i>
mou-le	<i>mould</i>	su-cre	<i>sugar</i>
mou-lin	<i>mill</i>	sus-pect	<i>suspicious</i>
ni-gaud	<i>silly fellow</i>	ta-che	<i>spot</i>
nou-veau	<i>new</i>	tâ-che	<i>task</i>
œu-vre	<i>work</i>	tam-bour	<i>drum</i>
on-guest	<i>ointment</i>	tom-beau	<i>grave</i>
or-dre	<i>order</i>	to-me	<i>volume</i>
ou-bli	<i>oblivion</i>	tou-pie	<i>top</i>
pa-rent	<i>relation</i>	tour-neur	<i>turner</i>
par-rain, <i>pr.</i> }	} <i>godfather</i>	traî-neau	<i>sledge</i>
pa-rrain		trô-ne	<i>throne</i>
pâ-te	<i>dough</i>	trou-peau	<i>flock</i>
pâ-té	<i>pie</i>	veu-ve	<i>widow</i>
pat-te	<i>paw</i>	vi-gne	<i>vine</i>
pê-che	<i>fishing</i>	zè-le	<i>zeal</i>
pê-ché	<i>sin</i>	zé-lé	<i>zealous</i>
pê-cheur	<i>fisherman</i>		



# 14. WORDS OF THREE SYLLABLES.

A-bi-me	<i>abyss</i>	char-la-tan	<i>quack</i>
a-bré-gé	<i>abridgment</i>	char-ret-te	<i>cart</i>
a-bri-cot	<i>apricot</i>	châ-ti-ment	<i>chastisement</i>
ab-so-lu	<i>absolute</i>	chau-de-ment	<i>warmly</i>
ab-sur-de	<i>absurd</i>	chau-diè-re	<i>copper</i>
ac-tri-ce	<i>actress</i>	chau-fa-ge	<i>fuel</i>
a-flai-re	<i>business</i>	chau-ssu-re	<i>shoes, stockings</i>
am-pou-le	<i>blister</i>	ci-viè-re	<i>hand-barrow</i>
ap-pé-tit	<i>appetite</i>	cla-ve-cin	<i>harpsichord</i>
â-pre-té	<i>asperity</i>	clo-a-que	<i>sewer</i>
a-rai-gnée	<i>spider</i>	co-li-que	<i>colic</i>
ar-moi-re	<i>cabinet</i>	co-llé-ge	<i>college</i>
ar-tis-te	<i>artist</i>	co-lli-ne	<i>hill</i>
as-si-du	<i>assiduous</i>	co-lo-nne	<i>column</i>
a-tro-ce	<i>atrocious</i>	co-lo-ris	<i>colouring</i>
au-ber-ge	<i>inn</i>	co-mé-die	<i>comedy</i>
a-voi-ne	<i>oats</i>	co-mé-dien	<i>comedian</i>
aus-tè-re	<i>austere</i>	co-mmer-çant	<i>merchant</i>
ba-bio-le	<i>bauble</i>	com-ja-gnie	<i>company</i>
bas-ses-se	<i>baseness</i>	com-pa-gnon	<i>companion</i>
bâ-ti-ment	<i>building</i>	con-dui-te	<i>behaviour</i>
bê-le-ment	<i>bleating</i>	con-qué-rant	<i>conqueror</i>
ber-gè-re	<i>shepherdess</i>	con-quê-te	<i>conquest</i>
bê-ti-se	<i>stupidity</i>	cons-tam-ment	<i>constantly</i>
bien-fai-sant	<i>benevolent</i>	con-ti-gu	<i>contiguous</i>
bien-sé-ant	<i>becoming</i>	cor-do-nnier	<i>shoemaker</i>
bien-ve-nu	<i>welcome</i>	co-ri-ace	<i>tough</i>
blan-châ-tre	<i>whitish</i>	cor-ni-chon	<i>girkín</i>
bles-su-re	<i>wound</i>	cou chet-te	<i>couch</i>
boi-se-rie	<i>wainscot</i>	cou-ro-nne	<i>crown</i>
bor-du-re	<i>edging</i>	cou-te-las	<i>hanger</i>
bou-lan-ger	<i>baker</i>	cou-te-lier	<i>culler</i>
bou-ta-de	<i>whim</i>	cou-tu-re	<i>seam</i>
bou-ti-que	<i>shop</i>	cra-moi-si	<i>crimson</i>
bras-se-rie	<i>brewhouse</i>	cré-du-le	<i>credulous</i>
bra-vou-re	<i>valour</i>	cri-ti-que	<i>critic</i>
breu-va-ge	<i>drink</i>	cru-au-té	<i>cruelty</i>
bro-de-rie	<i>embroidery</i>	cui-si-ne	<i>kitchen</i>
brou-et-te	<i>wheelbarrow</i>	cul-bu-te	<i>tumble</i>
brû-lu-re	<i>burning</i>	cu-re-dent	<i>tooth-pick</i>
brus-que-ment	<i>bluntly</i>	dé-com-bres	<i>rubbish</i>
ca-de-nas	<i>padlock</i>	dé-goû-tant	<i>disgusting</i>
cam-pa-gne	<i>country</i>	dé-jeû-ner	<i>breakfast</i>
ca-rê-me	<i>lent</i>	de-meu-re	<i>abode</i>
car-ross-e	<i>coach</i>	dés-ho-nneur	<i>dishonour</i>
cein-tu-re	<i>girdle</i>	des-po-te	<i>despot</i>
ce-pen-dant	<i>however</i>	dis-ci-ple	<i>pupil</i>
cham-pi-gnon	<i>mushroom</i>	dis-grâ-ce	<i>disgrace</i>
cha-pe-lier	<i>hatter</i>	dro-guis-te	<i>druggist</i>
cha-pel-le	<i>chapel</i>	droi-tu-re	<i>uprightness</i>
cha-pi-tre	<i>chapter</i>	é-cha-faud	<i>scaffold</i>

é-chel-le	<i>ladder</i>	im-pu-ni	<i>unpunished</i>
é-che-veau	<i>skein</i>	in cen-die	<i>conflagration</i>
é-cu-me	<i>froth</i>	in-co-nnu	<i>unknown</i>
em-pe-reur	<i>emperor</i>	in-gé-nu	<i>ingenuous</i>
em-plâ-tre	<i>plaster</i>	i-nhu-main	<i>inhuman</i>
em-plet-te	<i>purchase</i>	in-sec-te	<i>insect</i>
en-clu-me	<i>anvil</i>	ins-truc-tif	<i>instructive</i>
en-ga-geant	<i>engaging</i>	i-voi-re	<i>ivory</i>
en-ne-mi	<i>enemy</i>	i-vro-gne	<i>drunkard</i>
en-sei-gne	<i>sign</i>	ja-quet-te	<i>jacket</i>
é-pa-gneul	<i>spaniel</i>	jour-na-lier	<i>journeyman</i>
é-pi-ce	<i>spice</i>	lai tiè-re	<i>milk woman</i>
é-pi-cier	<i>grocer</i>	lan-gou-reux	<i>languishing</i>
é-pou-se	<i>wife</i>	len-til-le	<i>lentil</i>
es-ca-lier	<i>stair-case</i>	li-ma-çon	<i>snail</i>
es-pa-ce	<i>space</i>	ma-ga-sin	<i>warehouse</i>
es-pè-ce	<i>kind</i>	mal-a-droit	<i>awkward</i>
es-quis-se	<i>sketch</i>	ma-nœu-vre	<i>labourer</i>
es-tra-gon	<i>stragon</i>	mar-mi-ton	<i>scullion</i>
é-tei-gnoir	<i>extinguisher</i>	mas-cu-lin	<i>masculine</i>
é-tour-di	<i>thoughtless</i>	mé-con-tent	<i>discontented</i>
é-vê-ché	<i>bishoprick</i>	mé-moi-re	<i>memory</i>
é-veil-lé	<i>awake</i>	mé-na-ger	<i>thrifty</i>
ex-cès-sif	<i>immoderate</i>	men-son-ge	<i>falsehood</i>
ex-em-ple	<i>example</i>	mé-pri-se	<i>mistake</i>
fa-bu-leux	<i>fabulous</i>	mé-tho-de	<i>method</i>
fa-ça-de	<i>front</i>	mo-des-tie	<i>modesty</i>
fai-en-ce	<i>delft-ware</i>	mon-ta-gnard	<i>highlander</i>
fa-ri-neux	<i>mealy</i>	mou-tar-de	<i>mustard</i>
fa-rou-che	<i>fierce</i>	mur-mu-re	<i>murmur</i>
fi-las-se	<i>flax</i>	na-tu-rel	<i>natural</i>
fleu-ris-te	<i>florist</i>	nau-fra-ge	<i>shipwreck</i>
foi-bles-se	<i>weakness</i>	né-an-moins	<i>nevertheless</i>
fo-lâ-tre	<i>playful</i>	no-bles-se	<i>nobility</i>
fou-droy-ant	<i>thundering</i>	noi-râ-tre	<i>blackish</i>
four-bis-seur	<i>sword-cutler</i>	o-bli-geant	<i>obliging</i>
four-ru-re	<i>fur</i>	om-bra-ge	<i>shade</i>
fram-boi-se	<i>raspberry</i>	o-pro-bre	<i>disgrace</i>
fri-su-re	<i>curling</i>	o-ra-geux	<i>stormy</i>
froi-ssu-re	<i>bruising</i>	or-fè-vre	<i>goldsmith</i>
gi-ro-ffe	<i>cloves</i>	or-phe-lin	<i>orphan</i>
go-be-let	<i>goblet</i>	pa-moi-son	<i>fainting-fit</i>
gou-lû-ment	<i>speedily</i>	pan-tou-fle	<i>slipper</i>
gué-ri-son	<i>cure</i>	pa-pe tier	<i>stationer</i>
gui-mau-ve	<i>marsh-mallow</i>	pa-ra-sol	<i>umbrella</i>
hâ-lei-ne	<i>breath</i>	pa-ren-te	<i>kinswoman</i>
' har-di-ment	<i>boldly</i>	pa-rois-se	<i>parish</i>
' ha-ri-cot	<i>French bean</i>	pas-sa-ble	<i>tolerable</i>
hor-lo-ge	<i>clock</i>	pois-sar-de	<i>fishwoman</i>
hor-ri-ble	<i>horrid</i>	poi-tri-ne	<i>breast</i>
ho-tes-se	<i>landlady</i>	por-tiè-re	<i>coach door</i>
i gno-rant	<i>ignorant</i>	pos-tu-re	<i>posture</i>
im-men-se	<i>immense</i>	po-ta-ge	<i>porridge</i>

pous-siè-re	dust	sou-cou-pe	saucer
pré-tex-te	pretence	soup-ço-nneux	suspicious
prin-ces-se	princess	spec-ta-cle	sight
pro-mes-se	promise	splen-di-de	splendid
pro-tec-teur	protector	suc-ces-seur	successor
pu-é-ril	childish	su-prê-me	supreme
pui-ssan-ce	power	symp-tô-me	symptom
que-rel-le	quarrel	tein-tu-re	dying
ra-piè-re	rapier	ten-dres-se	tenderness
ra-tiè-re	rat-trap	té-né-breux	dark
ré-col-te	crop	thé-â-tre	theatre
ré-scr-vé	reserved	thé-iè-re	tea-pot
re-ssour-ce	resource	toi-let-te	toilet
re-trai-te	retirement	tour-ne-vis	screw-driver
rê-ve-rie	meditation	tou-te-fois	nevertheless
rou-geâ-tre	reddish	tri-che-rie	cheat
rus-ti-que	rural	tri-om-phe	triumph
scan-da-leux	scandalous	trom-pet-te	trumpet
scru-pu-leux	scrupulous	tu-mul-te	tumult
sé-an-ce	sitting	va-can-ces	holidays
ser-ru-re	lock	ver-get-te	brush
sif-fle-ment	whistling	ver-mis-scau	small worm
sim-ple-ment	plainly	vic-toi-re	victory
so-bri-quet	nick name	vi-gou-reux	vigorous
so-len-nel	solemn	vil-la-geois	countryman
so-nnet-te	little bell	voi-tu-re	carriage
so-no-re	sonorous	zé-phîr	zephyr

## 15. OF GENDER.

There are but two genders in French, the masculine and feminine.

The masculine gender expresses the male kind, as *un homme*, a man; *un lion*, a lion.

The feminine gender denotes the female kind, as *une femme*, a woman; *une lionne*, a lioness.

The French language has no neuter; consequently, inanimate objects are either masculine or feminine. Foreigners experience great difficulty in that respect, for, as the article, pronoun and adjective which refer to a noun, must agree with it *in gender*, as well as *in number*, much attention must be paid to ascertain the former. To enable them to do this, no general rules can efficiently be given, on account of the numberless exceptions which occur. We think that *ear* and *practice* are the safest and most correct guides which can be followed, and, in fact, they are the only ones which the French themselves have, who hardly ever make a mistake, if we except the uneducated; we, therefore, strongly recommend them to the English learners. Unwilling, however, to withhold from them any part of the as-



sistance they may look for in a grammar like this, we will give some general rules with their exceptions.

## 16. GENERAL RULES.

TO ASCERTAIN THE GENDER OF NOUNS SUBSTANTIVES IN FRENCH, WITH THEIR EXCEPTIONS.

1. God, his angels, cherubim and seraphim, are of the masculine gender.

2. All *diminutives of animals*, when there is but one common denomination for both sexes, are of the masculine gender, whatever may be the gender of the root from which they are derived, as *un lionceau, un souriceau, un perdreau, un cornillas, un carpillon, un couleuvreau, un vipereau, un bécasseau*, &c. except *une bécassine*; but these two latter, although derived from the word *bécasse*, and belonging to the *genus*, are not of the same *species*. In other cases, the diminutives follow the gender their sex indicates, as *un poulain, une pouliche, un cochet, une poulette*.

3, Diminutives of inanimate objects generally follow the gender of their roots, as *batelet, maisonnette, globule*, from *bateau, maison, globe*, &c.; but *un corbillon, un soliveau, un cruchon, une savonnette, un trousseau*, from *la corbeille, la solive, la cruche, le saxon*, and *la trousse*, and many others do not.

4. All the names of the days, months, and seasons of the year, are of the *masculine gender*, except *automne*, which is of both genders; when, however, the diminutive *mi* (half) is prefixed to the name of a month, the compound word then takes the feminine gender, as *la mi-mai, la mi-août, la mi-carême*; *mi* standing for *demi*, f.; *la St. Jean, la St. Michel*, and other saints' days are feminine; *fête de* being understood, as *la FÊTE DE St. Jean*.

5. NAMES	{	of trees, except <i>yeuse</i> , a sort of oak.	}	ARE MASCULINE.
		of shrubs, with some exceptions,		
		of metals, without excepting <i>platine</i> , formerly feminine,		
		of minerals, a few excepted,		
		of colours, without excepting <i>l'Isabelle, le Feuille-morte</i> , &c. though they have a feminine termination.		
6. NAMES	{	of mountains, except when the words <i>Montagne, côte</i> , are understood; <i>les Cordillières, les Alpes</i> .	}	ARE MASCULINE.
		of winds, except <i>la bise, la tramontane, la brise</i> , and <i>les moussons</i> .		
		of towns, except those which necessarily take the article <i>la</i> before them, as <i>la Rochelle, la Ferté-sur-Aube</i> , &c. and others.		

7. Ordinal, distributive, and proportional numbers, adjectives, and infinitives of verbs, prepositions and adverbs, all these, when used substantively, are masculine, as *le tiers*, *le quart*, *un cinquième*, *le quadruple*, *le beau*, *le sublime*, *le boire*, *le manger*, *le mieux*, *le pour*, *le contre*, *un parallèle*, (a comparison,) &c. except *la moitié*, and the elliptical forms of speech, *une courbe*, *une tangente*, *une perpendiculaire*, *une parallèle*, *une antique*, used for *une ligne courbe*, *une ligne tangente*, &c. *Antique* is feminine, for the same reason; the word *médaille*, or *statue* appearing to be understood.

8. Names of *virtues* are of the feminine gender, except *courage*, *mérite*.

## 17. GENDERS OF NOUNS,

TO BE KNOWN FROM THEIR TERMINATION.

9. The termination in an *e* mute, is called a feminine termination; any other is called masculine. This distinction arises probably from the circumstance that most nouns of the feminine gender end with an *e* mute, thus *la table*, *la rivière*, *la rue*, *la plante*, *la tête*, *la fenêtre*; but to this general rule there are innumerable exceptions, which we will notice as we speak of other terminations.

10. Names of states, empires, kingdoms and provinces are of the gender which their terminations indicate; except *le Bengale*, *le Mexique*, *le Péloponèse*, *le Maine*, *le Perche*, *Rouergue*, *le Bigorre*, *le Vallage*, *la Franche-comté*, and perhaps a few more.

11. The names of fruits, grain, plants, and flowers, follow pretty generally the gender of their terminations, but there are too many exceptions to be introduced here.

## 18. TABLE,

SHOWING THE GENDER OF ALL WORDS WHICH DO NOT END IN *e* MUTE.

MASCULINE.		FEMININE.	
0 .....	0	-tié { amitié, inimitié, moi- tié, pitié .....	4
11 { Aparté, arrêté, béné- dité, comté, côté, été, pâté, traité, lé, thé, Léthé .....	-té	{ absurdité, beauté, cha- rité, cité, dignité, fidélité, générosité, etc. etc .....	500
40 { alibi, biribi, lundi, gui, grand merci, etc. ... }	-i	{ Fourmi, merci, gagui, après-midi .....	4
15 convoi, effroi, etc. ....	-oi	-foi, loi, paroi .....	3
30 { ergo, vertigo, indigo, } etc. ....	-o	albugo, virago .....	2

MASCULINE.			FEMININE.		
10	{ fichu, cru, écu, tissu, etc. .... }	-u	{ bru, glu, tribu, vertu. .... }		4
200	{ aloyau, anneau, etc. etc. .... }	-au	{ eau, peau, surpeau, sans-peau. .... }		4
6	{ bref, chalef, chef, fief, grief, relief. .... }	-ef	clef, nef, soif. ....		3
3	{ daim, essaim, abat-fain. .... }	-aim	faim, male-faim. ....		2
100	{ an, ban, cran, écran, pan, etc. .... }	-an	maman. ....		1
200	{ bain, baise-main, avant-main, garde-main, tourne-main, essuie-main, gain, frein, basin, etc. .... }	-in	fin, main, nonnain. ....		5
4	{ scion, bastion, bastion, Ixion. .... }	{ -cion -sion -tion -gion -nion -xion }	{ succion, cession, friction, gestion, region, opinion, réflexion, fluxion, etc. etc. .... }	1100	
30	{ gabion, taudion, million, lion, ardélion, fourmillion, trémion, capion, turnion, camion, lampion, septentrion, brimborion, gavion, etc. .... }	{ -bion -dion -lion -mion -pion -rion -vion }	{ rébellion, dent-delion, alluvion. .... }	3	
8	{ alcyon, clayon, crayon, rayon, sayon, trayon, lamproyon, Amphictryon. .... }	-yon	.....	0	
1	brise-raison. ....	-aison	cargaison, etc. etc. ....	30	
11	{ peson, bison, grison, groison, horizon, sison, tison, oison, poison, contre-poison, buson. .... }	{ -eson -ison -uson }	{ garnison, guérison, prison, trahison, cloison, froison, moisson, pannoison, toison, camuson. .... }	11	
15	{ basson, caisson, cavesson, taison, poisson, cossen, buisson, frison, hérisson, maudisson, nourrisson, palisson, polisson, unisson, saucisson, courson. .... }	-sson	{ paisson, boisson, moisson, cuisson, salisson, mousson. .... }	6	
4	{ arcanson, échanson, tenson, pinson. .... }	-nson	chanson. ....	1	
20	{ charançon, caveçon, courçon, pinçon, suçon, etc. .... }	-çon	{ façon, contrefaçon, malfaçon, leçon, rançon. .... }	5	



## MASCULINE.

## FEMININE.

30	bridon, guéridon, etc. . .	-don	dondon. . . . .	1
150	tendron, jeune tendron, baron, etc. . .	-lon -ron	laideron, souillon, to- tillon . . . . .	3
70	abattis, appentis, iris, tourne-vis, etc. . . . .	-is	brebis, souris, chau- ve-souris, vis, iris. .	5
15	bois, mois, carquois, harnois, etc. . . . .	-ois	fois. . . . .	1
12	adent, chiendent, li- ondent, claquedent, cure-dent, occident, trident, etc. . . . .	-dent -gent	dent, surdent, gent. . . .	3
700	acharnement, assorti- ment, etc. . . . .	-ment	jument. . . . .	1
250	ballet, billet, bosquet, minuit, conduit, re- duit, etc. billot, bru- lot, complot, etc. bout, goût, ragoût, etc. . . . .	-et -uit -ot -out	forêt, nuit, dot, glout. . .	4
15	paix, choix, crucifix, prix, etc. taux, houx, courroux, époux, etc.	-ix -aux -oux	paix, croix, noix, poix, voix, perdrix, chaux, faux, toux. . . . .	9
20	art, départ, champart, rempart, effort, port, sort, tort, etc.	-art -ort	hart, part, mort, ma- lemort. . . . .	4
40	fer, ver, hiver, etc. air, éclair, etc. tour, con- tour, four, etc.	-er -air -our	cuiller, mer, chair, cour, tour. . . . .	5
900	bonheur, malheur, labeur, honneur, deshonneur, cœur, anticœur, crève- cœur, chœur, chou- fleur, pleurs, équa- teur, secteur, etc. etc. . . . .	-eur	aigreur, ampleur, ar- deur, blancheur, can- deur, chaleur, chan- deleur, clameur, cou- leur, douceur, dou- leur, épaisseur, er- reur, fadeur, défa- veur, ferveur, fleur,	76

passe-fleur, sans-fleur, fraîcheur, frayeur, froideur, fureur, grandeur, grosseur, hauteur, horreur, humeur, laideur, langueur, largeur, lenteur, liqueur, longueur, lourdeur, lueur, maigreur, moiteur, noirceur, odeur, pâleur, pesanteur, peur, primeur, profondeur, puanteur, pudeur, impu-  
deur, rigueur, raideur, rondeur, rougeur, rousseur, rumeur, saveur, senteur, sœur, souleur, splendeur, sueur, teneur, terreur, tiédeur, tor-  
peur, touffeur, tumeur, valeur, non-valeur, vapeur, verdeur, vigueur,  
and mœurs; besides basseur, rancœur, trémeur, three words now obsolete,  
making in the whole the number of seventy-six.

There are a great many proper names of females, which, though they may not have the feminine termination, are of that gender, as the learner, from their nature, will easily comprehend; such are, among the heathens, *Pallas, Cérès, Thetis, Vénus, Junon, Didon, etc.* Among christian names, *Sara, Deborah, Elizabeth, Agnès, etc.* and many of these are contractions, as *Fanchon* for *Fanny*, *Lison*, *Louison*, *Marion*,

*Manon, Nanon, Jeannelon, Madelon, Tonton, Cataract, Margot, Goton, Babet, Babeau, Isabeau.*

As this list of exceptions will be found pretty accurate, all other nouns, that belong to this termination, must be strictly considered as being of the masculine gender, since they are not enumerated in this Table.

## 19. A TABLE OF SUBSTANTIVES,

THAT ARE MASCULINE IN ONE SIGNIFICATION AND FEMININE IN ANOTHER.

MASCULINE.		FEMININE.
<i>Assistant, helper</i>	<i>Aide</i>	<i>Aid, help, support</i>
<i>eagle, a great genius</i>	<i>aigle</i>	<i>a standard</i>
<i>an angel</i>	<i>ange</i>	<i>a kind of thornback</i>
<i>an alder tree</i>	<i>aune</i>	<i>an ell, a sort of measure</i>
<i>barb, a Barbary horse</i>	<i>barbe</i>	<i>beard</i>
<i>Bard, a poet</i>	<i>barde</i>	<i>{ a slice of bacon, horse- armour</i>
<i>red-breast</i>	<i>berce</i>	<i>cow-parsnip</i>
<i>a sort of privateer</i>	<i>capre</i>	<i>caper (a fruit)</i>
<i>a scroll or ornament in painting</i> }	<i>cartouche</i>	<i>cartouch, cartridge</i>
<i>a caravan, a boy</i>	<i>coche</i>	<i>a notch, a sow</i>
<i>cornet, a standard bearer</i>	<i>cornette</i>	<i>a woman's head-dress</i>
<i>a couple, a man and wife</i>	<i>couple</i>	<i>a brace, a pair, two of a sort</i>
<i>Croat, a Croatian soldier</i>	<i>cravate</i>	<i>a cravat, neckcloth</i>
<i>a crape</i>	<i>crêpe</i>	<i>a pancake</i>
<i>an echo</i>	<i>écho</i>	<i>Echo, a nymph</i>
<i>ensign, an officer</i>	<i>enseigne</i>	<i>a sign post</i>
<i>example, model, instance</i>	<i>exemple</i>	<i>a copy for writing</i>
<i>a gimlet, a piercer</i>	<i>forêt</i>	<i>a wood, a forest</i>
<i>a large vat</i>	<i>foudre</i>	<i>lightning, thunderbolt</i>
<i>keeper, warden</i>	<i>garde</i>	<i>wash, hilt, nurse</i>
<i>hoar frost</i>	<i>givre</i>	<i>a snake (in heraldry)</i>
<i>the rolls, a register</i>	<i>greffe</i>	<i>a graft</i>
<i>gules in heraldry</i>	<i>gueule</i>	<i>the mouth of beasts</i>
<i>guide, director</i>	<i>guide</i>	<i>reins in driving</i>
<i>heliotrope, sunflower</i>	<i>héliotrope</i>	<i>heliotrope, jasper</i>
<i>iris, the rainbow, iris of the eye</i> }	<i>iris</i>	<i>{ sprig-crystal, a proper name</i>
<i>lacker, a kind of varnish</i>	<i>laque</i>	<i>lacca, gum-lac</i>
<i>a book</i>	<i>livre</i>	<i>a pound</i>
<i>a hat of otter's hair</i>	<i>loutre</i>	<i>an otter</i>
<i>handle of a tool</i>	<i>manche</i>	<i>a sleeve, English channel</i>
<i>a labourer</i>	<i>manœuvre</i>	<i>the working of a ship</i>

N. B.—Of this table it is to be remarked, that the French word stands in the middle column and its signification on the right hand and on the left. When it has the meaning which stands on the left, it is masculine; when that which stands on the right it is feminine.

## MASCULINE.

*memoir, a bill*  
*thanks*  
*mood, mode*  
*a pier, or mound*  
*mould, cast, form*  
*a ship-boy*  
*the philosopher's stone*  
*office, prayers*  
*ombre, a game at cards*  
*singular is mas.*  
*page of a prince, etc.*  
*a merry andrew*  
  
*a hand's breadth*  
  
*pantomime*  
*Easter, Easter-day*  
*a comparison*  
*pendulum*  
*le Perche, in France*  
*summit, highest pitch*  
*anybody, nobody (a pro- }  
     noun) }*  
*spade, at cards*  
*gnatsnapper, a bird*  
*a plane-tree*  
*a stove, a canopy*  
*post, a military station*  
*punto at cards*  
*purple colour, purples, }  
     (a disease) }*  
*a pretence*  
  
*quadril at cards*  
  
*the calling back a hawk*  
*rest, relaxation*  
*a glass coach*  
*a sort of pear-tree*  
*Satyr, a sylvan god*  
*serpentarius*  
*nap, slumber*  
*a smile*  
*a porter*  
*holder, a book-keeper*  
*a tour, turn, trick*  
*triumph*  
*trumpeter*  
*space*  
  
*a vase, vessel*  
  
*a hat of vigonia wool*  
*a veil*

*mémoire*  
*merci*  
*mode*  
*môle*  
*moule*  
*mousse*  
*œuvre*  
*office*  
*ombre*  
*orgue*  
*page*  
*paillasse*  
  
*palme*  
  
*pantomime*  
*pâque*  
*parallèle*  
*pendule*  
*perche*  
*période*  
  
*personne*  
  
*pique*  
*pivoine*  
*plane*  
*poêle*  
*poste*  
*ponte*  
  
*pourpre*  
  
*prétexte*  
  
*quadrille*  
  
*réclame*  
*relâche*  
*remise*  
*sans-peau*  
*satyre*  
*serpenteaire*  
*somme*  
*souris*  
*suisse*  
*teneur*  
*tour*  
*triomphe*  
*trompette*  
*vague*  
  
*vase*  
  
*vigogne*  
*voile*

## FEMININE.

*memory*  
*pity, mercy*  
*fashion*  
*mole, moon-calf*  
*muscle, a shell-fish*  
*moss, a plant*  
*action, an author's work*  
*pantry, larder, butlery*  
*shade, shadow*  
*plural is feminine*  
*page in a book*  
*a straw bed*  
*{ the branch of a palm-  
   tree, victory*  
*a dumb show*  
*the passover*  
*a parallet*  
*a clock*  
*pole, perche, a fish*  
*period, epocha*  
  
*a person (a noun)*  
  
*a pike*  
*peony, a flower*  
*plane, an instrument*  
*a frying-pan*  
*the post for letters*  
*the laying of eggs*  
  
*purple fish, purple die*  
  
*pretext*  
*{ party of horse in a tour-  
   nement*  
*a catch-word (in printing)*  
*harbour*  
*a coach-house, a remittance*  
*a sort of pear*  
*a satire, a lampoon*  
*snake-root, dragon's wort*  
*sum, load, name of a river*  
*a mouse*  
*Switzerland*  
*tenor, purport, content*  
*tower, rook at chess*  
*a trump*  
*trumpet*  
*a wave, surge*  
*{ the slime in ponds, lakes,  
   etc.*  
*a vigon, or llama*  
*a sail*



## 20. A VOCABULARY,

FRENCH AND ENGLISH.

IN TWENTY-THREE CHAPTERS.

\* In the following Vocabulary, the Gender has been affixed only to those Nouns that are not included in the preceding Rules.

OF THE UNIVERSE IN GENERAL.

Dieu	<i>God</i>	pluie	<i>rain</i>
créateur	<i>creator</i>	arc-en-ciel	<i>rainbow</i>
Jésus-Christ	<i>Jesus Christ</i>	ondée	<i>shower</i>
Trinité	<i>Trinity</i>	neige	<i>snow</i>
Saint-Esprit	<i>Holy Ghost</i>	grêle	<i>hail</i>
ange	<i>angel</i>	glace	<i>ice</i>
archange	<i>archangel</i>	gelée	<i>frost</i>
prophète	<i>prophet</i>	dégel	<i>thaw</i>
Messie	<i>Messiah</i>	rosée	<i>dew</i>
sauveur	<i>saviour</i>	créature	<i>creature</i>
rédeempteur	<i>redeemer</i>	globe <i>m.</i>	<i>globe</i>
Vierge Marie	<i>Virgin Mary</i>	sphère	<i>sphere</i>
apôtre	<i>apostle</i>	hémisphère <i>m.</i>	<i>hemisphere</i>
évangéliste	<i>evangelist</i>	horizon	<i>horizon</i>
martyr	<i>martyr</i>	degré	<i>degree</i>
saint	<i>saint</i>	longitude	<i>longitude</i>
paradis	<i>paradise</i>	latitude	<i>latitude</i>
ciel	<i>heaven</i>	points cardinaux <i>pl.</i>	} <i>cardinal points</i>
enfer	<i>hell</i>	orient, <i>ou</i> est	
diable	<i>devil</i>	occident, <i>ou</i> ouest	} <i>west</i>
nature	<i>nature</i>	septentrion, <i>ou</i> nord	
univers	<i>universe</i>	midi, <i>ou</i> sud	} <i>north</i>
monde <i>m.</i>	<i>world</i>	climat	
élément	<i>element</i>	région	<i>region</i>
terre	<i>earth</i>	continent	<i>continent</i>
eau	<i>water</i>	Europe	<i>Europe</i>
feu	<i>fire</i>	Asie	<i>Asia</i>
air	<i>air</i>	Afrique	<i>Africa</i>
firmament	<i>sky</i>	Amérique	<i>America</i>
étoile	<i>star</i>	empire <i>m.</i>	<i>empire</i>
planète	<i>planet</i>	royaume <i>m.</i>	<i>kingdom</i>
comète	<i>comet</i>	république	<i>republic</i>
constellation	<i>constellation</i>	pays	<i>country</i>
soleil	<i>sun</i>	colonie	<i>colony</i>
rayon du soleil	<i>sun-beam</i>	principauté	<i>principality</i>
lune	<i>moon</i>	électorat	<i>electorate</i>
éclipse	<i>eclipse</i>	province	<i>province</i>
orage <i>m.</i>	<i>storm</i>	comté	<i>shire or county</i>
tonnerre <i>m.</i>	<i>thunder</i>		
éclair	<i>lightning</i>		
brouillard	<i>fog</i>		

île	island	détroit	strait
presqu'île	} peninsula	courant	current
péninsule		marée	tide
Chersonèse	Chersonesus	flux	flowing
cap	cape	reflux	ebbing
promontoire m.	promontory	vague	wave
isthme m.	isthmus	flots pl.	billows, waves
montagne	mountain	ondes m.	waters
mont	mount	hâvre m.	haven
colline	hill	port	harbour
sommet	summit	lac	lake
pente, ou pen- chant	} declivity	rivière	river
hauteur		fleuve m.	great river
vallée	eminence	embouchure	mouth of a river
vallon	valley	ruisseau	brook
abîme m.	dale	débordement	overflow
désert	abyss	déluge m.	deluge
plaine	desert	inondation	inundation
marais	plain	écluse	flood-gate, sluice
rive	marsh or fen	digue	dyke
rivage m.	bank (of a river)	étang	pond
côte	shore	vivier	fish-pond
rocher*	coast	réservoir	bason
roche*	rock	abreuvoir	horse-pond
roc*	rock	bain	bath
écueil*	rock	citerne	cistern
banc*	shoal	fontaine	fountain
récif*	sand bank	source	source
brisans*	reef of rocks	puits	well
cime	breakers, surf	pompe	pump
pierre	top	bateau	boat
pont	stone	barque	bark
chaussée	bridge	bac	ferry-boat
gué	causeway, road	coche d'eau m.	barge
quai	ford	gabare	lighter
route	wharf or quay	navire m.	ship
sentier	road	vaisseau	vessel
fossé	path	paquebot	packet-boat
gravier	ditch	flamme	blaze
sable m.	gravel	étincelle	spark
sablon	sand	chaleur	heat
poussière	small sand	fumée	smoke
océan	dust	incendie m.	conflagration
mer	ocean	chauffage m.	fuel
golf m.	sea	charbon	coals
baie	gulf	charbon de terre	pit coal
rade	bay	charbon de bois	charcoal
anse	road (for ships)	braise	small coal
canal	creek	} turf	} peat
	channel		

\* These seven words do not convey in French the same idea; the four latter relate to the sea.

bois	<i>wood</i>	lundi	<i>monday</i>
bûche	<i>log of wood</i>	mardi	<i>tuesday</i>
fagot	<i>faggot</i>	mercredi	<i>wednesday</i>
coupeaux <i>pl.</i>	<i>chips</i>	jeudi	<i>thursday</i>
cendre	<i>ashes</i>	vendredi	<i>friday</i>
suie	<i>soot</i>	samedi	<i>saturday</i>
feu	<i>fire</i>	dimanche	<i>sunday</i>
atmosphère	<i>atmosphere</i>	heure	<i>hour</i>
vent	<i>wind</i>	demi-heure	<i>half an hour</i>
zephyr	<i>zephyr</i>	quart-d'heure	<i>{ quarter of an hour</i>
vapeur	<i>vapour</i>	aurora	<i>aurora</i>
lumière	<i>light</i>	aube	<i>dawn</i>
ténèbres <i>pl.</i>	<i>darkness</i>	matin	<i>morning</i>
chaleur	<i>heat</i>	matinée	<i>forenoon</i>
froid	<i>cold</i>	midi	<i>noon</i>
nue, nuée	<i>cloud</i>	l'après-midi	<i>{ the afternoon</i>
nuage <i>m.</i>	<i>cloud</i>	l'après-dinée	<i>{ evening</i>
nielle	<i>blight</i>	soir	<i>{ evening</i>
humidité	<i>dampness</i>	soirée	<i>{ evening</i>
serein	<i>mildew</i>	crépuscule <i>m.</i>	<i>twilight</i>
tourbillon	<i>whirlwind</i>	nuît	<i>night</i>
orage <i>m.</i>	<i>storm</i>	minuit	<i>midnight</i>
tempête	<i>tempest</i>	minute	<i>minute</i>
ondée	<i>shower</i>	seconde	<i>second</i>
calme <i>m.</i>	<i>calm</i>	moment	<i>moment</i>
éternité	<i>eternity</i>	instant	<i>instant</i>
temps	<i>time</i>	saison	<i>season</i>
siècle <i>m.</i>	<i>age or century</i>	printemps	<i>spring</i>
époque	<i>epoch</i>	été	<i>summer</i>
période <i>m.</i>	<i>period</i>	automne	<i>autumn</i>
date	<i>date</i>	hiver	<i>winter</i>
an, année	<i>year</i>	carnaval	<i>carnaval</i>
mois	<i>month</i>	carême <i>m.</i>	<i>lent</i>
janvier	<i>january</i>	mi-carême	<i>midlent</i>
février	<i>february</i>	pâque	<i>easter</i>
mars	<i>march</i>	pentecôte	<i>whit-sunday</i>
avril	<i>april</i>	la Saint Jean	<i>midsummer</i>
mai	<i>may</i>	l'avent	<i>advent</i>
juin	<i>june</i>	noël	<i>christmas</i>
juillet	<i>july</i>	fête	<i>festival</i>
août	<i>august</i>	équinoxe <i>m.</i>	<i>equinox</i>
septembre	<i>september</i>	solstice <i>m.</i>	<i>the solstice</i>
octobre	<i>october</i>	canicule	<i>the dog-days</i>
novembre	<i>november</i>	fenaison	<i>hay-harvest</i>
décembre	<i>december</i>	moisson	<i>harvest</i>
semaine	<i>week</i>	vendange	<i>vintage</i>
jour	<i>day</i>	tonte	<i>shearing-time</i>
journée	<i>day</i>	semailles <i>pl.</i>	<i>sowing-time</i>
aujourd'hui	<i>to-day</i>	congé	<i>holiday</i>
demain	<i>to-morrow</i>		
hier	<i>yesterday</i>		



## II. OF MAN.

genre humain	mankind	nez	nose
homme	man	narines <i>pl.</i>	nostrils
femme	woman	bouche	mouth
sexe	sex	lèvres <i>pl.</i>	lips
enfant	child	dent	tooth
garçon	boy, youth, lad	gencives <i>pl.</i>	gums
filles	girl	mâchoire	jaw-bone
vierge	virgin	langue	tongue
virginité	virginity	palais	palate
enfance	infancy	joues <i>pl.</i>	cheeks
jeunesse	youth	fossette	dimple
adolescence	adolescence	menton	chin
virilité	manhood	barbe	beard
vieillesse	old age	tempes <i>pl.</i>	temples
décrépitude	decrepitude	oreille	ear
jeune homme	young man	cheveux <i>pl.</i>	hair
jeune fille	young girl	cou	neck
vieillard	old man	gosier	throat
géant	giant	sein	bosom
nain	dwarf	poitrine	chest
pigmeé <i>m.</i>	pigmy	ventre <i>m.</i>	belly
mari	husband	ceinture	waist
femme	wife	côté	side
veuf	widower	hanche	hip
veuve	widow	reins <i>pl.</i>	loins
orphelin	orphan (boy)	genou	knee
orpheline	orphan (girl)	jarret	ham
héritier	heir	rotule	knee-pan
héritière	heiress	jambe	leg
maître	master	mollet	calf of the leg
maîtresse	mistress	piéd	foot
hôte	landlord	talon	heel
hôtesse	landlady	orteil	toe
domestique	man servant	bras	arm
servante	maid servant	coude <i>m.</i>	elbow
voisin <i>m.</i>	} neighbour	aisselle	the arm-pit
voisine <i>f.</i>		épaule	shoulder
compagnon <i>m.</i>	} companion	main	hand
compagne <i>f.</i>		poing	fist
corps	body	poignet	wrist
membre <i>m.</i>	member	doigt	finger
tronc	trunk	pouce	thumb
tête	head	ongle <i>m.</i>	nail
crâne <i>m.</i>	skull	côte	rib
front	forehead	cerveau	} brain
visage <i>m.</i>	face	cervelle	
traits <i>pl.</i>	features	squelette <i>m.</i>	skeleton
œil	eye	cœur	heart
yeux <i>pl.</i>	eyes	poumon	lungs
sourcils <i>pl.</i>	eye-brows	foie <i>m.</i>	liver
paupière	eye-lid	rate	spleen

estomac	<i>stomach</i>	souffle <i>m.</i>	<i>breath</i>
entrailles <i>pl.</i>	<i>entrails</i>	haleine	<i>breath</i>
sang	<i>blood</i>	respiration	<i>respiration</i>
humeurs <i>pl.</i>	<i>humours</i>	éternuement	<i>sneezing</i>
glande	<i>gland</i>	vue	<i>sight</i>
poil	<i>hair</i>	ouïe	<i>hearing</i>
chair	<i>flesh</i>	odorat	<i>smell</i>
peau	<i>skin</i>	goût	<i>taste</i>
pores <i>m. pl.</i>	<i>pores</i>	toucher	<i>touch</i>
nerf	<i>nerve</i>	sentiment	<i>sense</i>
artère	<i>artery</i>	obscurité	<i>darkness</i>
veine	<i>vein</i>	ombre	<i>shade</i>
os	<i>bone</i>	son	<i>sound</i>
moelle	<i>marrow</i>	bruit	<i>noise</i>
ride	<i>wrinkle</i>	odeur	<i>smell</i>
bouton	<i>pimple</i>	puanteur	<i>stench</i>
santé	<i>health</i>	saveur	<i>flavour</i>
tempérament	<i>constitution</i>	sensations <i>pl.</i>	<i>sensations</i>
embonpoint	<i>plumpness</i>	chatouillement	<i>tickling</i>
maigreur	<i>leanness</i>	plaisir	<i>pleasure</i>
teint	<i>complexion</i>	joie	<i>joy</i>
rougeur	<i>redness</i>	douleur	<i>pain</i>
pâleur	<i>paleness</i>	faim	<i>hunger</i>
port	<i>carriage</i>	soif	<i>thirst</i>
démarche	<i>gait</i>	dégoût	<i>distaste</i>
geste <i>m.</i>	<i>gesture</i>	maladie	<i>disease</i>
vivacité	<i>liveliness</i>	mal	<i>complaint</i>
enjouement	<i>sprightliness</i>	incommodité	<i>illness</i>
gaieté	<i>gaiety</i>	infirmité	<i>infirmary</i>
beauté	<i>beauty</i>	indisposition	<i>illness</i>
charmes <i>m.</i>	<i>charms</i>	mal de dents	<i>tooth-ache</i>
attraits <i>pl.</i>	<i>attractions</i>	mal de tête	<i>head-ache</i>
appas <i>pl.</i>	<i>beauties</i>	mal aux yeux	<i>bad, sore eyes</i>
agrément	<i>pleasantness</i>	migraine	<i>megrim</i>
laideur	<i>deformity</i>	vertige <i>m.</i>	<i>dizziness</i>
taille	<i>figure, size</i>	évanouissement	<i>swoon</i>
voix	<i>voice</i>	défaillance	<i>fainting, sinking</i>
parole	<i>speech</i>	faiblesse	<i>swoon</i>
silence <i>m.</i>	<i>silence</i>	démangeaison	<i>itching</i>
action	<i>action</i>	pesanteur	<i>heaviness</i>
mouvement	<i>motion</i>	engourdissement	<i>numbness</i>
repos	<i>rest</i>	insomnie	<i>sleeplessness</i>
grimace	<i>grimace</i>	coup	<i>blow</i>
ris, rire <i>m.</i>	<i>laughter</i>	contre-coup	<i>counter-blow</i>
souris, sourire	<i>smile</i>	égratignure	<i>scratch</i>
[ <i>m.</i> ]		écorchure	<i>excoriation</i>
humeur	<i>temper</i>	entorse	<i>sprain</i>
soupir	<i>sigh</i>	foulure	<i>strain</i>
gémissement	<i>groan</i>	enflure	<i>swelling</i>
assoupissement	<i>drowsiness</i>	tumeur	<i>tumour</i>
sommeil	<i>sleep</i>	meurtrissure	<i>bruise</i>
songe <i>m.</i>	<i>dream</i>	contusion	<i>contusion</i>
rêve <i>m.</i>	<i>dream</i>	blessure	<i>wound</i>

cicatrice	<i>scar</i>	chirurgien	<i>surgeon</i>
ulcère <i>m.</i>	<i>ulcer</i>	apothicaire <i>m.</i>	<i>apothecary</i>
gangrène	<i>mortification</i>	accoucheur	<i>man-midwife</i>
coupure	<i>cut</i>	sage-femme	<i>midwife</i>
brûlure	<i>burn</i>	consultation	<i>consultation</i>
cor	<i>corn</i>	ordonnance	<i>prescription</i>
durillon	<i>callosity</i>	remède <i>m.</i>	<i>remedy</i>
enrouement	<i>hoarseness</i>	drogues <i>pl.</i>	<i>drugs</i>
rhume <i>m.</i>	<i>cold</i>	poudres <i>pl.</i>	<i>poultices</i>
toux	<i>cough</i>	pillules <i>pl.</i>	<i>pills</i>
coqueluche	<i>hooping-cough</i>	saignée	<i>bleeding</i>
surdité	<i>deafness</i>	lancette	<i>lancet</i>
frénésie	<i>frenzy</i>	gouttes <i>pl.</i>	<i>drops</i>
folie	<i>lunacy</i>	bain	<i>bath</i>
rage	<i>madness</i>	régime <i>m.</i>	<i>diet</i>
goutte	<i>gout</i>	sirop	<i>syrup</i>
convulsions <i>pl.</i>	<i>convulsions</i>	agonie	<i>agony</i>
vapeurs <i>pl.</i>	<i>vapour</i>	mort	<i>death</i>
fièvre	<i>fevers</i>	cadavre <i>m.</i>	<i>corpse</i>
frisson	<i>shivering</i>	vie	<i>life</i>
accès	<i>fit</i>	guérison	<i>recovery</i>
délire <i>m.</i>	<i>delirium</i>	rechute	<i>relapse</i>
crise	<i>crisis</i>	symptôme <i>m.</i>	<i>symptom</i>
médecine	<i>physic</i>	convalescence	<i>convalescence</i>
médecin	<i>physician</i>		

## III. OF THE MIND AND ITS FACULTIES.

âme	<i>soul</i>	pénétration	<i>penetration</i>
esprit	<i>mind, talent, wit</i>	sagacité	<i>sagacity</i>
génie <i>m.</i>	<i>genius</i>	disposition	<i>disposition</i>
raison	<i>reason, sense</i>	inclination	<i>inclination</i>
entendement	<i>understanding</i>	capacité	<i>capacity</i>
jugement	<i>judgment</i>	mémoire	<i>memory</i>
sens	<i>sense</i>	souvenir	<i>remembrance</i>
pensée	<i>thought</i>	oubli	<i>forgetfulness</i>
idée	<i>idea</i>	stupidité	<i>stupidity</i>
imagination	<i>imagination</i>	passions <i>pl.</i>	<i>passions</i>
fantaisie	<i>fancy</i>	affections <i>pl.</i>	<i>affections</i>
caprice <i>m.</i>	<i>caprice</i>	amour	<i>love</i>
volonté	<i>will</i>	amours <i>pl.</i>	<i>amours</i>
liberté	<i>liberty</i>	haine	<i>hatred</i>
bel esprit	<i>wit</i>	désir	<i>desire</i>
opinion	<i>opinion</i>	probabilité	<i>probability</i>
sentiment	<i>sentiment</i>	appréhension	<i>apprehension</i>
vérité	<i>truth</i>	espérance	<i>hope</i>
erreur	<i>error</i>	confiance	<i>confidence</i>
vraisemblance	<i>likelihood</i>	honte	<i>shame</i>
apparence	<i>appearance</i>	timidité	<i>bashfulness</i>
méprise	<i>mistake</i>	hardiesse	<i>boldness</i>
bévue	<i>oversight</i>	assurance	<i>confidence</i>
science	<i>science</i>	colère	<i>anger</i>
connaissance	<i>knowledge</i>	courageux	<i>wrath</i>



fureur	<i>fury</i>	émulation	<i>emulation</i>
rage	<i>rage</i>	faveur	<i>favour</i>
ressentiment	<i>resentment</i>	valeur	<i>valour</i>
vengeance	<i>revenge</i>	bravoure	<i>stoutness</i>
dépit	<i>spite</i>	courage m.	<i>courage</i>
déplaisir	<i>displeasure</i>	finesse, ruse	<i>cunning</i>
tristesse	<i>sadness</i>	adresse	<i>skill</i>
chagrin	<i>grief</i>	chasteté	<i>chastity</i>
peine	<i>sorrow</i>	innocence	<i>innocence</i>
désespoir	<i>despair</i>	libéralité	<i>liberality</i>
doute m.	<i>doubt</i>	générosité	<i>generosity</i>
soupçon	<i>suspicion</i>	reconnaissance	<i>gratitude</i>
envie	<i>envy</i>	frugalité	<i>frugality</i>
jalousie	<i>jealousy</i>	prospérité	<i>prosperity</i>
pitié	<i>pity</i>	adversité	<i>adversity</i>
miséricorde	<i>mercy</i>	mœurs pl.	<i>manners</i>
compassion	<i>compassion</i>	bonheur	<i>happiness</i>
terreur	<i>terror</i>	récompense	<i>reward</i>
épouvante	<i>fright</i>	prix	<i>prize</i>
indignation	<i>indignation</i>	présent	<i>present</i>
vertu	<i>virtue</i>	don	<i>gift</i>
charité	<i>charity</i>	prêt	<i>loan</i>
justice	<i>justice</i>	grâce	<i>grace</i>
tempérance	<i>temperance</i>	réputation	<i>fame</i>
sobriété	<i>sobriety</i>	vice m.	<i>vice</i>
force	<i>fortitude</i>	défaut	<i>defect</i>
modestie	<i>modesty</i>	imperfection	<i>imperfection</i>
civilité	<i>civility</i>	avarice	<i>avarice</i>
pudeur	<i>bashfulness</i>	avidité	<i>greediness</i>
politesse	<i>politeness</i>	orgueil	<i>pride</i>
honnêteté	<i>honesty</i>	paresse	<i>idleness</i>
complaisance	<i>complaisance</i>	lâcheté	<i>slothfulness</i>
douceur	<i>sweetness</i>	tranquillité	<i>tranquillity</i>
bonté	<i>goodness</i>	paix	<i>peace</i>
amitié	<i>friendship</i>	luxe m.	<i>luxury, pomp</i>
union	<i>union</i>	mollesse	<i>effeminacy</i>
concorde	<i>concord</i>	impureté	<i>lewdness</i>
crainte, peur	<i>fear</i>	débauche	<i>revel</i>
patience	<i>patience</i>	dissolution	<i>dissoluteness</i>
prudence	<i>prudence</i>	libertinage m.	<i>libertinism</i>
économie	<i>economy</i>	désordre m.	<i>disorderly life</i>
habileté	<i>skill</i>	dérèglement	<i>licentiousness</i>
industrie	<i>industry</i>	mépris	<i>contempt</i>
soin	<i>care</i>	raillerie	<i>jest</i>
diligence	<i>diligence</i>	moquerie	<i>mockery</i>
exactitude	<i>exactness</i>	inédiance	<i>detraction</i>
honneur	<i>honour</i>	calomnie	<i>calumny</i>
probité	<i>probity</i>	crime m.	<i>crime</i>
désintéresse- ment	<i>disinterestedness</i>	malice	<i>malice</i>
sagesse	<i>wisdom</i>	méchanceté	<i>wickedness</i>
constance	<i>constancy</i>	tromperie	<i>deceit</i>
bienveillance	<i>benevolence</i>	perjure m.	<i>perjury</i>
		friponnerie	<i>knavery</i>

fourberie	<i>roguey</i>	pusillanimité	<i>pusillanimity</i>
enchantement	<i>witchcraft</i>	trahison	<i>treachery</i>
injustice	<i>injustice</i>	perfide	<i>perfidiousness</i>
tort	<i>wrong</i>	punition	<i>punishment</i>
usure	<i>usury</i>	châtiment	<i>chastisement</i>
achat	<i>purchase</i>	légèreté	<i>levity</i>
vente	<i>sale</i>	coquetterie	<i>coquetry</i>
troc	<i>barter</i>	badinage <i>m.</i>	<i>sport</i>
gage <i>m.</i>	<i>pledge</i>	larcin	<i>robbery</i>
dépôt	<i>trust</i>	vol	<i>theft</i>
contrat	<i>contract</i>	friponnerie	<i>roguey, cheating</i>
marché	<i>bargain</i>	tromperie	<i>deceit</i>
bassesse	<i>meanness</i>	ivrognerie	<i>drunkenness</i>
impudence	<i>impudence</i>	ivresse	<i>ebriety</i>
effronterie	<i>effrontery</i>	assassinat	<i>murder</i>
audace	<i>audaciousness</i>	meurtre <i>m.</i>	<i>manslaughter</i>
témérité	<i>temerity</i>	mensonge <i>m.</i>	<i>lie</i>
poltronnerie	<i>cowardice</i>	fausseté	<i>falsehood</i>
opiniâtreté	<i>stubbornness</i>	conte <i>m.</i>	<i>tale</i>
obstination	<i>obstinacy</i>	serment	<i>oath</i>
cruauté	<i>cruelty</i>	malheur	<i>misfortune</i>
dispute	<i>dispute</i>	folie	<i>folly</i>
querelle	<i>quarrel</i>	extravagance	<i>madness</i>
brouillerie	<i>broil</i>	coutume	<i>custom</i>
babil	<i>babbling</i>	usage <i>m.</i>	<i>use</i>
caquet	<i>prating</i>	pratique	<i>practice, custom</i>
nonchalance	<i>carelessness</i>	habitude	<i>habit</i>
lâcheté	<i>sluggishness</i>	licence	<i>licentiousness</i>
prodigalité	<i>prodigality</i>	excès	<i>excess</i>
gourmandise	<i>gluttony</i>	tour	<i>trick</i>
impolitesse	<i>rudeness</i>	bagatelles <i>pl.</i>	<i>trifles</i>
incivilité	<i>incivility</i>	faute	<i>fault</i>
dissension	<i>dissension</i>	faiblesse	<i>weakness</i>
impatience	<i>impatience</i>	inconstance	<i>inconstancy</i>
imprudence	<i>imprudence</i>	ingratitude	<i>ungratefulness</i>
négligence	<i>negligence</i>	ambition	<i>ambition</i>
malhonnêteté	<i>rudeness</i>	faible <i>m.</i>	<i>foible</i>
déshonneur	<i>disgrace</i>	affront	<i>affront</i>
exil	<i>exile</i>	outrage <i>m.</i>	<i>outrage</i>
bannissement	<i>banishment</i>	insulte	<i>insult</i>

## IV. OF MEATS AND DRINKS.

nourriture	<i>nourishment</i>	souper	<i>supper</i>
alimens <i>pl.</i>	<i>food</i>	festin	<i>feast</i>
vivres <i>pl.</i>	<i>victuals</i>	régál	<i>treat</i>
provision	<i>provisions</i>	pain	<i>bread</i>
repas	<i>meal</i>	croûte	<i>crust</i>
déjeûner	<i>breakfast</i>	mie	<i>crumb</i>
dîner	<i>dinner</i>	farine	<i>flour</i>
	<i>formerly a light</i>	son	<i>bran</i>
goûter	<i>meal between</i>	pâte	<i>dough</i>
collation	<i>dinner and</i>	levain	<i>leaven</i>
	<i>supper</i>	morceau	<i>bit, morsel</i>

tranche	<i>slice</i>	sucré <i>m.</i>	<i>sugar</i>
bouchée	<i>mouthful</i>	cassonade	<i>moist sugar</i>
viande	<i>meat</i>	dessert	<i>dessert</i>
bouilli	<i>fresh boiled beef</i>	fruit	<i>fruit</i>
rôt, rôti	<i>roast meat</i>	pâté	<i>pie</i>
bœuf	<i>beef</i>	gâteau	<i>cake</i>
mouton	<i>mutton</i>	tourte, tarte	<i>tart</i>
agneau	<i>lamb</i>	biscuit	<i>biscuit</i>
veau	<i>veal</i>	macaron	<i>macaroon</i>
porc	<i>pork</i>	crêpes	<i>pancakes</i>
venaison	<i>venison</i>	confitures <i>pl.</i>	<i>sweetmeats</i>
volaille	<i>fowls</i>	gelée	<i>jelly</i>
gibier	<i>game</i>	marmelade	<i>marmalade</i>
gigot	<i>a leg of mutton</i>	consERVE	<i>preserves</i>
andouille	<i>chitterlings</i>	tablettes <i>pl.</i>	<i>lozenges, cakes</i>
saucisse	<i>sausage</i>	dragées <i>pl.</i>	<i>sugar-plums</i>
jambon	<i>ham</i>	pralines <i>pl.</i>	<i>burnt almonds</i>
lard	<i>bacon</i>	fromage <i>m.</i>	<i>cheese</i>
moutarde	<i>mustard</i>	beurre <i>m.</i>	<i>butter</i>
soupe	<i>soup</i>	lait	<i>milk</i>
potage <i>m.</i>	<i>potage</i>	crème	<i>cream</i>
bouillon	<i>broth</i>	œuf	<i>egg</i>
consommé	<i>gravy soup</i>	coque	<i>shell</i>
ragoût	<i>ragout</i>	blanc	<i>white</i>
fricassée	<i>fricassee</i>	jaune <i>m.</i>	<i>yolk</i>
jus	<i>gravy</i>	boisson	<i>drink</i>
sauce	<i>sauce</i>	liqueur	<i>liquor</i>
poisson	<i>fish</i>	thé	<i>tea</i>
salade	<i>sallad</i>	café	<i>coffee</i>
sel	<i>salt</i>	chocolat	<i>chocolate</i>
huile	<i>oil</i>	limonade	<i>lemonade</i>
vinaigre <i>m.</i>	<i>vinegar</i>	ponche <i>m.</i>	<i>punch</i>
verjus	<i>verjuice</i>	vin	<i>wine</i>
anchois	<i>anchovies</i>	bière	<i>beer</i>
épices <i>pl.</i>	<i>spices</i>	eau-de-vie	<i>brandy</i>
poivre <i>m.</i>	<i>pepper</i>	nectar	<i>nectar</i>
gingembre <i>m.</i>	<i>ginger</i>	ambrosie	<i>ambrosia</i>
muscade	<i>nutmeg</i>	cidre <i>m.</i>	<i>cider</i>
mâcis	<i>mace</i>	poiré	<i>perry</i>
girofle <i>m.</i>	} <i>cloves</i>	hydromel	<i>mead</i>
(clous de)		sirop	<i>syrup</i>
cannelle	<i>cinnamon</i>	lie	<i>dregs</i>
oublies <i>pl.</i>	<i>wafers</i>		

## V. OF THE DRESSING APPAREL, ETC.

habillement	<i>dress</i>	gilet de peau	<i>under waistcoat</i>
hardes	<i>clothes</i>	manches <i>pl.</i>	<i>sleeves</i>
habit	<i>coat</i>	poches <i>pl.</i>	<i>pockets</i>
habit complet	<i>a suit</i>	bouton	<i>button</i>
veste	} <i>jacket, round</i>	doublure	<i>lining</i>
		couture	<i>seam</i>
gilet	<i>waistcoat</i>	culotte	<i>breeches</i>
gilet de laine	<i>flannel waistcoat</i>	pantalon	<i>pantaloon</i>



gousset	<i>fob</i>	coiffe	<i>cap</i>
drap	<i>cloth</i>	collier	<i>necklace</i>
soie	<i>silk</i>	boucles	} <i>ear-rings</i>
velours	<i>velvet</i>	d'oreilles <i>pl.</i>	
serge	<i>serge</i>	gants <i>pl.</i>	<i>gloves</i>
basin	<i>dimity</i>	mitaines <i>pl.</i>	<i>mitten</i> s
flanelle	<i>flannel</i>	tablier	<i>apron</i>
étouffe	<i>stuff</i>	mules <i>pl.</i>	} <i>slippers</i>
manteau	<i>cloak</i>	pantoufles <i>pl.</i>	
surtout	<i>surtout</i>	bague	<i>ring</i>
redingote	<i>great coat</i>	bijou	<i>jewel</i>
linge <i>m.</i>	<i>linen</i>	bracelet	<i>bracelet</i>
toile	<i>linen</i>	dentelle	<i>lace</i>
batiste	<i>cambric</i>	blonde	<i>blond lace</i>
mousseline	<i>muslin</i>	éventail	<i>fan</i>
linon	<i>lawn</i>	manchon	<i>muff</i>
chemise	<i>shirt</i>	agrafe	<i>clasp</i>
jabot	<i>frill</i>	épingle	<i>pin</i>
cravate	<i>cravat</i>	aiguille	<i>needle</i>
bas <i>pl.</i>	<i>stockings</i>	étui	<i>case</i>
jarretières <i>pl.</i>	<i>garters</i>	dé	<i>thimble</i>
laine	<i>wool</i>	masque <i>m.</i>	<i>mask</i>
fil	<i>thread</i>	voile <i>m.</i>	<i>veil</i>
coton	<i>cotton</i>	tabatière	<i>snuff-box</i>
maille	<i>stitch</i>	tabac (en poudre)	<i>snuff</i>
trou	<i>hole</i>	tabac (à fumer)	<i>tobacco</i>
chaussons <i>pl.</i>	<i>socks</i>	bourse	<i>purse</i>
guêtres <i>pl.</i>	<i>gaiters</i>	argent	<i>money</i>
souliers	<i>shoes</i>	porte-feuille <i>m.</i>	<i>pocket-book</i>
escarpins <i>pl.</i>	<i>pumps</i>	ciseaux <i>pl.</i>	<i>scissors</i>
semelle	<i>sole</i>	crayon	<i>pencil</i>
bottes <i>pl.</i>	<i>boots</i>	mouchoir	<i>handkerchief</i>
boucles <i>pl.</i>	<i>buckles</i>	lunettes <i>pl.</i>	<i>spectacles</i>
cuir	<i>leather</i>	lorgnette	<i>opera-glass</i>
chapeau	<i>hat</i>	conserves <i>pl.</i>	<i>spectacles</i>
perruque	<i>wig</i>	bouquet	<i>nosegay</i>
jupe	<i>petticoat</i>	canne	<i>cane</i>
jupon	<i>under-petticoat</i>	cordon	<i>string</i>
satin	<i>satin</i>	épée	<i>sword</i>
taffetas	<i>taffety</i>	montre	<i>watch</i>
gaze	<i>gauze</i>	boite	<i>box or case</i>
coiffure	<i>head-dress</i>	chaîne	<i>chain</i>

## VI. OF A HOUSE AND FURNITURE.

maison	<i>house</i>	trône <i>m.</i>	<i>throne</i>
hôtel	<i>mansion</i>	sceptre <i>m.</i>	<i>sceptre</i>
—	<i>hotel, lodging</i>	aile	<i>wing</i>
	<i>house</i>	pavillon	<i>pavillion</i>
hôtellerie	<i>inn</i>	fondements <i>pl.</i>	<i>foundation</i>
château	} <i>castle, country</i>	mur, muraille	<i>wall</i>
		bâtiment	<i>building</i>
palais	<i>palace</i>	mâtériaux <i>pl.</i>	<i>materials</i>
couronne	<i>crown</i>	pierre	<i>stone</i>

brique	<i>brick</i>	marteau	<i>knocker</i>
mortier	<i>mortar</i>	serrure	<i>lock</i>
chaux	<i>lime</i>	clé, or clef	<i>key</i>
plâtre <i>m.</i>	<i>plaster</i>	verrou	<i>bolt</i>
ciment	<i>cement</i>	fenêtre	<i>window</i>
tuile	<i>tile</i>	vitre	<i>glass</i>
ardoise	<i>slate</i>	volet	<i>shutter</i>
charpente	<i>timber work</i>	balcon	<i>balcony</i>
poutre	<i>beam</i>	store <i>m.</i>	<i>blind</i>
solive	<i>joist</i>	grenier	<i>garret</i>
échelle	<i>ladder</i>	toit	<i>roof</i>
cave	<i>vault</i>	gouttière	<i>gutter</i>
cellier	<i>cellar</i>	malle	<i>trunk</i>
tonneau	<i>cask</i>	boîte	<i>box</i>
futaille	<i>vessel</i>	caisse	<i>chest</i>
boutique	<i>shop</i>	cassette	<i>casket</i>
atelier	<i>work-shop</i>	coffre <i>m.</i>	<i>coffer</i>
magasin	<i>warehouse</i>	logement	<i>lodging</i>
vestibule <i>m.</i>	<i>hall</i>	ameublement	<i>furniture</i>
salle	} <i>parlour or sitting</i>	cheminée	<i>chimney</i>
salon	} <i>room</i>	âtre <i>m.</i> foyer	<i>heart</i>
escalier	<i>stairs</i>	soufflet	<i>pair of bellows</i>
office	} <i>pantry, butler's</i>	pelle	<i>shovel</i>
	} <i>room</i>	pincettes <i>pl.</i>	<i>tongs</i>
cuisine	<i>kitchen</i>	fourgon	<i>poker</i>
garde-manger <i>m.</i>	<i>larder</i>	garde-feu <i>m.</i>	<i>fender</i>
boulangerie	<i>bakehouse</i>	bouilloire	<i>boiler</i>
brasserie	<i>brewhouse</i>	couvercle <i>m.</i>	<i>lid</i>
lingerie	<i>laundry</i>	poêle	<i>frying-pan</i>
écurie	<i>stable</i>	poêlon	<i>skillett</i>
remise	<i>coach-house</i>	casserole	<i>saucepan</i>
puits	<i>well</i>	fourneau	<i>stove</i>
étage <i>m.</i>	<i>story</i>	allumette	<i>match</i>
appartement	<i>apartment</i>	Pierre à fusil	<i>flint</i>
chambre	<i>room</i>	briquet	<i>steel</i>
antichambre	<i>anti-chamber</i>	four	<i>oven</i>
salle à manger	<i>dining room</i>	clou	<i>nail</i>
salon de com- pagnie	} <i>drawing-room</i>	essuie-main	<i>towel</i>
cabinet de toi- lette	} <i>dressing-room</i>	bassinoire	<i>warming-pan</i>
chambre à coucher	} <i>bed-room</i>	panier, cor- beille	} <i>basket</i>
galerie	<i>gallery</i>	faïence	<i>delft ware</i>
cabinet	<i>closet</i>	poterie	<i>earthenware</i>
boudoir	} <i>lady's sitting</i>	pot	<i>pot</i>
	} <i>room</i>	cruche	<i>pitcher</i>
garderobe	<i>wardrobe</i>	lampe	<i>lamp</i>
porte	<i>door</i>	lanterne	<i>lantern</i>
porte-cochère	<i>gate</i>	savon	<i>soap</i>
seuil	<i>threshold</i>	amidon	<i>starch</i>
jalousie	<i>lattice</i>	balai	<i>broom</i>
gond	<i>kinge</i>	banc	<i>seat, form</i>
		escabeau	<i>stool</i>
		plancher	<i>floor</i>

parquet	{ (drawing-room)	cire	wax
plafond	floor	mouchettes <i>pl.</i>	snuffers
lambris	ceiling	porte-mou-	{ snuffer-stand
cloison	wainscot	chette <i>m.</i>	
tapiserie	partition	éteignoir	extinguisher
	{ hangings, tapes-	vergettes <i>pl.</i>	brush
	try	buffet	cupboard
tapis	carpet, cloth	cabaret	stand
lit	bed	tasse	cup
alcove	alcove	soucoupe	saucer
châlit	bedstead	théière	tea-pot
chevet	bolster	cafetière	coffee-pot
oreiller	pillow	chocolatière	chocolate-pot
paillasse	straw mattras	sucrier	sugar-bason
matelas	mattress	jatte	bowl
draps <i>pl.</i>	sheets	table	table
couvertures <i>pl.</i>	bed-clothes	nappe	cloth
courte-pointe	counterpane	serviette	napkin
rideau	curtain	assiette	plate
tringle	curtain-rod	plat	dish
anneau	ring	couteau	knife
sofa	sofa	cuiller, ou cuil-	{ spoon
fauteuil	arm-chair	lière	
siège <i>m.</i>	seat	salière	salt-cellar
chaise	chair	huilier	oil cruet
coussin	cushion	moutardier	mustard pot
armoïre	press	aiguière	ewer
commode	chest of drawers	coupe, tasse	cup
trumeau	pier-lass	gobelet	goblet
toilette	toilet	verre <i>m.</i>	glass
miroir	looking-glass	bouteille	bottle
peigné <i>m.</i>	comb	bouchon	cork
pomade	pomatum	tire-bouchon <i>m.</i>	corkscrew
poudre	powder	carafe	flagon, decanter
houppes	puff	bibliothèque	library
parfum	perfume	bureau	bureau
tableau	picture	tiroir	drawer
dessin	drawing	cachet	seal
coloris	colouring	lettre	letter
portrait	portrait	enveloppe	cover
paysage <i>m.</i>	landscape	adresse	direction
miniature	miniature	signature	signature
chandelier	candlestick	sonnette	bell
bobèche	socket	estampe	print
chandelle	candle	médaille	medal
bougie	wax-light		

## VII. OF THE CITY.

ville	town, city	passage <i>m.</i>	passage
village <i>m.</i>	village	place	square
bourg	borough	cul-de-sac	blind alley
rue	street	pyramide	pyramid
carefour	cross-way	obélisque <i>m.</i>	obelisk



pavé	pavement	auberge	inn
ruisseau	kennel	café	coffee-house
marché	market	enseigne	sign
denrées <i>pl.</i>	provisions	affiche	bill
boucherie	meat market	pont	bridge
poissonnerie	fish market	arche	arch
friperie	rag fair	pilier	pillar
édifice <i>m.</i>	edifice	bateau	boat
façade	front	quai	quay
frontispice	frontispiece	bourse	exchange
colonne	column	banque	bank
pilastre <i>m.</i>	pilaster	agiotage <i>m.</i>	stock-jobbing
base	base	douane	custom-house
piédestal	pedestal	poste	general post
statue	statue	petite poste	twopenny post
arcade	arcade	trésorerie	treasury
portique <i>m.</i>	portico	amirauté	admiralty
aqueduc	aqueduct	arsenal	arsenal
dôme <i>m.</i>	dome	faubourg	suburbs
paroisse	parish	boulevards <i>pl.</i>	bulwarks
salle de comédie	play-house	remparts <i>pl.</i>	ramparts
théâtre <i>m.</i>	theatre	barrière	turnpike
coulisses <i>pl.</i>	scenes	guinguette	tea-garden
décorations	decorations	forge	forge
toile	curtain	verrerie	glass-house
foyer	green-room	fonderie	foundry
orchestre <i>m.</i>	orchestra	carosse <i>m.</i>	coach
parterre <i>m.</i>	pit	impériale	roof
loge	box	portière	door of a coach
amphithéâtre	first gallery	glaces <i>pl.</i>	windows
paradis	upper gallery	timon	coach-pole
billet	ticket	roue	wheel
couvent	convent	essieu	axle-tree
monastère <i>m.</i>	monastery	équipage <i>m.</i>	equipage
cellule	cell	harnois <i>pl.</i>	harness
hermitage <i>m.</i>	hermitage	rênes <i>pl.</i>	reins
solitude	solitude	bride	bridle
retraite	retirement	licou	halter
université	university	selle	saddle
collège <i>m.</i>	college	bât	pack-saddle.
école	school	arçon	saddle-bow
pension	boarding-school	sangle	girth
parlement	parliament	étriers <i>pl.</i>	stirrup
chambre des pairs	} house of lords	éperons <i>pl.</i>	spurs
chambre des communes		berline	berlin
prison	prison	cabrioles	curricie
cachot	dungeon	chaise	chaise
hôpital	hospital	fiacre <i>m.</i>	hackney-coach
infirmerie	infirmary	charrette	cart
taverne	tavern	fourgon	waggon
cabaret	public-house	remise	coach-house
		rasoir	razor
		cuir	strap

moule  
machine

*mould  
machine*

moulin

mill

# VIII. OF TRADES, ARTS, PROFESSIONS, ETC.

bouanger	<i>baker</i>	joaillier	<i>jeweller</i>
barbier	<i>barber</i>	menuisier	<i>joiner</i>
forgeron	<i>blacksmith</i>	serrurier	<i>locksmith</i>
relieur	<i>book-binder</i>	maçon	<i>bricklayer</i>
libraire m.	<i>bookseller</i>	couturière	<i>mantua-maker</i>
chaudronnier	<i>brazier</i>	maître d'hôtel	<i>steward</i>
brasseur	<i>brewer</i>	mercier	<i>mercier</i>
boucher	<i>butcher</i>	meûnier	<i>miller</i>
ébéniste	<i>cabinet-maker</i>	peintre	<i>painter</i>
charpentier	<i>carpenter</i>	pâtissier	<i>pastry-cook</i>
charron	<i>wheelwright</i>	paveur	<i>pavior</i>
sculpteur	<i>sculptor</i>	colporteur	<i>pedlar</i>
chimiste	<i>chymist</i>	parfumeur	<i>perfumer</i>
horloger	<i>clock-maker</i>	médecin	<i>physician</i>
confiseur	<i>confectioner</i>	plâtrier	<i>plasterer</i>
carrossier	<i>coach-maker</i>	plombier	<i>plumber</i>
tonnelier	<i>cooper</i>	potier	<i>potter</i>
corroyeur	<i>currier</i>	imprimeur	<i>printer</i>
coutelier	<i>cutler</i>	sellier	<i>saddler</i>
fourbisseur	<i>sword-cutler</i>	lingère	<i>sempstress</i>
teinturier	<i>dyer</i>	cordonnier	<i>shoe-maker</i>
distillateur	<i>distiller</i>	pelletier	<i>skinner</i>
droguiste	<i>druggist</i>	forgeron	<i>smith</i>
graveur	<i>engraver</i>	chirurgien	<i>surgeon</i>
maréchal	<i>farrier</i>	apothicaire	<i>apothecary</i>
poissonnier	<i>fishmonger</i>	arpenteur	<i>surveyor</i>
fondeur	<i>founder</i>	tailleur	<i>tailor</i>
fruitier	<i>fruiterer</i>	tanneur	<i>tanner</i>
fourreur	<i>furrier</i>	bijoutier	<i>jeweller</i>
jardinier	<i>gardener</i>	tourneur	<i>turner</i>
doreur	<i>gilder</i>	entrepreneur	<i>undertaker</i>
verrier	<i>glass-maker</i>	tapissier	<i>upholsterer</i>
vitrier	<i>glazier</i>	horloger	<i>watch-maker</i>
gantier	<i>glover</i>	tisserand	<i>weaver</i>
orfèvre	<i>goldsmith</i>	perruquier	<i>hair-dresser</i>
épicier	<i>grocer</i>	ouvrage	<i>work</i>
armurier	<i>gun-smith</i>	ouvrier	<i>workman</i>
chapelier	<i>hatter</i>	ouvrière	<i>workwoman</i>
aubergiste	<i>innkeeper</i>	manœuvre	<i>labourer</i>

# IX. OF THE COUNTRY, HUSBANDRY, FLOWERS, TREES, ETC.

campagne	<i>country</i>	hameau	<i>hamlet</i>
chemin	<i>way</i>	enclos	<i>close</i>
sentier	<i>foot-path</i>	château	<i>castle</i>
boue	<i>mud</i>	terre	<i>estate</i>
fange	<i>mire</i>	cour	<i>yard</i>
poussière	<i>dust</i>	basse-cour	<i>poultry-yard</i>
bourbier	<i>slough</i>	colombier	<i>pigeon-house</i>
ornières	<i>cart-rut</i>	laiterie	<i>dairy</i>

écurie  
fruiterie

*stable*  
*fruit-loft*

jardin  
jardinage *m.*

*garden*  
*gardening*

## X. FLOWERS.

fleuriste  
parterre  
fleur  
iris  
primevère  
narcisse *m.*  
jacinthe  
tulipe  
violette  
pensée  
églantier  
marguerite  
impériale  
martagon  
lis  
muguet  
oreille d'ours  
anémone  
renoncule  
jonquille  
giroflée  
œillet  
campanule  
gantelée  
rose  
jasmin

*florist*  
*parterre*  
*flower*  
*flags*  
*cowslip*  
*narcissus*  
*hyacinth*  
*tulip*  
*violet*  
*heartsease*  
*sweet-briar*  
*daisy*  
*turk's cap*  
*mountain lily*  
*lily*  
*may-lily*  
*auricula*  
*anemone*  
*ranunculus*  
*jonquil*  
*stock-gilliflower*  
*carnation*  
} *bell flower*  
*rose*  
*jasmine*

tubéreuse  
réseda  
chèvre-feuille *m.*  
seringat  
lilas  
souci  
amaranthe  
pavot  
coquelicot  
ponceau  
bluet, barbeau  
tournesol  
camomille  
belle-de-nuit  
éternelle  
immortelle  
balsamine  
ancolie  
passe-rose  
hépatique  
pied d'alouette  
pivoine  
scabieuse  
julienne  
planche  
plate bande

*tuberosc*  
*mignonette*  
*honey-suckle*  
*seringa*  
*lilac*  
*marigold*  
*amaranth*  
*poppy*  
} *wild-poppy*  
*blue-bell*  
*sun flower*  
*camomile*  
*great nightshade*  
} *cassidony*  
*balsam*  
*colombine*  
*hollyhock*  
*hepatica*  
*lark spur*  
*piony*  
*scabious*  
*rocket*  
*bed*  
*flower-border*

## XI. FRUITS.

amande  
pomme  
abricot  
cerise  
guigne  
châtaigne  
marron  
groseilles *pl.*  
groseille  
figue  
aveline  
raisin  
prune  
reine-claude  
citron  
ananas  
nèfle

*almond*  
*apple*  
*apricot*  
*cherry*  
} *black heart*  
} *cherry*  
*chesnut*  
*large chesnut*  
*currants*  
*gooseberry*  
*fig*  
*filbert*  
*grapes*  
*plum*  
*green-gage*  
*lemon*  
*pine apple*  
*medlar*

melon  
mûre  
brugnon  
noisette  
orange  
pêche  
poire  
citrouille  
coin  
framboise  
fraise  
noix  
épine-vinette  
grenade  
olive  
cerneaux

*melon*  
*mulberry*  
*nectarine*  
*hazel-nut*  
*orange*  
*peach*  
*pear*  
*pumpion*  
*quince*  
*raspberry*  
*strawberry*  
*walnut*  
*barberries*  
*pomegranate*  
*olive*  
} *fresh or unripe*  
} *walnuts*



## XII. OF HERES AND PLANTS.

aloès	<i>aloe</i>	moutarde	<i>mustard</i>
angelique	<i>angelica</i>	capucine	<i>nasturtium</i>
artichaut	<i>artichoke</i>	ortie	<i>nettle</i>
asperge	<i>asparagus</i>	ognon	<i>onion</i>
citron	<i>plant</i>	persil	<i>parsley</i>
basilic	<i>basil</i>	panais	<i>parsnip</i>
fève	<i>bean</i>	pois	<i>peas</i>
haricot	<i>French bean</i>	pariétaire	<i>pellitory</i>
poirée	<i>beet</i>	plante	<i>plant</i>
betterave	<i>beet-root</i>	plantain	<i>plantain</i>
bourrache	<i>borage</i>	pavot	<i>poppy</i>
bardane	<i>burdock</i>	pomme de terre	<i>potatoe</i>
primprenelle	<i>burnet</i>	courge	<i>pumpkin</i>
chou	<i>cabbage</i>	pourpier	<i>purslain</i>
carotte	<i>carrot</i>	rave	<i>radish</i>
céleri	<i>celery</i>	radis	<i>Spanish radish</i>
cerfeuil	<i>chervil</i>	roseau	<i>reed</i>
choux-fleurs pl.	<i>cauliflowers</i>	rue	<i>rue</i>
mâches pl.	<i>corn-salad</i>	jonc	<i>rush</i>
cresson	<i>cresses</i>	rhubarbe	<i>rhubarb</i>
concombre m.	<i>cucumber</i>	safran	<i>saffron</i>
dent-de-lion	<i>dandelion</i>	sauge	<i>sage</i>
patience	<i>dock</i>	sariette	<i>savery</i>
chicorée	<i>endive</i>	ciboule	<i>scullion</i>
fenouil	<i>fennel</i>	échalotte	<i>shallot</i>
fougère	<i>fern</i>	oseille	<i>sorrel</i>
ail	<i>garlick</i>	véronique	<i>speedwell</i>
calebasse	<i>gourd</i>	épinards pl.	<i>spinage</i>
ciguë	<i>hemlock</i>	tanaisie	<i>tansy</i>
herbe	<i>herb</i>	ivraie	<i>tare</i>
raifort	<i>horse-radish</i>	estragon	<i>stragon</i>
joubarbe	<i>house-leek</i>	chardon	<i>thistle</i>
lierre m.	<i>ivy</i>	thym	<i>thyme</i>
poireau	<i>leek</i>	serpolet	<i>wild thyme</i>
laitue	<i>lettuce</i>	trêfle m.	<i>clover</i>
réglisse	<i>licorice</i>	navet	<i>turnip</i>
mauve	<i>mallows</i>	valériane	<i>valerian</i>
guimauve	<i>marsh-mallows</i>	végétaux pl.	<i>vegetables</i>
marjolaine	<i>marjoram</i>	légumes m. pl. }	<i>vegetables</i>
réséda	<i>mignonette</i>		<i>greens</i>
menthe	<i>mint</i>	verveine	<i>vervain</i>
gui	<i>mistletoe</i>	absynthe	<i>wormwood</i>
mousse	<i>moss</i>	mille-feuille	<i>yarrow</i>

## XIII. OF TREES AND SHRUBS.

arbre m.	<i>tree</i>	graine	<i>seed</i>
arbrisseau	<i>shrub</i>	rejeton	<i>sucker</i>
écorce	<i>bark</i>	abricotier	<i>apricot-tree</i>
branche	<i>branch</i>	cerisier	<i>cherry-tree</i>
feuille	<i>leaf</i>	châtaignier	<i>chestnut-tree</i>

citronnier  
coignassier  
figuier  
noyer  
oranger  
pêcher  
pommier  
poirier  
prunier  
arbousier  
frêne  
tremble  
hêtre  
bouleau  
buis  
genêt  
sureau

*lemon-tree*  
*quince-tree*  
*fig-tree*  
*walnut-tree*  
*orange-tree*  
*peach-tree*  
*apple-tree*  
*pear-tree*  
*plumb-tree*  
*arbutus*  
*ash-tree*  
*aspen*  
*beech-tree*  
*birch-tree*  
*box*  
*broom*  
*elder-tree*

orme  
sapin  
coudrier  
houx  
lilas  
tilleul  
myrte  
chêne  
osier  
romarin  
églantier  
épine  
buisson  
aubépine  
vigne  
saule  
if

*elm*  
*fir-tree*  
*hazel-tree*  
*holly*  
*lilac*  
*lime-tree*  
*myrtle-tree*  
*oak*  
*osier*  
*rosemary*  
*sweet brier*  
*thorn*  
*thorn bush*  
*white-thorn*  
*vine*  
*willow tree*  
*yew-tree*

## XIV. PROMISCUOUS WORDS.

grange  
hutte  
chaumière  
seigneurie  
dîme  
métairie  
sillon  
pré, prairie  
arpent  
fossé  
champ  
pâturage m.  
terroir  
parc  
haie  
bruyère  
dunes  
lande  
commune  
plaine  
garenne  
fondrière  
marais  
platebande  
serre  
serre chaude  
boulingrin  
berceau  
bosquet  
grotte  
vignoble m.  
pépinière  
taillis  
hallier

*barn*  
*hut*  
*thatched-house*  
*manor*  
*tithe*  
*farm*  
*furrow*  
*meadow*  
*acre*  
*ditch*  
*field*  
*pasture-ground*  
*soil*  
*park*  
*hedge*  
*heath*  
*downs*  
*waste land*  
*common*  
*plain*  
*warren*  
*bog*  
*marsh*  
*border*  
*green-house*  
*hot-house*  
*bowling-green*  
*bower*  
*grove*  
*grotto*  
*vineyard*  
*nursery*  
*coppice*  
*thicket*

*paysage m.*  
*perspective*  
*vue*  
*cascade*  
*canal*  
*agriculture*  
*labourage m.*  
*bétail*  
*fumier*  
*terreau*  
*récolte*  
*moisson*  
*vendange*  
*houblon*  
*grain*  
*blé*  
*orge*  
*avoine*  
*riz*  
*seigle m.*  
*millet*  
*lin*  
*chanvre m.*  
*chènevis*  
*épi*  
*gerbe*  
*tige*  
*tuyau*  
*paille*  
*chaume m.*  
*foin*  
*fouillage m.*  
*fermier*  
*paysan*

*landscape*  
*prospect*  
*view*  
*cascade*  
*canal*  
*agriculture*  
*tillage*  
*cattle*  
*dung*  
*mould*  
*crop*  
*harvest*  
*vintage*  
*hops*  
*corn*  
*wheat*  
*barley*  
*oats*  
*rice*  
*rye*  
*millet*  
*flax*  
*hemp*  
*hemp-seed*  
*ear (of corn)*  
*sheaf (of corn)*  
*stalk*  
*blade*  
*straw*  
*stubble*  
*hay*  
*fodder*  
*farmer*  
*peasant*

laboureur  
moissonneur

*ploughman*  
*reaper*

faucheur  
berger

*mower*  
*shepherd*

## XV. OF QUADRUPEDS.

bête	<i>beast</i>	daim mâle	<i>buck</i>
animal	<i>animal</i>	daim femelle	<i>doe</i>
animal do- mestique }	<i>domestic animal</i>	chevreuil	<i>roe-buck</i>
bête de somme	<i>beast of burden</i>	chevrette	<i>roe</i>
monture	<i>saddle horse</i>	lion	<i>lion</i>
cheval	<i>horse</i>	lionne	<i>lioness</i>
cavalle	<i>mare</i>	lionceau	<i>lion's whelp</i>
jument	<i>mare</i>	tigre	<i>tiger</i>
étalon	<i>stallion</i>	tigresse	<i>tigress</i>
poulain	<i>colt</i>	ours	<i>bear</i>
pouliche	<i>filly</i>	ourson	<i>bear's cub</i>
bidet	<i>pony</i>	zèbre <i>m.</i>	<i>zebra</i>
âne	<i>ass</i>	giraffe	<i>camel-leopard</i>
ânesse	<i>she-ass</i>	léopard	<i>leopard</i>
ânon	<i>young ass</i>	caméléopard	<i>camel-leopard</i>
mulet	<i>mule</i>	rhinocéros	<i>rhinoceros</i>
mule	<i>she-mule</i>	hippopotame, <i>m.</i>	<i>river-horse</i>
bête à cornes	<i>horned beast</i>	éléphant	<i>elephant</i>
bœuf	<i>ox</i>	chameau	<i>camel</i>
buffle <i>m.</i>	<i>buffalo</i>	dromadaire <i>m.</i>	<i>dromedary</i>
taureau	<i>bull</i>	lama	<i>lama</i>
vache	<i>cow</i>	buffle <i>m.</i>	<i>buffalo</i>
génisse	<i>heifer</i>	hiène	<i>hyena</i>
veau	<i>calf</i>	panthère	<i>panther</i>
bouvillon	<i>bullock</i>	once	<i>ounce</i>
renne <i>m.</i>	<i>rein-deer</i>	licorne	<i>unicorn</i>
brebis	<i>ewe</i>	élan	<i>elk</i>
mouton	<i>wether</i>	loup	<i>wolf</i>
bélier	<i>ram</i>	louve	<i>she-wolf</i>
agneau	<i>lamb</i>	louveteau	<i>wolf's cub</i>
chèvre	<i>she-goat</i>	lynx	<i>lynx</i>
bouc	<i>he-goat</i>	renard	<i>fox</i>
chevreau	<i>kid</i>	taisson	<i>brock</i>
cochon	<i>hog</i>	blaireau	<i>badger</i>
porc	<i>pig</i>	castor	<i>beaver</i>
pourceau	<i>pig</i>	hermine	<i>ermine</i>
truie	<i>sow</i>	marte, zibelino	<i>marten, sable</i>
cochon de lait	<i>sucking pig</i>	écureuil	<i>squirrel</i>
cochon d'inde	<i>guinea pig</i>	hérisson	<i>hedge-hog</i>
verrat	<i>boar</i>	porc-épic	<i>porcupine</i>
sanglier	<i>wild boar</i>	loutre	<i>otter</i>
laie	<i>wild sow</i>	raton	<i>raccoon</i>
marcassin	<i>young wild boar</i>	furet	<i>ferret</i>
bête fauve	<i>deer</i>	lièvre	<i>hare</i>
cerf	<i>stag</i>	hase	<i>doe-hare</i>
biche	<i>hind</i>	levraut	<i>leveret</i>
faon	<i>fawn</i>	lapin	<i>rabbit</i>
daim	<i>fellow-dear</i>	chien	<i>dog</i>
		chienne	<i>bitch</i>



lévrier	<i>greyhound</i>	fouine	<i>pole-cat</i>
levrette	<i>greyhound bitch</i>	loir	<i>dormouse</i>
dogue	<i>bull dog</i>	marmotte	<i>marmot</i>
mâtin	<i>mastiff</i>	taupe	<i>mole</i>
limier	<i>blood-hound</i>	rat	<i>rat</i>
bichon	<i>lap-dog</i>	souris	<i>mouse</i>
épagneul	<i>spaniel</i>	tortue	<i>tortoise</i>
basset	<i>terrier</i>	bétail, bestiaux	<i>cattle</i>
barbet	<i>shagged-dog</i>	troupeau	<i>flock, herd</i>
chien d'arrêt	<i>pointer</i>	pâtre, berger	<i>shepherd</i>
meute de chiens	<i>pack of hounds</i>	bergère	<i>shepherdess</i>
chat, matou	<i>cat, tom-cat</i>	vacher, bouvier	<i>cow-herd</i>
chatte	<i>cat, puss</i>	porcher	<i>swine-herd</i>
chaton	<i>kitten</i>	chasse	<i>hunting</i>
minon	<i>puss</i>	chasseur	<i>hunter</i>
minet, minette	<i>young kitten</i>	braconnier	<i>poacher</i>
singe m.	<i>monkey</i>	gibier, venaison	<i>game</i>
guenon	<i>ape</i>	fusil	<i>gun</i>
magot, babouin	<i>baboon</i>	gibecière	<i>pouch</i>
gazelle	<i>antelope</i>	tiré	<i>shooting</i>
belette	<i>weasel</i>	tireur	<i>shooter</i>
putois	<i>pole-cat</i>	garde-chasse	<i>gamekeeper</i>

## XVI. OF BIRDS.

oiseau	<i>bird</i>	rossignol	<i>nightingale</i>
oiselet, oisillon	<i>little bird</i>	chardonneret	<i>goldfinch</i>
volaille	<i>fowl</i>	pinson	<i>chaffinch</i>
coq	<i>cock</i>	verdiér	<i>greenfinch</i>
poule	<i>hen</i>	bouvreuil	<i>bullfinch</i>
poulet	<i>chicken</i>	linot, linette	<i>linnet</i>
poussin	<i>young chicken</i>	rougegorge m.	<i>redbreast, robin</i>
cochet	<i>cockerel</i>	merle m.	<i>blackbird</i>
poularde	<i>pullet</i>	grive	<i>thrush</i>
chapon	<i>capon</i>	geai	<i>jay</i>
coq-d'Inde, } dindon }	<i>turkey-cock</i>	pie	<i>magpie</i>
dinde	<i>turkey-hen</i>	alouette	<i>lark</i>
dindonneau	<i>young turkey</i>	bergeronnette	<i>wagtail</i>
oie	<i>goose</i>	alcyon, ou }	<i>king's fisher</i>
jar	<i>gander</i>	martin-pêcheur }	
oison	<i>gosling</i>	pivert	<i>wood-pecker</i>
canard	<i>drake</i>	mésange	<i>tit</i>
cane	<i>duck</i>	pluvier	<i>plover</i>
caneton, canette	<i>duckling</i>	roitelet	<i>wren</i>
pigeon	<i>pigeon</i>	vanneau	<i>lapwing</i>
colombe	<i>dove</i>	butor	<i>bittern</i>
serin, canari	<i>canary bird</i>	becfigue m.	<i>beccafico</i>
perroquet	<i>parrot</i>	étourneau	<i>starling</i>
perruque	<i>parroquet</i>	sansonnet	<i>starling</i>
moineau, pas- } sereau }	<i>sparrow</i>	bruant	<i>yellow-hammer</i>
hirondelle	<i>swallow</i>	coucou	<i>cuckoo</i>
martinet	<i>martin</i>	freux, grolle	<i>rook</i>
		corbeau	<i>raven</i>
		corneille	<i>crow</i>

hibou	<i>owl</i>	ortolan	<i>ortolan</i>
chouette	<i>screech-owl</i>	tourterelle	<i>turtle dove</i>
buse	<i>buzzard</i>	gêlinotte	<i>godwit</i>
choucas	<i>chough</i>	francolin	<i>francoline</i>
aigle	<i>eagle</i>	ramier	<i>wood-pigeon</i>
aiglon	<i>aglet</i>	marcuse	<i>sea-duck</i>
épervier	<i>esparrow-hawk</i>	sarcelle	<i>teal</i>
émouchet	<i>musket-hawk</i>	grue	<i>crane</i>
milan	<i>kite</i>	courlis	<i>curlew</i>
faucou	<i>falcon</i>	foulque	{ <i>coot, moorcock,</i> <i>or hen</i>
cormoran	<i>cormorant</i>	poule d'eau	
plongeon	<i>diver</i>	paon	<i>moor-hen</i>
héron	<i>heron</i>	paonne	<i>peacock</i>
cicogne	<i>stork</i>	paonneau	<i>peahen</i>
outarde	<i>bustard</i>	cygne m.	<i>young peacock</i>
pélican	<i>pelican</i>	autruche	<i>swan</i>
autour	<i>goshawk</i>	pintade	<i>ostrich</i>
vautour	<i>vulture</i>	fou-de-bassan	<i>pintado</i>
griffon	<i>griffin</i>	pingoin	<i>gannet</i>
huppe	<i>lapwing</i>	chauve-souris	<i>razor-bill</i>
mouette	<i>gull</i>	chasse aux	{ <i>lat</i> <i>fowling</i>
perdrix	<i>partridge</i>	oiseaux	
bartavelle	{ <i>large red par-</i> <i>tridge</i>	appeau	<i>bird-call</i>
perdreau		gluaux	<i>lime twigs</i>
caille	<i>quail</i>	trébuchet	<i>bird trap</i>
cailleteau	<i>young quail</i>	filets	<i>nets</i>
faisan	<i>pheasant</i>	oiseleur	<i>bird-catcher</i>
faisandeau	<i>young pheasant</i>	oiselier	<i>bird-seller</i>
bécasse	<i>woodcock</i>	volière	<i>aviary</i>
bécassine	<i>snipe</i>		

## XVII. OF FISHES.

poisson	<i>fish</i>	sardine	<i>sprat</i>
esturgeon	<i>sturgeon</i>	thon	<i>tunny</i>
turbot	<i>turbot</i>	plie	<i>plaice</i>
saumon	<i>salmon</i>	congre m.	<i>conger</i>
rouget	<i>roach</i>	merlan	<i>whiting</i>
brochet	<i>pike</i>	merluche	<i>haddock</i>
carpe	<i>carp</i>	hareng	<i>herring</i>
truite	<i>trout</i>	sèche	<i>cuttle fish</i>
perche	<i>perch</i>	limande	<i>burt, bret-fish</i>
cabillaud	<i>haddock</i>	lamproie	<i>lamprey</i>
morue	<i>stock fish</i>	homard, lan-	{ <i>lobster</i>
raie	<i>skate</i>	gouste	
tanche	<i>tench</i>	écrevisse de	
éperlan	<i>smelt</i>	mer	
maquereau	<i>mackerel</i>	écrevisse	<i>crawfish</i>
surmulet	<i>mullet</i>	crab m.	<i>crab</i>
carrelet	<i>flounder</i>	salicoque	<i>prawn</i>
barbeau	<i>barbel</i>	chevrette	<i>shrimp</i>
alose	<i>shad</i>	anguille	<i>eel</i>
sole	<i>sole</i>	anchois	<i>anchovy</i>

goujon	<i>gudgeon</i>	chien marin	<i>sea-dog</i>
véron	<i>minnow</i>	loup marin	<i>sea-wolf</i>
lotte, barbotte	<i>eel-pout</i>	hérisson de mer	<i>sea-urchin</i>
loche	{ <i>loach, ground-</i>	frai	<i>fry</i>
	<i>ling</i>	fretin	<i>young fish</i>
morue salée	<i>salt-fish</i>	laite	<i>soft roe</i>
barbue	<i>brill</i>	œufs	<i>spawn, hard roe</i>
marsoin	{ <i>sea-hog, por-</i>	museau	<i>snout</i>
	<i>poise</i>	oules	<i>gills</i>
espadon	<i>saw-fish</i>	nageoirs	<i>fins</i>
porcelaine	<i>sea-snail</i>	écailles	{ <i>scales</i>
tortue	<i>tortoise</i>	coquilles	
huître	<i>oyster</i>	arrêtes	<i>bones</i>
pétoncle	<i>cockle</i>	pinces	<i>claws</i>
moule	<i>muscle</i>	appât, amorce	<i>bait</i>
baleine	<i>whale</i>	pêcheur	<i>fisherman</i>
cachalot	<i>cachalot</i>	pêche	<i>fishery</i>
requin	<i>shark</i>	pêche à la ligne	<i>angling</i>
dauphin	<i>dolphin</i>		

## XVIII. OF REPTILES AND INSECTS.

grenouille	<i>frog</i>	tique	<i>tick</i>
serpent	<i>serpent</i>	pou	<i>louse</i>
couleuvre	<i>adder</i>	lente	<i>nit</i>
vipère	<i>viper</i>	puce	<i>flea</i>
scorpion	<i>scorpion</i>	punaise	<i>bug</i>
aspic	<i>aspick</i>	chenille	<i>caterpillar</i>
basilic	<i>basilisk</i>	papillon	<i>butterfly</i>
dragon	<i>dragon</i>	mouche	<i>fly</i>
tarentule	<i>tarantula</i>	abeille	<i>bee</i>
crapeau	<i>toad</i>	frelon	<i>hornet</i>
lézard	<i>lizard</i>	bourdon	<i>drone</i>
sangsue	<i>leech</i>	guêpe	<i>wasp</i>
limace	<i>slug</i>	taon	<i>ox-fly</i>
ver	<i>worm</i>	cousin	<i>gnat</i>
ver-luisant	<i>glow-worm</i>	cantharide	<i>Spanish-fly</i>
ver-coquin	<i>vine-grub</i>	haneton	<i>cockchafer</i>
ver-à-soie	<i>silk-worm</i>	sauterelle	<i>grasshopper</i>
escargot	<i>snail</i>	cigale	<i>balm-cricket</i>
escarbot	<i>beetle</i>	araignée	<i>spider</i>
grillon	<i>cricket</i>	toile d'araignée	<i>cobweb</i>
perce-oreille m.	<i>ear-wig</i>	essaim d'abeilles	<i>swarms of bees</i>
teigne	<i>moth</i>	miel	<i>honey</i>
ciron	<i>hand worm</i>	cire	<i>wax</i>
fourmi	<i>ant</i>	rayon de miel	<i>honeycomb</i>
charançon	<i>weevil</i>	ruche	<i>hive</i>
cloporte m.	<i>wood-louse</i>	fourmilière	<i>ant-hill</i>

## XIX. OF METALS, &amp;c.

or	<i>gold</i>	cuivre	<i>copper</i>
argent	<i>silver</i>	airain	<i>brass</i>
platine	<i>platina</i>	laiton	<i>latten</i>
vermeil	<i>silver-gilt</i>	bronze	<i>bronze</i>



similor	<i>pinchbeck</i>	salpêtre	<i>saltpetre</i>
fer	<i>iron</i>	bitume	<i>bitumen</i>
fil d'archal	<i>wire</i>	antimoine	<i>antimony</i>
acier	<i>steel</i>	arsenic	<i>arsenic</i>
fer-blanc	<i>iron-tinned</i>	alun	<i>alum</i>
étain	<i>pewter</i>	couperose f.	<i>copperas</i>
plomb	<i>lead</i>	vitriol	<i>vitriol</i>
mercure	<i>mercury</i>	carmin	<i>carmine</i>
vif-argent	<i>quicksilver</i>	pastel	<i>pastel</i>
soufre	<i>sulphur</i>	ocre f.	<i>ochre</i>
nitre	<i>nitre</i>	vermillon	<i>read lead</i>

## XX. OF COLOURS.

blanc	<i>white</i>	rouge	<i>red</i>
noir	<i>black</i>	jaune	<i>yellow</i>
bleu	<i>blue</i>	brun	<i>brown</i>
vert	<i>green</i>	pourpre	<i>purple</i>
gris	<i>grey</i>	écarlate	<i>scarlet</i>
orangé	<i>orange colour</i>	indigo	<i>indigo</i>

## XXI. OF PRECIOUS STONES.

diamant	<i>diamond</i>	améthyste	<i>amethyst</i>
topaze	<i>topaz</i>	cornaline	<i>cornelian</i>
émeraude	<i>emerald</i>	onix	<i>onyx</i>
saphir	<i>sapphire</i>	agate	<i>agate</i>
escarboucle	<i>carbuncle</i>	corail	<i>coral</i>
rubis	<i>ruby</i>	perle	<i>pearl</i>

## XXII. OF THE PRINCIPAL COUNTRIES.

France	<i>France</i>	Chine	<i>China</i>
Italie	<i>Italy</i>	Mogol	<i>Mogul</i>
Espagne	<i>Spain</i>	Bengale	<i>Bengal</i>
Portugal	<i>Portugal</i>	Malabar	<i>Malabar</i>
Turquie	<i>Turkey</i>	le Japon	<i>Japan</i>
Allemagne	<i>Germany</i>	Barbarie	<i>Barbary</i>
Suisse	<i>Switzerland</i>	Egypte	<i>Egypt</i>
Prusse	<i>Prussia</i>	Biledulgerid	<i>Biledulgerid</i>
Pologne	<i>Poland</i>	Zaara	<i>Zaara</i>
Bohême	<i>Bohemia</i>	Nigritie	<i>Nigritia</i>
Hongrie	<i>Hungary</i>	Guinée	<i>Guinea</i>
Hollande	<i>Holland</i>	Ethiopie	<i>Ethiopia</i>
les Pays-Bas	<i>the Netherlands</i>	Zanguebar	<i>Zanguebar</i>
Angleterre	<i>England</i>	Monomotapa	<i>Monomotapa</i>
Ecosse	<i>Scotland</i>	Monoémugi	<i>Monoemugi</i>
Irlande	<i>Ireland</i>	Caffrerie	<i>Caffraria</i>
Russie	<i>Russia</i>	Abbyssinie	<i>Abyssinia</i>
Danemarck	<i>Denmark</i>	Canada	<i>Canada</i>
Suède	<i>Sweden</i>	Pensylvanie	<i>Pennsylvania</i>
Norvège	<i>Norway</i>	le Maryland	<i>Maryland</i>
Tartarie	<i>Tartary</i>	la Virginie	<i>Virginia</i>
Arabie	<i>Arabia</i>	la Caroline	<i>Carolina</i>
Perse	<i>Persia</i>	la Géorgie	<i>Georgia</i>
Inde	<i>India</i>	le Pérou	<i>Peru</i>

le Paraguay	<i>Paraguay</i>	la Guiane	<i>Guiana</i>
le Chili	<i>Chili</i>	St. Dominigue	<i>St. Domingo</i>
le Brésil	<i>Brazil</i>	la Jamaïque	<i>Jamaica</i>

## XXIII. COMMON NATIONAL NAMES.

Français, <i>e</i>	<i>French</i>	Flamand, <i>e</i>	<i>Flemish</i>
Italien, <i>ne</i>	<i>Italian</i>	Anglais, <i>e</i>	<i>English</i>
Espagnol, <i>e</i>	<i>Spanish</i>	Ecossais, <i>e</i>	<i>Scotch</i>
Portugais, <i>e</i>	<i>Portuguese</i>	Irlandais, <i>e</i>	<i>Irish</i>
Turc, <i>que</i>	<i>Turkish, Turk</i>	Russe	<i>Russian</i>
Allemand, <i>e</i>	<i>German</i>	Danois, <i>e</i>	<i>Dane</i>
Prussien, <i>ne</i>	<i>Prussian</i>	Suédois, <i>e</i>	<i>Swede</i>
Suisse, <i>esse</i>	<i>Swiss</i>	Norvégien, <i>ne</i>	<i>Norwegian</i>
Polonais, <i>e</i>	<i>Pole</i>	Persan, <i>e</i>	<i>Persian</i>
Bohémien, <i>ne</i>	<i>Bohemian</i>	Chinois, <i>e</i>	<i>Chinese</i>
Hongrois, <i>e</i>	<i>Hungarian</i>	Américain, <i>e</i>	<i>American</i>
Hollandais, <i>e</i>	<i>Dutch</i>	Japon, <i>e</i>	<i>Japanese</i>
Autrichien, <i>ne</i>	<i>Austrian</i>	Lapon	<i>Laplander</i>

---

## INTRODUCTION TO THE EXERCISES.

### 22. OF THE PREPOSITIONS *of*, *from*, *to*, AND OF THE ARTICLE *the*, *a*.

The English definite article *the*, is rendered by

*le* before a noun masculine } in the singular.  
*la* before a noun feminine }

and *les* before nouns of either gender, in the plural.

The indefinite *a* or *an* is rendered by *un* before a noun masculine, and by *une* in the feminine.

#### EXAMPLES.

<i>Le livre</i>	<i>the book</i>	<i>un homme</i>	<i>a man</i>
<i>la rue</i>	<i>the street</i>	<i>une femme</i>	<i>a woman</i>
<i>les plantes</i>	<i>the plants</i>	<i>un héros</i>	<i>a hero</i>

#### EXERCISES.

<i>The wood ;</i> <i>bois m.</i>	<i>the forest ;</i> <i>forêt f.</i>	<i>the houses ;</i> <i>maisons pl.</i>	<i>the men ;</i> <i>hommes pl.</i>	<i>the court ;</i> <i>cour f.</i>	
<i>the foot ;</i> <i>pied m.</i>	<i>the arms ;</i> <i>bras pl.</i>	<i>the room ;</i> <i>chambre f.</i>	<i>the garden ;</i> <i>jardin m.</i>	<i>the windows ;</i> <i>fenêtres pl.</i>	
<i>a history ;</i> <i>histoire f.</i>	<i>a novel ;</i> <i>roman m.</i>	<i>a foreigner ;</i> <i>étranger m.</i>	<i>a walk ;</i> <i>promenade f.</i>	<i>a day ;</i> <i>jour m.</i>	
<i>a night ;</i> <i>nuit f.</i>	<i>the sun ;</i> <i>soleil m.</i>	<i>the moon ;</i> <i>lune f.</i>	<i>the stars ;</i> <i>étoiles pl.</i>	<i>a body ;</i> <i>corps m.</i>	<i>a card ;</i> <i>carte f.</i>
<i>a crown.</i> <i>écu m.</i>					

23. The prepositions *of* and *from* are rendered literally by *de* and *to* by *à*.

When followed by the definite article, they are rendered in this manner :

<i>of the</i>	{	<i>du</i> * before a noun masculine singular beginning with <i>a</i>
<i>and</i>		<i>consonant</i> or <i>h</i> aspirated
<i>from the,</i>		<i>de la</i> before a noun feminine singular
<i>by</i>		<i>de l'</i> before any noun beginning with <i>a vowel</i> or <i>h</i> mute
		<i>des</i> before any noun in the plural.

---

\* Observe that you must not say *de le*, *à le*, *de les*, *à les*, but that the article and preposition are contracted into one word, *du*, *au*, *des*, *aux*.



to the by, { *au* before a noun masculine singular beginning with a consonant or *h* aspirated  
                   { *à la* before a noun feminine singular  
                   { *à l'* before any noun beginning with a vowel or *h* mute  
                   { *aux* before any noun in the plural.

And when these prepositions are followed by *a* or *an*, thus :

of a or } by { *d'un* before a noun masculine  
 from a } { *d'une* before a noun feminine  
           { *à un* before a noun masculine  
           { *à une* before a noun feminine.

## EXAMPLES.

Du parc	of the park	à l'esprit	to the mind
de la rivière	of the river	aux carrosses	to the coaches
de l'esprit	of the mind	d'un jour	of a day
des carrosses	of the coaches	d'une nuit	of a night
au parc	to the park	à un jour	to a day
à la rivière	to the river	à une nuit	to a night

## EXERCISES.

The palace of the king ; of the queen ; of the man ; of the  
       palais m.        roi m.        reine f.        homme h m.  
 men ; to the king ; to the queen ; to the man ; to the men ;  
 hommes pl.  
 from a balcony ; from a window ; of a prince ; to a princess ;  
       balcon m.        fenêtre f.        — m.        princesse f.  
 of the gardens ; of the evening ; to the courtiers ; of a table ;  
       jardins pl.        soir m.        courtisans pl.        — f.  
 to the master ; to a lady ; of the soul ; of the horse ; to a cat ;  
       maître m.        dame f.        âme f.        cheval m.        chat m.  
 of the houses ; of a carpet.  
       maisons pl.        tapis m.

24. These same prepositions, when followed by the possessive pronouns, *my*, *thy*, *his*, *her*, *its*, *our*, *your*, and *their*, will be both rendered thus :

		singular.		plural.	
		m.	f.	m. and f.	
of or from	my	by de	mon	ma	mes
	thy		ton	ta	tes
	his, her, or its,		son	sa	ses
	our		notre	notre	nos
	your		votre	votre	vos
of or from	their	by à	leur	leur	leurs
	my		mon	ma	mes
	thy		ton	ta	tes
	his, her, its		son	sa	ses
	our		notre	notre	nos
of or from	your		votre	votre	vos
	their		leur	leur	leurs

And likewise, when followed by the demonstrative *this* or *that*, *these* or *those* :

of or from <i>this</i> or <i>that</i> , by <i>de</i> to <i>this</i> or <i>that</i> , by <i>à</i>	{	<i>ce</i>	before a noun masculine beginning with a consonant or <i>h</i> aspirated
		<i>cet</i>	before a noun masculine beginning with a vowel or <i>h</i> mute
		<i>cette</i>	before a noun feminine
of or from <i>these</i> or <i>those</i> , by <i>de ces</i> to <i>these</i> or <i>those</i> , by <i>à ces</i>	}		before nouns plural of either gender.

## EXAMPLES.

de mon père	of my father	à leur travail	to their work
à ta mère	to thy mother	de cette terrasse	from this terrace
de son frère	of his brother	de ce lieu	of that place
de notre ville	of our town	de cet homme	of this man
à votre maison	to your house	de ces arbres	of these trees

## EXERCISES.

Of my clothes;	of thy handkerchief;	of his pocket;	from your
habits pl.	mouchoir m.	poche f.	
letters;	of our treasure;	to their house;	of this steeple;
lettres pl.	trésor m.	maison f.	clocher m.
hero;	of this tower;	of these models;	from my sister;
héros m. <i>h</i> asp.	tour f.	modèles pl.	sœur f.
your relations;	the top of this mountain;	to my friend	
parents pl.	sommet m.	montagne f.	ami m.
from these pleasures;	of our duties;	to their connexions;	of
plaisirs pl.	devoirs pl.	liaisons pl.	
his acquaintances;	to my neighbours.		
connaissances pl.	voisins pl.		

## 25. OF ELISIONS.

The *apostrophe* (') marks the suppression of a *vowel* before a word beginning with a *vowel* or *h* mute, as in *l'église*, for *la église*, etc. This suppression is called *elision*: *a*, *e*, are the only two vowels which are thus cut off; *i* is cut off in *si*, before *il* and *ils*, *s'il*, *s'ils*, *o* and *u* are never cut off.

The *a* is suppressed only in *la* feminine, both when an article and a personal pronoun.

But the *elision* of *e* occurs, not only in the definite article and personal pronoun *le*, but also in many monosyllables, such as *je*, *me*, *te*, *se*, *de*, *ce*, *ne*, *que*, and in the compound of *que*, such as, *parceque*, *quoique*, *puisque*, *jusque*, *vù que*, etc.

## EXAMPLES OF ELISIONS.

of	<i>la</i>	<i>in</i> l'amitié	for	<i>la</i> amitié	<i>the</i> friendship
	<i>la</i>	.. l'herbe		<i>la</i> herbe	<i>the</i> grass
	<i>le</i>	.. l'oiseau		<i>le</i> oiseau	<i>the</i> bird
	<i>le</i>	.. l'honneur		<i>le</i> honneur	<i>the</i> honour
	<i>je</i>	.. j'ai		<i>je</i> ai	<i>I</i> have
	<i>me</i>	.. il m'oublie		<i>il</i> me oublie	<i>he</i> forgets me
	<i>te</i>	.. je t'aime		<i>je</i> te aime	<i>I</i> love thee
	<i>se</i>	.. il s'habille		<i>il</i> se habille	<i>he</i> dresses himself
	<i>le</i>	.. vous l'aidez		<i>vous</i> le aidez	<i>you</i> help him
	<i>la</i>	.. vous l'obligez		<i>vous</i> la obligez	<i>you</i> oblige her
	<i>ce</i>	.. c'est vrai		<i>ce</i> est vrai	<i>it</i> is true
	<i>de</i>	.. un coup-d'œil		<i>un</i> coup de œil	<i>a</i> glance
of	<i>ne</i>	.. n'oubliez pas	for	<i>ne</i> oubliez pas	<i>do</i> not forget
	<i>que</i>	.. { qu'attendez-		<i>que</i> attendez-	<i>what</i> do you ex-
		vous		vous	pect ?
	<i>si</i>	<i>in</i> s'il arrivait		<i>si</i> il arrivait	<i>if</i> it happened
	<i>si</i>	.. { s'ils pouvai-		<i>si</i> ils pouvaient	<i>if</i> they could
		ent			
	<i>parceque</i>	.. { parcequ'il		<i>parceque</i> il faut	{ <i>because</i> it is
		faut			requisite
	<i>quoique</i>	.. { quoiqu'il		<i>quoique</i> il fasse	{ <i>whatever</i> he
		fasse			may do
	<i>puisque</i>	.. { puisqu'on		{ <i>puisque</i> on	<i>since</i> they tell
		vous dit		vous dit	<i>you</i>
of	<i>jusque</i>	.. { jusqu'à	for	<i>jusque</i> à demain	<i>till</i> to-morrow
		demain			
	<i>vu que</i>	.. { vû qu'il ob-		{ <i>vu</i> que il ob-	<i>since</i> he will ob-
		tiendra		tiendra	<i>tain</i>
	<i>dès que</i>	.. { dèsqu'on		<i>dès</i> que on saura	{ <i>as</i> soon as it is
		saura			known
	<i>quelque</i>	.. { quelqu'un		<i>quelque</i> un vient	<i>somebody</i> comes
		vient			

The *e* of the preposition *entre* is not cut off generally before *eux*, *elles*, *autres*, good writers prefer leaving it, thus *entre eux*, *entre elles*, *entre autres*; but in the following compound words there must be an elision :

Entr'acte	<i>an</i> interlude	for	{ entre-acte
s'entr'aider	<i>to</i> help another		se entre-aider
entr'ouïr	<i>to</i> hear imperfectly		entre-ouïr
entr'ouvrir	<i>to</i> half open		entre-ouvrir

## EXERCISE.

The soul; *the* heroine; *the* mind; he loves him; she  
*âme* f. *héroïne* f. *esprit* m. *il aime* 2 le 1; *elle*  
loves her; \* I love this man; you understand me; he es-  
2 *la* 1; *je aime* *homme* m. *vous* entendez 2 me 1; *il es-*  
teems thee; he goes away; it was the golden age; do not go  
*time* 2 *te* 1; *se en-va* *ce* était *de* or 2 *âge* 1; \* *ne* aller



there; if he comes; if they please; what has he said? till  
*pas là; si vient; ils veulent; que a-t-il dit? jusqu'*  
 night; though he says; since he knows; when he saw;  
*un soir m. quoique dise; puisque sait; lorsque vit;*  
 between them; somebody is come.  
*entre eux; quelque un est venu.*

## 26. OF NEGATIONS.

The negation *not*, is rendered by *ne-pas*, of which *ne* is placed *before* the verb, and the *pas* *after*.

*Never* is rendered by *ne-jamais*; *nobody* by *ne-personne*; *nothing*, by *ne-rien*, which are placed in the same order as *ne-pas*.

### EXAMPLES OF NEGATIVE PHRASES.

N.B. The ^ shows the place of the verb.

Not	{ ne^pas	} as {	je ne suis pas, etc. I am not, etc.
	{ ne^point		nous n'avons point we have not
never	ne^jamais		il ne joue jamais he never plays
nothing	ne^rien		vous ne dites rien you say nothing
nobody	ne^personne		je ne vois personne I see nobody
not a jot	ne^goutte		je ne vois goutte { I do not see, or I
no where	ne^nulle part	} {	see not in the least
			je ne vais nulle part I go no where

In compound tenses, the negations are always placed before and after the auxiliary verb; as *nous n'avons point parlé*, we have not spoken; *on n'aurait jamais cru*, one could never have believed.

### EXERCISE.

I do not say; I have not said; I have never seen; I never (tell a  
 \* dis ai dit ai vu mens  
 falsehood); I do nothing; I have done nothing; is he not ar-  
 fais ai fait est-il ar-  
 rived? does not he come? I see nothing; has he never seen? he  
 rivé \* 2 vient I vois a-t- vu  
 never loses his time; that (is worth) nothing; I met nobody.  
 perd temps m. cela vaut rencontra

## 27. OF WORDS WHICH ARE ALIKE IN BOTH LANGUAGES.

There are many words which are alike in both languages, and others which differ only in their termination.

The expressions, which are perfectly alike, are particularly those that have the following terminations:

-al as { animal, cardinal, fatal, général, local, moral, natal, original,  
 { principal, etc.

-ble	as	{ capable, fable, etc. bible, éligible, etc. noble, double, soluble, insoluble, etc.
-ace	..	{ face, grimace, grace, place, préface, race, surface, trace, etc.
-ance	..	{ chance, complaisance, extravagance, ignorance, lance, tempérance, etc.
-ence	..	{ abstinence, conférence, continence, diligence, éloquence, patience, etc.
-ice	..	{ artifice, auspices, édifice, justice, injustice, office, orifice, précipice, solstice, etc.
-acle	..	{ miracle, oracle, obstacle, réceptacle, tabernacle, spectacle, etc.
-ade	..	{ ambuscade, cavalcade, brigade, esplanade, sérénade, rétrograde, etc.
-age	..	{ âge, adage, bandage, cage, cordage, image, page, plumage, rage, etc.
-ege	..	colège, privilège, sacrilège, siège, etc.
-ge	..	{ vestige, doge, barge, charge, orange, forge, rouge, refuge, déluge, etc.
-ule	..	{ globule, ridicule, animalcule, corpuscule, formule, module, mule, pustule, valvule, etc.
-ile	..	{ bile, débile, agile, docile, ductile, facile, fragile, nubile, reptile, versatile, etc.
-ine	..	{ carabine, fascine, doctrine, héroïne, machine, marine, famine, mine, rapine, etc.
-ion	..	{ action, fraction, légion, nation, opinion, passion, question, religion, etc.
-ant	..	{ arrogant, constant, élégant, éléphant, pétulant, piquant, poignant, vigilant, etc.
-ent	..	{ absent, accident, compliment, augment, content, élément, fréquent, serpent, etc.

28. Many other English words require only the change of termination, in the following manner :

-ary	into	-aire	as	military	militaire
-ory	....	-oire	..	glory	gloire
-cy	....	-ce	..	clemency	clémence
-ty	....	-té	..	beauty	beauté
-ous	....	-eux	..	dangerous	dangereux
-our	....	-eur	..	favour	faveur
-or	....	-eur	..	error	erreur
-ine	....	-in	..	clandestine	clandestin
-ive	....	-if	..	expressive	expressif
-rie	....	-rie	..	fury	furie
-cracy	....	-cratic	...	aristocracy	aristocratie

N. B. Adjectives in { -eux } make their feminine in { -euse }  
 { -if } { -ive }  
 { -in } { -ine }

#### EXERCISE.

The beauty of that fable; the horror of vice; the utility of  
 f.            cette f.            f. k. m.    art. m.            f.    art.

science; the atrocity of this action; the violence of his passions;  
 f. f. *cette* f. f. *ses* pl.  
 the simplicity of that machine; an audacious conspirator; the  
 f. *cette* f. 2 m. 1  
 absurdity of that opinion; the military evolutions; an industrious  
 f. *cette* f. pl. 2 pl. 1 2  
 nation; an important victory; an alimentary pension; a dangerous  
 f. 1 2 f. 1 2 f. 1 2  
 animal; a figurative expression; a famous general; his constant  
 m. 1 2 f. 1 m. *sa* 2  
 generosity; he is incapable of attention; his impudence is visible;  
 f. 1 *il est* *son*  
 his fidelity is indubitable; she is very attentive; your clemency is  
*sa* f. *elle est très-* f. *vosre* f.  
 admirable; the destruction of his fortune was the consequence of  
 f. *sa* f. *fut* f.  
 his temerity; she is very scrupulous; his condition is horrible; his  
*sa* f. *très* f. *sa* f. *ses*  
 parents are very miserable; this history is incontestable; your  
 pl. *sont très-* pl. *cette* f. *vosre*  
 facility is prodigious; his perfidy is odious; it was a horrible  
 f. *sa* f. f. *ce était*  
 famine; the sublimity of his sentiments is still preferable to the  
 f. f. *ses* m. *encore*  
 energy of his expressions; it was a decisive action; the carnage  
*ses* f. *c'était* f. 2 f. 1 m.  
 was terrible; that obstacle is invincible; this instrument is not  
*cet* *cet* m.  
 harmonious; the prosperity of the wicked is not durable; your  
 f. *méchans* pl. *vos*  
 insidious presents are not acceptable; his memory is truly extra-  
 2 pl. 1 *sont* pl. f. *vraiment*  
 ordinary; that is his principal occupation; a central position; his  
*ce est son* f. 2 f. 1 f. 2 f. 1 *son*  
 extravagance is visible; these arguments are insoluble.  
 f. *ces* m. pl.

---

## PART I.

OF WORDS CONSIDERED IN THEIR NATURE AND INFLECTIONS.

Their are in French nine sorts of words, or parts of speech, namely :

- |                          |             |                  |
|--------------------------|-------------|------------------|
| 1. Substantive, or Noun, | 4. Pronoun, | 7. Preposition,  |
| 2. Article,              | 5. Verb,    | 8. Conjunction,  |
| 3. Adjective,            | 6. Adverb,  | 9. Interjection. |



## CHAPTER I.

## 29. OF THE SUBSTANTIVE, OR NOUN.

The substantive is a word which serves to name a person, or thing, as *Pierre*, Peter ; *livre*, book, etc.

There are two sorts of substantives, the *substantive proper*, or *proper name*, and the *substantive common*, also called *appellative*.

The *proper name* is that which is applied to a particular person, or thing, as *César*, Cesar ; *la Tamise*, the *Thames*.

The *substantive common* is that which belongs to a whole class of objects. The word *homme*, man, is a substantive common, as it is applicable to any individual, that is to *Pierre*, or *Paul*, or *Jean*.

Of these nouns some are *collective*, and others *abstract*.

Collectives express either a whole mass, as *une armée*, an army ; *une forêt*, a forest ; or a partial assemblage, as *une quantité de*, etc. a certain quantity of ; *la plupart*, most part, etc.

*Abstract* nouns are the names of qualities abstracted from their subjects : as, *surface*, *rondeur*, *science*, *sagesse* ; surface, roundness, knowledge, wisdom, etc.

In substantives are to be considered *Gender* and *Number*.

## 30. OF GENDERS.

There are *only* two genders the *masculine* and *feminine*.

The masculine belongs to the male kind, as *un homme*, a man ; *un lion*, a lion, etc.

The feminine belongs to the female kind, as *une femme*, a woman ; *une lionne*, a lioness, etc.

This distinction applies also, in French, to inanimate objects, which are either masculine or feminine, as, *un livre*, a book, is masculine ; *une table*, a table, is feminine, etc.

## 31. OF NUMBER.

There are two numbers ; the *singular* and the *plural*.

The *singular* expresses *one single* object, as *un homme*, *un livre*.

The *plural* announces *more* objects than *one*, as *des hommes*, *des livres*.

Some nouns have no plural, such as names of passions, senses, metals : *l'ivrognerie*, drunkenness ; *l'ouïe*, hearing ; *le courage*, courage ; *l'or*, gold ; *l'argent*, silver.

Some have no singular: *les annales*, annals; *les ancêtres*, ancestors; *les mouchettes*, snuffers; *les épinards*, spinach.

Proper names have no plural, as *Londres*, *Paris*, *Milton*, etc.

## 32. OF THE FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF SIMPLE SUBSTANTIVES.

### GENERAL RULE.

The plural is formed in French, as in English, by the addition of an *s* to the singular.

#### EXAMPLES.

Singular.			Plural.	
<i>le roi</i>	the king		<i>les rois</i>	the kings
<i>la reine</i>	the queen		<i>les reines</i>	the queens

#### EXCEPTIONS TO THE GENERAL RULE.

1. Words ending in *s*, *x*, *z*, in the singular, remain the same in the plural.

#### EXAMPLES.

Singular.			Plural.	
<i>le fils</i>	the son		<i>les fils</i>	the sons
<i>la voix</i>	the voice		<i>les voix</i>	the voices
<i>le nez</i>	the nose		<i>les nez</i>	the noses

2. Words ending in *au*, *eu*, *ou* form their plural by adding an *x*.

#### EXAMPLES.

Singular.			Plural.	
<i>bateau</i>	boat		<i>bateaux</i>	boats
<i>feu</i>	fire		<i>feux</i>	fires
<i>bijou*</i>	jewel		<i>bijoux</i>	jewels
<i>vœu</i>	vow		<i>vœux</i>	vows

3. Words ending in *al*, *ail*, change their terminations into *aux* to form the plural.

#### EXAMPLES.

Singular.			Plural.	
<i>cheval†</i>	horse		<i>chevaux</i>	horses
<i>travail‡</i>	work		<i>travaux</i>	works

\* Those in *-ou*, that take *x* in the plural, are *chou*, *caillou*, *bijou*, *genou*, *hibou*, *joujou*, *pou*; the others now follow the general rule and take *s*, as *clou*, *clous*; *verrou*, *verrous*, &c.

† Several nouns in *-al*, as *bal*, *cal*, *pal*, *régal*, *carnaval*, *local*, &c. follow however the general rule, simply taking *s*.

‡ Those in *-ail*, making their plural in *aux*, are particularly *bail*, *sous-bail*, *corail*, *émail*, *soupirail*, *travail*, *vantail*, *ventail*; the rest, as *attirail*, *détail*, *éventail*, *gouvernail*, *portail*, *serail*, &c. follow the general rule.

4. Polysyllables ending in *ant*, *ent* form their plural by the addition of an *s*, thus: *enfant*, *enfants*, *moment*, *moments*, *commençant*, *commençants*.

M. Levizac's rule on this subject was to drop the *t* and put an *s*. *enfant*, *enfans* and it has long been optional to adopt the one or the other way; but the French Academy having, in the new edition of their dictionary, adopted the first orthography, it has been thought right to follow their example.

Monosyllables ending in *ent*, *ant* form their plural by the addition of an *s*: as *gant*, *gants*, *chant*, *chants*, *dent*, *dents*.

5. The following six words are quite irregular as to the formation of the plural:

Singular.		Plural.	
ail	<i>garlic</i>	aulx	<i>heads of garlic</i>
bétail	<i>cattle</i>	bestiaux	<i>cattle</i>
aïeul	<i>grandfather</i>	aïeux	<i>ancestors</i>
ciel	<i>heaven</i>	cieux	<i>heavens</i>
œil	<i>eye</i>	yeux	<i>eyes</i>
bercail	<i>sheepfold</i>		<i>has no plural</i>

### 33. OF THE FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF COMPOUND SUBSTANTIVES.

1. When the word is composed of an adjective and noun, both take the mark of the plural.

<i>un chef-lieu</i>	county town	<i>des chefs-lieux</i>
<i>un petit-maître</i>	a dandy	<i>des petits-maîtres</i>
<i>un loup-garou</i>	a hobgoblin	<i>des loups-garous</i>
<i>un franc-alleu</i>	a free-hold	<i>des francs-alleus</i>
<i>un arc-boutant</i>	a buttress	<i>des arcs-boutants</i>

To this rule there are exceptions: in some words compounded of a noun and an adjective, one of them takes the *s*, and the other does not; in some both remain in the singular, as:

<i>un rouge-gorge</i>	a robin red-breast	<i>des rouge-gorge</i>
<i>un hôtel-Dieu</i>	a hospital	<i>des hôtels-Dieu</i>
<i>un arc-en-ciel</i>	a rainbow	<i>des arcs-en-ciel</i>

These differences and apparent contradictions arise from the following considerations:

*Rouge gorge* is an elliptical form of which the full sense is *oiseau à rouge gorge*; *des rouge gorge*, consequently, means *des oiseaux à rouge gorge*, and cannot assume the sign of the plural. *Hôtel Dieu* is also elliptical, and its full sense is *hôtel de Dieu*; there may be more hotels than one,



but there is but one *Dieu*. The same may be said of *arcs* and *ciel*, in *des arcs-en-ciel*.

From what precedes may be established into a precise rule, viz: that the *s* cannot be affixed to those words to which an idea of plurality cannot be attached.

2. One of the components of a compound substantive, or even each of them, may be a verb, an adverb, a preposition; all undeclined parts of speech to which the *s* cannot be attached.

<i>un essuie-mains</i>	a towel	<i>des essuie-mains</i>
<i>un essuie-main</i>	_____	<i>des essuie-main</i>
<i>un passe-partout</i>	a master key	<i>des passe-partout</i>
<i>un avant-coureur</i>	a fore runner	<i>des avant-coueurs</i>
<i>un vice-amiral</i>	a vice admiral	<i>des vice-amiraux</i>

3. When the component words are taken from the Latin or from any foreign language, no *s* is added to the plural.

<i>des te-deum</i>	<i>des post-scriptum</i>
<i>des mezzo-terme</i>	<i>des vade-mecum</i>
<i>des auto-da-fè</i>	

4. In all words compounded of *porte* and a noun substantive, no *s* is to be added to the latter.

<i>un porte-étendard</i>	standard bearer	<i>des porte-étendard</i>
<i>un porte-épée</i>	sword bearer	<i>des porte-épée</i>
<i>un porte-mouchettes</i>	snuffers stand	<i>des porte-mouchettes</i>

#### EXERCISE.

The flowers of the gardens; the niceties of the languages; the  
*fleurs* *jardin* *délicatesse* *langue*  
palaces of the kings; the woods of those countries; the wallnuts of  
*palais* *roi* *bois* *ces* *pays* *noix*  
their orchards; the pictures of those painters; the feathers of these  
*leurs verger* *tableau* *ces* *peintre* *plume* *ces*  
birds; the melody of their voices; the gods of the pagans; the  
*oiseau* = f. s. *leurs voix* *dieu* *païen*  
jewels of my sisters; the cabbages of our gardens; these charming  
*bijou* *mes sœur* *chou* *nos jardin* *ces* *charmant*  
places; the horses of my stable; the fans of these ladies; the  
*2 lieu 1* *cheval* *mes écurie* *éventail* *ces* *dame*  
(front gates) of those churches; the actions of my ancestors; the  
*partail* *ces* *église* — *mes* *aïeul*  
evils of this life; the victories of those generals; the works of  
*mal* *cette vie* — *ces* — *travail*  
those architects; the corals of those seas; the (learned men) of  
*ces* — *lecte* *corail* *ces* *mer* *savant*

those times; the presents of my parents; the teeth of your combs;  
*ces temps-là — mes — dent votre peigne*  
 the playthings of our children; the heads of these nails.  
*joujou nos enfant tête ces clou.*

## CHAPTER II.

## OF THE ARTICLE.

34. The *Article* is a small word prefixed to substantives, to determine the extent of their signification.

The French article is  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{le} \text{ before a masculine} \\ \text{substantive} \\ \textit{la} \text{ before a feminine} \\ \text{substantive} \end{array} \right\}$  the plural is *les* for both genders.

## EXAMPLE.

Singular.		Plural.	
<i>le jour</i>	<i>the day</i>	<i>les jours</i>	<i>the days</i>
<i>la nuit</i>	<i>the night</i>	<i>les nuits</i>	<i>the nights</i>

## EXERCISE.

*The sun, the moon and the stars are the glory of nature.*  
*soleil m. lune f. étoile f.pl. sont = f. art—f.*

*The king, the queen, and the princes are well pleased. The rose,*  
*roi m. reine f. —m.pl. très-satisfaits — f.*

*the violet, the tulip, the narcissus, the hyacinth, the gilliflower,*  
*violette f. tulip f. narcisses m. jacinthe f. giroflée f.*

*the jasmine, the lily, the honeysuckle, the ranunculus are the*  
*jasmin m. lis m. chèvre-feuille m. renoncule f.*

*delight of the sight Poetry, painting and music are (sister arts)*  
*délices f.pl. vue f.art. poésie f.art. peinture f.art musique sœur f.pl.*

*The day and the night are equally necessary.*  
*jour m. nuit f. également nécessaire.*

OF THE ELISION OF THE ARTICLE *le, la*.

35. The articles *le, la* form but one word with the noun following, if the latter begins with a vowel or an *h* not aspirate. This suppression of a letter is called *Elision*.

## EXAMPLE.

<i>l'argent</i>	instead of	<i>le argent</i>	<i>the money</i>
<i>l'histoire</i>		<i>la histoire</i>	<i>the history</i>

36. The same elision takes place also with regard to the preposition *de*, when it precedes a word beginning with a vowel, or an *h* not aspirate.

## EXAMPLE.

*gâge d'amitié*  
*parole d'honneur*

token of friendship.  
word of honour

## EXERCISE.

The soul of man without cultivation is like a diamond  
*âme f. art. homme h. m. sans culture f. est comme diamant m.*  
(in the rough) The history of Spain is sometimes very interesting.  
*brut h. m. Espagne quelquefois très-intéressante.*

(Look at) the *amaranthe* and the *anemone*; what beauty! Self-  
*Considérez amaranthe f. ——— f. quelle = f. art. amour-*  
love and pride are always the offspring of a weak mind.  
*propre art. orgueil toujours partage m. faible 2 esprit m. 1.*

Honesty, innocence, honour, and the love of  
*art. Honnêteté h m. art. ——— art. honneur. h. m. amour art.*  
virtue are (very much) esteemed. Summer, autumn, and  
*vertu f. tres- estimés art. été art. automne art.*  
winter are very changeable. / France is separated from Italy  
*hiver h. m. variables art. — séparée de Italie*  
by the Alps, and from Spain by the Pyrenees (An act) of  
*par Alpes pl. art. — — pl. acte*  
ambition. She was struck with horror. He is full of vanity.  
*—— Elle était frappée de — Il est rempli orgueil*  
In a fit of humour.  
*dans un accès ———*

CONTRACTION OF THE ARTICLES *le, la, les,* AND  
PREPOSITION *de, à.*

37. It has been observed page 37, that the articles *le, la, les* are contracted into one word with the preposition *de, à*, when they are used in connexion before a word beginning with a consonant or an *h* aspirate.

## EXAMPLES.

Du roi	is instead of	<i>de le roi</i>	<i>of the king</i>
du héros	———	<i>de le héros</i>	<i>of the hero</i>
au roi	———	<i>à le roi</i>	<i>to the king</i>
au héros	———	<i>à le héros</i>	<i>to the hero</i>
des rois	———	<i>de les rois</i>	<i>of the kings</i>
des reines	———	<i>de les reines</i>	<i>of the queens</i>
aux rois	———	<i>à les rois</i>	<i>to the kings</i>
aux reines	———	<i>à les reines</i>	<i>to the queens</i>

## EXERCISE.

The top of the mountains and the bottom of the vallies are  
*sommet m. montagne fond m. vallée*



equally agreeable. Silk is soft to the touch. The happiness  
*également agréables.* art. *Soie* f. *douce* toucher m. *bonheur* m.  
 of a feeling man is to relieve the wants of the poor. A man  
*sensible* 2 1 *de subvenir à* *besoin* *pauvre* m.s.  
 given to pleasure was never a great man. He obeyed the orders  
*livré* art. *plaisir* m. *ne fut* *grand* *Il obéit à* *ordres*  
 of the king. The warbling of birds, the murmuring of  
*gazouillement* m. art. *oiseau* —re m. art.  
 streams, the enamel of meadows, the coolness of woods,  
*ruisseau* *émail* m. art. *prairie* *fraîcheur* f. art. *bois*  
 the fragrance of flowers, and the sweet smell of plants,  
*parfum* m. art. *fleur* *douce odeur* f. art. *plante*  
 contribute greatly to the pleasure of the mind and to the health of  
*contribuent beaucoup* *esprit* *santé* f.  
 the body.  
*corps* m.

*De* and *à* are never contracted with *la*.

#### EXAMPLES.

*De la reine* of the queen | *à la reine* to the queen

Nor are *de* and *à* contracted with *le*, before a masculine substantive singular, beginning with a vowel or *h* mute.

#### EXAMPLES.

*De l'esprit* of the mind | *de l'homme* of man  
*A l'esprit* to the mind | *à l'homme* to man

Contraction does not take place either when the adjective *tout*, all, every, intervenes between *de* or *à*, and the article.

#### EXAMPLES.

<i>de tout le monde</i>	of every body
<i>de tous les hommes</i>	of all men
<i>à tout le monde</i>	to every body
<i>à tous les hommes</i>	to all men
<i>de toutes les vertus</i>	of all virtues
<i>à toutes les maisons.</i>	to all houses

The hope of success strengthened the cause of virtue  
*espérance* f. art. *réussite* f. *fortifia* —f. art. *vertu* f.  
 and weakened the audaciousness of rebellion. / Fire of  
*affaiblit* *audace* f. art. —f. art. *Feu* m. art.  
 imagination, strength of mind, and firmness of soul,  
 —f. art. *force* f. art. *esprit* art. *fermeté* f. art. *âme*  
 are gifts of nature. We saw with horror that man  
*des dons* m.pl. art. —f. *Nous vîmes avec* =  
 given up to avarice and to voluptuousness. Good cultivation  
*livré* \* art. — *à* art. *volupté* f. art. *Bonne culture* f.

is that which contributes most to the fertility of the soil. More  
*est ce qui contribue le plus* = *terre f. Plus*  
 or less pain is the lot of every body. The history  
*ou moins de peine* *partage m. tout art. monde m.* =  
 of man under all the circumstances of life, is the study of the  
*art. sous toutes art. circonstance f. art. vie f. étude*  
 wise. Playfulness does not become all ages, nor  
*sage m. art. Enjouement m. \* ne sied ni à tout art.—m. pl. ni à*  
 all dispositions.  
*art. caractère m. pl.*

## OF THE ARTICLE.

38. In French, the article always agrees in gender and number with the substantive to which it relates.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>le livre que je cherche</i>	the book which I am looking for
<i>la femme que je vois</i>	the woman whom I see
<i>les hommes qui étudient</i>	the men that study

## EXERCISE.

The father and the mother, the brothers and the sisters, the  
*père m. mère f. frère m. pl. sœurs f. pl. art*  
 uncles and the aunts, and several other relations were  
*oncles m. pl. art. tante f. pl. plusieurs autres parent m. pl. étaient*  
 present. What we value is health, frugality, liberty,  
*présens. Ce que nous estimons c'est art. santé f. art. =f. art. =f.*  
 vigour of mind and body; it is the love of virtue,  
*art. vigueur f. art. art. corps m. ce amour m. art. f.*  
 the fear of the gods, fidelity to all mankind,  
*crainte f. de dieu m. pl. art. =f. envers art. monde m. art.*  
 moderation in prosperity, fortitude in adversity,  
*—f. dans art. =f. art. force f. art. =f. art.*  
 courage, good morals, and the abhorrence of flattery.  
*—m. art. bonnes mœurs f. pl. horreur f. h. m. art. =f.*

## OF THE PARTITIVE ARTICLE.

39. *Some*, signifying a little of, a small portion or quantity of, a few, is rendered by *du, de la, des, de l'* before a vowel and *h* not aspirate; but *some* is hardly ever used in English, whereas *du, de la, des* must always be expressed in French.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>Je mange du pain</i>	I eat bread
<i>Il prend de la peine</i>	He takes pains
<i>Nous mangeons du hachis</i>	We eat some hash
<i>Elle conçoit de la haine</i>	She conceives a hatred
<i>Vous avez de l'amitié</i>	You have friendship

*Vous prenez de l'humeur*  
*Nous cueillons des pommes*  
*Ils vendent des oranges*

*You get into an ill humour*  
*We gather apples*  
*They sell oranges*

## EXERCISE.

Give me some bread and butter. Offer him some  
*donnez-moi pain m. pr. part. beurre m. Offrez-lui*  
 meat. Take some salt. (There is) mustard. We  
*viande f. Prenez sel m. Voilà pr. art. moutarde f. Nous*  
 have some girkins. Shall I offer you some fowl? Shall I  
*avons cornichons pl. Vous offrirai-je poulet m. Vous*  
 help you to some fruit? I will take (with pleasure) some  
*servirai-je \* —m. Je prendrai volontiers*  
 broth. Bring me some bread. Pour me out some beer.  
*bouillon m. Apportez-moi Versez-moi \* bière f.*  
 Drink some wine. Take some tea. Put (in it) some sugar  
*Buvez vin m. Prenez thé m. Mettez-y sucre m.*  
 and milk. I hear some noise. It hails. She  
*pr. art. lait m. J'entends bruit m. Il tombe grêle f. s. Elle*  
 has pride. Have you any ink and pens?  
*a pr. art. orgueil m. Avez-vous pr. art. encre f. pr. art. plumes pl.*  
 Put some oil and vinegar in the sallad.  
*Mettez huile, h m. pr. art. vinaigre m. dans salade f.*  
 Eat some lobster. He has received some gold and  
*Mangez pr. art. homard m. h. asp. Il a reçu or m.*  
 silver.  
*pr. art. argent m.*

40. *Du, de la, des de l'* are not used generally after a negation, nor before a noun preceded by an adjective. In those cases, *de* alone is used without any distinction of gender or number.

## EXAMPLES.

*Je ne mange pas de pain I do not eat bread*  
*Il ne prend jamais de peine he takes no pains*  
*Ils vendent de bonnes oranges they sell good oranges*

## EXERCISE.

Do not give me any bread. We have good girkins. I will not  
*Ne me donnez pas avons bons Je ne prendrai pas*  
 take broth. We drink excellent wine. She has no pride.  
*bouillon Nous buvons ——— vin Elle n'a pas*  
 Have you no ink? Do you not take salt? We never drink wine.  
*Ne prenez-vous pas jamais*  
 Do you never eat fruit?  
*ne mangez-vous jamais*



## CHAPTER III.

## OF THE ADJECTIVE.

41. The adjective is a word, which is added to a substantive to express its quality, as,

bon père	good father		bonne mère	good mother
beau livre	fine book		belle image	fine image

These words *bon*, *bonne*, *beau*, *belle*, are adjectives, because they express the qualities of *père*, *mère*, *livre*, *image*.

A word is known to be an adjective, when it can be properly joined with the word *personne*, or the word *chose*. Thus, *habile*, skilful, and *agréable*, agreeable, are adjectives, because we can say *personne habile*, skilful person, *chose agréable*, agreeable thing.

In French, the adjective agrees in *gender* and *number* with the substantive to which it relates. This difference of *gender* and *number* is generally marked by the termination of the adjective.

## 42. OF THE FORMATION OF THE FEMININE OF FRENCH ADJECTIVES.

*All* adjectives ending, in the singular, in *e* mute, are of *both* genders.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>Un homme aimable</i>	An amiable man
<i>Une femme aimable</i>	An amiable woman

Adjectives ending, in the masculine, in *e*, *i*, *u*, *t*, *d*, form their feminine by the addition of an *e* mute.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	
prudent	prudente	prudent
sensé	sensée	sensible
poli	polie	polite
tortu	tortue	crooked
instruit	instruite	well-informed
grand	grande	large

Adjectives in *-el*, *-il*, *-ien*, *-on*, *-et*, *-as*, *-ès*, *-ais*, *-os*, *-ot*, *-ul*, *-il*, form their feminine, by doubling the final consonant, and adding *e* mute.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>				
cruel	cruelle	<i>cruel</i>	=	50	} of each termination.
pareil	pareille	<i>like</i>	=	3	
ancien	ancienne	<i>ancient</i>	=	80	
bon	bonne	<i>good</i>	=	18	
net	nette	<i>clean</i>	=	34	
<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>		<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	
bas	basse	<i>low</i>	épais	épaisse	<i>thick</i>
cas	casse	<i>cracked</i>	métis	métisse	<i>mongrel</i>
gras	grasse	<i>fat</i>	gros	grosse	<i>big</i>
las	lasse	<i>tired</i>	sot	sotte	<i>silly</i>
exprès	expresse	<i>express</i>	vicillot	vicillotte	<i>oldish</i>
profès	professe	<i>professed</i>	nul	nulle	<i>no</i>
		} <i>monk</i> or <i>nun</i>	gentil	gentille	<i>genteel</i>

Adjectives ending in *f*, change this letter into *ve*.

## EXAMPLES.

bre <i>f</i>	brè <i>ve</i>	<i>short</i>
acti <i>f</i>	acti <i>ve</i>	<i>active</i>
naï <i>f</i>	naï <i>ve</i>	<i>ingenuous</i>
neuf	neuv <i>e</i>	<i>new</i>

Adjectives ending in *-x* change *-x* into *se*.

## EXAMPLES.

honteux	honteus <i>e</i>	<i>ashamed</i>
vertueux	vertueus <i>e</i>	<i>virtuous</i>
jaloux	jalous <i>e</i>	<i>jealous</i>

Adjectives ending in *eur*, derived from verbs, and which might be more properly called substantives, were it not that they have a feminine, form that feminine in various manners; they are few in number, and change as follows:

## EUR, EUSE.

complimenteur	—teuse	<i>fond of compliments</i>
connaisseur	—sseuse	<i>connaisseur, judge</i>
demandeur	—deuse	<i>one who asks</i>
flatteur	—tteuse	<i>flattering</i>
menteur	—teuse	<i>deceiving</i>
parleur	—leuse	<i>talker</i>
rêveur	—veuse	<i>dreamer</i>
moqueur	—ueuse	<i>sneering</i>
trompeur	—peuse	<i>deceiver</i>

etc., etc.

## EUR, ERESSE.

baillieur	bailleresse	<i>donor</i>
demandeur	—deresse	<i>plaintiff</i>
défendeur	—deresse	<i>defendant</i>

enchanteur	—teresse	charmer
pêcheur	—cheresse	sinner
vengeur	—geresse	avenger
	etc. etc.	

## EUR, RICE.

accusateur	—trice	accuser
acteur	—trice	actor
bienfaiteur	—trice	benefactor
admirateur	—trice	admirer
séducteur	—trice	seducer
protecteur	—trice	protector
conservateur	—trice	preserver
conducteur	—trice	leader
ambassadeur	—trice	ambassador

*Auteur, docteur, imprimeur, professeur*, have no feminine.

All *real* adjectives ending in *eur*, form their feminine by the addition of an *e* ; they are about twelve in number : *antérieur, citérieur, extérieur, intérieur, inférieur, meilleur, mineur, majeur, postérieur, supérieur, ultérieur, prieur*.

## EXERCISE.

She is decent. This house is well situated. This pear  
*Elle* — *Cette maison f. bien situé* *poire f.*  
 is too ripe. She is tall and well formed. This story is  
*trop mûr* *grand* *bien fait* *histoire f.*  
 very entertaining. This person is very volatile. This mountain  
*très-amusant* *personne f. bien léger* *montagne f.*  
 is steep. This road is not very safe. The door is not  
*escarpé* *route f. sûr* *porte f.*  
 open. This room is dark. This street is too narrow. It is  
*ouvert* *chambre f. obscur* *rue f. étroit* *Ce*  
 is an ancient custom. She has carnation lips. His  
*coutume f. a vermeil 2 art. lèvres f. pl. 1. Sa*  
 memory will be immortal. His manners are natural. The  
 =f. *sera* —tel *Ses manières f. pl. naïf*  
 engagement was warm. (That is) an original thought. This  
*action f. fut vif* *Voilà neuf 2 pensé f. 1.*  
 cloth is the best of all. These are delusive promises.  
*éttoffe f. meilleur f. pl. trompeur 2 promesse f. 1. pl. 1.*  
 He seduces by his fawning manners. The delightful valley  
*séduit par flatteur 2 manières f. pl. 1. délicieux vallée f.*  
 of Tempe is in Thessaly. The grass is very thick. The soup  
*Tempé dans art. = f. herbe f. soupe f.*  
 is too fat. It is a foolish undertaking. This water is not clean.  
*sol entreprise f. Cette eau f. net*



It is a very *silly* story. The law is *express* upon that point.  
*C'est* *histoire.* f. *loi* f. *sur* *ce* — m.  
 The *avenging* thunder smote that *impious* wretch. He  
*vengeur* 2 *foudre* f. 1. *frappâ cet* *impie* \*  
 (held out to us) a *protecting* hand.  
*tendit* 2 *nous* 1. — *leur* 2 *main* f. 1.

## OF IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

43. There are some adjectives which are irregular in the formation of their feminine. They will be found nearly all contained in the following list :

m.	f.		m.	f.	
*beau	} belle	<i>fine</i>	*fou	} folle	<i>mad</i>
†bel			†fol		
*nouveau	} nouvelle	<i>new</i>	*mou	} molle	<i>soft</i>
*nouvel			†mol		
*vieux	} vicille	<i>old</i>			
†vieil					
m.	f.		m.	f.	
blanc	blanche	<i>white</i>	fauz	fausse	<i>false</i>
franc	franche	<i>frank</i>	rouz	rousse	<i>red</i>
frais	fraîche	<i>fresh</i>	doux	douce	<i>sweet</i>
Grec	Grecque	<i>Greek</i>	aigre-doux	aigre-douce	<i>tartish, sweet</i>
public	publique	<i>public</i>	tiers	tierce,	<i>third, etc.</i>
caduc	caduque	<i>frail</i>	tors	{ torse or torte	<i>twisted</i>
Turc	Turque	<i>Turkish</i>	coi		
long	longue	<i>long</i>	coi	coite or coie	<i>still, snug</i>
benin	benigne	<i>benign</i>	favori	favorite	<i>favorite</i>
malin	maligne	<i>malignant</i>	jumeau	jumelle	<i>twin</i>
sec	sèche	<i>dry</i>	traître	traîtresse	<i>traitor</i>

The following adjectives ending in *et*, not only form their feminine by the addition of *e* mute, but require the grave accent on the penultimate *e*.

m.		f.
concret	} make	concrète
discret		discrète
indiscret		indiscrète
inquiet		inquiète
complet		complète
incomplet		incomplète
replet		replète
suret		surète
prêt		prête

*Préfix* m. makes *préfixe* f. and is the only adjective in *-x*, which retains this letter and follows the SECOND RULE.

\* *Beau, nouveau, vieux, fou, mou*, before a consonant or *h* not aspirate,

† Before a vowel and *h* mute.

Some adjectives have no feminine, as *bisché, dispose, fat, paillet*, etc. ; others have no masculine, as *blette*, etc.

## SINGULARITY OF DEMI, FEU, NU.

43\*. *Demi, nu*, have a peculiarity which must be noticed. When they precede the noun, they are undeclined ; when they follow it, they agree with it.

une demi-livre	<i>half a pound</i>	
une demi-heure	<i>half an hour</i>	
un demi-cent	<i>half a hundred</i>	
une livre et demie	<i>one pound and a half</i>	
deux heures et demie	<i>half past two</i>	
trois cents et demi	<i>three hundred and a half</i>	
nu-pieds	les pieds nus	<i>bare feet</i>
nu-tête	la tête nue	<i>bare head</i>

*Feu* is undeclined when preceding the article and a possessive pronoun ; it is declined when following them.

Feu la reine	la feue reine	the late queen
--------------	---------------	----------------

The adjectives *bas, bon, court*, etc. being used with a verb, become adverbs, and are not declined.

ces fleurs sentent bon	these flowers smell nice
elle parle bas	she speaks low
ils demeurèrent court	they stood short
elle se fait fort d'y aller	she takes upon herself to go.

## REMARKS ON TOUT, QUELQUE.

44. *Tout, all*, means also *every*, in a sort of distributive sense.

je vous souhaite toute espèce de bonheur, *I wish you every happiness.*

*Tout* is very frequently prefixed to an adjective in the sense of *quite, entirely*, and is, consequently, undeclined.

ces enfants, tout aimables qu'ils	amiable as these children are,
sont, me fatiguent	they fatigue me
ils étaient tout étourdis	they were quite astounded

But it has this peculiarity that, when placed before an adjective feminine, beginning with a consonant, it is declined.

c'est une tête toute vide	it is a head quite empty
elles étaient toutes tremblantes	they trembled all over

*Quelque*, before a noun plural, qualified or not by an adjective, takes an *s*.

quelques richesses que vous ayez,	whatever be your riches do not be
ne soyez pas prodigue.	lavish.

quelques bonnes actions que vous	whatever good actions you do, be
fassiez, soyez modeste.	modest.

*Quelque* before an adjective, means *however*, and is not declined,

quelque riches qu'ils soient, ils ne donnent rien. *however rich they be, they give nothing.*

*Quel que, quelle que, quels que, quelles que* ; here, *quel* is a sort of pronoun adjective which must agree in gender and number with the noun to which it refers, and which is the subject of the verb following :

quels que soient vos desseins, et quelles que soient vos vues. *whatever be your designs and your views.*

quelles que soient votre naissance et votre fortune. *whatever be your birth and fortune.*

Observe that the verb is in the subjunctive mood after *quelque, quelques, quel que*.

## EXERCISE.

He drank a glass of brandy quite pure. My sisters were  
*but verre m. eau de vie f. — étaient.*

quite put out. Hope, deceitful as it is, leads us to the  
*déconcerté art. espérance trompeur f. nous mène*

end of life through a pleasant path. She was quite  
*fin f. art. vie par agréable 2 chemin m. 1. fut*

astonished when she saw us. Whatever advantages you  
*étonnée vit 2 nous 1. avantage que vous.*

have (do not make) too sure of success. (I will not have  
*ayez ne soyez pas art. succès m. Je ne veux pas*

her), however beautiful she may be. You must conquer your  
*d'elle jolie qu'elle soit il faut vaincre*

inclinations whatever they be. (Let us know) your choice  
*penchants m. soient faites-nous savoir choix m.*

whatever it may be. That soup is very good. There is no truth  
*soupe f. Il n'y a nul vérité f.*

in all that. It is in the newest fashion. It is a fine statue  
*dans tout cela. à nouveau mode f. beau = f.*

He lives in a state of luxurious idleness. This wax is not  
*Il vit dans \* \* mou oisiveté f. cire f.*

very white. She is as fresh as a rose. The paint on that  
*\* comme — f. peinture f.*

wainscot is not dry. His answer is a mere evasion. The  
*tambris m. réponse f. franc dé faite f.*

thing is public. That plant possesses a pernicious property.  
*chose f. herbe f. a malin 2 qualité f. 1.*

She is of a benevolent disposition. This woman is jealous and  
*a \* benin 2 humeur f. femme f. jaloux*

deceitful. His temper is gentle. This colour is too red.  
*faux Son humeur f. doux. couleur f. trop rouge*



These old clothes are good for nothing. He ran bare  
*hardes f. pl. ne à rien il courait nu*  
 legged in the streets. Give me a guinea and a half.  
*les jambes f. par Donnez-moi guinée f. \**  
 Cut half a yard. The late princess was idolized.  
*Coupez en aune f. — cesse chéri*  
 Do not stand in the cold air (without your hat).  
*Ne restez pas art. tête f. nu à l'air.*

## OF THE FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF FRENCH ADJECTIVES.

45. GENERAL RULE. The formation of the plural in adjectives follows the same rules as those given for the plural of substantives. All adjectives having the feminine termination in *e* mute, or ending in *e, i, u, c, d, g, f, n, t*, form their plural by the addition of an *s*, as: *aimable, aimables; docile, dociles; poli, polis; goulou, goulous; grand, grands; long, longs*. This rule applies to the participles past, *aimé, aimés; reçu, reçus*, etc.

### EXCEPTIONS.

1. Adjectives ending in *-s*, or *-x*, do not change their termination in the plural, as *gros, gras, hideux*.

2. Those ending in *-au*, take *x* in the plural, as *beau, beaux, nouveau, nouveaux*.

Those in *-al*, change this termination into *aux*, as *égal, égal, égaux; général, généraux*; but most of these have no plural masculine, as *amical, austral, boréal, canonical, conjugal, diamétral, fatal, filial, final, frugal, jovial, lustral, matinal, naval, pastoral, pectoral, spécial, vénal*, and some others.

*Canonical, clérical, conjectural, colossal, déloyal, diacanal, ducal, électoral, équinoxial, final, fiscal*, are seldom used in the plural masculine; wherever they are, they follow the general rule.

*Amical, automnal, colossal, frugal, glacial, jovial, total*, have no plural masculine.

*Pascal* makes *pascals*, but *fatals* ought to be avoided.

4. Polysyllables ending in *-nt*, according to general practice, may drop the *t* in the plural, as *excellent, excellens*; but the Academy keep the *t*, (see page 70). Monosyllables retain it, as *lent, slow, lents*; but the adjective *tout*, all, makes *tous*.

## EXERCISE.

They are *envious* and *jealous*. These fowls are large and  
*Ils* = *jaloux* *poulet* m. pl. *gros*  
 fat. Owls are *frightful* birds. (These are)  
*gras* art. *Hibou* m. pl. *des hideux* 2 *oiseau* m. pl. 1. *Voilà*  
*beautiful* jewels. The two new operas have succeeded.  
*de beau bijou* m. pl. *deux nouveau* — m. pl. *ont réussi*  
 Men are only equal (in the) infirmities of nature. The  
 art. 2 *ne* 1 *que* 4 *égal* 3 *par les* = art. = f.  
 general officers are assembled. This fruit is excellent.  
 — 2 *officiers* m. pl. 1. — *blé* *ces* — m. pl. *sont* —  
 His improvement is slow, but solid. All his friends have  
*Ses progrès*, m. pl. *sont* *lent* *solide* *ses ami* m. pl.  
 been very glad to see him. Those ladies are tired with  
*été bien aise de voir* 2 *le* 1 *ces dame* f. pl. *las de*  
 walking. You have powerful enemies ; but their efforts  
*marcher* *Vous avez de puissant ennemi* m. pl. *mais leurs* — m. pl.  
 will be vain and useless. The four cardinal points are the  
*seront* — *inutile* *quatre* — 2 *point* pl. 1  
 east, west, south, and north.  
*orient*, m. art. *occident* m. art. *midi* m. art. *nord* m.

## OF THE DEGREES OF SIGNIFICATION OF THE ADJECTIVE.

46. Grammarians commonly reckon *three* degrees of comparison ; the *positive*, the *comparative*, and the *superlative*.

The *positive* is the adjective expressing the quality of an object, without any increase or diminution, as *beau*, *belle*.

## EXAMPLES.

A child *gentle*, *amiable*, and *docile*, is beloved by every body.  
*enfant* m. *doux* *aimable* — *aimé* *de tout le monde*  
 An *ingenious* candour, an *amiable* simplicity and a *lively*  
 — *nu* 2 = f. 1 = f. *piquant* 2  
 artlessness are the charm of youth. The sight of an *agreeable*  
*naïveté* f. 1. *charme* m. art. *jeunesse* f. *vue* f. *agréable*  
 landscape is a *varied* and rapid source of *delightful* sensations.  
*paysage* m. *varié* 2 *rapide* 3 — f. 1 *délicieux* 2 — f. pl. 1.

47. The *comparative* is so called, because it draws a comparison between two or many objects. When two things are compared, the one is either superior, inferior, or equal to the other ; hence three sorts of comparison, that of *superiority*, of *inferiority*, and *equality*.

The *comparative of superiority* is formed by putting *plus*, more, before the adjective, and *than* is rendered by *que*.

## EXAMPLES.

*La rose est plus belle que la violette.* The rose is more beautiful than the violet.

*By*, in comparison before a noun of number, is rendered by *de*.

He is taller by two inches. *Il est plus grand de deux pouces.*

## EXERCISE.

The republic of Athens was more illustrious than that of  
*république f. Athènes a été illustre celle*  
 Lacedemon. Homer was perhaps a greater genius than Virgil;  
*Lacédémone Homère était peut-être grand génie m. Virgile*  
 but Virgil had a more delicate and more refined taste than Homer.  
*mais a eu fin 2 délicat 3 goût m. 1. h m.*  
 Milton appears (to me) more sublime than all the other epic  
*paraît 2 me 1 autre 1 épique 3*  
 poets. The river is deeper by four feet.  
*poète m.pl. 2. rivière f. profond*

The comparative of inferiority is formed by prefixing *moins*, less, to the adjective, and rendering also *than* by *que*.

## EXAMPLES.

*La violette est moins belle que la rose* The violet is less beautiful than the rose

## EXERCISE.

Shipwreck and death are less fatal than the pleasures which  
*art. Naufrage m. art. mort f. funestes plaisirs m. qui*  
 attack virtue. The violet is less brilliant to the eye than the  
*attaquent art. f. f. brillant yeux*  
 lily, a true emblem of modesty and of pride  
*lis m. \* véritable 2 emblème m. 1. art. =f. de art. orgueil m.*  
 Autumn is less varied than spring, but it is richer:  
*art. Automne f. varié art. printemps m. elle riche.*

In the comparative of equality the first *as* is rendered by *aussi* in affirmative, and by *si*, in negative phrases; the second *as* is rendered by *que*.

## EXAMPLES.

*La tulipe est aussi belle que la rose* the tulip is as beautiful as the rose  
*La tulipe n'est pas si belle que la rose* the tulip is not so beautiful as the rose

## EXERCISE.

Pope's images are as perfect as his style is harmonious.  
*De Pope 2 art. —f.pl.1. parfait son —m. =*

Delicacy of taste is a gift of nature as scarce as  
*art. Délicatesse f. art. goût m. don m. art. —f. rare*



true genius. The love of our neighbour is *as necessary* in  
 art. *vrai génie* m. *amour du* \* *prochain* = *dans*  
 society for the happiness of life, *as in* christianity for  
 art. = *pour* *bonheur* m. art. *vie* f. art. — *nisme* m.  
 eternal salvation. It is *as easy* to do good *as* to do  
 art. — *nel* 2 *salut* m. 1. *aisé* *de faire* art. *bien* m. *de*  
 evil. Paris is not so large *as* London. James will not be  
 art. *mal* m. — m. *grand* *Londres* *Jacques ne sera pas*  
 so rich *as* his brother.  
*riche son frère.*

*Meilleur, pire, moindre* are the comparatives of *bon, mauvais, petit*, which are irregular in the formation of the degrees. Thus :

<i>bon</i>	good		<i>meilleur</i>	better		<i>le meilleur</i>	the best
<i>mauvais</i>	bad		<i>pire</i>	worse		<i>le pire</i>	the worst
<i>petit</i>	small		<i>moindre</i>	smaller		<i>le moindre</i>	the smallest

48. N.B. As most beginners are apt to confound these comparative adjectives with the comparative adverbs, *MIEUX, PIS, and MOINS*, because they are generally rendered by the same English words *better, worse* and *less*, it may be advisable to subjoin here these comparative adverbs with their positives, that the difference of meaning may serve as a distinction.

ADJECTIVES.	{	<i>Meilleur</i> , better, is the comparative of <i>bon</i> , good, and is used instead of <i>plus bon</i> , which is never said.
		<i>Pire</i> signifies <i>plus mauvais</i> , worse, or more wicked, and is used instead of this.
		<i>Moindre</i> means <i>plus petit</i> , less or smaller, and is used instead of these terms.
ADVERBS.	{	<i>Mieux</i> ,* better, is the comparative of <i>bien</i> , well, and is used instead of <i>plus bien</i> , more well, which is said in neither language.
		<i>Pis</i> * is the comparative of <i>mal</i> , badly, and is used for <i>plus mal</i> , worse, which, however, may be used.
		<i>Moins</i> is the comparative of <i>peu</i> , little, and is used for <i>plus peu</i> , which is never said.

#### EXAMPLES.

Ce fruit-là est bon, mais celui-ci est meilleur	<i>That fruit is good, but this is better</i>
Sa condition est mauvaise, mais elle a été pire	<i>His condition is bad, but it has been worse</i>

\* There are some instances of *pis* and *mieux* used adjectively, but this is not the place to mention them.

Ma dépense est petite, mais la vôtre est moindre  
 Il se conduit bien, mais elle se conduit encore mieux  
 Il se portait mal, mais il est pis que jamais  
 Je parle peu, vous parlez encore moins.

*My expense is small, but yours is smaller*  
*He behaves well, but she behaves still better*  
*He was badly, but he is worse than ever*  
*I speak little, you speak still less*

## EXERCISE.

His reasoning is not better than yours. Your style is a  
*Son raisonnement m. le vôtre Votre — m. de*  
 great deal better than that of his brother. The thickness of this  
*beaucoup celui son épaisseur f. ce*  
 wall is less than that of the next wall. This column is less than  
*mur m. celle voisin 2 1 Cette colonne f.*  
 the other in height and thickness. The remedy is worse  
*autre en hauteur f. en grosseur f. remède m.*  
 than the disease. Your horse is worse than mine.  
*mal m. cheval m. le mien.*

49. The adjective is in the *superlative* degree, when it expresses the quality in a high or in its highest state: hence there are two sorts of superlatives, the *absolute* and the *relative*.

50. The *superlative absolute* is formed by putting *très*, *fort*, *bien*, very, before the adjective; it is called *absolute*, because it does not express any comparison with, or relation to, any other objects.

## EXAMPLE.

Londres est une très-belle ville *London is a very fine city*

REMARK. The adverbs *extrêmement*, extremely, *infiniment*, infinitely, are likewise marks of the superlative absolute.

## EXAMPLE.

Cet homme est extrêmement savant *That man is extremely learned*

Dieu est infiniment heureux *God is infinitely blessed*

## EXERCISE.

That landscape is very diversified, very extensive, and infinitely  
*Ce paysage m. varié étendu*

agreeable on every side. The Alps are very high and very steep.  
*agréable de toutes parts f. pl. haut escarpé*

The style of Fénélon is very rich, and very harmonious, but it is  
 —in. ————— = il

sometimes prolix ; that of Bossuet is *extremely sublime*, but it is  
*quelquefois prolixe celui* *élevé*

sometimes harsh and unpolished.

*dur* *rude*

51. The *superlative relative* is formed by prefixing the article *le, la, les*, according to the gender of the noun, to the comparative, and is called *relative* because it expresses comparison with, or relation to, another subject.

The article *le, la, les* is not used in the superlative degree when a possessive pronoun precedes the noun.

#### EXAMPLES.

Londres est la plus belle des villes *London is the finest of cities*  
 Je préfère une maison de cam- *I prefer a country house to the*  
   pagne au plus beau palais *finest palace*  
 C'est mon plus grand ennemi *He is my greatest enemy*  
 Voici nos meilleurs voisins *These are our best neighbours.*

*Plus* and *moins*, with the article, are repeated before every adjective.

#### EXERCISE.

*The most beautiful* comparison that there is perhaps in any  
   *beau comparaison f. que il y ait peut-être dans aucun*  
 language is that which Pope has drawn from the Alps, in his Essay  
*langue f. celle que tiré f. de Alpes, dans son essai*  
 on Criticism. *The most able men* are not always *the most*  
*sur art. critique f. habile gens m. pl. toujours*  
*virtuous. The most ancient and most general* of all kinds of  
*vertueux. f.—une f. art. espèce f. pl.*  
 idolatry was the worship rendered to the sun. *The least excu-*  
   *= était culte m. rendu soleil m. —*  
*sable* of all errors is that which is wilful. I will show you  
   *art.—f. celle qui volontaire. Je montrerai 2 vous 1*  
 my prettiest flowers. These are her richest gifts. I have not  
*mes joli fleur f. précieux don m. Je ai*  
 read his best work.  
*lu son ouvrage m.*

#### CONCORD OF THE ADJECTIVE WITH THE SUBSTANTIVE.

52. The adjective always agrees in gender and number with the substantive to which it relates.

Le bon père	<i>The good father</i>
La bonne mère	<i>The good mother</i>
De beaux jardins	<i>Fine gardens</i>
De belles promenades	<i>Fine walks</i>



*Bon* is masculine singular, because *père* is masculine, and in the singular; *bonne* is feminine singular, because *mère* is feminine, and in the singular; *beaux* is in the masculine plural, because *jardins* is masculine, and plural, etc.

## EXERCISE.

These hills are covered with trees loaded with  
*ces coteau m. pl. couvert de arbre m. pl. chargé de*  
 fruit, already ripe. A. pure stream rolls its limpid  
 —m. pl. *déjà mûr clair ruisseau m. roule son limpide 2*  
 water through the midst of meadows enamelled with  
*cristal m. 1 à milieu m. prairie f. pl. émaillé de*  
 flowers. (Every thing) interests the heart in this abode  
*fleur f. pl. tout intéresse cœur m. ce séjour m.*  
 which is full of charms. Fly, inconsiderate youth,  
 \* \* *plein attrait m. pl. Fuyez, —déré 2 jeunesse f. 1*  
 fly from the enchanting allurements of a vain world; its  
 \* —*teur 2 attrait 1 — 2 monde m. 1. ses*  
 perfidious sweets are a slow poison, which (would destroy  
 —*de 2 douceur f. pl. 1. lent 2 —m. 1. qui détruirait*  
 in your soul the noble enthusiasm of goodness, and the  
*dans âme — enthousiasme m. art. bien m.*  
 precious seeds of sublime virtues.  
 = *germe m. art. — 2. vertu 1.*

53. When the adjective relates to two substantives singular, of the same gender, it must be put in the plural, and agree with them in gender.

## EXAMPLE.

Le roi et le berger sont égaux The king and the shepherd are  
 après la mort equal after death.  
 Ma mère et ma sœur sont vives My mother and sister are quick

## EXERCISE.

Uprightness and piety are much esteemed, even by the  
 art. *droiture f. art. piété f. très-estimé même de*  
 wicked. Man, in the most elevated rank, and  
 méchant pl. art. *dans (le plus élevé) 2 art. rang m. 1*  
 man in the most obscure situation are equally precious  
 art. *obscur 2 art. état m. 1 également =*  
 in the eyes of God. Pilpay and Confucius are very celebrated  
 à m. pl. *célèbre*  
 among the nations of Asia.  
 parmi peuples art.

54. When the two substantives, to which the adjective relates, are of different genders, the adjective is to be put in the masculine plural.

## EXAMPLE.

Mon père et ma mère sont contents. *My father and mother are contented.*

## EXERCISE.

His probity and disinterestedness are known (every where.)  
= f. *son désintéressement m. connu partout*

The love of life, and the fear of death, are  
*amour m. art. vie f. crainte f. art. mort f.*

natural to man. Ignorance and self-love are  
— *rel art. art. —f. art. amour-propre m.*

equally presumptuous. My sister and brother were very attentive  
*présomptueux. Ma f. mon m. ont été =*

to the instructions of their masters.

— *leur maître m. pl.*

## NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES OF NUMBER.

55. Numbers are divided into five classes, viz: *cardinal, ordinal, collective, distributive, and proportional.*

CARDINAL NUMBER.	ORDINAL NUMBER.	NUMERICAL COLLECTIVE NOUNS.
1 un, une	<i>premier</i>	<i>first</i> unité, unit
2 deux	<i>deuxième, second</i>	2d couple, pair, couple
3 trois	<i>troisième</i>	3rd trio
4 quatre	<i>quatrième</i>	4th deux couples, two couples
5 cinq	<i>cinquième</i>	5th
6 six	<i>sixième</i>	6th { demi-douzaine, half a dozen
7 sept	<i>septième</i>	7th
8 huit	<i>huitième</i>	8th huitaine, week
9 neuf	<i>neuvième</i>	9th { neuvaine, nine days of prayer
10 dix	<i>dixième</i>	10th dizaine, half a score
11 onze	<i>onzième</i>	11th
12 douze	<i>douzième</i>	12th douzaine, dozen
13 treize	<i>treizième</i>	13th
14 quatorze	<i>quatorzième</i>	14th
15 quinze	<i>quinzième</i>	15th quinzaine, fortnight, etc.
16 seize	<i>seizième</i>	16th
17 dix-sept	<i>dix-septième</i>	17th
18 dix-huit	<i>lix-huitième</i>	18th
19 dix-neuf	<i>dix-neuvième</i>	19th

CARDINAL NUMBER.	ORDINAL NUMBER.	NUMERICAL COLLEC- TIVE NOUNS.
20 vingt	vingtième	20th vingtaine, <i>a score</i>
21 vingt-et-un	vingt-et-unième	21st
22 vingt-deux	vingt-deuxième, etc.	22nd
30 trente	trentième	30th { trentaine, <i>a score and a half</i>
31 { trente-et-un, etc.	{ trente-unième	31st
40 quarante	quarantième	40th quarantaine, <i>two score</i>
41 { quarante-et-un, etc.	{ quarante-unième	41st
50 cinquante	cinquante-ième	50th { cinquantaine, <i>two score and a half</i>
51 { cinquante-et-un, etc.	{ cinquante-unième	51st
60 soixante	soixantième	60th soixantaine, <i>three score</i>
61 { soixante-et-un, etc.	{ soixante-unième	61st
70 soixante-dix	soixante-dixième	70th
71 { soixante-onze	{ soixante-onzième	71st
72 { soixante-douze, etc.	{ soixante-douzième	72d
80 quatre-vingts	quatre-vingtième	80th ——— <i>four score</i>
81 { quatre-vingt-un, etc.	{ quatre-vingt-unième	81st
90 { quatre-vingt-dix	{ quatre-vingt-dixième	90th
91 { quatre-vingt-onze, etc.	{ quatre-vingt-onzième	91st
100 cent	centième	100th 1 centaine, <i>one hundred</i>
101 cent-un, etc.	cent-un-ième, etc.	101st
200 deux-cents	deux-centième	200th 2 centaines, <i>2 hundred</i>
1000 { mille	millième	1000th 1 millier, <i>1 thousand</i>
2000 { deux mille, etc.	{ deux millième, etc.	2000th { 2 milliers, <i>2 thousand</i>
10,000 { dix mille	dix-millième	10,000th 1 myriade, <i>1 myriad</i>
1,000,000 { mille fois mille	{ million-ième, millionth	1 million 1 million

*Un milliard* or *billion*, a thousand millions, *un trillion*, etc.



*Cent* takes an *s* when immediately before the noun ; it does not take it when followed by another number : *trois cents hommes* ; *trois cent cinquante hommes*.

*Mille* never takes the *s* in the plural : *deux mille hommes*.

In dates, *mille* is contracted into *mil* : *mil huit cent trente-cinq*.

There are many other numerical expressions used in poetry, music, games, etc. : as, *distique, tercet, quatrain, sixain, huitain*, etc. *solo, duo, trio, quatuor, quinque, quinte, octave*, etc. *beset, sonnez*, etc.

*Un millier* is very often employed for one thousand weight, but *quintal* is never used except in the sense of one hundred weight.

The distributive numbers are those which express the different parts of a whole : as, *la moitié*, the half ; *le quart*, the quarter ; *un cinquième*, a fifth, etc.

The proportional denote the progressive increase of things : as, *le double*, the double ; *le triple*, the treble ; *le centuple*, a hundred fold, etc.

## CHAPTER IV.

### OF THE PRONOUN.

56. A *pronoun* is a word substituted in the place of a noun.

There are several kinds of pronouns, as the *personal possessive, relative, absolute, demonstrative* and *indefinite*.

## SECTION I.

### OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

57. *Personal pronouns* are used in the places of persons and things, to avoid their being repeated.

58. There are three *persons* : the first who speaks, the second who is spoken to, and the third is the person or thing spoken of.

#### *Singular.*

<i>Subject.</i>	je		je loue Dieu	<i>I praise God</i>
	me	for à moi I	il me donne	<i>he gives me, or to me</i>
<i>Object.</i>	me	.. moi to me	il me blesse	<i>he hurts me</i>
	moi	.. à moi me	donnez-moi	<i>give me, or to me</i>
	moi	.. moi to me	aidez-moi	<i>help me</i>
	de moi..	— of me	il parle de moi	<i>he speaks of me.</i>

*Plural.*

<i>Subject.</i> nous		<i>we</i>	nous louons Dieu		<i>we praise God</i>
<i>Object.</i> {	nous	<i>for à nous to us</i>	il nous donne	<i>he gives us</i>	
	nous	<i>.. nous us</i>	il nous blesse	<i>he hurts us</i>	
	de nous	<i>.. — of us</i>	il parle de nous	<i>he speaks of us</i>	

They are both masculine and feminine; that is, of the same gender as the person or persons they represent.

59. In general, *je* and *me* are put before the verb; *moi*, *de moi*, *à moi* after it, and *nous* before or after, as the case requires.

## EXERCISE.

I cast my eyes upon the objects which surrounded me, and  
*portai vue f. s. sur objet environnaient me*  
 saw with pleasure that all was calm and tranquil. Do you not  
*je vis avec que était calme tranquille \* 3 1-4*  
 see in all the features of my father that he is satisfied with  
*voyez 2 dans trait m. pl. que content de*  
 me? We have told the truth. What were they saying of us?  
*moi avons dit vérité f. Que \* on 2 disait 1*  
 If we desire to be happy, we must not deviate from the  
*Si désirons de ne devons pas nous écarter de*  
 path of virtue.  
*sentier m. art.*

## 60. PRONOUNS OF THE SECOND PERSON.

*Singular.*

<i>Subject.</i> tu		<i>thou</i>	tu crains Dieu		<i>thou'fearest God</i>
<i>Object.</i> {	te	<i>for à toi to thee</i>	il te parle	<i>he speaks to thee</i>	
	te	<i>.. toi thee</i>	il te voit	<i>he sees thee</i>	
	toi	<i>.. à toi to thee</i>	donne-toi la peine	<i>give thyself the trouble</i>	
	toi	<i>.. toi thee</i>	habille-toi	<i>dress thyself</i>	
	de toi	<i>.. — of thee</i>	nous parlons de toi	<i>we speak of thee</i>	

*Plural.*

<i>Subject.</i> vous		<i>ye, or you</i>	vous louez Dieu		<i>you praise God</i>
<i>Object.</i> {	vous	<i>for à vous to you</i>	il vous parle	<i>he speaks to you</i>	
	vous	<i>.. vous you</i>	il vous respecte	<i>he respects you</i>	
	de vous	<i>.. — of you</i>	il parle de vous	<i>he speaks of you</i>	

In general, *tu* and *te* are put before the verb; *toi*, *de toi*, *à toi*, are placed after; *vous* is placed either before or after, according as the case requires.

REMARK. Politeness has led to the use of the plural *vous*, instead of the singular *tu*: as, *vous êtes bien bon* you are very good, for *tu es bien bon*.

## EXERCISE.

*Thou* art greater than I ; and from *thee* I have (at once)  
*es moi toi ai en même temps* 2  
 learnt humility and wisdom. I (was telling) you that  
*appris* 1 art. = f. art. *sagesse* f. *disais* le que  
 dancing is to the body what taste is to the mind. You have  
 art. *danse* f. m. *ce que* art. *goût* m. *esprit* m. *avez* 2  
 shown us great talents ; when (will you show) us great virtues  
*montré* 3 1 de — m. *quand* *montrerez-vous* 2 1 de f. pl.  
 How amiable you are ! How good you are to have thought of  
*Que* 3 1 *êtes* 2 3 1 2 *de vous être occupé*  
 us ! (It was said) of you the other day, that you intended to  
*On disait* *autre jour* m. *vous vous proposiez* de  
 spend a winter in London (in order to) see every thing curious  
*passer* m. à — dres *pour voir tout ce* = 6  
 which that city presents.  
*que* 1 *cette* 2 *ville* 3 *offre* 4 *de* 5.

## 61. PRONOUNS OF THE THIRD PERSON.

*Singular.*

Sub.	{	il m. ....	he	il perd son temps	he loses his time
		elle f. ....	she	{ elle travaille } toujours	{ she is always at work
Obj.	{	lui m. for à lui	to him	{ dites-lui que } je lui parle-	{ tell him that I will speak to
		lui f. .. à elle	to her	{ rai } dites-lui que	{ him tell her that
	{	de lui of him		{ vous lui don-	{ you will give
		.. d'elle of her		{ nerez } il parle de lui	{ her he speaks of him
	{	lui m. le	him	{ il parle d'elle } je ne connais	{ he speaks of her I know but him
		.. ..		{ que lui de } capable	{ capable
	{	.. avec lui	with him	{ je le méprise } je la respecte	{ I despise him I respect her
		le m. for lui	him	{ Il ne connaît } qu'elle	{ he know but her
	{	la f. .. elle	her	{ venez avec elle } je ne le savais	{ come with her I did not know
		elle f. elle	her	{ pas } pas	{ it.
Sub.	{	le m. for cela	it		

*Plural.*

Sub.	{	ils m. .. ..	they	ils chantent	{ they sing (gentlemen)
		elles f. .. ..	they	elles rient	{ they laugh (ladies)



Obj.	{	leur m. for à eux to them	{	payez-leur ce	{	pay them what
			{	que vous leur devez	{	you owe to them, (to men)
	{	leur f. for à elles to them	{	dites-leur que	{	tell them that I wish to speak to them (to ladies)
			{	je désire leur parler	{	
	{	les m. for eux them	{	vous les trouverez	{	you will find them (men)
		les f. for elles them	{	il les admire	{	he admires them (ladies)
{	{	eux m. .. .. them	{	je ne vois qu'eux	{	I see but them (gentlemen)
			{	allez sans eux	{	go without them
	{	elles f. .. .. them	{	il ne connaît qu'elles	{	he knows but them (ladies)
				partez sans elles		go without them

*Il, ils, le, les* masculine, *elle, elles, le, les* feminine are used in speaking of things as well as of persons; but *de lui, d'elle, d'eux, d'elles, lui, leur* are not. See Y, em. No. 64, 65.

62. When the verb is interrogative, the pronoun, which is its subject, is always put after it; the interrogative *do*, used in English, has no equivalent in French, and is consequently not expressed.

## Singular.

Subject	{	je	I		dois-je payer ?	must I pay ?
	{	tu	thou		as-tu dit ?	hast thou said ?
	{	il	he		chante-t-il bien ?	does he sing well ?
	{	elle	she		travaille-t-elle ?	does she work ?

## Plural.

Subject	{	nous	we		irons-nous ?	shall we go ?
	{	vous	you		viendrez-vous ?	will you come ?
	{	ils m.	they		chantent-ils ?	do they sing ?
	{	elles f.	they		travaillent-elles ?	do they work ?

## EXERCISE.

*He loved them* because *they* were gentle, attentive, and grateful.  
*aimait m. parce que doux = reconnaissant*

*He (was saying) (to them,)* do you not know that the nature of  
*disait \* 3 1-4 savez 2 que propre m.*

*merit is to excite envy ? She often exhorted me to*  
*art. mérite m. de exciter art. envie f. souvent 2 exhortait 1*

*the study the most useful, that of the human heart. They make us*  
*étude f. utile celle 2 m. 1. font*

*love virtue, more by their examples than by their words,*  
*aimer art. f. par leur exemple parole f. pl.*

*What has been said of them ? Did they speak of them ?*  
*Que 1. or 3. a-t-2 \* dit eux \* on 2 parlait 1 elle*

Do you not see *her*? With what pleasure she plays! Look at  
 \* 4 1-5 *voyez* 3 2 *quel* *joue* *Regardez*  
 that magnificent building, it unites gracefulness to beauty.  
*ce magnifique bâtiment* m. *réunit* art. *grâce* f. art. *beauté* f.  
 Ignorance is vain, it sees difficulties in nothing. Do not judge  
 art.—f. *vain* *ne voit de* = *à rien* *ne jugez pas*  
 from appearances, they are deceitful. Take one of these  
*sur* art. *apparences* f. *trompeur* *Prenez* *ces*  
 roses, they smell so sweet.  
 —f. *sentent si bon*.

### 63. REFLECTED AND RECIPROCAL PRONOUNS OF THE THIRD PERSON.

		Singular.			Examples.
Object.	soi	{ with a prepo- sition	{	chacun tire à soi	{ every one draws to himself
	soi	{ governed by the verb	{	l'égoïsme fait qu'on ne voit que soi	{ selfishness makes a person see none but himself
Object.	se	for { à soi, à lui- même	{	il se donne des louanges	{ he gives himself praises
	se	.. { à elle- même	{	elle se fait illusion	{ she imposes on her- self
	se	.. { soi, or lui- même	{	il se perd	he ruins himself
	se	.. { soi, or elle- même	{	elle se flatte	she flatters herself
Object.	se	for { à eux-mêmes	{	ils s'attribuent la gloire, etc	{ they attribute to themselves the glory of, etc.
	se	.. { à elles-mêmes	{	elles se prescrivent pour règle de etc.	{ they prescribe to themselves as rule to, etc.
	se	.. { l'un à l'autre	{	ils s'entredonnent, ou se font des ca- deaux	{ they exchange gifts
	se	.. { eux-mêmes	{	ils se sont désho- norés	{ they have dis- graced them- selves
	se	.. { elles-mêmes	{	elles se sont flattées	{ they have flattered themselves
	se	.. { l'un l'autre	{	ils s'entr'aident	{ they help one an- other
	se	.. { les uns les autres	{	les rats, dit-on, s'entre-dévorent	{ rats, it is said, eat one another

REMARK, *Se* is placed before a verb, and *soi* after a preposition.

## EXERCISE.

In a thousand instances, we do not watch sufficiently over *ourselves*.  
 \* mille occasion f. on \* veille assez sur soi  
 The glory of the world (passes away) in an instant. He gives  
 = f. monde m. s'évanouit en —m. donne  
 himself (a great deal) of trouble. She tires herself. People should  
 se beaucoup peine f. lasse se On doit  
 (very seldom) speak of themselves. Virtue is amiable in itself. We  
 rarement parler soi art. f. de soi On  
 must take upon ourselves the care of our own affairs.  
 doit prendre sur soi soin m. ses propre affaire f. pl.

## OF THE PERSONAL AND RELATIVE EN.

64. This pronoun is personal when it means *of him, of her, of them, of it, of them*, and may be called the genitive case of *je, nous, tu, vous, il, elle, ils, elles*. It is relative when it is used in reference to an object or place antecedently named, and signifies *out of it, out of them, some of it, some of them* and *from that place, or thence*.

As a personal pronoun, it may be used in speaking of persons, although its chief use is about things; but, as a relative pronoun, its use is confined to things and places.

## EXAMPLES.

EN for	{	de lui of him	{ cet homme vous plaît, vous en parlez souvent	{ that man pleases you, you speak of him often
		d'elle of her	{ je ne crois pas cette femme sincère, je m'en méfie	{ I do not believe that woman sincere, I distrust her
	{	" of it, m.	{ lisez son poème, et dites-moi ce que vous en pensez	{ read his poem, and tell me what you think of it.
		" of it f.	{ sa conduite est mauvaise, je m'en plaindrai	{ his conduct is bad; I will complain of it.
	{	" of them m.	{ quant à ces événements nous en parlons souvent	{ as for these events, we often mention them
		" of them f.	{ que dites-vous de ces gravures, en êtes-vous content?	{ what do you think of these plates, are you pleased with them?
	{	" some of them	{ ces fruits paraissent bons, j'en mangerais volontiers	{ these fruits look good, I should like to eat some of them
		" some of them	{ voilà de belles oranges, voulez-vous m'en donner?	{ These are beautiful oranges, will you give me some?



EN for	de cela <i>of that</i>	on ne m'a pas trompé, j'en suis sûr	<i>I have not been imposed upon, I am sure of it</i>
	d'ici <i>hence</i>	il arriva à Paris, comme j'en parlais	<i>he arrived at Paris as I was setting off</i>
	de là <i>thence</i>	vous allez à Paris et monsieur en vient	<i>you are going to Paris, this gentleman comes from thence</i>

## OF THE PERSONAL AND RELATIVE PRONOUN Y.

65. The use of *y*, as a pronoun, is strictly confined to things. It is employed in all those cases in which the objective case is marked by the preposition *à*. Speaking of persons, we say : *je pense à votre frère, je donne mes soins à votre frère* ; and, when not naming the person, we say : *je pense à lui, je lui donne mes soins* ; thus speaking of things, we must say : *je pense à votre affaire, je donne mes soins à votre affaire*, and speaking relatively, *j'y pense, j'y donne mes soins*.

*Y* is also used in reference to a place antecedently named, and when *here, there* are understood in English.

## EXAMPLES.

Y for	à lui <i>to him</i>	c'est un honnête homme, fiez-vous y*	<i>he is an honest man, trust to him*</i>
	à elle <i>to her</i>	la poussière gâtera ce tableau, si on n'y met pas un verre	<i>the dust will spoil this picture, if you don't put a glass to it</i>
	" <i>to it, m.</i>	si votre lettre est finie, mettez-y l'adresse.	<i>if you have finished your letter, put the direction to it</i>
	" <i>to it, f.</i>	ce sont de belles promesses, mais je ne m'y fie pas	<i>these are fine promises, but I do not trust to them</i>
	" <i>to them, f.</i>	donnez-moi vos ordres, et j'y obéirai ponctuellement	<i>give me your commands, and I will punctually obey them</i>
	" <i>to them m.</i>	ces arguments sont pressants, je n'y vois point de réplique	<i>these arguments are cogent, I see no reply to them</i>
	" <i>in them</i>	allons, n'en parlons plus, il ne faut plus y penser	<i>come, say no more, we must not think about it any longer</i>
	à cela <i>to it</i>	nous partons de Londres, quand vous y venez	<i>we set off from London, when you come hither</i>
	ici <i>here</i>	c'est un endroit charmant, j'en compte m'y fixer	<i>it is a fine place, I intend to settle there</i>
	là <i>there</i>		

\* *Se fier* and *penser* alone admit *y*, in speaking of persons.

REMARK. *Y* and *en* are always put before the verb, except with the imperative affirmative second person.

## EXERCISE.

They speak (a great deal) *of it*. You like French authors,  
*On parle beaucoup* *aimez art. français* 2 *auteur* 1  
 you are always speaking *of them*. That is a delicate affair; the  
 \* 2 *parlez* 1 *Ce délicat* 2 = f. 1.  
 success of it is doubtful. See them; I consent *to it*, but do  
*succès m. douteux* *Voyez* *consens* 2 1 \*  
 not trust *them*. That is a fine appointment: he had  
 1-5 *vous* 2 *fiez* 4 *y* 3 *Ce place* f. •  
 long aspired *to it*. He has done it; but he  
*depuis long-temps* —rait 2 1 *a fait* *ne* 1  
 will get nothing *by it*.  
*gagnera* 3 *rien* 4 *y* 2

## § II.

## OF POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

66. These pronouns denote the possession of things. When we say, *mon habit*, my coat; *votre maison*, your house; *son jardin*, his, or her garden; it is the same, as saying *l'habit qui est à moi*, the coat which belongs to me; *la maison qui est à vous*, the house which belongs to you; *le jardin qui est à lui*, or *à elle*, the garden which belongs to him, or to her.

67. These pronouns are of two sorts, the *conjunctive*, which are always joined to a noun, which they precede, *mon livre*, my book; and the *relative*, which are used in reference to a noun, as *le mien*, mine.

By some, these pronouns have also been called adjectives, because they agree in gender and number with the noun. *Mon frère*, my brother; *ma sœur*, my sister.

## POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS CONJUNCTIVE RELATING TO ONE PERSON.

	Singular	Plural
for the	1st person <i>mon, m. ma, f.</i>	<i>mes, m. f. my</i>
	2nd — <i>ton, m. ta f.</i>	<i>tes, m. f. thy</i>
	3rd — <i>son, m. sa f.</i>	<i>ses, m. f. his, her, its</i>

## POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS CONJUNCTIVE RELATING TO MANY PERSONS.

	Singular	Plural
for the	1st person <i>notre, m. f.</i>	<i>nos, m. f. our</i>
	2nd — <i>votre, m. f.</i>	<i>vos, m. f. your</i>
	3rd — <i>leur, m. f.</i>	<i>leurs, m. f. their</i>

## EXAMPLES.

Mon père, ma mère et mes frères  
sont à la campagne, avec vos  
amis et leurs enfants.

Mon cousin est allé consoler sa  
sœur, qui a perdu son fils.\*

*My father, mother, and brother  
are in the country, with your  
friends and their children.*

*My cousin is gone to visit and  
console his sister, who has lost  
her son.*

68. *Mon, ton, son*, are used before a noun feminine, when beginning with a vowel, or *h* mute, *mon ame*, my soul; *ton humeur*, thy humour; *son amitié*, his friendship, in order to avoid the meeting of the two vowels, or hyatus, *ma ame, ta humeur, sa amitié*.

## EXERCISE.

*My principles, my love, of retirement, my taste*  
—pe goût m. pour art. retraite f. amour m.  
for (every thing) that (is connected) with learning, and  
tout ce qui tient à art. instruction,  
*my detestation of all spirit of party, (every thing) has*  
haine f. h. asp. pour esprit parti tout a 2  
induced me to prefer a life passed in the closet, to the  
porté 3 1 préférer \* art. vie f. \* de \* cabinet  
active life of the world. Do not think, my daughter, that thy  
— 2 f. 1 m. \* pense que  
candour, thy ingenuousness, thy taste, so delicate and so  
= f. ingénuité f. goût, m. délicat  
refined, and even thy graces, can shelter thee from  
fin même — puissent mettre à l'abri de  
censure. His wit, his talents, his honesty, and  
art. — f. esprit m. — m. honnêteté f. h. m.  
even his (good nature) make him beloved by every body.  
même bonhomie f font aimer de tout le monde  
Our constancy and our efforts will (at last) surmount all  
— f. — m. \* enfin 2 surmonteront 1  
obstacles. I see nothing that can (be censured)  
art. — m. pl. vois 2 ne 1 rien 3 que on puisse reprendre  
in your conduct. Their taste for the fantastical, the mon-  
dans conduite f. pour bizarre, m. mon-  
strous, and the marvellous gives to all their compositions  
strueux, m. merveilleux m. donne — f.

\* Observe that the pronoun does not agree with the possessor as in English, thus, *his father, her father* are both rendered by *son père*, and *his mother, her mother*, by *sa mère*, no regard being paid to *his* or *hers*, but to the gender of *father* and *mother*.



although very fine in themselves, an air of deformity, which  
*quoique en elles-mêmes — m. difformité f. qui*  
 shocks at first sight.  
*choque à art. coup-d'œil, m.*

### 69. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS RELATIVE, REFERRING TO ONE PERSON.

	<i>m. Sing.</i>	<i>f. Sing.</i>	<i>m. Plur.</i>	<i>f. Plur.</i>
1st	Le mien,	la mienne,	Les miens,	les miennes, <i>mine</i>
2nd.	Le tien,	la tienne,	Les tiens,	les tiennes, <i>thine</i>
3rd.	Le sien,	la sienne,	Les siens,	les siennes, <i>his, her, its</i>

### POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS RELATIVE, REFERRING TO SEVERAL PERSONS.

	<i>m. Sing.</i>	<i>f. Sing.</i>	<i>Pl. of both Gen.</i>
1st.	Le nôtre,	la nôtre,	Les nôtres, <i>ours</i>
2nd.	Le vôtre,	la vôtre,	Les vôtres, <i>yours</i>
3rd.	Le leur,	la leur,	Les leurs, <i>theirs</i>

The use of these pronouns is to avoid the repetition of a noun antecedently named.

#### EXAMPLE.

Avez-vous toujours votre cheval ? *Have you still your horse ? I have*  
 je n'ai plus le mien ; for je n'ai *no longer mine,*  
 plus mon cheval.

#### EXERCISE.

Is it your temper or hers, that hinders you from living well  
*ce humeur f. qui empêche 2 1 de vivre*  
 together ? If it be yours, it is easy for you, to remedy it  
*ensemble ce est il 2 aisè 3 \* 1 d'y porter remède*  
 by mastering (your temper) ; if it be hers, redouble your  
*en prenant sur vous-même ; ce redoublez de \**  
 kindness, attention, and good behaviour ; it is  
*complaisance de — de procédé m. pl. il*  
 very seldom that this method (proves unsuccessful). If my  
*très-rare ce moyen ne réussisse pas Si*  
 friends had served me with the same zeal as yours, it  
*avaient 2 servi 3 1 même zèle m. que*  
 is very certain that I (should have) succeeded : but yours have  
*très sûr aurais réussi ont*  
 been all warmth, and mine all ice. All the pictures which we  
*été de feu de glace tableau m. que*  
 expected from Rome are arrived : there are some that are a  
*attendions arrivés il y en a qui*  
 little damaged ; but yours, his and mine are in good  
*peu endommagés en*  
 condition. We know perfectly well what are your  
*état m. savons parfaitement \* quels*

amusements in town, and I assure you we are very  
 — à art. ville f. — 2 1 que sommes bien  
 far from envying you them; but if you knew  
 éloigné pl. envier 3 1 2 connaissez quels  
 ours in the country, it (is most likely) you  
 sont à compagne f. il y a toute apparence que  
 (would not be long) in giving them the preference. You  
 ne tarderiez pas à donner 2 leur 1 préférence f.  
 have opened your heart to me with that noble frankness  
 avez 2 ouvert 3 1 — franchise f.  
 which so well becomes an honest man: this confidence well  
 qui si 2 3 sied 1 à honnête confiance f. 2  
 deserves mine.  
 mérite 1.

REMARK. When through politeness *vous* is used for *tu*, then *votre*, *vos*, are used instead of *ton*, *ta*, *tes*, and *le vôtre*, *la vôtre*, *les vôtres*, for *le tien*, *la tiennes*, *les tiens*, *les tiennes*.

## EXAMPLES.

Que vous ressemblez peu à How little you resemble your  
 vos ancêtres? ancestors.  
 Quand vous aurez entendu When you have heard our rea-  
 nos raisons, nous écouterons les sons, we will listen to yours.  
 vôtres.

## § III.

## 70. OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

The demonstrative pronouns serve to designate and point out objects. They are of two sorts, the *conjunctive*, which are always placed before the noun, and the *relative*, which are used in reference to a noun antecedently named. Both agree in gender and number with the noun.

## CONJUNCTIVE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

71. The demonstrative relative pronouns are in the singular.

Ce masc. before a consonant or an *h* aspirate  
 Cet masc. before a vowel or an *h* mute  
 Cette fem. in all cases

## MASCULINE SINGULAR.

Ce livre, <i>this or that book</i>	Cet homme, <i>this or that man</i>
Ce héros, <i>this or that hero.</i>	Cet enfant, <i>this or that child</i>

## FEMININE SINGULAR.

cette fille	<i>this or that girl</i>
cette ame,	<i>this or that soul</i>
cette histoire	<i>this or that story</i>
cette haine	<i>that hatred</i>

The plural of *ce*, *cet*, *cette*, is *ces*. It is common to both genders, and is used before vowels and consonants.

ces livres, <i>these or those books</i>	ces hommes, <i>these men</i>
de ces héros, <i>of these or those heroes</i>	ces enfants, <i>those children</i>
à ces filles, <i>to these or those girls</i>	ces histoires, <i>these stories</i> .

*Ci* and *là* are often added to the noun, either to point it out more distinctly or speak of it more emphatically.

Cet homme-là, <i>that man</i>	Ces poires-ci sont bonnes, <i>these pears are good</i> .
-------------------------------	--

## RELATIVE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS,

72. The relative demonstrative agree also in gender with the noun, and are

## MASCULINE SINGULAR AND PLURAL.

Celui-ci, <i>this</i>	Celui-là, <i>that</i>
Ceux-ci, <i>these</i>	Ceux-là, <i>those</i>

## FEMININE SINGULAR AND PLURAL.

Celle-ci, <i>this</i>	Celle-là, <i>that</i>
Celles-ci, <i>these</i>	Celles-là, <i>those</i>

*Celui*, *celle*, *ceux*, *celles*, are used without *ci*, *là*, before a preposition and a relative pronoun.

J'aime mieux mon jardin que celui *I like my garden better than*  
de mon frère *my brother's*

On ne peut les comparer à ceux *They are not to be compared with*  
que nous avons vus à Paris, *those we saw at Paris.*

Je le donnerai à celui qui arrivera *I will give it to him who comes*  
le premier *in first*

73. *Ceci*, *this* ; *cela*, *that* ; are, as it were, of the neuter gender, and are used to express *this thing*, *that thing*, when the object is not named

Je n'aime pas cela	<i>I do not like that</i>
Ceci n'est pas pour vous	<i>This is not for you</i>

## CE QUI, CE DONT, &amp;c. FOR WHAT.

74. *Ce* is much used in conjunction with the relative pronoun.



Ce qui me plaît	<i>That which (or what) pleases me</i>
Ce dont je parle	<i>What I speak of (or that of which I speak)</i>
Ce à quoi je m'applique	<i>What I apply to, (or that thing to which I apply)</i>
Ce que je dis	<i>What I say (or that thing which I say)</i>
Ce dont je dépend	<i>What I depend upon (that thing upon which I depend)</i>

OBSERVE that the pronoun *what* is commonly used in English as if a contraction of *that which*, and is, accordingly, always expressed by two words in French, a demonstrative and a relative pronoun.

### 75. *ce* IN EXPLANATORY SENTENCES.

*Ce* is also much used in French, as the nominative or subject of *être*, in descriptive sentences, that is, when we name the nature, object of a thing, and even a person.

C'est une tabatière,	<i>It is a snuff-box,</i>
C'est un officier général	<i>He is an officer general</i>
Ce sont de bons enfants,	<i>They are good children</i>

See *Syntax. Demonstrative Pronouns.*

### EXERCISE.

Nothing is so opposite to *that* true eloquence, the office  
*ne 3 rien 1 opposé véritable —f. fonction*  
 (of which) is to ennoble (every thing), as the use of  
*tion f. 2 1 de 1 ennoblir 3 tout 2\* que emploi m.*  
*those refined thoughts, and hunting after those light,*  
*fin 2 pensée f. 1. art. recherche f. de léger 2*  
*airy unsolid ideas, which like a leaf of*  
*délié 2 sans consistance 4 idée f. 1. qui comme feuille f.*  
*beaten metal, acquire brightness only by losing*  
*battu 3 —m. 1 ne prennent de art. éclat m que en perdant*  
*part of their solidity. This man has nothing in common*  
*\* \* art. = f. h. m. de commun*  
*with that hero. This long restrained hatred broke,*  
*h asp. 1 long-temps 3 contenu 4 haine f. 2. éclata*  
*and was the unhappy source of those dreadful events*  
*fut malheureux —f. terrible événe-*  
*ment m. pl. Ce It is a great pleasure to me. It was a great*  
*plaisir m. \* fut*  
*pain to us. The pleasures of the wise resemble in*  
*déplaisir m. \* nous. ressemblent 2-3*  
*nothing those of a dissipated man. He that suffers himself to (be*  
*1 4 à dissipé 2 1 se laisse \**

ruled) by his passions, must renounce happiness.  
*dominer* *doit renoncer à* art. m.

This stuff (will suit) you admirably. I desire you  
*étouffe-ci f.* *siéra 2* *1* *à merveille* *que*

to take this. That action is blameable. This  
*prenez m.* *-là* *digne de blâme*

scene is calculated to interest all men, but that cannot  
*-ci faite pour intéresser art.* *-là ne saurait*

succeed. (Here are) certainly two charming prospects, this  
*réussir Voilà certainement beau perspective f. pl.*

has something (in it) more cheerful, but many people  
*quelque chose de \* riant bien de art. personne f. pl.*

think that more striking and more majes-  
*trouvent à quelque chose de imposant de majes-*

tic. The body perishes, the soul is immortal: yet all  
*tueux. périt cependant*

the cares are for that, while we neglect this. What  
*m. tandis que négligeons f.*

means this? That is true. It is not that. This is low and  
*veut dire Ce bas*

mean, but that is grand and sublime.  
*rampant*

## OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

76. *Relative pronouns* are those which relate to a noun preceding, called the *antecedent*. In the phrase *l'homme qui joue*, the man who plays, *qui* relates to the substantive *homme*; *l'homme* is then the *antecedent* of the pronoun relative *qui*.

Relative pronouns are used as follows according as they refer to persons and things: \*

<i>qui</i> , common to persons and things	who	Dieu <i>qui</i> voit tout	{ God who sees every thing
	which	{ les chevaux <i>qui</i> courent	{ the horses which are running

\* Much attention must be paid to the distinction between persons and things, as the use of some of the pronouns is common, and the use of others is restricted to persons.

<i>de qui</i> , said of persons only; <i>dont</i> , common to persons and things, <i>d'où</i>	of whom, or from whom	<i>l'homme dont</i> or <i>de qui</i> vous parlez	<i>the man of whom</i> you speak
	of which, or from which	<i>les femmes dont</i> , or <i>de qui</i> il se moque	<i>the women whom</i> he laughs at
		<i>le livre dont</i> vous parlez	<i>the book of which</i> you speak
	whose	<i>les livres dont</i> vous parlez	<i>the books of which</i> you speak
		<i>la maison d'où</i> (de laquelle) il est sorti	<i>the house out of which</i> he came
		<i>le marchand dont</i> le magasin est brûlé	<i>the merchant whose</i> warehouse is burnt
		<i>les enfants dont</i> il a placé le père	<i>the children whose</i> father he placed
<i>à qui</i> , said of persons only	to whom	<i>l'homme à qui</i> vous vous adressez	<i>the man to whom</i> you apply
<i>auquel</i> , <i>à laquelle</i> , <i>auxquels</i> , <i>auxquelles</i> common, but especially applied to things, <i>où</i>	to which	<i>l'affaire à laquelle</i> vous mettez tant d'intérêt	<i>the business in which</i> you are so interested
		<i>les dépenses auxquelles</i> vous êtes obligé	<i>the expences to which</i> you are obliged
		<i>le but où</i> (auquel) vous tendez	<i>the thing at which</i> you aim
<i>que</i> , common to persons and things.	whom	<i>l'homme que</i> vous cherchez	<i>the man whom</i> you seek
	which	<i>les lois que</i> nous observons	<i>the laws which</i> we observe

## RELATIVE PRONOUNS WITH PREPOSITIONS.

<i>qui</i> referring to persons	<i>pour qui</i> est cette lettre ?	<i>for whom</i> is this letter ?
	<i>avec qui</i> irez-vous à Paris ?	<i>with whom</i> do you go to Paris ?
<i>lequel</i> , <i>laquelle</i> , <i>lesquels</i> , <i>lesquelles</i> , common, but chiefly said of things of which the gender is known	<i>ce</i> sont de ces choses avec lesquelles il ne faut pas badiner	<i>these</i> are things with which you must not trifle
	<i>c'est</i> bien là la maison dans laquelle il est entré	<i>this</i> is indeed the house which he went in
<i>quoi</i> , said of things not named, of which the gender has not been expressed	<i>pourquoi</i> faites-vous cela	<i>what</i> do you do that for ? (for what reason ?)
	<i>de quoi</i> parlez-vous ?	<i>what</i> are you speaking of ?
	<i>avec quoi</i> fait-on de l'encre	<i>what</i> is ink made of ?

*Qui*, *que*, and *dont*, are of both genders and both numbers.

*Lequel* is a compound of *quel* and of the article *le*, *la*, *les*, with which it is joined, and forms but one word.



<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>	
lequel	laquelle	lesquels	lesquelles	<i>which</i>
duquel	de laquelle	desquels	desquelles	<i>of which</i>
auquel	à laquelle	auxquels	auxquelles	<i>to which</i>

This pronoun always agrees in gender and number with its antecedent.

*Quoi* is always governed by a preposition.

77. *Qui*, relative, is common to persons and things and is of both genders and numbers ; the verb which follows it, and adjective which refer to it, must be of the same number and gender as the antecedent.\*

#### EXAMPLES.

<i>Moi qui suis son fils</i>	I who am his son.
<i>Mon frère qui est si bon</i>	My brother who is so kind.
<i>L'enfant qui joue</i>	The child who plays.
<i>Les enfants qui étudient</i>	The children who study.
<i>Vous qui riez</i>	You who laugh.
<i>Les livres qui instruisent</i>	The books which instruct.

In the first example, the verb is in the first person singular, to agree with *moi*, and, in the second, *bon* is masculine singular, to agree with *frère*.

78. *Dont*, whose, of whom, of which, from whom, from which, is common to persons and things, and *duquel*, *de laquelle*, *desquels*, *desquelles* have the same meaning, but are used only when the object is particularly pointed out, or distinguished from others of the same nature.

#### EXAMPLES.

La tour dont nous apercevons les crêneaux doit être très-élevée,	<i>The tower whose battlements we perceive must be very high.</i>
Ce dont je vous ai parlé l'autre jour n'a pas réussi.	<i>What I was speaking to you of the other day did not succeed.</i>
C'est une démarche de laquelle tout dépend.	<i>It is a step on which every thing depends.</i>

79. *A qui*, of both genders and numbers, (to whom, to which,) is never used in reference to things, but *auquel*, *à*

---

\* The relative pronoun is so important a part of a sentence, its use in French so different from what it is in English, that it has been thought better to anticipate a little, and to place here at once rules which properly belong to the syntax, but which it is quite necessary the learner should understand whilst he is doing the exercises which precede that part of the grammar, which belongs to the relative pronoun according to the usual order.

*laquelle, auxquels, auxquelles* which agree in gender and number with the antecedent.

## EXAMPLES.

L'homme à qui vous avez écrit,      *The man to whom you wrote, did*  
     n'a pas répondu.                      *not answer.*  
 Sont-ce là les choses auxquelles      *Are those the things you think*  
     vous pensez ?                          *of ?*

## EXERCISE.

I *who* did not suspect (so much) falsehood, cunning,  
     \*                      *soupçonnais tant de fausseté f. pr. ruse f.*  
 and perfidy, in a man whom I loved blindly, followed  
     pr. =                      *j'aimais aveuglément, je suivis*  
 his counsels. Thou, *who* art candour and innocence itself,  
     *conseil m. es art. = f. art. = f. même*  
 trust not too lightly. The great empire of the Egyptians  
*te confie légèrement. — m. — tien.*  
*which* was, (as if) detached from all others, was:  
     *fut comme détaché art. fut*  
 not of long duration. We *who* know the value of time  
     *durée f. connaissons prix m. art.*  
     ought to make a good use (of it), instead of wasting  
*nous devons \* emploi m. en au lieu perdre*  
 it in idleness and frivolity. What! is it you, my  
     *dans art. oisiveté f. art inutilité f. Quoi ce*  
 daughter, *who* (would wish) that I (should love) you less? The  
     *voudriez que aimasse*  
 greatest men, *who* were the ornament and glory of Greece,  
     *étaient ornement art. = f. art. Grèce f.*  
 Homer, Pythagoras, Plato, even Lycurgus and Solon, went  
*Homère, —gore Platon, même —gue — allèrent*  
 to learn wisdom in Egypt. Is this the man whose house  
 \* *apprendre art. sagcsz f. en Egypte Est-ce là*  
 was burnt down last week. I know the books of which  
*a été brûlée \* 2 art. semaine f. 1. connais*  
 you (are speaking)? It is a project to which he has devoted  
     *parlez —jet m. a consacré*  
 much time. Who is the lady to whom you (paid a visit) this  
*bien du avez fait visite ce*  
 morning? Come in the (drawing room) I will show you the  
     *matin Venez salon m. montrera*  
 table on which he (was writing).  
     *à écrivait.*

80. *Que* is also common to persons and things, and is of both genders and numbers.

## EXAMPLES.

c'est moi que l'on demande	<i>it is I whom they ask for</i>
c'est toi que l'on appelle	<i>it is thou whom they call</i>
la femme que je vois si bien parée	<i>the woman whom I see so well dressed</i>
c'est nous que vous offensez	<i>it is we whom you offend</i>
c'est vous que je cherche	<i>it is you I am seeking</i>
les dames que vous voyez	<i>the ladies whom you see</i>

## EXERCISE.

*I whom* temptation surrounded on every side fell  
 art, *séduction* f. *environnait* de tout part f. pl. je tombai  
 into the snare. It is you *whom* the public voice calls to that  
*dans* piège m. Ce 2 f. 1. appelle  
 office. A power, which terror and force have founded,  
*place* f. *puissance* f. art. = f. art.—f. fondé, f.  
 cannot be of long duration. It is we *whom* they persecute with  
*ne peut* durée f. l'on poursuit avec  
 unexampled rage. You *whom* every body respects,  
*une sans exemple* 2 *furor* f. 1 tout le monde respecte  
 hasten to (show yourself). (Every thing) in the universe  
*hâtez-vous* de paraître Tout dans univers m.  
 alters and perishes; but the writings which genius has  
*s'altère* périt écrit m. pl. art. génie m.  
 dictated, shall be immortal.  
*dicté* m. pl. seront —tel

81. *D'où* is very often used for *duquel*, *de laquelle*, *desquels*, *desquelles*; and *où* for *auquel*, *à laquelle*, *auxquels*, *auxquelles*.

## EXAMPLES.

Voilà le but, où (auquel) il tend *That is the object he has in view*  
 Ce sont des affaires, où (aux- *Those are affairs with which I am*  
 quelles) je suis embarrassé. perplexed  
 Voilà une chose d'où (de laquelle) *That is an affair on which the*  
 dépend le bonheur public. public happiness depends  
 Tels sont les lieux par où (par *These are the places through which*  
 lesquels) il a passé he passed.

82. *Lequel*, *laquelle*, *lesquels*, *lesquelles*, are generally used after prepositions, and also in the sense of *which*, when it is necessary to distinguish between objects of the same nature.

## EXAMPLES.

Sont-ce là les personnes avec les- *Are those the people with whom he*  
 quelles il passe son temps? spends his time  
 Ce sont de ces moments dans les- *These are the moments in which a*  
 quels on oublie tous ses cha- man forgets all his sorrows  
 grins



C'est une de ces dames, mais je ne sais laquelle *It is one of these ladies, but I do not know which*

83. *Quoi* comes after prepositions, and is used in speaking of things of which the gender is not ascertained; it is generally used to express *what, what thing, which thing*.

## EXAMPLE.

Dites-moi en quoi je puis vous être utile *Tell me in what thing I can be of use to you*  
 De quoi a-t-il été question ? *What has been the matter?*  
 On dansa jusqu'à minuit, après quoi il y eut un souper superbe *They danced until twelve, after which there was a beautiful supper*

## EXERCISE.

The protection on which he relied has been too weak.  
 —f. sur comptait faible  
 That after which a true philosopher sighs most ardently  
 Ce après vrai —phe m. soupire art. ardemment  
 is to spread that sentiment of universal benevolence which  
 de répandre —m. —sel 2 bienveillance f. 1  
 should unite and (bring together) all men. These are con-  
 devrait unir rapprocher art. Ce sont de art.  
 ditions without which the thing (would not have been) concluded.  
 sans f. n'aurait pas été fait f.  
 Nature, of whose secrets we (are ignorant) (will  
 art. — f. \* 1 art. — m. pl. 4 2 ignorons 3 sera  
 always be) a source of conjecture to mankind. What does  
 toujours — f. 3 — f. pl. 4 pour 1 art. homme 2  
 he complain of so bitterly? The only moments, in which his  
 se plaint amèrement seul — pl.  
 soul is yet opened to pleasure, are those which he devotes  
 s'ouvre encore art. ceux consacrer  
 to study. The mountains from whence gold (is  
 art. f. pl. on 1 art. or 3  
 extracted), are not in general barren. The different countries  
 tire 2 \* en — infertile pl. — pays m. pl.  
 through which he has passed have furnished his pencil with  
 par a passé ont fourni à pinceau m. de  
 romantic and picturesque scenes.  
 art. — tique 2 pittoresque 3 — 1.

84. OF THE PRONOUN ABSOLUTE *QUI*, AND OTHER PRONOUNS USED IN QUESTIONS.

*Who* and *whom* are rendered by *qui*, in questions.

## EXAMPLES.

Qui vous a dit cela ? *Who told you that?*  
 Qui voulez-vous inviter ? *Whom do you wish to invite?*  
 Savez-vous qui l'a dit ? *Do you know who said so?*

*What* (or what thing) is rendered by *que*.

## EXAMPLES.

Que voulez-vous dire ?

*What do you mean ?*

Que fait-il en haut ?

*What is he doing up stairs ?*

*Quoi* must be used after prepositions, and also with adjectives.

## EXAMPLES.

À quoi pensez-vous ?

*What are you thinking of ?*

Quoi de plus beau ?

*What can be finer ?*

*What, which*, joined to a noun, is rendered by *quel, quelle, quels, quelles*.

## EXAMPLES.

Quel habit mettez-vous ?

*What coat shall you put on ?*

On ne sait quelle route il a pris

*No one knows which road he has taken.*

Quel homme est-ce ?

*What sort of a man is he ?*

*What and which*, used relatively, are rendered by *lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles*.

## EXAMPLES.

Voilà deux habits ; lequel mettez-vous ?

*There are two coats, which will you put on ?*

Avec laquelle de ces dames voulez-vous danser ?

*With which of those ladies do you wish to dance ?*

## EXERCISE.

*Who* (will not agree) that life has few and real pleasures and  
*ne conviendra pas* art. f. *peu de vrai plaisir, m.*  
 many dreadful pains ? (Some one) entered  
*beaucoup de affreux 2* *peine f. pl. 1.* *On entra*  
 secretly ; guess *who* it was. *What* have you read in that book  
*secrètement ; devinez \* \** *lu m.*  
 that can have excited in your soul emotion and enthu-  
*qui puisse avoir porté* art. — f. art. *enthousiasme ?*  
*siasme m. ne sais* *penser 2 en 1 à avez-vous*  
 find them occupied ? (There is) in that discourse I know  
*trouvés occupé m. pl. Il y a discours m. sais 2*  
 not *what* which appears to me designing. *What* have you  
*ne 1 sembler \* insidieux*  
 remarked good, beautiful and sublime in Homer ? *What*  
*remarqué de pr. pr.*  
 more brilliant, and, at the same time, more false, than the  
*pr. brillant en \* même pr.*

expressions of a man, who has (a great deal) of wit; but  
 ——— *beaucoup* *esprit* *qui*  
 wants judgment? *What* grace, *what* delicacy, *what* har-  
*manque de jugement?* *grâce* f. *délicatesse* f.  
 mony, *what* colouring, *what* beautiful lines in Racine! *What*  
 = f. *coloris* m. *vers* m. — 1  
 then must have been that extraordinary man, to whom seven  
*donc* 3 *doit* 2 *avoir* *été* = 2 — 1  
 cities contested the glory of having given birth? He  
*se sont disputé* = f. *avoir* *donné* art. *jour* m.  
 (does not know) what model to follow. I have told you *what* man  
*ne sait pas* *modèle* m.\* *suiivre* *ai* *dit*  
 it is. *Which* of those ladies do you think the most amiable?  
*ce* f. *dames* f.\* 2 *trouvez* 1 f.  
 Choose *which* of those two pictures you like best.  
*Choisissez* m. 4 5 6 *tableau* m. 7 1 *aimez* 2 art. *mieux* 3

## § VI.

## OF INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

85. *Indefinite pronouns* are those which have a vague and indefinite signification, and which have reference to persons and things in general, without particularizing.

They are of four sorts.

## FIRST CLASS.

86. Those that are never joined to a substantive.

ON*	one	on aime à se flatter	{ one is apt to flatter ones self
	a man	{ on n'est pas toujours maître de soi	{ a man cannot always command his own temper
	a woman	{ on n'est pas toujours maîtresse d'aller où* l'on veut	{ a woman cannot always go where she pleases
	somebody	on frappe à la porte	{ somebody knocks at the door
	people	{ on pense et* l'on dit tout haut	{ people think and say openly
	they	{ on raconte diverse- ment cette histoire	{ they relate that story differently
	we	{ on acquiert l'expéri- ence à ses dépens	{ we acquire experience at our own expense

\* *On* is an abbreviation or a contraction of *homme*, which in old French was spelt *hom*. No doubt but that formerly it was usual to say, when speaking in a vague sense, *homme* *dit*, *homme* *étudie*, from which mode of expression *on* has been derived.



ON	you	{ on trouve partout des importuns	{ you will find troublesome people every where
	I	{ on prévient qu'on n'a point eu l'intention de, etc.	{ I beg to observe, that I had no intention to, etc.
	I	{ quand on vous dit que l'on compte sur vous	{ when I tell you that I depend upon you
	they	{ si † l'on vous blâme et si † on le loue, on a tort	{ if they blame you and praise him, they are wrong.

quelqu'un	{ one somebody some one	{ quelqu'un m'a dit, somebody told me.
quiconque	{ whoever whosoever	{ qui connaît les hommes, apprend à s'en défier, whoever knows mankind, learns to distrust them.
chacun	{ each every one	{ chacun s'en plaint, every one complains of him.
autrui	{ other people others	{ n'enviez pas le bien d'autrui, do not covet the property of others. ne faites pas à autrui ce que vous ne voudriez pas que l'on vous fît, do not do to others what you would not have done to you
personne	{ nobody no one	{ la fierté ne convient à personne, pride becomes nobody
rien	{ nothing not anything any thing	{ rien ne lui plaît, nothing pleases him. y a-t il rien qui puisse lui plaire ? is there any thing that can please him ?

## SECOND CLASS.

87. Those which are always joined to a substantive.

quelque	some	{ si cela était vrai, quelque historien en aurait parlé, if that were true, some historian would have mentioned it
chaque	each, every	{ à chaque jour suffit sa peine, sufficient for the day is the evil thereof
quelconque	{ whoever whatever	{ il n'y a raison quelconque qui puisse l'y obliger, no reason whatever can oblige him to it
certain	{ certain some	{ certain homme, a certain man certaines nouvelles, some news
un	a, an	{ j'ai vu un homme, I saw a man prenez une orange, take an orange

† Instead of *et on*, *ou on*, *si on*, it is better for euphony, to part these words with an *l'*, thus : *et l'on*, *ou l'on*, *si l'on*, when the next word does not begin with an *l*, as seen by the examples ; and instead of *les habitudes qu'on contracte*, *ce après quoi on court*, *quoiqu'on croie*, *un homme à qui on reproche*, say rather : *les habitudes que l'on contracte*, *ce après quoi l'on court*, *bien que l'on croie*, *un homme à qui l'on reproche*.

## THIRD CLASS.

88. Those which are sometimes used in conjunction with a substantive, and sometimes relatively.

nul	<i>no, one</i>	{ nulle raison ne peut le convaincre, <i>no reason can convince him</i> nul d'eux ne l'a rencontré, <i>not one of them has met him</i>
pas un	<i>no, not one</i>	{ il n'y a pas une erreur dans cet ouvrage, <i>there is not one error in that work</i> pas un ne le dit, <i>not one says so</i>
aucun	<i>no, none</i>	{ je ne connais aucun de vos juges, <i>I know none of your Judges</i> il n'a fait aucune difficulté, <i>he has made no difficulty</i>
autre	<i>other</i>	{ servez-vous d'une autre expression, <i>make use of another expression</i> je vous prenais pour un autre, <i>I took you for another</i>
même	<i>same</i>	{ c'est le même homme que je vis hier, <i>he is the same man I saw yesterday</i> cet homme n'est plus le même, <i>that man is no longer the same.</i>
tel	{ <i>such</i> <i>like</i>	{ il tint à peu près un tel discours, <i>he made nearly such a discourse</i> je ne vis jamais rien de tel, <i>I never saw any thing like it</i>
plusieurs	{ <i>several</i> <i>many</i>	{ il est arrivé plusieurs vaisseaux, <i>several vessels have arrived.</i> il ne faut pas que plusieurs pâtissent pour un seul, <i>many must not suffer for one</i>
tout	{ <i>all</i> <i>every</i> <i>every thing</i>	{ tous les êtres créés, <i>all created beings</i> tout disparaît devant Dieu, <i>everything vanishes before God</i>

## FOURTH CLASS.

89. Of those followed by *que*.

qui que	<i>whoever</i>	{ qui que tu sois, <i>whoever thou mayest be</i> qui que ce soit, <i>whoever it may be</i>
quoi que	<i>whatever</i>	{ quoi que ce soit, <i>whatever it may be</i> quoi que vous disiez, <i>whatever you may say</i>
quelque	{ <i>whatever</i> <i>however</i>	{ quel que soit cet homme, <i>whoever that man may be</i> quel que soit votre courage, <i>whatever your courage may be</i>
tel que	<i>such as</i>	{ cette étoffe est telle que vous la voulez, <i>this stuff is such as you wish for</i>

quelque— que	{ <i>whatever</i> <i>however</i>	{ quelque raison que vous donniez, <i>what-</i> <i>ever reason you may give</i>
		{ quelque puissant que vous soyez, <i>how-</i> <i>ever powerful you may be</i>
tout—que	<i>however</i>	{ tout savant qu'il est, <i>however learned</i> <i>he may be</i>

## CHAPTER V.

## OF THE VERB.

90. The *Verb* is a word, the chief use of which is to express action, feeling, existence ; it has persons, moods, and tenses.

In the phrase *la vertu est aimable*, virtue is amiable, it is affirmed that the quality *aimable* belongs to *la vertu* ; likewise in this sentence, *le vice n'est pas aimable*, vice is not amiable, it is affirmed that the quality *aimable* does not belong to *le vice* ; the word *est* expresses this affirmation.

That concerning which we affirm or deny a thing is called the *subject*, and what is affirmed or denied is called its *attribute*. In the two preceding sentences, *vertu* and *vice* are subjects of the verb *est*, and *aimable* is the attribute affirmed respecting the one, and denied with respect to the other.

91. There are in verbs *two numbers*, the singular and plural, and, in each number, *three persons*.

I. The first person is that who speaks ; it is designated by *je*, I, in the singular, and by *nous*, we, in the plural : as, *je pense*, I think ; *nous pensons*, we think.

II. The second is the person spoken to, expressed by *tu*, thou, in the singular, and by *vous*, you, in the plural : as, *tu penses*, thou thinkest ; *vous pensez*, you think.

III. The third is the person spoken of, known by *il*, he, or *elle*, she, in the singular, and by *ils* or *elles*, they, in the plural : as, *il* or *elle* *pense*, he or she thinks ; *ils* or *elles* *pensent*, they think.

All substantives, either common or proper, are of the third person, when not addressed or spoken to : *les lions rugissent*, lions roar ; *ces arbres sont beaux*, these trees are beautiful ; *les soldats se battent*, soldiers are fighting.

REM.—A word is known to be a *verb*, when it admits the personal pronouns : thus, *finir*, to finish, is a verb, because we can say, *je finis*, *tu finis*, *il*, or *elle* *finit*, etc.

92. There are *five moods*, or modes of conjugating verbs.



i. The *infinitive mood* expresses the nature of the action, feeling, without any reference to persons, numbers or time, as, *aimer*, to love ; *avoir aimé*, to have loved.

ii. The *indicative* simply indicates and asserts a thing in a direct manner ; as, *j'aime*, I love ; *il aime*, he loved.

iii. The *conditional* affirms a thing with a condition, as *j'aimerais*, *si*, etc. I should love, if, etc.

iv. The *imperative* is used for commanding, exhorting, requesting, or reproving ; as, *aime*, love (thou) ; *aimons*, let us love.

v. The *subjunctive mood* expresses an action in a manner which is subordinate ; it is always preceded of a verb, conjunction, or phrase implying the necessity, desire, apprehension that a thing should be, as *il faut que nous partions*, it is necessary that we should go.

93. There are three tenses, the *present*, which declares a thing now existing, or doing, as, *je lis*, I read ; the *past*, denoting that the thing has been done, as, *j'ai lu*, I did read ; the *future*, denoting that the thing will be done, as, *je lirai*, I shall read. In order to specify in a precise and correct manner, the moment when the action has taken, or will take place, the verb has several forms : thus, *je lisais*, I was reading ; *je viens de lire*, I have just read ; *je venais de lire*, I had just read, etc. Numerous examples of these latter forms are given at the end of the grammar. See No. 19, *Examples on the Difficulties*.

There are five kinds of verbs, the *active*, *passive*, *neuter*, *pronominal*, and *impersonal*.

94. The *verb active*, or *transitive*, is that which expresses an action, the object of which may be *quelqu'un*, some person, or *quelque chose*, some thing ; as *aimer Dieu*, to love God ; *aimer l'étude*, to love study. The object of this action is called the *regimen*, or *government* of the verb active.

N. B. A simple question will show this *regimen* as, *qu'est-ce que j'aime ?* what do I love ? answer, *Dieu*, God. *Dieu* is then the regimen of the verb *j'aime*.

95. Passive verbs express that the action is suffered by the subject ; they are conjugated by means of the auxiliary *être*, and the participle past of the active voice, as *je suis aimé*, I am loved. Thus, to change the verbs from active to passive in these sentences, *mon père m'aime*, my father

loves me ; *le milan a enlevé le serin*, the kite has carried off the canary bird, they must be turned in this way, *je suis aimé de mon père*, I am loved by my father ; *le serin a été enlevé par le milan*, the canary bird has been carried off by the kite.

96. The *verb neuter*, or *intransitive*, is that which has no direct regimen, that is, after which you cannot put a substantive, without a proposition. *Aller* to go, is a neuter, verb, because one cannot say, *aller Londres*, to go London, but *aller à Londres*, to go to London. *Plaire*, to please, is likewise a verb neuter, as we cannot say in French, *plaire quelqu'un*, to please somebody, but *plaire à quelqu'un*.

The *pronominal verbs* are those in which each person is conjugated through all the tenses, with two pronouns.

as {	<i>je me</i> , I myself		<i>nous nous</i> we ourselves	{	
	<i>tu te</i> , thou thyself		<i>vous vous</i>		you yourself, or
	<i>il se</i> , he himself		<i>ils se</i>		ye yourselves
	<i>elle se</i> , she herself		<i>elles se</i>		they themselves

There are four sorts of *pronominal verbs* :—

97. I. The *reflective*, when the action of the verb falls upon the subject, as *je me flatte*, I flatter myself ; *il se loue*, he praises himself. Almost all active verbs are susceptible of being *reflective*.

II. The *pronominal verb neuter*, which indicates only a state, a disposition of the subject as, *se repentir*, to repent ; *se désister*, to desist ; *s'enfuir*, to run away.

III. The *reciprocal verb* expresses a reciprocity of action between two or more subjects, and consequently has no singular ; such are, *s'entr'aider*, to help one another ; *s'entre-donner*, to give each other.

IV. The *pronominal verb impersonal*, is only used in the third person singular. Active verbs frequently assume this form in a passive sense, for the sake of brevity and energy ; as, *il se bâtit*, there is building ; *il se faisait*, there was doing, ; *il se conclut*, there was concluded ; *il s'est dit*, it has been said ; *il se donnera une grande bataille*, a great battle will be fought.

98. The *impersonal verb* is only used in the third person singular, with the pronoun *il* for its subject. *Neiger*, to snow, is an impersonal verb, as it cannot be applied to any person, or thing, ; *il neige*, it snows, *il neigeait*, it did snow.



*Neuter* verbs may be used impersonally, as *il vint un homme*, there came a man, instead of *un homme vint*, a man came.

Though the greater part of the French verbs are regular, there are, however, as in other languages, some that are *irregular*, and others that are *defective*. Regular verbs are those which are conjugated conformably to a general principle. Irregular verbs are those which deviate from that general principle in the formation of their persons and tenses; and defective verbs are those which, in certain tenses, or persons, are not used.

### OF CONJUGATIONS.

To conjugate is to give all the persons and tenses of a verb through all its different inflections.

The French generally admit four regular conjugations, which are distinguished by the termination of the present of the infinitive.

The	{	FIRST	} ends in	-er	as, parler, aimer, chanter, donner, etc.
		SECOND		-ir	as, finir, avertir, punir, ternir, etc.
		THIRD		-oir	as, recevoir, apercevoir, devoir, etc.
		FOURTH		-re	as, rendre, vendre, mordre, battre, etc.

100. The French, like most modern nations, not having a sufficient number of inflections in their verbs to specify exactly the moment at which the action takes place, supply this deficiency with two auxiliary verbs, *avoir* and *être*, to have and to be.

Besides *avoir* and *être*, which are the only verbs generally recognised as auxiliaries, there are four others which are as fully deserving of that name, in consequence of their being frequently used in conjunction with the infinitive, to express *times* and *circumstances*, which the simple tenses are insufficient to do. These four verbs are *aller*, *venir de*, *devoir*, *pouvoir*. (See models of their use, No. 19, of the EXAMPLES ON DIFFICULTIES.)

Those tenses, which are formed from the infinitive, are called simple tenses, as *parler*, *je parle*, *je parlais*, *je parlai*, *je parlerai*, etc. Those which are formed by the conjunction of the participle with *être* and *avoir*, or of the infinitive with *venir de*, *aller*, *devoir*, *pouvoir*, are compound tenses, as *j'ai parlé*, *je viens de parler*.



## 101. CONJUGATION.

OF THE  
VERB *AVOIR*, TO HAVE.

## INFINITIVE.

## SIMPLE TENSES.

## PRESENT.

avoir *to have*

## COMPOUND TENSES.

## PAST.

avoir eu *to have had*

## PARTICIPLES.

## PRESENT.

ayant *having*

## PAST.

eu, m. eue, f. *had*

}

ayant eu

## PAST.

*having had*

## INDICATIVE.

## PRESENT.

j'ai *I have*  
 tu as *thou hast*  
 il, or elle a *he or she has*  
 nous avons *we have*  
 vous avez *you have*  
 ils, or elles ont *they have*

## PRETERIT INDEFINITE, or compound of the present.

j'ai eu *I have*  
 tu as eu *thou hast*  
 il a eu *he has*  
 nous avons eu *we have*  
 vous avez eu *you have*  
 ils ont eu *they have*

} *had*

## IMPERFECT.

j'avais *I had*  
 tu avais *thou hadst*  
 il avait *he had*  
 nous avions *we had*  
 vous aviez *you had*  
 ils avaient *they had*

} *or was*  
} *having*

## PLUPERFECT, or compound of the imperfect.

j'avais eu *I had*  
 tu avais eu *thou hadst*  
 il avait eu *he had*  
 nous avions eu *we had*  
 vous aviez eu *you had*  
 ils avaient eu *they had*

} *had*

## EXERCISE.

102. In the following exercises, the substantive being taken in a partitive sense, it will be necessary to use the partitive *du, de, l', de la, des*, according to the gender and number. See Rule the 39th.

## SIMPLE TENSES.

## PRETERIT DEFINITE.

j'eus	<i>I had</i>
tu eus	<i>thou hadst</i>
il eut	<i>he had</i>
nous eûmes	<i>we had</i>
vous eûtes	<i>you had</i>
ils eurent	<i>they had</i>

## FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

j'aurai	<i>I shall or will have</i>
tu auras	<i>thou shalt or will have.</i>
il aura	<i>he will have</i>
nous aurons	<i>we shall have</i>
vous aurez	<i>you will have</i>
ils auront	<i>they will have</i>

## COMPOUND TENSES.

## PRETERIT ANTERIOR, or compound of the preterit.

j'eus eu	<i>I had</i>	} <i>had</i>
tu eus eu	<i>thou hadst</i>	
il eut eu	<i>he had</i>	
nous eûmes eu	<i>we had</i>	
vous eûtes eu	<i>you had</i>	
ils eurent eu	<i>they had</i>	

## FUTURE ANTERIOR, or compound of the future.

j'aurai eu	<i>I shall or will have</i>	} <i>had</i>
tu auras eu	<i>thou wilt have</i>	
il aura eu	<i>he will have</i>	
nous aurons eu	<i>we shall have</i>	
vous aurez eu	<i>you will have</i>	
ils auront eu	<i>they will have</i>	

## PRESENT.

I have books.	thou hast friends.	He has honesty.	She
<i>livre</i>	<i>ami</i>	<i>honnêteté f. h m.</i>	
has sweetness.	We have credit.	You have riches.	They
<i>douceur f.</i>	<i>— m.</i>	<i>richesse pl. m.</i>	
have virtues.	They have modesty.		
<i>vertu f.</i>	<i>= f.</i>		

## PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

I have had pleasure.	Thou hast had gold.	He has had patience.
<i>plaisir m.</i>	<i>or m.</i>	<i>— f.</i>
She has had beauty.	We have had honours.	You have had
<i>= f.</i>	<i>honneur</i>	
friendship.	They have had sentiments.	They have had feeling.
<i>amitié f. m.</i>	<i>— f.</i>	<i>sensibilité f.</i>

## IMPERFECT.

I had ambition.	Thou hadst wealth.	He had sincerity.	She
<i>— f.</i>	<i>bien m.</i>	<i>= f.</i>	
had graces.	We had oranges.	You had pears.	They had apples.
<i>—</i>	<i>—</i>	<i>poire m.</i>	<i>pomme</i>
They had lemons.			
<i>f. citron</i>			

## PLUPERFECT.

I had had apricots. Thou hadst had nectarines. He had had  
*abricot* *brugnon*

walnuts. She had had hazel-nuts. We had had chesnuts. You  
*noix* *noisette* *châtaigne.*

had had figs. They had had medlars. They had had filberts.  
*figue m.* *nèfle f.* *aveline.*

## CONDITIONAL.

## SIMPLE TENSES.

## PRESENT.

j'aurais	<i>I should or would have</i>
tu aurais	<i>thou shouldst have</i>
il aurait	<i>he should have</i>
nous aurions	<i>we should have</i>
vous auriez	<i>you should have</i>
ils auraient	<i>they should have</i>

## COMPOUND TENSES.

## PAST. or compound of the conditional.

j'aurais eu	<i>I should</i>
tu aurais eu	<i>thou shouldst</i>
il aurait eu	<i>he should</i>
nous aurions eu	<i>we should</i>
vous auriez eu	<i>you should</i>
ils auraient eu	<i>they should</i>

} *have had*

## PRETERIT DEFINITE.

1 had plums. <i>prune</i>	Thou hadst cherries. <i>cerise</i>	He had strawberries. <i>fraise</i>	She
had pine-apples. <i>ananas</i>	We had almonds. <i>amande</i>	You had currants. <i>groseille</i>	They had <i>m.</i>
raspberries. <i>framboise</i>	They had grapes. <i>f. raisin m. pl.</i>		

103. In the following exercises, the addition of an adjective, after the substantive, will make no difference as to the use of *du, de la, de l', des*.

## PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

I had had very black ink. <i>fort 2 noir 3 encie f. 1.</i>	Thou hadst had honest <i>honnête 2</i>
friends. She had had uncommon graces. We had had very ripe <i>amis 1 rare 2 1. 2 mûr 3</i>	
grapes. You had had exquisite melons. They had had ready <i>1 exquis 2 — m. 1 comptant 2</i>	
money. <i>argent m. 1.</i>	

## FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

I shall have studious pupils. <i>appliqué 2 élève m. 1.</i>	Thou wilt have horrid <i>horrible 2</i>
pains. He will have ridiculous ideas. We shall have use- <i>peine f. 1. ridicule 2 idée f. 1. inu-</i>	
less cares. You will have true and real pleasures. They will <i>tire 2 soin m. 1. 2 réel 3 m. 1.</i>	
have poignant griefs. <i>cuisant 2 chagrin m. 1.</i>	

104. But if the adjective precedes the substantive, then *de, or d'*, only is to be used without any regard to the number or the gender of the noun.



## FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I shall have had good paper. Thou wilt have had excellent  
*papier m.*  
 fruit. She will have had charming flowers. We shall have had  
*m. pl. charmant fleurs f.*  
 good pens. You will have had large buildings. They will  
*plume f. grand bâtiment m.*  
 have had fine clothes.  
*superbe habit m.*

## PRESENT OF THE CONDITIONAL.

I should have fine engravings. Thou shouldst have pretty play-  
*gravure f. joli jou-*  
 things. He should have immense treasures. We should have  
*jou m. trésor m.*  
 beautiful pictures. You would have pretty houses. They should  
*tableau m.*  
 have long conversations.  
 — f.

105. *De* is also to be used alone, without any regard to the gender or number of the noun, after an adverb of quantity, such as *beaucoup*, a great deal, great many ; *peu*, little, few ; *plus*, more ; *moins*, less ; *trop*, too much, too many, etc ; except *bien*, much, many, which requires *du, de la, de l', des*.

## CONDITIONAL PAST.

I should\* have had *a great deal* of trouble. 'Thou wouldst have  
*peine f.*  
 have had *more* pleasure. He would have had (*a vast deal*) of  
*de infiniment*  
 knowledge. We should have had *more* opportunities of succeeding.  
*connaissance f. pl. de occasion f. pl. réussir*  
 You would certainly have had *many* advantages over him.  
*certainement I beaucoup de avantage sur lui*  
 They would have had *many* enemies.  
*bien ennemi*

\* *Would, should, could*, are not always mere signs of the conditional : they are, on the contrary, more frequently used as having a distinct and separate sense, expressing *will, duty, or power*. In such cases, they are also to be rendered in French by separate words, such as *vouloir, devoir, pouvoir*. The attention of the Scholar will be called to that necessary distinction hereafter ; but for the present, that is, in the course of the following introductory exercises on the conjugation of verbs, he must consider *would, could, and should* as being used in their first capacity only, that is, as *Signs of the conditional*.—See 386.

N.B. *J'eusse eu, tu eusses eu, il eût eu, nous eussions eu, vous eussiez eu, ils eussent eu*, I should have had, &c. is also used for the conditional past.

## IMPERATIVE.

aie, or aye	have (thou)
qu'il ait	let him have
ayons	let us have
ayez	have (ye)
qu'ils aient	let them have

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## SIMPLE TENSES.

## PRESENT.

que	that
j'aie	I may have
tu aies	thou mayest have
il ait	he may have
nous ayons	we may have
vous ayez	you may have
ils aient	they may have

## COMPOUND TENSES.

## PRESENT.

que	that
j'aie eu	I may
tu aies eu	thou mayest
il ait eu	he may
nous ayons eu	we may
vous ayez eu	you may
ils aient eu	they may

} have had

106. When the verb is followed by several substantives, the proper article and proposition must be repeated before each.

## IMPERATIVE.

Have thou patience, perseverance, and courage. Let him have  
 ———f. ———f. ———m.

modesty and more correct ideas. Let her have more decency. Let  
 ———f. 2 *juste* 3 1 *décence*

us have courage and firmness. Have ye gravy soup, nice roast  
 ———m, *fermeté* f. *un gras 2 soupe* f. 1. *un bon ros-*

beef and a pudding. Let them have ale, rum, and punch. Let  
*bif* m. *pouding* m. m. *ale* f. *rum* m. *ponche* m.

them have morals and conduct.

f. *mœurs* f.pl. *conduite* f.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

That I may have many friends. That thou mayest have good  
*beaucoup*

reasons to give him. That he may have elevated sentiments. That  
*donner* 1 *lui* 2 *élevé* 2 ———m. 1.

we may have courage and magnanimity. That you may have  
*bravoure* f. =

delightful landscapes, and beautiful sea-pieces. That they may  
*délicieux* 2 *paysage* m.pl. 1 *marine* f.pl.

## SIMPLE TENSES.

## IMPERFECT.

que	that
j'eusse	I had, or might have
tu eusses	thou might'st have
il eût	he might have
nous eussions	we might have
vous eussiez	you might have
ils eussent	they might have

## COMPOUND TENSES.

## PLUPERFECT, or compound of the imperfect.

que	that	} have had.
j'eusse eu	I might	
tu eusses eu	thou mightest	
il eût eu	he might	
nous eussions eu	we might	
vous eussiez eu	[you might	
ils eussent eu	they might	

have more condescension and more prepossessing manners.

———dance 2 prévenant 3 manière f.pl.1.

## PRETERIT.

That I may have had wine, beer, and cider. That thou mayest  
vin m. bière f. cidrem.

have had a good horse, and a fine dog. That he may have had  
cheval m. chien m.

enlightened judges. That we may have had snow, rain, and wind.  
éclairé 2 juge m. 1 neige f. pluie f. vent m.

That you may have had a great dining-room, and a beautiful drawing-  
salle à manger f. superbe salon de

room, a pretty dressing-room, and a delightful bed-  
compagnie m. joli cabinet de toilette m. charmant chambre-

room. That they may have had vast possessions, fine meadows,  
à coucher f. vaste ——— f. prairie f.

and delightful groves.

délicieux 2 bois m. 1.

## IMPERFECT.

That I might have a sword, a musket, and pistols. That thou  
épée f. fusil m. pistolet m.

might'st have a knife, a spoon, and a fork. That we might  
couteau m. cuillère f. fourchette f.

have a penknife, pencils, and good copies. That he might have  
canif m. pinceau m. modèle m.

a coach, a good house, and furniture, simple but elegant. That  
carrosse m. f. meuble m. pl. ———mais———

you might have health and great respect. That they might have  
santé f. un considération f.

fruitful lands.

fertile 2 terre f. 1.

## PLUPERFECT.

That I might have had friendship. That thou might'st have had  
amitié f.

gloves, boots, and horses. That he might have had zealous and  
gant m. botte f. cheval m. zélé 2



## SENTENCES ON THE SAME VERB, WITH A NEGATIVE.

107. *De, d'* is also used, without any regard to the gender or the number of the noun, after a negative phrase.

## EXAMPLES.

Je n'ai pas de livres	<i>I have no books</i>
tu n'avais pas de bien	<i>thou hadst no wealth</i>
nous n'avons pas eu d'amitié	<i>we have had no friendship</i>
si vous n'aviez pas eu de puissants amis	<i>if you had not had powerful friends</i>
ils n'auront pas d'ennemis	<i>they will not have enemies</i>
il n'aurait pas de plaisir.	<i>he would not have any pleasure</i>

faithful servants. That we might have had fine clothes, precious  
*fidèle* 3 *domestique* m. 1. = f. 2

jewels, and magnificent furniture. That you might have had warm  
*bijou* m. 1 *magnifique* 2 1 *chaud* 2

friends. That they might have had greatness of soul and pity.  
1 *grandeur* f. *pitié* f.

## INDICATIVE.

## PRESENT.

I have no precious medals. We have no useless things.  
= 2 *médaille* f. 1 *inutile* 2 *chose* f. 1

## PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

I have had no perseverance. We have had no generosity  
— f. = f.

## IMPERFECT.

Thou hadst not a beautiful park. You had no good cucumbers.  
*parc* m. *concombre* m.

## PLUPERFECT.

He had had no fine houses. They had had no money.  
*argent* m.

## PRETERIT DEFINITE.

He had no answer to his letter. They had no carpets  
*réponse* f. *lettre* f. *tapis* m.

## PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

Thou hadst no kindness. You had had no great talents.  
*complaisance* f. — m.

## FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

I shall have no great difficulty. We shall not have company at  
*grand difficultés* f. *monde* à  
*diner.*  
*dîner*

## FUTURE ANTERIOR.

You will not have had quiet days.  
*tranquille 2 m. 1*

## CONDITIONAL.

## PRESENT.

He would not have had pictures. They would have no leisure.  
*mauvais tableau m. loisir m.*

## PAST.

I should have had no griefs. We should have had no troubles  
*chagrin m. pl. peine f.*

## IMPERATIVE.

Have no such whims. Let him not have such absurd ideas.  
*caprice m. si absurde 2 f. pl. 1*  
 Let us not have discussions of this sort. Have no such whims.  
 ————— *espèce f. tel caprice m.*  
 Let them not have foreign servants.  
*étranger domestique*

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

That I may have no protectors. That we may have no success.  
 = m. *succès m.*

## PRETERIT.

That he may have had no perseverance. That they may have had  
 ————— f.  
 no valour.  
*bravoure f.*

## IMPERFECT.

That thou might'st have no taste. That you might not have a just  
*goût m. juste*  
 reward.  
*récompense f.*

## PLUPERFECT.

That I might not have had good advice. That we might not have  
*avis m. pl.*  
 had any news.  
*nouvelle f. pl.*

## THE VERB AVOIR, INTERROGATIVELY AND AFFIRMATIVELY.

108. In interrogations, the pronoun, which is the subject of the verb, is placed after it, and they are joined by an hyphen, *ai-je*? In compound tenses, the pronoun is placed immediately after the auxiliary *ai-je eu*? When the third

person singular of the verb ends with a vowel, *-t-* is placed between the verb, and *il, elle*, in order to avoid the hiatus occasioned by the meeting of the two vowels: *a-t-il? aura-t-il?* This applies to *on*: *aura-t-on?*

## EXAMPLES :

ai-je des livres ?	<i>have I books ?</i>
avais-tu du bien ?	<i>hadst thou wealth ?</i>
eut-elle ce courage ?	<i>had she that courage ?</i>
Jean a-t-il de l'argent ?	<i>has John any money ?</i>
avons-nous eu de bons conseils ?	<i>have we had good counsels ?</i>
aviez-vous eu de la prudence ?	<i>had you had prudence ?</i>
aura-t-il de l'argent ?	<i>will he have money ?</i>
aura-t-elle eu des protecteurs ?	<i>will she have had protectors ?</i>

## INDICATIVE.

## PRESENT

Hast thou needles ? Have you coloured maps ?  
*aiguille f. entluminé 2 carte f. 1*

## PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

Have I had good friends ? Have we had much fortune ?  
*bon ami ——— f.*

## IMPERFECT.

Had she time ? Had they large buildings ?  
*le temps grand bâtiment m.*

## PLUPERFECT.

Had she sufficient means ? Had they extensive fields ?  
*suffisant moyens m. spacieux 2 champ m. 1*

## PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Had he good shoes ? Had they looking glasses ?  
*soulier m. f. miroir m.*

## PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

Hadst thou had lace ? Had you had odoriferous shrubs ?  
*dentelle f. odoriférant 2 arbuste m. 1*

## FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Shall I have gold and silver ? Shall we have (good luck) ?  
*m. argent m. bonheur*

## FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Will they have had company ?  
*compagnie f.*



## CONDITIONAL.

## PRESENT.

Shouldst thou have happy moments? Would you have good  
*heureux* — m.  
 wine and nice liqueurs?  
*vin m. fin 2 liqueur f. 1*

## PAST.

Would he have had uncommon patience? Would they have had  
*extraordinaire*  
 rich clothes.  
*habit m.*

THE SAME VERB INTERROGATIVELY AND  
NEGATIVELY.

109. This form is the same as the preceding, except that the first negative *ne* is placed before the verb, and the second, *pas* or *point*, after the pronoun: *ai-je? n'ai-je pas? ai-je eu? n'ai-je pas eu?*

## EXAMPLES.

<i>n'a-t-elle pas beaucoup d'esprit?</i>	<i>has she not a great deal of wit?</i>
<i>n'avons-nous pas eu de bons procédés?</i>	<i>have we not had considerate regards?</i>
<i>n'aviez-vous pas eu de nouvelles robes?</i>	<i>had you not had new gowns?</i>
<i>n'aura-t-il pas de ressources?</i>	<i>will he have no resources?</i>

109. (*bis*). It has been said (107) that, after negations, *de* must be used before the noun substantive, without any regard to its gender or number, instead of *du*, *de la*, *des*, used in affirmative sentences: as *je n'ai pas d'argent*, *elle n'a pas d'amis*. Yet, in interrogative and negative sentences, there are some cases when *du*, *de la*, *des*, may be used, and others when *de* must: thus,

1st. <i>n'ai-je pas du mépris pour lui?</i>	<i>have I not contempt for him?</i>
<i>n'avez-vous pas des livres?</i>	<i>have you not books?</i>
<i>n'avez-vous pas de l'argent?</i>	<i>have you not money?</i>
2nd. <i>n'avez-vous pas de livres?</i>	<i>have you no books?</i>
<i>n'avez-vous pas d'argent?</i>	<i>have you no money?</i>

Although the first examples are under the interrogative form, they are intended for affirmations. By a figure, called *litote*, one form has been substituted to another, thereby to convey more meaning than the simple assertions *j'ai du mépris pour lui; vous avez des livres; vous avez de l'argent*, would be able to do. Thus, for instance, *you com-*

*plain of being dull how can that be, have you not books?  
instead of saying since you have books?*

## EXAMPLES.

n'ai-je pas des livres ?	<i>have I no books ?</i>
n'avais-tu pas des amis ?	<i>hadst thou no friends ?</i>
n'auront-elles pas eu des conso- lations ?	<i>will they have had no consola- tions ?</i>

In the second examples, on the contrary, nothing but mere questions is intended, there is no substitution of form, no other meaning *understood*, but the one expressed. The difference is also somewhat marked in English.

## INDICATIVE.

## PRESENT.

Hast thou no diamonds ?	Have you no indulgent parents ?
<i>diamant m.</i>	———— 2 ——— m. 1

## PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

Hast thou not had contempt and even hatred	for that man ?
<i>mépris m.</i>	<i>même haine f. h. asp. pour cet</i>
Have you not had better examples ?	
<i>meilleur</i>	<i>exemple m.</i>

## IMPERFECT.

Had he not a rigid censor ?	Had they not inattentive children ?
<i>sévère 2 censeur m. 1</i>	= 2 <i>enfant m. 1</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

Had I not had other views ?	Had we not had amethysts, rubies,
<i>autre vue f. pl.</i>	<i>améthyste f. rubis m.</i>
and topazes ?	
<i>topaze f.</i>	

## PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Had we not perfidious friends ?
<i>perfide 2 1</i>

## PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

Had he not had too studied expressions ?	Had they not had
<i>2 recherché 3 ——— f. 1</i>	
excellent models ?	
———— <i>modèle m.</i>	

## FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Wilt thou not have a more regular conduct ?	Will you not have
<i>plus 2 réglé 3 conduite f. 1</i>	
fashionable dresses ?	
<i>à la mode 2 robe f. 1</i>	

## FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Shall we have had sufficient time then ?

*assez de temps.*

## CONDITIONAL.

## PRESENT.

Should she not have clear and just ideas ? Would they not have

*clair* 2      3      f. 1

more extensive knowledge ?

2 *étendu* 3 *connaissances* f.pl.1

## PAST.

Would she not have had any objection ? Would they have had no

reward ?

*récompense* f.

## 110. CONJUGATION

## OF THE

AUXILIARY VERB *ÊTRE*, TO BE.

## INFINITIVE.

## SIMPLE TENSES.

## PRESENT.

*être*      *to be*

## COMPOUND TENSES.

## PAST.

*avoir été*      *to have been*

## PARTICIPLES.

## PRESENT.

*étant*      *being*

## PAST.

*été*      *been*

## PAST,

} *ayant été*      *having been*

## INDICATIVE.

## PRESENT.

<i>je suis</i>	<i>I am</i>
<i>tu es</i>	<i>thou art</i>
<i>il, ou elle est</i>	<i>he or she is</i>
<i>nous sommes</i>	<i>we are</i>
<i>vous êtes</i>	<i>you are</i>
<i>ils } sont</i>	<i>they are</i>
<i>elles }</i>	

## PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

<i>j'ai été</i>	<i>I have been</i>
<i>tu as été</i>	<i>thou hast been</i>
<i>il a été</i>	<i>he has been</i>
<i>nous avons été</i>	<i>we have been</i>
<i>vous avez été</i>	<i>you have been</i>
<i>ils ont été</i>	<i>they have been</i>

111. GENERAL RULE. In those sentences in which there is an adverb, it must be placed between the verb and the adjective or participle : *il n'est jamais content ; il est toujours récompensé.*



## SIMPLE TENSES.

## IMPERFECT.

j'étais	<i>I was</i>
tu étais	<i>thou wast</i>
il était	<i>he was</i>
nous étions	<i>we were</i>
vous étiez	<i>you were</i>
ils étaient	<i>they were</i>

## PRETERIT DEFINITE.

je fus	<i>I was</i>
tu fus	<i>thou wast</i>
il fut	<i>he was</i>
nous fûmes	<i>we were</i>
vous fûtes	<i>you were</i>
ils furent	<i>they were</i>

## COMPOUND TENSES.

## PLUPERFECT.

j'avais été	<i>I had been</i>
tu avais été	<i>thou hadst been</i>
il avait été	<i>he had been</i>
nous avions été	<i>we had been</i>
vous aviez été	<i>you had been</i>
ils avaient été	<i>they had been.</i>

## PRETERIT ANTERIOR.\*

j'eus été	<i>I had been</i>
tu eus été	<i>thou hadst been</i>
il eut été	<i>he had been</i>
nous eûmes été	<i>we had been</i>
vous eûtes été	<i>you had been</i>
ils eurent été	<i>they had been</i>

The following exercises, on the verb *être*, are composed of four forms of sentences, affirmative, interrogative, and negative ; interrogative and negative.

When, in a question, the substantive is expressed, it must always begin the sentence, and the pronoun still be put after the verb.

## EXAMPLES.

Mon frère est-il venu ?	<i>is my brother come ?</i>
la reine n'est-elle pas arrivée ?	<i>is not the queen arrived ?</i>

## PRESENT.

I am very glad to see you.	Art not thou pleased with that book.
<i>aise de voir</i>	<i>satisfait de</i>
Is she really amiable ?	We are happy. Are you not too
<i>véritablement</i>	<i>heureux</i>
obliging. Are your friends still in London.	
<i>complaisant</i>	<i>encore à Londres</i>

## PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

Have I not been constant ?	Hast thou always been steady ?	She
		<i>posé</i>
has been faithful.	Have we not been firm and courageous ?	You
<i>fidèle</i>	<i>ferme</i>	<i>=</i>
have been charitable.	Have those men always been good and	
<i>benevolent ?</i>		
<i>bienfaisant</i>		

\* Exercises upon this tense would be as yet too complicated, as may be seen by this sentence : *à peine y eus-je été cinq ou six minutes qu'il arriva*, I had scarce been there five or six minutes when he arrived.



## CONDITIONAL.

## SIMPLE TENSES.

## PRESENT.

je serais	<i>I should, would, or could be</i>
tu serais	<i>thou wouldst be</i>
il serait	<i>he would be</i>
nous serions	<i>we should be</i>
vous seriez	<i>you would be</i>
ils seraient	<i>they would be</i>

## COMPOUND TENSES.

## PAST.

j'aurais été	<i>I should</i>	} <i>have been</i>
tu aurais été	<i>thou wouldst</i>	
il aurait été	<i>he would</i>	
nous aurions été	<i>we should</i>	
vous auriez été	<i>you should</i>	
ils auraient été	<i>they would</i>	

This form *j'eusse été, tu eusses été, il eût été, nous eussions été, vous eussiez été, ils eussent été*, is also used instead of the conditional past, *j'aurais été*.

## FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Shall not I have been too severe? Thou wilt have been too distrustful. Shall we not have been desirous enough? Will not *défiant* *empressé* 2 1 you have been inconsiderate? Will not the judges have been just? *indiscret* *juge*

## CONDITIONAL.

## PRESENT.

I would not be so rash. Wouldst thou be as consistent in thy *téméraire* *conséquent dans* behaviour as in thy language? Would not his son be ready in time? *conduite f.* *propos m. pl.* *fil* *prêt à* Should we always be incorrigible? You would not be disinterested *désintéressé* 2 enough. Would not those ladies be always ready? 1 *dame* *prêt*

## PAST.

(But for) your instructions, I should have been proud and *sans* *conseil m. pl.* *dédaigneux* haughty. Wouldst not thou have been malicious and sarcastic? *hautain* *malin* *ricaneur* Would not that man have been quite destitute? Certainly, we *entièrement dépourvu* should not have been so ridiculous. Would not you have been *si ridicule* more kind and indulgent? They would not have been so *doux* *plus complaisant* rude. *malconnéte*



## IMPERATIVE.

sois	be (thou)
qu'il soit	let him be
soyons	let us be
soyez	be (ye)
qu'ils soient	let them be

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.			COMPOUND TENSES.		
PRESENT.			PRETERIT.		
que	that		que	that	
je sois	I may, can, or	or	j'aie été	I may, can, or	
	should be			should	
tu sois	thou may'st be		tu aies été	thou mayest	
il soit	he may be		il ait été	he may	
nous soyons	we may be		nous ayons été	we may	
vous soyez	you may be		vous ayez été	you may	
ils soient	they may be		ils aient été	they may.	

} have been

112. When the noun is expressed, its place is immediately after *que*: *que votre fils soit plus poli*, let your son be more polite.

Be liberal, but with discretion. Do not be so lavish. Let us be  
sing ——— avec ——— sing. prodigue

equitable, humane, and prudent. Let us not be greedy. Be economical  
——— humain ——— avide économe

and temperate. Do not be thoughtless. Let him be more patient,  
sobre pl. léger ———

Let her be ready at six o'clock. Let your children be better  
prêt à six heures enfant mieux

(taken care of). Let these (poor men) be admitted. Let them  
soignés malheureux admis

not be so hasty in their conclusions.  
prompt à porter un jugement.

## OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

113. In the preceding exercises, and in the tenses of the subjunctive mood, we have given such English sentences as might lead the learner to suppose that the French *que je parle*, and the English *that I may speak*, are always equivalent, and that the use of the subjunctive mood corresponds in both languages; but it is indeed very far from being the case, as the following examples will show.

1. Je désire qu'il vienne *I wish him to come*
2. Voulez-vous que je vous le dise? *do you wish me to tell it you?*

3. Je ne crois pas qu'il vienne *I do not think he will come*  
 4. Cachez cela, de peur qu'il ne le voie *hide that, lest he sees it, or lest he should see it*  
 5. Dites-le lui, afin qu'il vienne à temps *tell it him, in order that he may come in time*  
 6. Il faut que j'y sois à deux heures *I must be there at two o'clock*

Here are six sentences in which the subjunctive mood is necessarily used in French, and there is but one in which it is used in English, the fifth. The use of the subjunctive mood in French depends upon the preceding or governing sentence, and is determined by rules which will be found in their proper place. (*See Syntax*) We will confine ourselves, for the present, in these exercises on the various tenses of the subjunctive, to giving full sentences; that is, we will add the introductory part after which that mood is required.

It must further be added that the conjugation *that* is often omitted in English, whereas *que* is and must always be expressed in French.

## PRESENT OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

Is it possible that he is so credulous? We wish that thou  
*est-il possible — le nous désirons*  
 mayest be more modest. Is it true that she is so obstinate? They  
*— te est-il vrai entêté*  
 wish you to be more assiduous. It is not expected that you should  
*désire — tu on ne s'attend pas*  
 be back so early. We fear they will be deceived.  
*de retour de si bonne heure. nous craignons trompé*

## PRETERIT.

It is possible that I may have been too hasty and too impatient.  
*il se peut. emporté*  
 I cannot believe that he may have been so puffed with pride. It is  
*je ne saurais croire ouffi d'orgueil m. c'est*  
 (a pity) that she has been so fickle. My father regrets that we have  
*dommage volage mon père regrette*  
 been so headstrong. It is wrong that you should have been so  
*entêté il est mal*  
 covetous. I cannot think that they have been so unreasonable.  
*avare je ne puis croire déraisonnable.*

## IMPERFECT.

Could you doubt my being humane and generous? We wish  
*avez-vous pu douter humain = nous voudrions*  
 thou wert more careful. We told it to her in order that she might  
*soigneux nous le lui avons dit afin*

SIMPLE TENSES.		COMPOUND TENSES	
IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
que	that	que	that
je fusse	I might or could be	j'eusse été	I might, or could
tu fusses	thou mightst be	tu eusses été	thou might'st
il fût	he might be	il eût été	he might
nous fussions	we might be	nous eussions été	we might
vous fussiez	you might be	vous eussiez été	you might
ils fussent	they might be	ils eussent été	they might

} have been

not be so arrogant. Prayers were offered to the gods that we might  
 ——— on offrit des prières aux dieux pour

be victorious. It would be better if you were not so stern. We  
 = il vaudrait mieux que sévère nous

used all our efforts that they might be successful.  
 avons fait tous nos efforts afin que heureux

## PLUPERFECT.

That I might have been more studious. That thou mightst have  
 been more circumspect. That she might have been more attentive  
 ——— circumspect =

to her duties. That we might have been less addicted to  
 devoir m.pl. livré à

pleasure. That you might have been more assiduous and more  
 art. m. pl. assidu plus

grateful. That they might have been less daring.  
 reconnaissant hardi



## FIRST CONJUGATION.

114. GENERAL REMARKS ON THE ORTHOGRAPHY OF SOME OF THE VERBS ENDING IN *er*.

The infinitive ends in *er*: as, *aimer*, to love; *parler*, to speak.

I. In verbs ending in *-ger*, the *e* is retained in those tenses where *g* is followed by the vowels *a* or *o*, in order that the *g* may have the soft sound, in every tense and person, as in the infinitive: as, *mangeant*, *jugeant*, *je négligeai*.

II. In verbs ending in *-cer*, a cedilla is put under *c*, for the same reason, when followed by *a* or *o*: as, *suçant*, *plaçant*, *j'effaçai*.

III. In verbs ending in *-oyer* and *-uyer*, the *y* is changed into *i* before a mute *e*: as, *j'emploie*, *il essuie*, *j'appuierai*, *il nettoierait*.

IV. This practice is extended by some to verbs in *-ayer*, and *-eyer*: as, *il paie*, *j'essaierai*, *elle grassèye*, or *grassèie*.

V. In some few verbs ending in *-eler* and *-eter*, the *l* and *t* are doubled in those inflections, which receive an *e* mute, after these consonants: as, from *appeler*, *il appelle*, from *jeter*, *je jetterai*, etc.

VI. The first person singular of the present of the indicative changes *e* mute into acute *é*, in interrogative sentences; as, *négligé-je?* *aimé-je?* This remark is also applied to some verbs of the second conjugation ending in *-vrir*, *-frir*, and *-lir*: as *offré-je?* *cueillé-je?*

There are but two irregular verbs in *er*, *aller*, *envoyer*, which will be found in their proper place.

## 115. PARADIGM, OR MODEL.

## INFINITIVE.

## SIMPLE TENSES.

## PRESENT.

*to speak**parl-er*

## COMPOUND TENSES.

## PAST.

*to have spoken**avoir parl-é*

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.		PAST.	
parl-ant	speaking	} ayant parlé	having spoken
parl-é m. -ée f.	PAST. spoken		

## REMARKS.

All the verbs of the first conjugation follow the termination of the verb *parler*.

## EXAMPLE.

	parl-er	aïm-er	expliqu-er	avou-er
	parl-ant	annon-çant	engag-eant	défray-ant
	parl-é	agré-é	décri-é	dédommag-é
je	parl-e	dans-e	ignor-e	renvoi-e
tu	parl-es	dîn-es	rejet-tes	renouvel-les
il	parl-e	chant-e	bégai-e	grassèy-e
nous	parl-ons	berç-ons	choy-ons	chang-eons
vous	parl-ez	régn-ez	essuy-ez	épel-ez
ils	parl-ent	carcèss-ent	ennu-ient	appel-lent

And so on through the whole verb.

It must be remembered, in writing the following exercises on the various conjugations,

I. That the adverb comes after the verb, in simple tenses, or between the auxiliary and the participle, in compound ones.

II. That *du, de la, de l', des*, are always placed before any noun which is not taken in the general sense, and whenever *some* may be understood.

III. That *de* alone is used, after negations, without regard to the gender or the number, and also when the noun is preceded by an adjective.

IV. That personal pronouns, in the objective case are generally placed before the verb, except the imperative affirmative 1st pers. pl. 2nd pers. sing. and pl.

V. That the signs of the interrogation *do, did*, are not rendered in French ; nor are they rendered when emphatically joined to the English verb thus : as *I do love*.

## INDICATIVE.

## SIMPLE TENSES.

## PRESENT.

<i>je parl-e</i>	<i>I speak, am speaking, or do speak</i>
<i>tu parl-es</i>	<i>thou speakest</i>
<i>il parl-e</i>	<i>he speaks</i>
<i>nous parl-ons</i>	<i>we speak</i>
<i>vous parl-ez</i>	<i>you speak</i>
<i>ils parl-ent</i>	<i>they speak</i>

## COMPOUND TENSES.

## PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

<i>j'ai parl-é</i>	<i>I have</i>
<i>tu as parl-é</i>	<i>thou hast</i>
<i>il a parl-é</i>	<i>he has</i>
<i>nous avons parl-é</i>	<i>we have</i>
<i>vous avez parl-é</i>	<i>you have</i>
<i>ils ont parl-é</i>	<i>they have</i>

spoken

## INDICATIVE PRESENT.

I readily give that plaything to your sister. Do I prefer  
*volontiers donner* *joujou m.* *f.* *préférer*  
 pleasure to my duty? Dost not thou incense thy enemies? He  
*art. m.* *devoir m.* *irriter* *ennemi*  
 does not give salutary advice to his friends. We do sincerely love  
*donne un = 2 avis m. 1.* *sincèrement*  
 peace and tranquillity. We do not neglect (any thing) to please  
*art. paix f. art.* *=f.* *négliger* *rien* *pour plaire*  
 you. Do you not admire the beauty of that landscape? Do not  
*admirer* *=f.* *paysage m.*  
 your parents comfort the afflicted? They (make use of) every  
*consoler* *affligé m. pl.* *employer* *tous art.*  
 means to succeed.  
*moyen m. pour réussir*

## PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

I have (given up) my favourite horse to my cousin. Hast thou  
*céder* *favori 2 cheval m. 1* *—m.*  
 not exchanged watches with my sister? Has the tutor given  
*changer de montres* *précepteur de*  
 fine engravings to his pupil? We have spoken (a long while) of  
*gravure f. pl.* *élève* *long-temps*  
 your adventure. Have you not insisted too much on that point?  
*aventure f.* *insister* *\* sur — m.*  
 Have your aunts prepared their ball dresses?  
*tante préparer de bal 2 habit m. pl. 1.*

## IMPERFECT.

I unceasingly thought of my misfortunes. Didst thou dread  
*sans cesse penser à malheur m. pl.* *redouter*  
 his presence and firmness? He exhibited in his person all the  
*—f.* *pron. fermeté f.* *retracer en f.*



## SIMPLE TENSES.

## IMPERFECT.

je parl-ais	<i>I did speak, or was speaking</i>
tu parl-ais	<i>thou didst speak</i>
il parl-ait	<i>he did speak</i>
nous parl-ions	<i>we did speak</i>
vous parl-iez	<i>you did speak</i>
ils parl-aient	<i>they did speak</i>

## PRETERIT DEFINITE.

je parl-ai	<i>I spoke</i>
tu parl-as	<i>thou spokedst</i>
il parl-a	<i>he spoke</i>
nous parl-âmes	<i>we spoke</i>
vous parl-âtes	<i>you spoke</i>
ils parl-èrent	<i>they spoke</i>

## COMPOUND TENSES.

## PLUPERFECT.

j'avais parl-é	<i>I had</i>
tu avais parl-é	<i>thou hadst</i>
il avait parl-é	<i>he had</i>
nous avions parl-é	<i>we had</i>
vous aviez parl-é	<i>you had</i>
ils avaient parl-é	<i>they had</i>

## PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

j'eus parl-é	<i>I had</i>
tu eus parl-é	<i>thou hadst</i>
il eut parl-é	<i>he had</i>
nous eûmes parl-é	<i>we had</i>
vous eûtes parl-é	<i>you had</i>
ils eurent parl-é	<i>they had</i>

spoken

spoken

virtues of his ancestors. Did not that woman accuse her friend of  
f. ancêtre accuser ami f.

levity? We did not protect that bad man. You despised a vain  
légèreté f. protéger méchant mépriser — 2.

erudition. Did the Romans disdain so weak an enemy!  
—f. 1 Romain dédaigner faible 2 m. 1.

## PLUPERFECT.

I Had drained an unhealthy marsh. Hadst thou not married  
dessécher malsain 2 marais m. 1 épouser  
a rich man, but unluckily without education? Had his father  
malheureusement sans —f.  
rejected these advantageous offers? We had not long listened  
rejeter avantageux 2 offre f. 1 long-temps écouter  
to the singing of the birds. Had you already studied  
\* chant m. oiseau m. déjà étudier art.  
geography and history? Had not his friends procured him a  
= f. art. = procurer 2 lui  
troop of cavalry?  
compagnie f. cavalerie

There is a fourth preterit, called *preterit anterior indefinite*, which is used instead of the preterit anterior, when speaking of a time not entirely elapsed: as, *j'ai eu achevé mon ouvrage ce matin, cette semaine*, etc. and not *j'eus achevé*, as it is found in every conjugation. We shall insert it here: *j'ai eu parlé, tu as eu parlé, il a eu parlé, nous avons eu parlé, vous avez eu parlé, ils ont eu parlé*.

## SIMPLE TENSES.

## FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

je parl-erai	<i>I shall or will speak</i>
tu parl-eras	<i>thou shalt speak</i>
il parl-era	<i>he shall speak</i>
nous parl-erons	<i>we shall speak</i>
vous parl-erez	<i>you shall speak</i>
ils parl-eront	<i>they shall speak</i>

## COMPOUND TENSES.

## FUTURE ANTERIOR.

j'aurai parl-é	<i>I shall or will</i>	} <i>have spoken</i>
tu auras parl-é	<i>thou shalt</i>	
il aura parl-é	<i>he shall</i>	
nous aurons parl-é	<i>we shall</i>	
vous aurez parl-é	<i>you shall</i>	
ils auront parl-é	<i>they shall</i>	

## PRETERIT DEFINITE.

I gave them peaches	and flowers out of my garden.	Thou
<i>leur pêche f. pl.</i>	<i>fleurs f. pl. de mon jardin</i>	
forgottest an essential	circumstance.	Did not your cousin relate
<i>oublier</i>	<i>essentiel 2 circonstance f.</i>	<i>raconter</i>
that charming history with (a great deal) of grace ?	He lightly	
<i>—mant = f. avec beaucoup</i>	<i>légèrement</i>	
judged of my intentions.	Did we not show	courage
<i>juger *</i>	<i>montrer de art. — m. pr</i>	
perseverance, and firmness.	Did you not visit the grotto and	
<i>art. persévérance pr. art. fermeté f.</i>	<i>visiter grotte f.</i>	
the grove ? They did not generously	forgive their enemies ?	
<i>bois m.</i>	<i>généreusement pardonner à</i>	

## PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

I had soon wasted my money, and exhausted my resources.	
<i>bientôt manger argent m. épuiser resource f.</i>	
Hadst thou very soon reinforced thy party.	Had not Alexander
<i>* vite renforcer parti m. Alexandre</i>	
soon surmounted all obstacles.	We sat down to table as soon
<i>surmonter tous art. = m. pl. nous nous mêmes à — aussitôt</i>	
as we had closed the shutters and drawn the curtains.	Had you not
<i>que fermer volets tirer rideau</i>	
quickly dined.	They retired to their quarters when they
<i>promptement diner ils rentrèrent aux casernes quand</i>	
had dispersed the mob.	
<i>disperser populace f.</i>	

## FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

I shall relieve the poor.	Wilt thou faithfully keep that secret ?
<i>soulager pauvre m. pl. fidèlement garder — m.</i>	
Will he consult	enlightened judges ? He will support you
<i>consulter de art. éclairé 2 juge 1 appuyer</i>	
with all his credit.	We shall not prefer pleasure to glory
<i>de — m. préférer art. m. art. f.</i>	

## CONDITIONAL.

SIMPLE TENSES.		COMPOUND TENSES.	
PRESENT.		PAST.	
je parl- <i>crais</i>	<i>I should, would, or could speak</i>	j'aurais parl- <i>é</i>	<i>I should, would, or could</i>
tu parl- <i>crais</i>	<i>thou shouldst speak</i>	tu aurais parl- <i>é</i>	<i>thou shouldst</i>
il parl- <i>erait</i>	<i>he should speak</i>	il aurait parl- <i>é</i>	<i>he should</i>
nous parl- <i>erions</i>	<i>we should speak</i>	nous aurions parl- <i>é</i>	<i>we should</i>
vous parl- <i>eriez</i>	<i>you should speak</i>	vous auriez parl- <i>é</i>	<i>you should</i>
ils parl- <i>eraient</i>	<i>they should speak</i>	ils auraient parl- <i>é</i>	<i>they should</i>

} have spoken

*J'eusse parlé, tu eusses parlé, il eût parlé, nous eussions parlé, vous eussiez parlé, ils eussent parlé,* are also used for the conditional past. This remark holds good for every verb.

and riches to honour. With such conduct will you not  
 art. pl. art. *par une telle conduite*  
 grieve your father and mother? Will they not astonish their  
*affliger* pron. *étonner*  
 hearers?  
*auditeur m. pl.*

## FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I shall soon have finished this book. By thy submission wilt thou  
*achever m. soumission f.*  
 not have appeased his anger? The country will be happy when  
*apaiser colère f. ce pays heureux*  
 the king shall have triumphed over his enemies. We shall be better  
*triumpher de plus*  
 pleased with ourselves, when we shall have rewarded the merit of  
*content de nous récompenser mérite m.*  
 this good man. Will you not have flown to his assistance then?  
*de bien 2 1 voler secours m.*  
 Will not our servants have (brought back) our horses then?  
*domestique m. ramené cheval*

## CONDITIONAL PRESENT.

I would not plan such vain projects. Thou wouldst not avoid so  
*former — projet m. éviter 2*  
 great a danger. Would not his attorney (clear up) that business?  
*3 1 4 procureur débrouiller affaire f.*  
 We would (drive away) the importunate. Would you not discover  
*chasser importun m. pl. dévoiler*



## IMPERATIVE.

parl-e*	speak (thou)
qu'il parl-e	let him speak
parl-ons	let us speak
parl-ez	speak (ye)
qu'ils parl-ent	let them speak

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## SIMPLE TENSES.

## PRESENT.

que	that
je parl-e	I may or can speak
tu parl-es	thou mayest speak
il parl-e	he may speak
nous parl-ions	we may speak
vous parl-iez	you may speak
ils parl-ent	they may speak

## COMPOUND TENSES

## PRETERIT.

que	that
j'aie parl-é	I may or can
tu aies parl-é	thou mayest
il ait parl-é	he may
nous ayons parl-é	we may
vous ayez parl-é	you may
ils aient parl-é	they may

} have spoken

that atrocious plot? They would not unravel the clue of that  
*atroce 2 complot m. l* *démêler* *fil m.*

intrigue.  
 —f.

## PAST.

I should have liked hunting, fishing, and the country.  
*aimer art. chasse f.* *campagne f.*

Wouldst thou not have played? Would he not have bowed to the  
*jouer* *saluer*

company? Would we gladly have praised his pride and  
*compagnie f.* *avec plaisir 2* *louer 1* *orgueil m.*

incivility You would have awakened every body. Would  
*pron. malhonnêteté f.* *éveiller tout le monde*

those merchants have paid their debts?  
*négociant payer dette f.pl.*

## IMPERATIVE.

In all thy actions, consult the light of reason. Never  
*dans — f. pl. consulter lumière art. f.*

yield to the violence of thy passions. Let us love  
*te abandonner — f.*

justice, peace, and virtue. Let us not cease to  
*art. — f. art. f. art. f. cesser de*

\* The second person singular of the imperative of this conjugation, and likewise of some verbs of the second ending in *vrir*, *frir*, *lir*, take an *s* after *e*, before the word *y* and *en*, as *portes-en à ton frère*, carry some to thy brother; *offres-en à ta sœur*, offer some to thy sister; *cueilles-en aussi pour toi*, gather some alike for thyself; *apportes-y les livres*, bring there thy books.

SIMPLE TENSES.		COMPOUND TENSES.	
IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
que	that	que	that
je parl-asse	I might, could or would	j'eusse	I might, could or would
tu parl-asses	thou mightst	tu eusses	thou mightst
il parl-ât	he might	il eût	he might
neus parl-ussions	we might	nous eussions	we might
vous parl-assiez	you might	nous eussiez	you might
ils parl-assent	they might	ils eussent	they might

speak

have spoken

work. Sacrifice your own interest to the public good. Do  
*travailler sacrifier* \* *intérêt m. pl.* 2 *bien* 1  
 not omit such useful and interesting details.  
*négliger de si utile* 2 *intéressant* 3 art. — m. pl. 1.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

Must I ever listen to a severe censor of my defects? I wish  
*faut il toujours* 2 *écouter* 1\* — 2 = m. 1. *défaut m. pl. je souhaite*  
 that thou mayest find real friends. He must study, in order  
*trouver de vrai* *il faut qu'il travaille afin*  
 that he may adorn his speeches with the graces of a pure diction.  
*parer discours de* — 2 — f. 1.  
 We have retired in order that she may remain alone and quite.  
*nous nous sommes retirés afin rester*  
 Provided we do not so hastily condemn the world. It is not  
*pour que légèrement condamner monde m. il n'est*  
 well to sulk incessantly. We pay them well that they may  
*pas bien boudier sans cesse nous les payons bien afin que*  
 work more willingly  
*travailler plus volontiers*

## PRETERIT.

It is not unlikely that I have spoken rashly. Do you not  
*il n'est pas improbable imprudemment ne croyez-*  
 believe that he has carried despair into the heart of his  
*vous pas porter art. désespoir m. dans ame*  
 friend? Can any one imagine that we should have blamed a conduct  
*pourra-t-on s'imaginer blâmer conduite f.*  
 so prudent and so wise? I easily conceive your having exasperated  
 — *sage je conçois facilement que exaspérer*  
 so petulant a disposition. That they may not have (taken advantage)  
 — 2 *caractère m. 1 profiter*  
 of the circumstances.  
*circonstances f. pl.*

## IMPERFECT.

That I might not copy his example. That thou mightest (give up)  
*imiter* *exemple m.* *abandonner*  
 perfidious friends. That he might inhabit a hut  
*de* — *de 2 art. 1* *habiter* *chaumière f.*  
 instead of a palace. That we might fall at the feet of an  
*au lieu* *palais m.* *tomber à* *pied m.*  
 illegitimate king. That you might respect the laws of your  
*illégitime 2 1* *respecter* *loi f. pl.*  
 country. That they might not speak at random  
*pays m.* *à tort et à travers.*

## PLUPERFECT.

That I might not have burnt that work. That thou mightest not  
*brûler* *m.*  
 have contemplated the beauties of the country. That he might have  
*contempler* = *campagne*  
 improved his natural abilities. That we might not have  
*perfectionner* — *rel 2 moyens m. 1.*  
 gained the victory. That you might have delighted the public.  
*remporter* = *f.* *enchanter* — *m.*  
 That they might have struck their enemies with fear.  
*frapper* *de crainte*

## 116. SECOND CONJUGATION.

## IN -IR.

This conjugation is divided into five branches, which are distinguished by the *participle present*, the *first person of the indicative*, and the *preterit*, thus :

1 punir	punissant	je punis	je punis
2 dormir	dormant	je dors	je dormis
3 ouvrir	ouvrant	j'ouvre	j'ouvris
4 venir	venant	je viens	je vins
5 courir	courant	je cours	je courus

The first branch contains upwards of two hundred and eighty verbs, the second contains seven radical verbs, and eleven derivatives.

As there are many verbs of the first branch, the infinitives of which end in *mir*, *tir*, *vir*, like those of the second branch, as may be seen from the following table, some confusion may arise in conjugating the one or the other, that is,



the learner might be led, by analogy, to say *ralentant*, *je ralentais*, or *dormissant*, *je dormissais*. To avoid this confusion effectually, he will do well to learn the second branch by heart, especially as the few verbs of which it is composed, are very commonly used.

The third branch has four radical verbs, and five derivatives.

The fourth branch has two radical verbs and twenty-three derivatives.

The fifth has one radical, and seven derivative verbs.

### TABLE OF THE FIVE BRANCHES.

#### FIRST BRANCH.

<i>ralent-ir</i>	<i>to slacken</i>	<i>asserv-ir</i>	<i>to enslave</i>
<i>retent-ir</i>	<i>to resound</i>	<i>sév-ir</i>	<i>to punish</i>
<i>appesant-ir</i>	<i>to make heavy</i>	<i>assouv-ir</i>	<i>to glut</i>
<i>nant-ir</i>	<i>to pledge</i>	<i>appauvr-ir</i>	<i>to impoverish</i>
<i>renform-ir</i>	<i>to plaster</i>	<i>tern-ir</i>	<i>to tarnish</i>
<i>afferm-ir</i>	<i>to strengthen</i>	<i>vern-ir</i>	<i>to varnish</i>
<i>répart-ir</i>	<i>to distribute</i>	<i>garn-ir</i>	<i>to garnish</i>
<i>avert-ir</i>	<i>to inform</i>	<i>fourn-ir</i>	<i>to furnish</i>
<i>dessert-ir</i>	<i>to unset a stone</i>	<i>bén-ir</i>	<i>to bless</i>
<i>sort-ir</i>	<i>to obtain</i>	<i>henn-ir, etc.</i>	<i>to neigh</i>
<i>assort-ir</i>	<i>to match</i>		
<i>ressort-ir</i>	{ <i>to be under the juris-</i> <i>diction of</i>		

#### SECOND BRANCH.

Roots.		Derivatives.	
<i>dor-mir, je dors,</i>	<i>to sleep</i>	{ <i>redor-mir</i>	<i>to sleep again</i>
		{ <i>endor-mir</i>	<i>to hulk asleep</i>
<i>men-tir je mens,</i>	<i>to lie</i>	{ <i>se rendor-mir</i>	<i>to fall asleep again</i>
		{ <i>démén-tir</i>	<i>to give the lie</i>
<i>sen-tir, je sens,</i>	<i>to feel</i>	{ <i>consen-tir</i>	<i>to consent</i>
		{ <i>pressen-tir</i>	<i>to foresee</i>
		{ <i>ressen-tir</i>	<i>to resent</i>
<i>par-tir*, je pars,</i>	<i>to set out</i>	{ <i>dépar-tir</i>	<i>to divide</i>
		{ <i>repar-tir</i>	<i>to set out again</i>
<i>sor-tir*, je sors,</i>	<i>to get out</i>	{ <i>ressor-tir</i>	<i>to go out again</i>
<i>ser-vir, je sers,</i>	<i>to serve</i>	{ <i>desser-vir</i>	<i>to clear the table</i>
<i>se repen-tir, je me repens, to repent, has no derivative.</i>			

\* N. B.—*Partir, repartir, sortir, and ressortir*, of the second branch, take the auxiliary *être*. *Venir* and its derivatives, are likewise conjugated with *être*, except *prévenir* and *subvenir*, which take *avoir*; *convenir* also takes *avoir*, when it means *to suit*, but it takes *être*, when it signifies *to agree*. *Avenir* is a defective and obsolete verb, only used impersonally.

## THIRD BRANCH.

ou- <i>vrir</i>	<i>to open</i>	{	rou- <i>vrir</i>	<i>to open again</i>
			entr'ou- <i>vrir</i>	<i>to half open</i>
cou- <i>vrir</i>	<i>to cover</i>	{	dé- <i>cou-vrir</i>	<i>to discover</i>
off- <i>rir</i>	<i>to offer</i>		re- <i>cou-vrir</i>	<i>to cover again</i>
souff- <i>rir</i>	<i>to suffer</i>		més- <i>of-frir</i>	<i>to underbid</i>

souff-*rir* *to suffer* has no derivative.

## FOURTH BRANCH.

Roots. Derivatives.			Roots. Derivatives.		
VENIR to come	contre-venir	to contravene	TENIR to hold	s'abs-tenir	to abstain
	a-venir	to happen		appar-tenir	to belong
	con-venir*	to agree		con-tenir	to contain
	de-venir	to become		dé-tenir	to detain
	discon-venir	to deny		entre-tenir	to keep up
	inter-venir	to intervene		main-tenir	to maintain
	par-venir	to attain		ob-tenir	to obtain
	pré-venir	to prevent		re-tenir	to retain
	pro-venir*	to proceed		sou-tenir	to uphold
	re-venir	{ to come again			
	sur-venir	to befall			
sub-venir*	to relieve				
se sou-venir	to remember				
se ressou-venir	{ to recollect				

## FIFTH BRANCH.

COURIR,	{ accourir,	<i>to run to</i>	parcourir,	<i>to run over</i>
COURANT,	{ concourir,	<i>to concur</i>	recourir,	<i>to recur</i>
JE COURS,	{ discourir,	<i>to discourse</i>	secourir	<i>to succour</i>
<i>to run</i>	{ encourir,	<i>to incur</i>		

## 117. PARADIGMS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

## INFINITIVE.

## PRESENT.

Branch 1.	Branch 2.	Branch 3.	Branch 4.	Branch 5.
<i>to punish</i>	<i>to feel</i>	<i>to open</i>	<i>to hold</i>	<i>to run</i>
pu- <i>nir</i> †	sen- <i>tir</i> †	ou- <i>vrir</i> †	t- <i>cnir</i> †	cou- <i>rir</i> †

## PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

<i>punishing</i>	<i>feeling</i>	<i>opening</i>	<i>holding</i>	<i>running</i>
pu- <i>nissant</i>	sen- <i>lant</i>	ou- <i>vrant</i>	te- <i>nant</i>	cou- <i>rant</i>

\* See Note in page 146.

† The italics show the letters which are altered from the infinitive, in the formation of the different persons.

## PARTICIPLE PAST.

<i>punished</i> pu-ni	<i>felt</i> sen-ti	<i>opened</i> ou-vert	<i>held</i> te-nu	<i>ran</i> cou-rai
<i>to have punished</i> avoir pu-ni <i>having punished</i> ayant pu-ni	{ <i>felt</i> sen-ti	{ <i>opened</i> ou-vert	{ <i>held</i> t-enu	{ <i>ran</i> cou-rai

## INDICATIVE.

## PRESENT.

<i>I punish</i> je pu-nis	<i>feel</i> sen-s	<i>open</i> ou-vre	<i>hold</i> t-iens	<i>run</i> cours
<i>tu pu-nis</i>	sen-s	ou-vres	t-iens	cours
<i>il pu-nit</i>	sen-t	ou-vre	t-ient	court
<i>nous pu-nissons</i>	sen-tons	ou-vrons	te-nons	cou-rons
<i>vous pu-nissez</i>	sen-tez	ou-vrez	te-nez	cou-rez
<i>ils pu-nissent</i>	sen-tent	ou-vrent	t-iennent	cou-rent

## PRETERIT DEFINITE.

<i>I have punished</i> j'ai pu-ni	<i>felt</i> sen-ti	<i>opened</i> ouv-ert	<i>held</i> t-enu	<i>run</i> cou-rai
--------------------------------------	-----------------------	--------------------------	----------------------	-----------------------

## IMPERFECT.

<i>I did punish</i> je pu-nissais*	<i>feel</i> sen-tais*	<i>open</i> ouv-rai*	<i>hold</i> t-enaïs	<i>run</i> cou-rai*
---------------------------------------	--------------------------	-------------------------	------------------------	------------------------

## INDICATIVE.

## PRESENT.

<i>I choose this picture.</i> choisir tableau m.	<i>I feel all the unpleasantness of your</i> désagrément m.
situation. Whence comest thou ? — d'où venir	Does he thus define that word ? * ainsi définir mot m.
Does his mother (go out) so early ? * sortir tôt	Do we not (set off) for the * partir
country ? Do you not sympathise with his sorrows ? campagne f. * compatir à mal. m. pl. *	Do you
not (tell a lie) ? They (are finishing) at this moment. They mentir finir dans * art. — m.	
(act contrarily) to your orders. contrevenir ordre.	

\* The first person only of those tenses, which are invariably conjugated alike, will now be given, the scholar will easily supply the rest. Those tenses are, the imperfect, *je punissais*, the future and conditional, *je punirai*, *je punirais*.



## PLUPERFECT.

<i>I had punished</i>	<i>felt</i>	<i>opened</i>	<i>held</i>	<i>ran</i>
<i>j'avais pu-ni</i>	<i>sen-ti</i>	<i>ouv-ert</i>	<i>t-enu</i>	<i>cou-ru</i>

## PRETERIT DEFINITE.

<i>I punished</i>	<i>felt</i>	<i>opened</i>	<i>held</i>	<i>ran</i>
<i>je pu-nis</i>	<i>sen-tis</i>	<i>ouv-ris</i>	<i>t-ins</i>	<i>cou-rus</i>
<i>tu pu-nis</i>	<i>sen-tis</i>	<i>ouv-ris</i>	<i>t-ins</i>	<i>cou-rus</i>
<i>il pun-it</i>	<i>sen-tit</i>	<i>ouv-rit</i>	<i>t-int</i>	<i>cou-rut</i>
<i>nous pu-nîmes</i>	<i>sen-tîmes</i>	<i>ouv-rîmes</i>	<i>t-înmes</i>	<i>cou-rûmes</i>
<i>vous pu-nîtes</i>	<i>sen-tîtes</i>	<i>ouv-rîtes</i>	<i>t-întes</i>	<i>cou-rûtes</i>
<i>ils pu-nirent</i>	<i>sen-tirent</i>	<i>ouv-rirent</i>	<i>t-inrent</i>	<i>cou-rurent</i>

## PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

<i>I had punished</i>	<i>felt</i>	<i>opened</i>	<i>held</i>	<i>ran</i>
<i>j'eus pu-ni</i>	<i>sen-ti</i>	<i>ou-vert</i>	<i>te-nu</i>	<i>cou-ru</i>

## FUTURE ABSOLUTÉ.

<i>I shall punish</i>	<i>feel</i>	<i>open</i>	<i>hold</i>	<i>run</i>
<i>je pu-nirai</i>	<i>sen-tirai</i>	<i>ou-vrirai</i>	<i>t-iendrai</i>	<i>cour-rai</i>

## FUTURE ANTERIOR.

<i>I shall have punished</i>	<i>felt</i>	<i>opened</i>	<i>held</i>	<i>ran</i>
<i>j'aurai pu-ni</i>	<i>sen-ti</i>	<i>ouv-ert</i>	<i>te-nu</i>	<i>cou-ru</i>

## IMPERFECT.

I fortified his soul against the dangers of seduction. I served  
*prémunir* *contre* — *art.* — *f.* *servir*  
 my friends warmly. Didst not thou amuse him with fair  
*avec chaleur* \* *entretenir* *de beau*  
 promises? He generally complied with the wishes of his family.  
*promesse f. pl.* *en général* *consentir à* *désir m. pl.* *famille f.*  
 Were we sleeping then? Did you not belie your character?  
*dormir* *démentir* *caractère m.*  
 The children were running about the garden. We (used to discourse,  
*courir dans* *discourir*  
 on interesting subjects. My sister (used to come) every  
*intéressant* 2 *sujet m. 1* *venir* *tous*  
 morning to see me. Did you not go out when you pleased?  
*les matins* *sortir* *vouliez*  
 Did not the master punish you severely?  
*sévèrement*

## PRETERIT.

I softened my father by my submission. I foresaw that terrible  
*fléchir* *soumission f.* *pressentir* — 2  
 catastrophe. Thou didst not (come again) as thou hadst pro-  
 — *f. 1.* *revenir* *comme* *le ind-2 pro-*  
 mised. He did not succeed through thoughtlessness. Did not his  
*mis* *réussir* *par* *étourderie f.*  
 daughter (set out again) immediately. Did not Alexander sully  
*repartir* *sur-le-camp* *ternir*

## CONDITIONAL.

## PRESENT.

<i>I should punish</i>	<i>feel</i>	<i>open</i>	<i>hold</i>	<i>run</i>
je pu-nirais	sen-tirais	ou-vrirais	t-iendrais	cour-raïs

## PAST.

<i>I should have punished</i>	<i>felt</i>	<i>opened</i>	<i>held</i>	<i>ran</i>
j'aurais pu-ni	sen-ti	ou-vert	te-nu	cour-ru

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>punish (thou)</i>	<i>feel</i>	<i>open</i>	<i>hold</i>	<i>run</i>
pu-nis	sen-s	ou-vre	t-iens	cours
qu'il pu-nisse	sen-te	ou-vre	t-iennne	cou-re
pu-nissons	sen-tons	ou-vrons	te-nons	cou-rons
pu-nissez	sen-tez	ou-vrez	te-nez	cou-rez
qu'ils pu-nissent	sen-tent	ou-vrent	t-iennent	cou-rent

his glory by his pride? Did we (go out) of the city before him?  
*sortir* *ville f. avant lui*

We never betrayed that important secret. Did not you agree to  
*trahir* —2 —m. 1. *consentir de.*

(leave it to me)? They served their country with courage.  
*vous en rapporter à moi* *pays*

## FUTURE.

Shall I not obtain this of you? What will become of thee, if I  
*obtenir cela de* *que* *devenir \* tu*

forsake thee? Will he not embellish his country seat?  
*abandonner* *embellir* *maison de campagne f.*

He will not sleep quietly. Shall we consent to that ridiculous  
*tranquillement* 2

bargain? With time and patience, you (will  
*marché m. 1* *avec de* *art m.* *pr. art.* *f.* *venir*

accomplish) your object. We shall not sully the splendour of  
*à bout de* *dessein m.* *ternir* *éclat m.*

our life by an unworthy action. Will those men enrich their  
*indigne 2* — 1 *enrichir*

country by their industry? Will not our friends offer us their  
*pays* *industrie* *offrir*

assistance? (Take off) your coat and you will run faster.  
*secours* *ôtez* *courir*

## CONDITIONAL.

I would open the door and the window. I should still cherish  
*porte f.* *fenêtre f.* *chérir*

life. Would'st not thou interfere in that affair? Would  
*ait.* *intervenir* *f.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

<i>that I may punish</i>	<i>feel</i>	<i>open</i>	<i>hold</i>	<i>run</i>
que je pu-nisses	sen-te	ou-vre	t-ienne	cou-re
que tu pu-nisses	sen-tes	ou-vres	t-iennes	cou-res
qu'il pu-nisse	sen-te	ou-vre	t-ienne	cou-re
que nous pu-nissions	sen-tions	ou-vrions	te-nions	cou-rions
que vous pu-nissiez	sen-tiez	ou-vriez	te-niez	cou-riez
qu'ils pu-nissent	sen-tent	ou-vrent	t-iennent	cou-rent

## PRETERIT

<i>that I may have punished</i>	<i>felt</i>	<i>opened</i>	<i>held</i>	<i>ran</i>
que j'aie pun-i	sen-ti	ouv-ert	te-nu	cou-ru

## IMPERFECT.

<i>that I might punish</i>	<i>feel</i>	<i>open</i>	<i>hold</i>	<i>run</i>
que je pu-nisse	sen-tisse	ouv-risse	t-insse	cou-russe
que tu pu-nisses	sen-tisses	ouv-risses	t-insses	cou-russes
qu'il pu-nît	sen-tît	ouv-rît	t-înt	cou-rût
que nous pu-nissions	sen-tissions	ouv-rissions	t-inssions	cou-russions
que vous pu-nissiez	sen-tissiez	ouv-rissiez	t-inssiez	cou-russiez
qu'ils pu-nissent	sen-tissent	ouv-rissent	t-inssent	cou-russent

my brother (set off again) without taking leave of us? You would  
*repartir sans prendre congé*

not succeed in injuring him in the public opinion. You would  
*parvenir à nuire lui —2 —f.1.*

never soften that hard hearted man. Could they foresee their  
*attendrir cœur de rocher pressentir*

misfortune? Would men always (grow old) without growing  
*malheur art. vieillir sans devenir inf.-1*

wiser, if they reflected on the shortness of life. I would  
*réfléchir ind.-2 sur brièveté f. art.*

visit France and Italy if (I had the means.)  
*parcourir art. — art = mes moyens le permettaient.*

## IMPERATIVE.

Shudder with horror and terror. Do not open the door  
*Frémir de = de effroi m. ouvrir*

to any one in my absence. Let him not suffer such insults.  
*personne souffrir pareil insulte f.*

Do not go out in the rain. Let us not run so fast. Let us  
*sortir à courir*

feed the poor. Let us gain glory by our perseverance. Let  
*nourrir m.pl. obtenir art.= f. —*

us not divulge our secrets to every body. Do not maintain so  
*découvrir — tout le monde soutenir*

absurd an opinion.  
*de 2 —f. 1.*



## PLUPERFECT.

<i>I might have punished</i> que j'aie puni	<i>felt</i> senti	<i>opened</i> ouvert	<i>held</i> tenu	<i>run</i> cou-ru
--	----------------------	-------------------------	---------------------	----------------------

## SUBJUNCTIVE,

## PRESENT

That I may never stain my reputation. (That I may be before-hand)  
*flétrir* f. *prévenir*  
 With such dangerous enemies. I will not have thee (go out) this  
*de art. si = 2 1 veux que tu sortir*  
 morning. That he may not obtain his ends. That we may become  
*matin m. parvenir à fin f. pl. devenir*  
 just, honest, and virtuous. That you may punish the guilty. (We  
*honnête vertueux coupable pl. nous*  
 all pray) that you may return covered with laurels. That  
*prions tous pour revenir couvert de laurier m. pl.*  
 they may establish wise and just laws. That they may agree  
*établir de 2 3 art 1 convenir*  
 about the conditions. You must run faster, if you wish to  
*de — il faut que vous voulez le*  
 overtake him. I sincerely wish he may long enjoy his good fortune.  
*rattrapper désirer long-temps jouir de bonheur m.*

## IMPERFECT.

That I might stun the whole neighbourhood. That I might not  
*étourdir 2 tout 1 voisinage m.*  
 (bring about my designs. That he might not bear his disgrace  
*venir à bout de projet m. pl. soutenir — f.*  
 with firmness. That we might disobey the laws. That we might  
*fermeté désobéir à*  
 belong to that great king. That you might renounce your errors  
*appartenir revenir de =*  
 and prejudices. That they might weaken the force of their  
*pr. pron. préjugé affaiblir f.*  
 reasons. That they might hold the most absurd ideas.  
*raisonnement tenir à 2 art. 1*

## 118. THIRD CONJUGATION.

## IN -OIR.

## PARADIGM.

This conjugation contains only seven verbs, which are

<i>perc-evoir</i>	<i>to receive</i>	<i>déc-evoir</i>	<i>to deceive</i>
<i>aperc-evoir</i>	<i>to perceive</i>	<i>d-evoir</i>	<i>to owe</i>
<i>conc-evoir</i>	<i>to conceive</i>	<i>red-evoir</i>	<i>to owe again</i>

and *recevoir*, which serves as a paradigm. *Percevoir* is a law term, and *apercevoir* is often *reflected*.

In all tenses in which *c* comes before *o* or *u*, it takes the cedilla, in order that it may retain its soft sound.

## INFINITIVE.

## SIMPLE TENSES.

## PRESENT.

re-cevoir      to receive

## COMPOUND TENSES

## PAST.

avoir re-çu      to have received

## PARTICIPLES.

## PRESENT.

re-cerant      receiving

## PAST.

re-çu      received

ayant re-çu      having received

## INDICATIVE.

## SIMPLE TENSES.

## PRESENT.

*I receive*      we receive  
je re-çois      nous re-cevons  
tu re-çois      vous re-cevez  
il reçoit      ils re-çoivent

## IMPERFECT.

*I did receive*      we did receive  
je rec-evais      nous rec-evions

## PRETERIT DEFINITE.

*I received*      we received  
je re-çus      nous re-ç-ûmes  
tu re-çus      vous re-ç-ûtes  
il re-çut      ils re-ç-ûrent

## COMPOUND TENSES.

## PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

j'ai re-çu      I have received  
tu as etc.      thou, etc.

## PLUPERFECT.

j'avais re-ç-u      I had received

## PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

j'eus re-ç-u      I had received  
tu eus etc.      thou etc.

## INDICATIVE.

## PRESENT.

I see the summit of the Alps covered with perpetual  
apercevoir      sommet      Alpes f.pl.      de éternel 2  
snow. What gratitude dost thou not owe to her who (has  
neige f.pl. 1      reconnaissance f.      devoir      celle 1  
discharged) (the duty of a mother) (to thee) (in thy infancy ?)  
remplir 3      5      près de 4      2  
does not your pupil understand that rule which is so simple ? We  
écolier concevoir      règle f.      \*      \*  
do not owe a large sum. Do you not perceive the snare ? Ought  
devoir      gros somme f.      piège m. devoir 5  
firm and courageous men to yield to      circumstances ?  
des 1 3      = 4      2 \* céder      art. circonstance





That I may receive consolations. It is not credible that he  
*de art.* *croyable*  
 should not conceive a thought so well explained. I understand that  
*pensée f.* *développé je comprends*  
 you may not perceive the danger of books which are contrary to  
 ——— art. \* \* *contre* \*  
 good morals. See that they do not collect unjust  
 art. *mœurs f. pl.* *voyez à ce qu'ils* *percevoir de injuste* 2  
 taxes.  
 art. ——— f. pl. 1.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## IN -RE.

119. This conjugation has five branches:

The first ends in	{	-andre	as	répandre	to spill
		-endre	..	vendre	to sell
		-ondre	..	répondre	to answer
		-erdre	..	perdre	to lose
		-ordre	..	mordre	to bite
the second ends in	{	-aire	..	plaître	to please
			..	taire	to keep secret
the third ends in	{	-âître	..	repâître	to feed
		-aître	..	connâître	to know
the fourth ends in	{	-uire	..	instruire	to instruct
		-aindre	..	contraindre	to constrain
the fifth ends in	{	-eindre	..	peindre	to paint
		-oindre	..	joindre	to join

## IMPERFECT.

I did not believe that he perceived the secret designs of the  
*je ne croyais pas* *caché* 2 *dessain* 1  
 enemy's general. We were obliged to receive every body with  
 2 \* 1 *il fallait que vous*  
 civility. It was likely that you might not perceive the  
*honnêteté* *il était probable*  
 depth of this book. That they might not perceive the  
*profondeur f.*  
 masts of the ship.  
*mât m. pl.* *vaisseau m.*

## 120. PARADIGMS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## INFINITIVE.

## PRESENT.

Branch 1	Branch 2.	Branch 3.	Branch 4.	Branch 5.
to render	to please	to appear	to reduce	to join
rend-re	pl-aire	pa-raître	rédui-re	joind-re

PAST. (*To have*).

<i>rendered</i> avoir ren-du	<i>pleased</i> —pl-u	<i>appeared</i> —pa-ru	<i>reduced</i> —ré-duit	<i>joined</i> —joint
---------------------------------	-------------------------	---------------------------	----------------------------	-------------------------

## PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

<i>rendering</i> ren-dant	<i>pleasing</i> plai-sant	<i>appearing</i> pa-raissant	<i>reducing</i> rédui-sant	<i>joined</i> joi-gnant
------------------------------	------------------------------	---------------------------------	-------------------------------	----------------------------

## PARTICIPLE PAST.

<i>rendered</i> ren-du	<i>pleased</i> plu	<i>appeared</i> pa-ru	<i>reduced</i> réduit	<i>joined</i> joint
---------------------------	-----------------------	--------------------------	--------------------------	------------------------

## COMP. PAST PARTICIPLE.

Avoir rendu	} plu	pa-ru	réduit	joint
Ayant rendu				

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT.

<i>I render</i> je rends	<i>please</i> pl-ais	<i>appear</i> pa-raïs	<i>reduce</i> réduis	<i>join</i> joins
tu rends	pl-ais	pa-raïs	réduis	joins
il rend	pl-ait	pa-raît	réduit	joint
nous ren-dons	plai-sons	pa-raissons	rédui-sons	joi-gnons
vous rend-ez	plai-sez	pa-raissez	rédui-sez	joi-gnez
ils ren-dent	plai-sent	pa-raissent	rédui-sent	joi-gnent

PRETERIT INDEFINITE. (*I have*)

<i>rendered</i> j'ai ren-du	<i>pleased</i> —pl-u	<i>appeared</i> —pa-ru	<i>reduced</i> —ré-duit	<i>joined</i> —joint
--------------------------------	-------------------------	---------------------------	----------------------------	-------------------------

## IMPERFECT.

<i>I did render</i> je ren-dais	<i>please</i> plai-sais	<i>appear</i> par-raissais	<i>reduce</i> rédui-sais	<i>join</i> joi-gnais
------------------------------------	----------------------------	-------------------------------	-----------------------------	--------------------------

## PLUPERFECT.

<i>I had rendered</i> j'avais ren-du	<i>pleased</i> —plu	<i>appeared</i> —paru	<i>reduced</i> —réduit	<i>joined</i> —joint
---	------------------------	--------------------------	---------------------------	-------------------------

## INDICATIVE.

## PRESENT.

I know his fiery and impetuous temper.	I expect his
<i>connaître bouillant</i> 2	= 3 <i>caractère m.1 attendre</i>
return with impatience.	Does he fear death? Does not
<i>retour</i>	<i>craindre art. f.</i>
virtue please every body? We do not compel you to adopt this	<i>contraindre de adopter</i>
opinion. We suppress for the present several interesting circum-	
—f. <i>taire</i>	—m- <i>intéressante</i> 2



## PRETERIT.

Branch 1.	Branch 2.	Branch 3.	Branch 4.	Branch 5.
<i>I rendered</i>	<i>pleased</i>	<i>appeared</i>	<i>reduced</i>	<i>joined</i>
je ren-dis	plus	pa-rus	rédui-sis	joi-gnis
tu ren-dis	plus	pa-rus	rédui-sis	joi-gnis
il ren-dit	plut	pa-rut	rédui-sit	joi-gnit
nous ren-dîmes	plûmes	pa-rûmes	rédui-sîmes	joi-gnîmes
vous ren-dîtes	plûtes	pa-rûtes	rédui-sîtes	joi-gnîtes
ils ren-dirent	plurent	pa-rurent	rédui-sirent	joi-gnirent

## PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

<i>I had rendered</i>	<i>pleased</i>	<i>appear</i>	<i>reduced</i>	<i>joined</i>
j'eus ren-du	plu	pa-ru	rédui-t	joint

## FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

<i>I shall render</i>	<i>please</i>	<i>appeared</i>	<i>reduce</i>	<i>join</i>
je rend-rai	plai-rai	pa-raî-trai	rédui-rai	join-drai

FUTURE ANTERIOR. (*I shall have*)

<i>rendered</i>	<i>pleased</i>	<i>appeared</i>	<i>reduced</i>	<i>joined</i>
j'aurai ren-du	plu	pa-ru	rédui-t	joint

stances. Do you not confound these notions (with one another ?)  
 f. 1                      *confondre*                      *l'une avec l'autre*

You captivate your hearers by your modest exterior. Do your  
*séduire*                      *auditeurs m. pl.*                      2                      = m. 1

sons acknowledge their errors ? Do not those workmen waste their  
*reconnaître*                      =                      *ouvrier*                      *perdre*

time about trifles ?  
*à bagatelle pl.*

## IMPERFECT.

I did not displease by my conduct. I pitied those sad victims  
*déplaire*                      *plaindre*                      *triste victime f. pl.*  
 of the revolution. Did not this dog bite ? She pleased every  
 ———f.                      *chien mordre*                      *plaire à tout*  
 body. He never seemed satisfied. Did he not beat every body  
*le monde*                      *paraître content*                      *battre*  
 at draughts ? We did not hear well because we were too far.  
*aux dames*                      *entendre*                      *éloigné*  
 She was painting. His presence diffused joy wherever he  
*peindre*                      *répandre*                      *par tout où*  
 appeared. They led us into error.  
*se montrait*                      *induire*                      *en*

## PRETERIT.

I sold every thing I had before my departure. She compelled  
*vendre tout ce que*                      *ind. 2.*                      *contraindre*

## CONDITIONAL.

## PRESENT.

Branch 1.	Branch 2.	Branch 3.	Branch 4.	Branch 5.
<i>I should render</i> je ren-drais	<i>please</i> pl-ai-raïs	<i>appear</i> pa-raî-traïs	<i>reduce</i> ré-dui-raïs	<i>join</i> join-drais

PAST (*I should have*).

<i>rendered</i> j'aurais ren-du	<i>pleased</i> —plu	<i>appeared</i> —pa-ru	<i>reduced</i> —ré-duit	<i>joined</i> —joi-nt
------------------------------------	------------------------	---------------------------	----------------------------	--------------------------

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>render (thou)</i> ren-ds	<i>please</i> plais	<i>appear</i> pa-raïs	<i>reduce</i> réduis	<i>join</i> joins
<i>qu'il ren-de</i> ren-dons	<i>plaise</i> plai-sons	<i>pa-raïsse</i> pa-raïssons	<i>réduise</i> rédui-sons	<i>join-gne</i> joi-gnons
<i>ren-dez</i> qu'ils ren-dent	<i>plai-sez</i> plai-sent	<i>pa-raïssiez</i> pa-raïssent	<i>rédui-sez</i> rédui-sent	<i>join-gnez</i> joi-gnent

him to speak the truth. They started before us, but we joined  
*de dire* *partir* *rejoindre*  
 them at Paris where they (waited for) us. After giving him a  
*attendre ind. 2* *donner inf. 2*  
 good dinner, we took him back to his cottage in our own car-  
*reconduire* \* *chaumière f.*  
 riage. They put out all the candles which alarmed us a little.  
*éteindre* *lumières f. ce qui étonner ind. 3*  
 My dog ran after him and bit him in the leg.  
*courir ind. 3.* *mordre* à

## FUTURE.

Shall I hear him when he calls? I shall not conceal  
*entendre* *appeler, ind. 7* *taire 2*  
 my mind from you. Will not the general compel the offi-  
*façon de penser 3 \* 1* *contraindre offi-*  
 cers to join their respective corps? Will not a thought,  
*ciers à rejoindre* = *f.*  
 true, grand, and well expressed, please? (We shall make our  
*exprimé, plaire* *paraî-*  
 appearance) on this great stage next month. Shall  
*tre sur* *théâtre m. art. prochain 2 mois m. 1*  
 we describe all the horror of this terrible night? Will you  
*dépeindre* — 2 *nuît f. 1*  
 not re-model a work so full of errors? Will you know your  
*refondre* *plein* *erreur f.* *reconnaître*  
 things again? They will assiduously correspond with their  
*effet m. pl. \** *assidûment* *correspondre*  
 friends.

## CONDITIONAL.

## PRESENT.

Should I, by these means, gain the desired end? I  
*moyen m. s. atteindre à* *désiré 2 but m. 1*

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT. (*That I may*).

Branch 1	Branch 2.	Branch 3	Branch 4.	Branch 5.
<i>render</i>	<i>please</i>	<i>appear</i>	<i>reduce</i>	<i>join</i>
<i>que je ren-de</i>	<i>plaise</i>	<i>pa-raisse</i>	<i>rédui-se</i>	<i>joi-gne</i>
<i>tu ren des</i>	<i>plaises</i>	<i>pa-raisses</i>	<i>rédui-ses</i>	<i>joi-gnes</i>
<i>il ren-de</i>	<i>plaise</i>	<i>pa-raisse</i>	<i>rédui-sc</i>	<i>joi-gne</i>
<i>nous ren-dions</i>	<i>plaisions</i>	<i>pa-raissions</i>	<i>rédui-sions</i>	<i>joi-gnions</i>
<i>vous ren-diez</i>	<i>plaisiez</i>	<i>pa-raissiez</i>	<i>rédui-siez</i>	<i>joi-gnez</i>
<i>ils ren-dent</i>	<i>plaisent</i>	<i>pa-raissent</i>	<i>rédui-sent</i>	<i>joi-gnent</i>

would (carry on) the undertaking with success. Would his mother  
*conduire* *entreprise f.*

wait with (so much) patience? Could sincerity displease a  
*attendre* *tant de* *art. = f.* *déplaire à*

man (of sense)? Should we sell our liberty? Should we  
*sensé* *vendre*

build our house upon that plan? Would you oblige  
*construire* — *m.* *astreindre de art.*

young people to live as you do? Would you drive your child  
*gens pl.* *vivre comme* \* *réduire*

to despair? They should fear public censure. Would  
*art* *désespoir m.* *craindre* 2 *art. f. 1*

my protectors introduce an unknown person into the world?  
 = *introduire* *inconnu m.* \*

## IMPERATIVE.

Depict in thy idyl all the charms of a rural life. Do  
*peindre* *idylle* *douceur f.* *champêtre* 2 1

not wait for me, for it is uncertain whether I shall  
*attendre* \* *douteux* *que* *re-*

return or not. Know the powers of thy mind before thou  
*venir subj-1* *force f.* *avant de* \*

write. Let us unite prudence with courage. Let us not  
*écrire* *joindre art. f.* *à art. m.*

descend to useless particulars. Do not appear either too  
*descendre dans des* 2 *—larité 1* *paraître ni*

cheerful or too grave. Ye sovereigns make the people happy.  
*gai ni sérieux* \* *souverain pl.* *rendre*

Sweet illusions, vain phantoms, vanish, (Keep to yourself)  
*doux — f.* — *fantôme m.* *disparaître* *taire*

such truths as may offend:  
*certain f. pl.* *qui peuvent offenser.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

That I may fear that host of enemies. That I should please  
*craindre* *vue f.*



PRETERIT. (*That I may have*).

<i>rendered</i> <i>que j'aie ren-du</i>	<i>pleased</i> — <i>plu</i>	<i>appeared</i> — <i>pa-ru</i>	<i>reduced</i> — <i>réduit</i>	<i>joined</i> — <i>joi-nt</i>
--	--------------------------------	-----------------------------------	-----------------------------------	----------------------------------

IMPERFECT. (*That I might*).

<i>render</i> <i>que je ren-disse</i>	<i>please</i> <i>plusse</i>	<i>appear</i> <i>pa-russe</i>	<i>reduce</i> <i>rédui-sisse</i>	<i>join</i> <i>joi-gnisse</i>
<i>tu ren-disses</i>	<i>plusses</i>	<i>pa-russes</i>	<i>rédui-sisses</i>	<i>joi-gnisses</i>
<i>il ren-dît</i>	<i>plût</i>	<i>pa-rût</i>	<i>rédui-sit</i>	<i>joi-gnit</i>
<i>nous ren-dissions</i>	<i>plussions</i>	<i>pa-russions</i>	<i>rédui-sissions</i>	<i>joi-gnissions</i>
<i>vous ren-dissiez</i>	<i>plussiez</i>	<i>pa-russiez</i>	<i>rédui-sissiez</i>	<i>joi-gnissiez</i>
<i>ils ren-dissent</i>	<i>pl-ussent</i>	<i>pa-russent</i>	<i>rédui-sissent</i>	<i>joi-gnissent</i>

PLUPERFECT. (*that I might have*).

<i>rendered</i> <i>que j'eusse ren-du</i>	<i>pleased</i> <i>plu</i>	<i>appeared</i> <i>par-u</i>	<i>reduced</i> <i>réduit</i>	<i>joined</i> <i>joint</i>
--	------------------------------	---------------------------------	---------------------------------	-------------------------------

every body, is impossible. That he may not reply to such  
*ce* *répondre un si 2*  
 absurd criticism. That he may lead his pupil step by step  
 — f. critique f. 1 *conduire élève pas à*  
 to a perfect knowledge of the art of speaking and writing. That  
*connaissance f.* *inf. 1.* *pr. inf-1*  
 we may confound the arts with the sciences. That you may have  
*confondre* *tendre à*  
 the same end (in view.) That they may not depend on any body.  
*but m. \* \** *dépendre de personne*  
 That they may not increase our sufferings.  
*accroître peines*

## IMPERFECT.

He did not allow us to answer him. They were obliged  
*Il ne voulait pas que répondre lui Il fallait que*  
 to appear in full uniform at dinner. He stayed a fort-  
*grande —forme m.* *attendre ind-3 \*quinze*  
 night in Paris, (in order) that we might rejoin him. That we  
*jours à afin rejoindre*  
 might take him to court That you might hear their  
*conduire art. cour f.* *entendre*  
 justification. That you might know your real friends. That they  
*vrai*  
 might (wait for) the opinion of sensible persons.  
*attendre art. sensé 2 f. pl. 1*

121. *Pronominal or reflected verbs* are, as it has already been said, conjugated with two pronouns, one the subject and the other the object. In their compound tenses the par-

ticiple past agrees in gender and number with the subject.

## EXAMPLES.

je me blesse	<i>I hurt myself</i>
nous nous trompons	<i>we deceive ourselves</i>
elle s'est tuée	<i>she has killed herself</i>

Almost all active verbs may be made reflected, since a person may hurt and deceive himself in the same manner that he hurts or deceives others. This point is common to both languages, but there are two things in which they differ with regard to reflected verbs. First, the compound tenses are conjugated with *to have*, in English, and with *être* in French: *I have hurt myself, je me suis blessé*. Secondly, there are a good many verbs which are used in the reflected form in French which are *neuter* in English; such as *je m'arrête, je me dépêche*, I stop, I make haste. As these latter are very frequently used in conversation we subjoin a list of them.

## 122. LIST OF COMMON REFLECTED VERBS.

s'abstenir	<i>to abstain</i>	s'intéresser	<i>to feel an interest</i>
s'abonner	<i>to subscribe</i>	se lever	<i>to get up</i>
s'apercevoir	<i>to perceive</i>	se méfier	<i>to distrust</i>
s'asseoir	<i>to sit down</i>	se moquer	<i>to laugh at</i>
se coucher	<i>to lie down</i>		<i>not to care for</i>
se dépêcher	<i>to make haste</i>	se nommer	<i>to be named</i>
se défaire	<i>to get rid</i>	s'occuper	<i>to be busy about</i>
se désespérer	<i>to despair</i>	se promener	<i>to walk</i>
se dispenser	<i>to dispense with</i>	se plaindre	<i>to complain</i>
s'entretenir	<i>to converse</i>	se plaire	<i>to take pleasure</i>
s'endormir	<i>to fall asleep</i>	se porter	<i>to be (ill or well)</i>
s'en aller	<i>to go away</i>	se rappeler	<i>to remember</i>
s'efforcer	<i>to endeavour</i>	se réjouir	<i>to rejoice</i>
s'empêcher	<i>to forbear</i>	se rendre	<i>to go, to repair to</i>
s'emporter	<i>to grow warm</i>	se repentir	<i>to repent</i>
s'enfuir	<i>to run away</i>	se ressouvenir	<i>to remember</i>
s'enquérir	<i>to enquire</i>	se rire	<i>to laugh at</i>
s'étonner	<i>to feel surprised</i>		<i>not to care for</i>
s'éveiller	<i>to wake</i>	se retourner	<i>to turn round</i>
s'évanouir	<i>to faint</i>	se reposer	<i>to rest</i>
s'enquérir	<i>to enquire</i>	se réveiller	<i>to wake</i>
se fâcher	<i>to be angry</i>	se savoir gré	<i>to be glad</i>
se fier	<i>to trust</i>	se servir	<i>to make use of</i>
se garder	<i>to beware</i>	se taire	<i>to be silent</i>
s'habiller	<i>to dress</i>	se tromper	<i>to mistake or be mis-</i>
s'habituer	<i>to get used</i>		<i>taken</i>
se hâter	<i>to hasten</i>	se trouver	<i>to be</i>
s'imaginer	<i>to fancy</i>	se vanter	<i>to boast</i>

\* There is one exception which will be found noticed in the chapter of the *Participle Past*.

123. PARADIGM OF A REFLECTED VERB.  
INFINITIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.		COMPOUND TENSES.	
PRESENT.		PAST.	
<i>se repentir</i>	<i>to repent</i>	s'être {	repenti
			or
		}	repentie
<i>se repentant</i>	<i>repenting</i>		<i>to have repented</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

PAST.		PAST.	
repenti, m.	} repented	} s'étant	{ repenti or repentie } having repented
repentie, f.			
repentis, m.			
repenties, f.			

## INDICATIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.

PRESENT.

*I repent.*

je	me	repens
tu	te	repens
il, or elle	se	repent
nous	nous	repentons
vous	vous	repentez
ils, or elles	se	repentent

IMPERFECT.

*I did repent.*

je	me	repentais
tu	te	repentais
il, or elle	se	repentait
nous	nous	repentions.
vous	vous	repentiez
ils, or elles	se	repentaient

COMPOUND TENSES.

PRÆTERIT INDEFINITE:

*I have repented.*

je	me	suis	} repenti or
tu	t'	es	
il, or elle	s'	est	} repentie or
nous	nous	sommes	
vous	vous	êtes	} repentis or
ils, or elles	se	sont	

PLUPERFECT.

*I had repented.*

je	m'	étais	} repenti or
tu	t'	étais	
il, or elle	s'	était	} repentie or
nous	nous	étions	
vous	vous	étiez	} repentis or
ils, or elles	s'	étaient	

## 124. INTERROGATIVE AND NEGATIVE FORMS.

je ne me repens pas	<i>I do not repent</i>
te repens-tu ?	<i>dost thou repent ?</i>
ne nous repentons-nous pas ?	<i>do we not repent ?</i>
je ne me suis pas repenti	<i>I have not repented ?</i>
ne se sont-ils pas repentis ?	<i>have they not repented ?</i>
ne se sont-elles pas repenties ?	<i>have they not repented ?</i>
ma sœur se repent	<i>my sister repents</i>
ma sœur ne se repent-elle pas ?	<i>does not my sister repent ?</i>
vos frères se sont-ils repentis ?	<i>have your brothers repented ?</i>



SIMPLE TENSES.				COMPOUND TENSES.			
PRÆTERIT DEFINITE.				PRÆTERIT ANTERIOR.			
<i>I repented.</i>				<i>I had repented</i>			
je	me	repentis		je	me	fus	} repentis; or
tu	te	repentis		tu	te	fus	
il or elle	se	repentit		il or elle	se	fut	} repentie
nous	nous	repentîmes		nous	nous	fûmes	
vous	vous	repentîtes		vous	vous	fûtes	} repentis or
ils or elles	se	repentirent		ils or elles	se	furent	

## INDICATIVE.

## PRESENT.

I often walk by moonlight. Dost thou not  
*souvent se promener à art. clair de la lune m. se*  
 deceive thyself? He (is never happy) but (when he is doing)  
*tromper ne se plaire que à faire*  
 wrong. I complain of his bad conduct. (Do we  
*de art. mal m. se plaindre mauvais conduite f.*  
 not take too much care of ourselves)? How do you do? They  
*s'écouter trop se porter se*  
 intend to travel in the spring.  
*proposer de voyager à printemps m.*

## PRÆTERIT INDEFINITE.

I (have been) tolerably well for some time. Didst thou not  
*se porter assez bien depuis*  
 lose thyself in the wood? (It is said) that he killed himself  
*s'égarer on dis se tuer*  
 (out of) despair. Have we flattered ourselves without foundation?  
*de se flatter fondement*  
 Ladies, have you walked (this morning)? Did those ladies re-  
*Mesdames promener matin m. dame se*  
 cognise themselves in this portrait? You have mistaken the  
*reconnaître à —m. se tromper de*  
 house. We have made as much haste as we could. Has he stopped  
*se dépêcher autant que possible s'arrêter*  
 (on the) road? I have fallen asleep.  
*en s'endormir*

† It need hardly be remarked that reflected verbs do not belong to one conjugation alone, but to all. The learner must, therefore, be careful to ascertain to which of them, those which come under his consideration belong. *Se promener* is of the first, *se plaindre* is of the fourth and fifth branch; and *se plaire* is fourth conjugation second branch.

## IMPERFECT.

I troubled myself about the affairs of others. You were always  
*se tourmenter pour autrui se*  
 complaining of being too warm, and now you are too cold. Were  
*plaindre d'avoir trop chaud avoir trop froid*  
 you not comfortable in his house? My mother did not like the  
*se trouver bien se plaire à*  
 country, because we went to bed so early. He was a very suspicious  
*se coucher de si bonne heure \* très soupçonneux*  
 man, who never trusted any body. Did you fancy that he would  
*\* il ne se fier à personne s'imaginer*  
 return early. Did you not laugh at us?  
*revenir cond-1 de si bonne heure se moquer de*

## PLUPEREECT.

I had trusted myself to (very uncertain) guides. Didst thou not  
*se livrer peu sûr 2 des m. pl. 1 se*  
 confide too inconsiderately in this man? Had that officer rushed  
*confier légèrement à —cier se précipiter*  
 rashly into this danger? We had condemned ourselves. Had  
*témérairement dans —m. se condamner nous-mêmes*  
 you not been engaged with trifles? Had those travellers  
*s'occuper de bagatelle f. pl. voyageurs se*  
 (gone out) of the right way?  
*détourner droit chemin m.*

## PRETERIT DEFINITE.

I repented too late of having taken such a step. Were you  
*tard inf-2 fait 2 1 démarche f.*  
 not well amused yesterday evening? He suffered  
*s'amuser hier au ne se trouver pas bien*  
 for his imprudence. We met in the street, but we did not  
*de —f. se rencontrer rue*  
 speak. Did not those rash children go too near the  
*se parler téméraire 2 1 s'approcher trop de*  
 river? They rejoiced when they heard of his great success.  
*ind-3 se réjouir apprendre \* succès m. pl.*

## PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

(As soon as) I had discovered that they sought to deceive  
*Des que s'apercevoir on chercher ind-2 à tromper*  
 me, I was on my guard. What didst thou, when thou  
*se tenir ind-3 garde f. pl. fis ind-3 quand*  
 didst see thyself thus forsaken? When she recollected all the  
*se trouver ainsi abandonné se souvenir de*

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.				FUTURE ANTERIOR.			
<i>I shall repent.</i>				<i>I shall have repented.</i>			
je	me	repentirai		je	me	serai	} repenti
tu	te	repentiras		tu	te	seras	} or
il or elle	se	repentira		il or elle	se	sera	} repentie
nous	nous	repentirons		nous	nous	serons	} repentis
vous	vous	repentirez		vous	vous	serez	} or
ils or elles	se	repentiront		ils or elles	se	seront	} repenties

circumstances, she was quite ashamed. When we had rejoiced  
 f. ind-3 *toute honteux* *se réjouir*

sufficiently, we parted. When you had amused yourself suffi-  
*assez* *se séparer* ind-3 *s'amuser*

ciently at his expence, did you not leave him alone?  
*à dépens* m. pl. *laisser* ind-3 *tranquille*

When they had walked enough, they (sat down) at the foot of a  
*se promener* *s'assirent à*  
 tree

#### FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

I will yield, (if they convince me). Wilt thou remember the  
*se rendre si on me convainc* *se souvenir de*  
 engagement that thou makest? What will not he reproach himself  
*prendre* *se reprocher à lui-même*  
 for)? We shall not forget ourselves (so far as) to (be wanting)  
 \* *s'oublier* *jusque* *manquer*  
 in respect towards him. Will you employ the means I (point)  
*de lui se servir de* *que* *indi-*  
 out) to you? Will not these flowers fade?  
*quer* f. *se flétrir.*

#### FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Shall I have betrayed myself? Wilt thou not have degraded  
*se trahir* *moi-même* *s'avilir*  
 thyself in his eyes? He will have (been proud) of this trifling ad-  
*à* *s'énorgueillir* *faible*  
 vantage. We shall have fatigued ourselves (to no purpose). In  
*avantage* m. *se fatiguer* *inutilement*  
 the end, you will have been undeceived Will your children have  
*se désabuser*  
 (loved each other) too much?  
*s'entr'aimer.*



## CONDITIONAL.

## SIMPLE TENSES:

## PRESENT.

*I should repent.*

je	me	repentirais
tu	te	repentirais
il or elle	se	repentirait
nous	nous	repentirions
vous	vous	repentiriez
ils or elles	se	repentiraient

## COMPOUND TENSES:

## PAST.

*I should have repented.*

je	me	serais	}	repenti
tu	te	serais		or
il or elle	se	serait	}	repentie
nous	nous	serions		repentis
vous	vous	seriez	}	or
ils or elles	se	seraient		repenties

## CONDIONAL.

## PRESENT.

Should I suffer myself to (be drawn) into the  
*se laisser* \* *entraîner*

party of the rebels? Wouldst thou be (so easily)  
*parti m.* \* *de si peu de chose* 2

frightened? Would not the nation submit to so just a  
*s'effrayer* 1 —f. *se soumettre* 3 4 1

law? We should not like to see the triumph of guilt.  
 2 *se plaire* à voir *triomphe* art. *crime* m.

Would you dishonour yourselves by such an action? Would those  
*se déshonorer* 2 1

lords avail themselves of their birth and fortune  
*seigneur se prévaloir de naissance f.* pron. *richesses*

(in order to) act against our feelings.  
*pour faire violence à sentiment.*

## PAST.

Would I not then have devoted myself entirely to the  
*se dévouer* *alors* *entièrement*

service of my country? (Had it not been for) thy carelessness,  
*pays* m. *sans* *insouciance* f.

thou wouldst certainly have grown rich. Would this pleasing  
*certainement* rule 11th *s'enrichir* *doux*

hope have vanished so soon? Should we have degraded our-  
*espoir* m. *s'évanouir* *se dégrader*

selves to such a degree? You would have reduced yourselves to  
 \* 2 1 *point* m. *se réduire*

absolute want. They would have been drowned, if (they  
*art. plus grand besoin* *se noyer* *on*

had not had assistance).  
*ne les avait secourus*

## IMPERATIVE.

AFFIRMATIVE.		NEGATIVE.	
<i>Repent (thou).</i>		<i>Do not repent.</i>	
qu'il or qu'elle	repens-toi	ne te repens	} pas
	se repente	ne se repente	
	repentons-nous	ne vous repentons	
qu'ils or } qu'elles }	repentez-vous	ne nous repentez	
	se repentent	ne se repentent	

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.		COMPOUND TENSES.	
PRESENT.		PRETERIT.	
<i>That I may repent.</i>		<i>That I may have repented.</i>	
que		que	
je	me repente	je	me sois } repenti
tu	te repentes	tu	te sois } or
il or elle	se repente	il or elle	se soit } repentis
nous	nous repentions	nous	nous soyons } repentis
vous	vous repentiez	vous	vous soyez } or
ils or elles	se repentent	ils or elles	se soient } repenties

## IMPERATIVE.

O man, remember that thou art mortal. Do not flatter  
*se souvenir* *se promettre*  
 thyself (that thou wilt succeed easily.) Let us take an exact  
*un succès facile* *se rendre* — 2  
 account of our actions. Let us not deceive ourselves. Rest  
*compte 1* *se flatter* *se reposer*  
 yourself in the shade of this tree. Do not expose yourself so  
*à ombre* *s'exposer*  
 rashly.  
*témérement.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

I must rise to-morrow at an earlier hour. I wish that  
*Il faut que se lever* *de \* meilleur heure f. souhaiter*  
 thou mayest be better. I wish him to conduct himself  
*se porter mieux* *Je désire qu'il \* se conduire*  
 better. Is it not essential that we should contain ourselves? They  
*— tiel* *se contenir* *On*  
 wish that you should early accustom yourselves to industry.  
*désirer* *s'accoutumer de bonne heure* *art. travail m.*  
 It is time that they should rest from the fatigue of business.  
*se délasser* *— f.* *art. affaires, f.*

## IMPERFECT.

*That I might repent.*

que		
je	me	repentisse
tu	te	repentisses
il or elle	se	repentît
nous	nous	repentissions
vous	vous	repentissiez
ils or elles	se	repentissent

## PLUPERFECT.

*That I might have repented.*

que			
je	me	fusse	} repenti
tu	te	fusses	
il or elle	se	fût	} or
nous	nous	fussions	
vous	vous	fussiez	} repentis
ils or elles	se	fussent	
			} or
			} repenties

## PRETERIT.

Can	I have been deceived so	grossly ?	It is
<i>Se peut-il que</i>	<i>se tromper</i>	<i>grossièrement ?</i>	
astonishing that thou hast determined to stay.			It is not said
<i>étonnant</i>	<i>se décider à</i>	<i>rester</i>	<i>On * dit</i>
that he interfered in this business.			It will never be believed that
<i>se mêler de</i>		<i>On</i>	<i>croira</i>
we have conducted ourselves so ill.			It is not suspected that you
<i>se comporter</i>	<i>mal. On *</i>	<i>soupçonner</i>	
have disguised yourselves so ingeniously.			(It is not reported) that
<i>se déguiser</i>	<i>adroitement</i>	<i>On ne dit pas</i>	
they have behaved ill.			
<i>se conduire</i>			

## IMPERFECT.

They required that I should go to bed at ten o'clock.			
<i>On exigeait</i>	<i>se coucher</i>	<i>à</i>	<i>heures.</i>
They wish that thou shouldst walk oftener.			Did they
<i>On voudrait</i>	<i>se promener</i>		<i>On</i>
not wish that he should practise fencing ?			Was it ne-
<i>voulait</i>	<i>s'exercer à faire des armes</i>		
cessary that we should have recourse to this method ?			Did they
<i>=</i>	<i>se servir</i>	<i>de</i>	<i>moyen, m. on</i>
wish that you should complain of their want of attention ?			Did
<i>voulait</i>	<i>se plaindre</i>	<i>manque</i>	<i>_____</i>
they not wish			them to make more haste ?
<i>on</i>	<i>désirer ind-2 que ils</i>	<i>se hâter davantage</i>	

## PLUPERFECT.

Could they wish me to revenge myself ?			I should have
<i>Aurait-on voulu que</i>	<i>se venger</i>		<i>avoir cond-1</i>
wished that thou hadst shewn thyself more accommodating.			
<i>désirer</i>	<i>se montrer</i>	<i>moins</i>	<i>difficile</i>
I should have wished that he had been less negligent.			Would you
<i>avoir cond-1 voulu</i>	<i>se négliger moins</i>		<i>Auriez-vous</i>
have wished us to have ruined ourselves in public opinion, (in order			
<i>voulu que</i>	<i>se perdre</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>f. 1 pour</i>



to) satisfy your resentment? I might perhaps have wished that  
*satisfaire                    ressentiment                    J'aurais pu désirer peut-être*  
 you had applied yourselves more to your studies. We could  
*s'appliquer                    davantage                    Nous aurions*  
 have wished that they had extricated themselves more skilfully  
*pu désirer                    se tirer                    adroitement*  
 from the difficulties (in which) they (had involved themselves).  
*embarras                    où                    s'étaient mis*

## 125. CONJUGATION OF PASSIVE VERBS.

A passive verb shows that the action is directed to ourselves, that we *suffer* it; whereas the *active verb* expresses that *we act*, or perform the action, and direct it towards another object, thus: *I love*, is active, *I am loved* is passive. The Greek and the Latin languages have a peculiar form of verbs, called *passive verbs* or *passive voice*, totally distinct from the *active verb* or *active voice*. The French language as well as the English and other modern languages have no such form, and express the passive voice by means of the *participle past* of the active voice with the auxiliary *être*, to be, thus: *je suis aimé*, I am loved. The participle, in that case, being as an adjective, is made to agree in gender and number with the subject of the verb.

### EXAMPLE.

je suis aimé or aimée	<i>I am loved</i>
tu étais estimé or estimée	<i>thou wast esteemed</i>
ce roi fut chéri de son peuple	<i>that king was beloved by his people</i>
elle fut toujours chérie	<i>she was always beloved</i>
mon père fut respecté	<i>my father was respected</i>
ma mère fut révérée	<i>my mother was revered</i>
nous serons loués or louées	<i>we will be praised</i>
vous en serez blâmés or blâmées	<i>you will be blamed for it</i>
ils seraient craints et redoutés	<i>they would be feared and dreaded</i>
elles seraient mieux instruites	<i>they would be better informed</i>
afin que mes fils soient connus	<i>that my sons may be known</i>
je voudrais que les portes fussent ouvertes	<i>I should wish the doors were opened</i>

OBSERVE.—In future, the tenses of the verbs will be promiscuously intermixed; but directions will be given as to those which it is proper to use; that is, marks like these will be found under the verb, *ind-1*, *ind-2*, *ind-3*, etc. The learner will do well, therefore, to consult the *explanations of the abbreviations* given at the beginning of the grammar, that he may be familiar with those marks.

## EXERCISES.

My brother was wounded. They were detested. Has she not  
 ind-3 *blessé* ils ind-2 *détester*  
 been rewarded? The robbers were apprehended in the park. Has  
*récompenser* ind-4 *saisir*  
 not your sister been well received? The boys shall all be punished.  
*recevoir* *écolier* *punir*  
 Is the garden door opened? When were these fruits gathered?  
*porte du jardin f. ouvrir* ind-4 —m. *cueillir*  
 The actress has been crowned.  
*actrice* *couronner*

## 126. OF NEUTER VERBS.

Neuter verbs are of two sorts. 1. Those which express a state, a quality, as : *je languis*, I languish ; *il excelle*, he excels. 2. Those which express an action, which cannot pass over to another object, as : *je dîne*, I dine ; *je marche*, I walk ; since we cannot say : *je dîne un homme*, I dine a man ; *je marche mon frère*, I walk my brother. Neuter verbs are also sometimes on that account called *intransitive*.

Some neuter verbs admit a substantive after them, as complement, that is to say, as giving full sense to the sentence : *je pense à mon père*, I think of my father ; *je dépends de mon oncle*, I am dependant on my uncle ; *je tremble de peur*, I tremble with fear ; but that substantive is always governed by a preposition.

127. Neuter verbs are not all conjugated with the same auxiliary in their compound tenses ; some have *avoir*, others have *être*.

*avoir.*

J'ai parlé,	<i>I have spoken.</i>
Nous avons ri,	<i>We have laughed.</i>
Ils ont mangé,	<i>They have eaten</i>

*être.*

Je suis parti,	<i>I am gone.</i>
Ils sont venus,	<i>They are or have come.</i>
Nous sommes tombés,	<i>We have fallen.</i>

128. It is important to observe that neuter verbs do not require the same preposition in both languages : Thus, *je pense à mon père*, may not be translated by I think *to* my father, but *of* my father. We must also add that a verb,

which is neuter in French, is sometimes active in English, as : *j'obéis à mon père*, I obey my father, and vice versâ. This is one of the most material points of difference in the construction of the two languages. It is not here the place to treat it at full length, because it properly belongs to the Syntax, where it will be found ; meanwhile, it is recommended that the learner should not lose sight of it, and attend to the preposition which, in the course of the exercises, will carefully be affixed to the infinitives of neuter verbs.

## EXERCISE.

We will return at five o'clock. Do you speak to that man ?  
*revenir* *parler*  
 We resist obstacles. I have not accepted of his offers.  
*résister à art.—* *accepter ind-4* \*  
 Think of my father. They live on vegetables. We will  
*penser à* *vivre ind-1 de légumes*  
 agree about the price. All at once twenty men entered  
*convenir de* *entrer dans ind-3*  
 the room. She sleeps. Do not walk so fast. You will fall  
*dormir* *marcher* *tomber ind-7*  
 They run. We shall arrive in the morning  
*courir ind-1* *arriver \**

## 129. OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Impersonal verbs are those which have only the third person singular, such as : *il pleut*, it rains ; *il neige*, it snows. We subjoin a list of the most common.

pleuvoir	il pleut	it rains
neiger	il neige	it snows
grêler	il grêle	it hails
tonner	il tonne	it thunders
éclairer	il éclaire	it lightens
geler	il gèle	it freezes
dégeler	il dégèle	it thaws
bruiner	il bruine	it drizzles
importer	il importe	it matters
faire chaud	il fait chaud	it is warm
faire froid	il fait froid	it is cold
faire glissant	il fait glissant	to be slipping
faire crotté	il fait crotté	to be dirty
falloir	il faut	it is necessary, must
y avoir	il y a	there is

These verbs are also called *unipersonal*, from their having only the third person singular. *Falloir*, *y avoir*, being very



commonly used in French, they are conjugated at full length separately.

The genius of the French language admits of using some active and neuter verbs impersonally, such as *dire, il se dit des choses singulières*, singular things are reported; *arriver, il arrive des choses singulières*, singular things happen. This peculiarity will be found noticed in the Syntax.

## EXERCISE.

Does it rain this morning? Did it hail last  
*pleuvoir matin m. grêler ind-4 art. dernier 2*  
 night? It does not snow. I thought it had thundered Does it  
*f. 1 neiger Je croyais que tonner ind-6*  
 not lighten? Do you think it freezes? It is ten o'clock.  
*éclairer croyez que geler subj. 1 heure pl.*  
 It will freeze long. It (is fit) to act so. It (was of great im-  
*long-temps convenir de importer beau-*  
 portance) to succeed. It appears that he has not attended to  
*coup ind-2 de réussir sembler s'occuper de ind-4*  
 that business. It is very slippery in the streets. Is it cold?  
*faire glissant rue f. faire froid*  
 It will be very warm to-day. It was very cold all night. Open  
*bien ind-4 art. nuit f. ouvrir*  
 the window, for it is too warm in this room. Will it not be too  
*appartement m.*  
 cold? (I put on) thick boots, for I thought it was very dirty  
*mettre ind-4 croire ind-2 ind-2*  
 in the streets.

## 130. CONJUGATION

OF THE

IMPERSONAL VERB, *FALLOIR, IL FAUT*, IT MUST,  
 IT IS NECESSARY.

## INFINITIVE.

## SIMPLE TENSES.

PRESENT *falloir*  
 PARTIC. PRES. *none*

## COMPOUND TENSES.

PAST *avoir fallu*  
 PAST *fallu, ayant fallu*

## INDICATIVE.

PRESENT *il faut*  
 IMPERFECT *il fallait*  
 PRETERIT DEF. *il fallut*  
 FUTURE ABSOL. *il faudra*

PRETERIT IND. *il a fallu*  
 PLUPERFECT *il avait fallu*  
 PRETERIT ANT. *il eut fallu*  
 FUTURE ANT. *il aura fallu*

## CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT	il faudrait	PAST	il aurait fallu
---------	-------------	------	-----------------

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT	qu'il faille	PRETERIT	qu'il ait fallu
IMPERFECT	qu'il fallût	PLUPERFECT	qu'il eût fallu

## 131 COMPARISON BETWEEN MUST AND FALLOIR.

The English verb *must*, not being impersonal, may take any noun, or pronoun, for its subject; *I must, we must, my sister must*; *FALLOIR*, on the contrary, being impersonal, can only have the third person singular. The latter has besides too distinct meanings; it implies *necessity* or *duty*, and *want* or *deficiency*. In both acceptions, the construction is so peculiar in French, and differs so materially from the English, that is deemed necessary to illustrate it by examples.

132. *FALLOIR*, in the sense of *duty, necessity*.

il faut que je parte	<i>I must go</i>
il faut que ma sœur vienne	<i>my sister must come</i>
faut-il que cet homme entre?	<i>must that man come in?</i>
il faudra que vous écriviez	<i>you will be obliged to write</i>
ne fallait-il pas qu'il lui répondit?	<i>was it not necessary that he should answer?</i>
n'aurait-il pas fallu que mon père le payât?	<i>must not my father have paid him?</i>
il faut partir	<i>we must set off</i>
faudra-t-il le payer?	<i>must he be paid?</i>

Observe that when *falloir* implies *personal or individual obligation*, it requires the *subjunctive mood*; but if it implies *suggestion, general advice*, it requires the *infinitive*.

133. *FALLOIR*, in the sense of *want, deficiency, must have*.

il faut un habit neuf à mon père	<i>my father wants a new great coat</i>
il me faut vingt livres	<i>I must have twenty pounds</i>
ne lui faudra-t-il pas du papier et de l'encre?	<i>shall he not want paper and ink?</i>
il faut peu de choses aux enfants pour les amuser	<i>children require few things to be amused</i>
c'est là ce qu'il lui faut	<i>that is what he wants</i>

Observe also that when *falloir* implies *want, necessity* of having, it requires the person who wants the thing to be in the dative case.

## EXERCISE.

You	must	speak	to him	about that	affair.	It was necessary	for
sub-1				ds		f.	ind-2 oue *

him to consent to that bargain. We were obliged to (set out  
*il \* sub-2 marché m. ind-3 partir sub-2*  
 immediately. Children should learn every day something by  
*sur-le-champ art. cond-1 sub-2*  
 heart. Shall I suffer patiently such an insult? He must have  
*ind-7 sub-1 1 2 cond-2 être*  
 been a blockhead not to understand such easy rules.  
*sub-2 sot 2 pour 1 comprendre inf-1 des si 2 3 règle f. 1*  
 (How much) does your brother want? He does what is requisite.  
*combien fait falloir*  
 Do that as it (should be). What must he have for his trouble?  
*faîtes falloir ind-1 que 2 lui 1 \* peine f.*  
 You are the man I want. Do not give me any more bread,  
*que \* de*  
 I have already more than I want. I need not ask you whether  
*en ne m'en \* inf-1 si*  
 you will come. I do not think that it is necessary to be a con-  
*venir ind-7 crois sub-1 \* sor-*  
 jurer to guess his motives. I could not suspect that I  
*cier pour deviner motif pouvais soupçonner*  
 ought to ask pardon for a fault I have not committed.  
*sub-2 \* inf-1 — de faute f. que commise*

## 134. CONJUGATION

## OF THE

## IMPERSONAL VERB, Y AVOIR, THERE IS.

## INFINITIVE.

PRESENT	y avoir	there to be
PAST	y avoir eu	there to have been
PARTIC. PRES.	y ayant	there being
PARTIC. PAST	y ayant eu	there having been

## INDICATIVE.

PRESENT	il y a	there is or there are
PRET INDEF.	il y a eu	there has been or there have been
IMPERFECT	il y avait	there was or there were
PLUPERFECT	il y avait eu	there had been
PRETERIT DEF.	il y eut	there was or there were
PRETERIT ANT.	il y eut eu	there had been
FUTURE ABSOL.	il y aura	there will be
FUTURE ANTER.	il y aura eu	there will have been

## CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT	il y aurait	there would be
PAST	il y aurait eu	there would have been



## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT	qu'il y ait	<i>that there may be</i>
PRETERIT	qu'il y ait eu	<i>that there may have been</i>
IMPERFECT	qu'il y eût	<i>that there might be</i>
PLUPERFECT	qu'il y eût eu	<i>that there might have been</i>

This verb in English is used in the plural, when followed by a substantive plural ; in French it remains always in the singular.

## EXERCISE.

*There must be a great difference of age between those two*  
*il doit ——— f.*  
 persons. *There being (so many) vicious people in this world,*  
*tant de = 2 gens m. pl. 1*  
 is it astonishing that *there are* so many persons who become the  
*étonnant sub-1 devenir*  
 victims of the corruption of the age ? *It is a thousand to*  
*perversité f. siècle m. \* mille à parier contre*  
 one that he will not succeed. *There would be more happiness if*  
*réussir ind-7 de bonheur*  
 (every one) knew how to moderate his desires. I did not think  
*chacun savait \* \* modérer désir croire ind-2*  
 that *there could be* (any thing) to blame in his conduct. *There*  
*subj-2 rien à reprendre conduite f.*  
*would not be* so many duels, did people reflect that one of the  
*—— si l'on réfléchir ind-2 f.*  
 first obligations of a Christian is to forgive injuries. Could  
*—— f. de chrétien de pardonner art. pourrait-il*  
*there be* a king more happy than this who has always been the  
*celui-ci*  
 father of his subjects ?  
*sujet*

## 135. OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS.

IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE FIRST  
CONJUGATION.

The only irregular verbs of the first conjugation are ALLER and ENVOYER.

136. INF. PRES.	ALLER, <i>to go.</i>
INF. PAST.	Avoir été, être allé, e, <i>to have gone.</i>
PART. PRES.	Allant, <i>going.</i>
PART. PAST.	Été, allé, allée, <i>gone.</i>
COMP. PAST.	Etant allé, ayant été, <i>having gone.</i>

## INDICATIVE.

## PRESENT.

je vais	nous allons
tu vas	vous allez
il va	ils vont

IMPERF. j'allais, etc.\*

PRET. j'allai, etc. *or* je fus, etc.

FUTURE j'irai etc.

CONDIT. j'irais, etc.

## IMPERATIVE.

va, qu'il aille, allons, allez, qu'ils aillent.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES. que j'aïlle, que tu aïlles, qu'il aïlle, que nous allions, que vous alliez, qu'ils aillent.

IMP. que j'allasse, que tu allasses, qu'il allât, que nous allussions, que vous allassiez, qu'ils allassent.

137. S'EN ALLER, *to go away*; will be given at full length because its conjugation is rather difficult on account of its two pronouns.

## INFINITIVE.

## SIMPLE TENSES.

PRESENT	s'	en aller
PARTIC. PRES.	s'	en allant
PARTIC. PAST		en allé

## COMPOUND TENSES.

s'	en être	} allé, allés
s'	en étant	

## INDICATIVE.

PRES.	je	m'	en vais*	je	m'	en suis	} allé
	tu	t'	en vas	tu	t'	en es	
	il <i>or</i> elle	s'	en va	il <i>or</i> elle	s'	en est	} allée
	nous	nous	en allons	nous	nous	en sommes	} allés
	vous	vous	en allez	vous	vous	en êtes	} <i>or</i>
	ils <i>or</i> elles	s'	en vont	ils <i>or</i> elles	s'	en sont	} allées
IMP.	je	m'	en allais	je	m'	en étais	allé &c.
PRET.	je	m'	en allai	je	m'	en fus	allé &c.
FUT.	je	m'	en irai	je	m'	en serai	allé &c.
COND.	je	m'	en irais	je	m'	en serais	allé &c.

*Or* je (m'en) vas.

## IMPERATIVE.

## AFFIRMATIVE.

qu'il	va	t'	en
		s'	en aille
	allons	nous	en
qu'ils	allez	vous	en
		s'	en aillent

## NEGATIVE.

qu'il	ne t'	en va
	ne s'	en aille
	ne nous	en allons
qu'ils	ne vous	en allez
	ne s'	en aillent

} pas

\* In future the first person only of tenses regularly conjugated will be given.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

SIMPLE TENSES.				COMPOUND TENSES.			
PRES. que	je	m'	en aille	je	m'	en sois	allé
	tu	t'	en ailles	tu	t'	en sois	or
	il or elle	s'	en aille	il or elle	s'	en soit	allée
	nous	nous	en allions	nous	nous	en soyons	allés
	vous	vous	en alliez	vous	vous	en soyez	or
IMP.	ils or elles	s'	en aillent	ils or elles	s'	en soient	allées
	que je	m'	en allasse	je	m'	en fusse	allé, &c

## REMARKS.

*Je fus, j'ai été, j'avais été, j'aurais été*, are not synonymous of *j'allai, je suis allé, j'étais allé, je serais allé*. The former serve to express the fact of *having gone*, the latter, the fact of *being gone*.

The imperative *va* takes an *s* when followed by *y*, or by *en*, as : *vas-y, vas en savoir des nouvelles*, go thither, go and make enquiries about it ; however it takes no *s* when the *y* is followed by a verb, as : *va y donner ordre*, go and see about it.

*Puer*, to stink ; is defective ; it has no preterit of the indicative, nor the imperfect of the subjunctive.

*Tisser*, to weave ; is only irregular in the participle past, which makes *tissu* instead of *tissé*.

*Envoyer* and *renvoyer*, makes in their future absolute and conditional present, *j'enverrai, j'enverrais*, and *je renverrai, je renverrais*.

## EXERCISE.

Are you going into the country this evening ? I am going to  
ind-7 à campagne f. soir m.

pay some visits. Go there with thy brother. Go and do that  
faire \* faire

errand. Go there and put every thing in order. Let him go  
commission f. \* mettre en

to church on holidays. I shall go to London. When  
art. église, f. \* art. jour pl. de fête.

do they go to Italy ? My sisters are going away next week. Wo  
en Italie ind-1

shall go away early. Do not go away yet. Make haste for  
de bonne heure dépêchez-vous

they are going away. I shall send early flowers  
de art. printanier 2 f. pl. 1

to those ladies. I would go to Rome, if I could. We would  
dame f. pl. pouvais



(send back) our horses. Why do they go away so soon? My  
*pourquoi*  
 brother and sister went yesterday to Windsor. I shall not go  
 pron. ind-4  
 (any more) a hunting.  
*plus à \* art. chasse f.*

### 138. IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

#### BRANCH I. *PUNIR*.

*Bénir*, to bless ; has two participles, *béni*, *bénite*, consecrated, (by prayers or religious ceremonies) ; *pain béni*, consecrated bread ; *eau bénite*, holy water ; *béni*, *bénie*, blessed, favored of God. *Peuple béni*, a blessed, happy, Godly nation.

*Fleurir*, in the common acceptation of *to blossom*, *to come to bloom*, is regular ; but, in the sense of *to flourish*, it makes, *florissant florissait*.

In *haïr*, to hate ; the letters *-aï* form throughout two syllables, except in the three persons singular of the present of the indicative, *je hais*, *tu hais*, *il hait*, and in the second person singular of the imperative *hais*, which are pronounced as one syllable, as if written, *je hès*, *tu hès*, *il hèt*.

*Gésir*, to lie, is a defective verb, and has only retained *gisant*, *gît*, *nous gisons*, *ils gisent*, *il gisait*, and particularly *ci-gît*, here lies.

#### EXERCISE.

May the name of that good king be *blessed* from generation to  
*nom m.* *en*  
 generation. These trees *blossomed* twice every year. The  
 ind 2 *deux fois tout art. an pl.*  
 arts and sciences *flourished* at Athens in the time of Pericles.  
 — art. — ind-2 *à Athènes*  
 Horace and Virgil *flourished* under the reign of Augustus. We  
*Virgile* ind-2 *sous règne Auguste.*  
 discovered from the top of the mountain a vast plain full of  
*découvrir* *haut* *plaine f. rempli de*  
*flowery* meadows. The empire of the Babylonians was  
*flourissant* 2 *pré m. pl.1* — *nien ind-3*  
 long a *flourishing* one. We did not *hate* the man, but his  
*long-temps \**

vices. Does she really *hate* that vain pomp and all the display of  
*pompe f.* *appareil*

*grandeur ?*  
 art. \_\_\_\_\_

139. BRANCH II, ON *SENTIR*.BOUILLIR, *to boil*.

*Par. pres.* bouillant—*Past.* bouilli  
*IND. pres.* bous, bous, bout, bouillons, bouillez, bouillent  
*Imperf.* bouillais—*Pret.* bouillis  
*Future.* bouillirai—*Cond.* bouillirais  
*IMP.* bous, qu'il bouille, bouillons, bouillez, qu'ils bouillent  
*SUB. pres.* bouille—*Imp.* bouillisse

*Rebouillir*, to boil again, and *ébouillir* to boil away, are conjugated like *bouillir*; this latter is only used in compound tenses, and the infinitive, as: *cette sauce est trop ébouillie*, this sauce has boiled away too much.

FAILLIR, *to fail*.

*Part. pres. faillant\**—*Past.* failli  
*IND. pres.* faux,\* faux,\* faut,\* faillons,\* faillez,\* faillent\*  
*Imperf.* faillais\*—*Pret.* faillis, etc.—*Fut.* faudrai\*  
*COND.* faudrais\*—*SUBJ. imperf.* que je faillisse

*DEFAILLIR*, *to faint*, has now only the plural of the

*IND. pres.* nous défailions, ils défaillent—*Imperf.* défailiais.  
*Pret.* défaillis—*Pret. indef.* j'ai défailli, and *INF. pres.* défaillir

N.B. The tenses marked with an asterisk are obsolete.

## EXERCISE.

Take that water off the fire, it *boils* too fast. Do not  
*retirer f. de dessus m. f. fort*

let the soup (*boil away*) (so much). That sauce has (*boiled*  
*laisser 1 pot 3 tant 2 —f. est f.*

*away*) (too much). *Boil* that meat again; it has not *boiled*  
*trop faites rebouillir viande f. \* f. 2*

long enough.

\* assez 1

FUIR, *to fly, to run away*.

*Part. pres.* fuyant—*Past.* fui.  
*IND. pres.* fuis, fuis, fuit, fuyons, fuyez, fuient.  
*Imperf.* fuyais—*Pret.* fuis—*Fut.* fuirai—*COND.* fuirais.  
*IMP.* fuis, fuie, fuyons, fuyez, fuient.  
*SUBJ. pres.* fuie, fuies, fuie, fuyions, fuyiez, fuient.  
*Imperf.* fuisse, or rather, prisse la fuite.

MOURIR, *to die.*

*Part. pres.* mourant—*Past.* mort.

*IND. pres.* meurs, meurs, meurt, mourons, mourez, meurent.

*Imp.* mourais—*Pret.* mourus—*Fut.* mourrai—*COND.* mourrais.

*IMP.* meurs, meure, mourons, mourez, meurent.

*SUBJ. pres.* meure, meures, meure, mourions, mouriez, meurent.

*Imperf.* mourusse—*Comp. tenses.* je suis mort, j'étais mort, etc.

**REM.**—*S'enfuir*, to run away, is conjugated after *fuir*. *Mourir* takes the auxiliary *être*; and when reflected, *se mourir* signifies to be dying, or emphatically and figuratively to be dying with. It is seldom used except in the present and imperfect of the indicative.

## EXERCISE.

He (*was near*) losing his life in that encounter. He (*was near*) falling into the snare which was laid for him. His strength fails him. Give us something to eat directly; we are fainting with fatigue and hunger. I cannot get at him, he shuns me. Would he not avoid flatterers, If he knew all their falsehood, He died of a (very painful) disease. She died of grief (for the loss of) her son. He is dying. She was dying with grief, when the fear of death at last wrested her secret from her.

*faillir perdre \* art. rencontre f. faillir ind-4 donner piège m. qu'on avait tendu \* lui \* strength fails him. Give us something to eat art. force f. pl. défaillir lui. donnez-nous \* manger 2 vite 1 se mourir de — pr. faint. ne puis rencontrer him, he shuns me. Would he not avoid flatterers, If he fuir fuir art. flatteur m. pl. knew all their falsehood, He died of a (very painful) disease. ind-2 fausseté f. de cruel 2 maladie f. 1 She died of grief (for the loss of) her son. He is dying ind-4 chagrin m. d'avoir perdu se mourir She was dying with grief, when the fear of death at last se mourir de crainte f. art. enfin wrested her secret from her. arracher ind-3 —m. \* lui.*

*Quérir*, to fetch; is used, in familiar conversation, after *venir*, *envoyer*, *aller*, as: *envoyez quérir*, send for; *allez quérir*, go and fetch.

ACQUÉRIR, *to acquire.*

*Part. pres.* acquérant—*Past.* acquis.

*IND. pres.* acquiers, acquiers, acquiert, acquérons, acquérez, acquèrent.

*Imper.* acquérais—*Pret.* acquis—*Fut.* acquerrai—*COND.* acquerrais.

*IMP.* acquiers, acquière, acquérons, acquérez, acquièrent.

*SUBJ. pres.* acquièr-e, -es, -e, acquér-ions, -iez, acquièrent.

*Imperf.* acquisse.



*S'enquérir*, to enquire; and *requérir*, to request; are conjugated as *acquérir*.

*Conquérir*, to conquer, is seldom used but in the IND. *pret.* je conquis, etc., and in the SUBJ. *imperf.* que je conquisse. Its chief use is in the *compound tenses*.

*Ouïr*, to hear, is only used in the INF. *pres.* ouïr *Part. past.* ouï. IND. *pret.* j'ouïs, tu ouïs, etc. and SUBJ. *imperf.* que j'ouïsse, tu ouïsses, etc. Its principal use is in the *compound tenses*, as : *je l'ai* or *je l'avois ouï dire*, I have or I had heard it.

### VETIR, to clothe.

*Part. pres.* vêtant\*—*Past.* vêtu.

IND. *pres.* vêts,\* vêts,\* vêt,\* vêtons, vêtez, vêtent.

*Imperf.* vêtais—*Pret.* vêtis—*Fut.* vêtirai—COND. vêtirais.

IMP. vêts,\* vête,\* vêtons, vêtez, vêtent.

SUB. *pres.* vête—*Imperf.* vêtisse.

N.B—*Vêtir* is seldom used in the forms marked with an asterisk, and is most frequently used as reflected, *se vêtir*, to dress one's self.

*Revêtir*, to clothe, to invest, is used through all the tenses; *dévêtir*, to divest, is principally used as a reflected verb, and in some forms only.

### EXERCISE.

*Send for the physician and follow exactly his advice. Go and*  
*médecin suivez*  
*fetch my cane. Every day he acquired celebrity by*  
*cannef. tout art. jour m. pl. ind-3 de art. = f.*  
*works calculated to fix the attention of an enlightened*  
*de art. ouvrage m.pl. fait pour 2*  
*public. Would you have me acquire riches at the expense*  
*1 voudriez-vous que subj-2 de art. dépens m. pl.*  
*of my honesty? He had acquired by his merit great influence*  
*probité f. m. une — f.*  
*over the opinions of his contemporaries. I have enquired about*  
*sing. contemporain s'enquérir ind-4 de*  
*that man (every where), and I have not (been able) (to hear*  
*homme-là partout pu en avoir*  
*any thing of him). Who has requested it of you?*  
*de nouvelles Qui est-ce qui 3 4 en 2 \* 1*  
*Sesostris, king of Egypt conquered a great part of Asia. The*  
*ind-3 art.*  
*formidable empire which Alexander conquered did not last*  
*2 1 —dre ind-6 durer*

longer than his life. I have heard that he will not return.  
*plus long-temps f. ouïr dire ind-4 revenir*  
 He dressed himself in haste and (went out) immediately.  
*se vêtir ind-3 à art. hâte f. sortir ind-3 sur-le-champ.*  
 I wish she would dress the children with more  
*voudrais que vêtir subj-2 de*  
 care. If his fortune permitted him, he would clothe all the  
*permettait 2 le lui 1*  
 poor of his parish. Two servants clothed him in his ducal  
*paroisse f. domestique revêtir de 2*  
 mantle. It begins to be very warm; one might  
*manteau m. 1 commencer à faire chaud; pourrait*  
 (throw off some clothing).  
*se dévêtir.*

## 140. BRANCH III. OUVRIER.

CUEILLIR, to gather.

<i>Part. pres.</i>	<i>cueillant</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>cueilli</i>	<i>IND. pres.</i>	<i>cueille</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>cueillais</i>	<i>Pret.</i>	<i>cueillis</i>	<i>Fut.</i>	<i>cueillerai*</i>
<i>COND.</i>	<i>cueillerais*</i>	<i>IMPER.</i>	<i>cueille</i>	<i>SUBJ.</i>	<i>cueille</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>cueillisse</i>				

The irregularity of *cueillir*, in the future and the conditional, is remarkable; these two tenses are formed from the old infinitive *cueiller*. Thus *accueillir*, to welcome; and *recueillir*, to collect.

*Saillir*, to project, has only *saillant*, *sailli*; and the following forms: *il saille*, *il saillait*, *il saillera*, *il saillerait*, *qu'il saille*, *qu'il saillît*. But *saillir*, to gush out; is regularly conjugated like *finir*; *saillissant*, *je saillis*, etc., *ils saillissent*, etc. Its principal use is in the third persons.

ASSAILLIR, to assault.

<i>Part. pres.</i>	<i>assaillant</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>assailli</i>	<i>IND. pres.</i>	<i>assaille</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>assaillais</i>	<i>Pret.</i>	<i>assaillis</i>	<i>Fut.</i>	<i>assaillirai</i>
<i>COND.</i>	<i>assaillirais</i>	<i>IMPER.</i>	<i>assaille</i>	<i>SUB. pres.</i>	<i>assaille</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>assaillisse</i>				

*Tressaillir*, to start, conjugated like *assaillir*, makes in the fut. *je tressaillirai*, or *tressaillirai*, etc.

## EXERCISE.

I will gather with pleasure some of these flowers and of these  
 fruits, since you wish to have some. Do not gather  
*puisque être bien aise de en*  
 these peaches, before they are ripe. That is a country  
*f. pl. avant que ne subj-1 mûr Ce pays*  
 where they neither reap corn, nor (gather) grapes. We  
*où on ne recueillir ni blé ni \* vin*

shall collect in ancient history important and valuable  
*recueillir* 2 1 *de art.* —2 *précieux* 3  
 facts. He received us in the most polite manner.  
*fait* 1 *accueillir* 3 1 *de* 2 *manière* f. 1  
 Poverty, misery, sickness, persecution, in a word, all  
*art. f.* *art. f.* *art. maladie* f. *art.* *en*  
 the misfortunes in the world (have fallen upon) him If you  
*malheur* m. pl. *de* *accueillir* ind-4  
 give six inches to that cornice, it will project too much.  
*donner* *pouce* m. *corniche* f. *trop*  
 That balcony projected too much; it darkened the dining-  
*balcon* m. ind-2 *trop* *obscurcir* ind-2 *salle à*  
 room. When Moses struck the rock, there gushed  
*manger* f. *Quand Moïse frapper* ind-3 *rocher* m. *il* ind-3  
 out (of it) a spring of (fresh running) water. The blood gushed  
 2 *en* 1 *source* f. *vif* 2 f. 1 ind-2  
 from his vein with impetuosity. We shall assault the enemy  
*veine* f. *assaillir* pl.  
 to-morrow in their entrenchments. Were we not overtaken by a  
*demain* *retranchement* ind-3 *assailli*  
 horrible storm? At every word which they said to him  
*tempête* f. *à chaque* *que* *on disait* 2 *lui* 1  
 concerning his son, the good (old man) leaped for joy.  
*de* *vieillard* *tressaillir* ind-2 *de joie*

## 141. IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Avoir*, to have, is conjugated at length, No. 101.

*Ravoir*, to have again; and *se ravoir*, to recover, are only used in the present of the infinitive.

*Choir*, to fall, has only the participle past, *chu*, *chue*, *être chu*.

### DÉCHOIR, to decay.

(No *Part. pres.*) *Part. past.* *déchu*.

IND. *pres.* *déchois*, *déchois*, *déchoit*, *déchoyons*, *déchoyez*, *déchoient*.

(No *Imperf.*) *Pret.* *déchus*—*Fut.* *décherrai*—COND. *décherrais*.

IMPER. *déchois*, *déchoie*, *déchoyons*, *déchoyez*, *déchoient*.

SUB. *pres.* *déchoie*, *dechoies*, *déchoie*, *déchoy-ions*, —iez, *déchoient*.

*Imperf.* *déchusse*.

*Echoir*, to fall to, to expire, has only now in use the IND. *pres.* *il échoit*, sometimes pronounced *il échet*, the *pret.* *il échut*, *fut.* *il écherra*, *cond.* *il écherrait*, the *imperf.* SUBJ. *que j'échusse*; INF. and PAST *échoir*, *échéant*, *échu*.

*Choir*, *déchoir*, *échoir*, take the auxiliary *être* and *avoir*.



*Falloir*, to be necessary, is an impersonal verb, the conjugation of which has been given.

## EXERCISE.

I had apartments that I liked; I will endeavour to have them  
 ind-2 *un logement* aimer ind-2 *veux essayer de* s.  
 again. Beware of falling. How has he fallen into  
*prenez garde* inf-1 *comment*  
 poverty? Since the publication of his last work, he has  
*pauvreté depuis* *dernier*.  
 much fallen in the esteem of the public. If he do not  
*déchoir*  
 alter his conduct, he will gradually lose his reputation  
*changer de* \* *déchoir de jour en jour de* — f.  
 and credit. He has put in the lottery, and he hopes  
 pr. pron. —m. *mis à* *loterie* f.  
 that a capital prize will fall (to his share). That bill  
 \* art. *gras* *lot m.* *échoir* *lui* *lettre* f.  
 of exchange has expired on the twenty-fifth. The first term  
*change* *échoir* \* *le* *vingt-cinq* *terme* m.  
 expires at Midsummer. You have drawn on me a bill of  
*à la Saint-Jean* *tirer* *sur moi*.  
 exchange; when is it payable? I did not believe that I must  
*échoir* ind-1 *croire* ind-2 *falloir* sub-2  
 so soon (have taken) that journey. He must  
*faire* *voyage* m. ind-4 *que*  
 have sunk under the efforts of (so many) enemies.  
*succomber* sub-2 *tant de*

MOUVOIR *to move*.

*Part. pres. mouvant*—*Part. past. mu*.

*IND. pres.* meus, meus, meut, mouv-ons, —ez, meuvent.

*Imperf.* mouvais—*Prët.* mus—*Fut.* mouvrai—*COND.* mouvrais.

*IMPER.* meus, meuve, mouvons, mouvez, meuvent.

*SUBJ. pres.* meuv-e, —es, —e, mouv-ions, —iez, meuvent.

*Imperf.* musse.

Thus are conjugated *émouvoir*, to move, to excite, stir up;  
*se mouvoir*, to move, stir; *s'émouvoir*, to be moved, affected.

*Promouvoir*, to promote in rank or office, has only the  
 infinitive, and participle *promu*.

*Démouvoir*, to induce to desist, has the infinitive only.

PLEUVOIR, *to rain (impersonal)*

<i>Part. pres.</i> pleuvant	<i>Past</i>	plu	<i>IND. pres.</i> il pleut
<i>Imperf.</i> il pleuvait	<i>Prët.</i>	il plut	<i>Fut.</i> il pleuvra
<i>COND.</i> il pleuvrait	<i>SUB. pres.</i>	qu'il pleuve	<i>Imperf.</i> qu'il plût

## EXERCISE.

The spring which moves the whole machine is very ingenious, though very simple. It was passion which moved him to that action. Can you doubt that the soul, though it is spiritual, moves the body at pleasure? That is a man whom nothing moves. We had scarcely lost sight of land, when there arose a violent tempest. We were moved with fear and pity. When the famous d'Aguesseau was promoted to the dignity of chancellor, all France shewed the greatest joy. That bishop well deserved. by his talents and by his virtues, that the king should promote him to the dignity of primate. The people think that it rains frogs and insects at certain seasons. It will not rain to-day, but I (am fearful) of its raining to-morrow.

*ressort m. 2 tout 1 —f.*  
*= quoique — Ce ind-1 art. —f. ind-4*  
*—f pouvez f. \**  
*\* —tuel ne sub-1 à sa volonté ce*  
*émouvoir ind-3 à peine perdu vue f. 3 2*  
*art. terre, f. 1 que il s'émouvoir ind-3 grand tempête f.*  
*ind-3 émus de crainte f. pr. pitié f. quand célèbre*  
*ind-3 = f. chancelier tout*  
*art. f. en témoigner ind-3 f. évêque*  
*mériter ind-2*  
*sub-2 2 le 1 primate sing.*  
*croit de art. grenouille f. pl. pr. art. insecte m. pl.*  
*en — temps pl. aujourd'hui*  
*craindre que \* ne sub-1*

## POUVOIR, to be able.

*Part. pres. pouvant—Part. past. pu.*

*IND. pres. puis,\* peux, peut, pouv-ons, —cz, peuvent,*

*Imperf. pouvais—Pret. pus—Fut. pourrai—COND. pourrais.*

*(No Imperative). SUBJ. pres. puisse—Imperf. pousse.*

\* Conversation and poetry admit also *je peux*, but not *peux-je*?

There is an imperative used, not to express command, but a wish that a thing be, as a sort of imprecation. *Puissé-je, puisses-tu, puisse-t-il, puissions-nous, puissiez-vous, puissent-ils.* Ex: *puisseiz-vous arriver à temps*, may you arrive in time.

## SAVOIR, to know.

*Part. pres.* sachant—*Part. past. su.*

*IND. pres.* sais, sais, sait, savons, savez. savent—*Imperf.* savais.

*Pret.* sus—*Fut.* saurai—*COND.* saurais.

*IMPER.* sache, sache, sachons, sachez, sachent.

*SUBJ. pres.* sache—*Imperf.* süssse.

*Seoir*, to be becoming, to befit, has *only* the *part. pres. seyant* ; and the third persons of the *simple* tenses, *il sied, il siéent, il séyait, il siéra, il siérait, qu'il siée*. But *seoir*, to sit, is used only in the two participles, *séant* and *sis*. This verb is also used impersonally.

## ASSEOIR, to set.

*Part. pres.* asseyant—*Part. past. assis.*

*IND. pres.* assieds, assieds, assied, assey-ons, —ez, —ent.

*Imperf.* asseyais.—*Pret.* assis.—*Fut.* assièrai, or asseyerai.

*COND.* assièrais, or asseyerais.—*IMP.* assieds, assèye, assey-ons.

—ez, ent.—*SUBJ. pres.* assèye.—*Imperf.* assise.

N.B. This verb is more frequently reflected, as *s'asseoir*, to sit down. Its compound *rasseoir*, to set again, to calm, or to sit down again, is conjugated in the same manner.

## EXERCISE.

When he arrived at home, he (was quite exhausted).  
*être ind-1 arrivé chez lui n'en pouvoir ind-2 plus*

The minister had (so many) people at his levee, that I  
*ministre ind-3 tant de monde à audience*

could not speak to him. Are you afraid that he cannot  
*ind-3 2 1 craindre, ind-1 pouvoir sub-1*

accomplish that affair? I know that he is not your friend,  
*venir à bout de de pl.*

but I know likewise that he is a man of probity. Let them know  
*aussi \* bien*

that their pardon depends on their submission. I could wish  
*grâce dépendre de soumission désirer cond-1*

that he knew a little better his lessons. Let us see if this new-  
*sub-2 voyons d'un*

fashioned dress becomes you, or not. Be assured that  
*nouveau goût 2 robe f. 1 2 1 non*

colours too rich will not become you. The head-dress which that  
*art. f. voyant coiffure f. que*

lady wore did not become her at all. These  
*porter ind-2 seoir ind-2 2 lui 1 du tout*

colours become you so well, you (would do wrong) to wear any  
*inf-3 avoir tort cond-1 de en porter en*

others. Sit that child in this arm-chair, and take care he  
*asseoir m. fauteuil m. prenez garde que*



does not fall. I will sit down on the top of that hill  
*ne subj-1 s'asseoir sommet m. côteau m.*  
 whence I shall discover a prospect (no less) magnificent  
*découvrir scène f. aussi —que*  
 than diversified. We (were sitting) on the banks of the  
*varié s'asseoir ind-6 bord m.pl.*  
 Thames, whence we contemplated myriads of vessels,  
*Tamise f. contempler ind-2 de art. millier vaisseau*  
 which bring, every year, the riches of the two hemis-  
*apporter art. pl.*  
 pheres.

VOIR, to see.

*Part. pres. voyant.—Part. past. vu.*

*IND. pres. vois, vois, voit, voyons, voyez, voient.*

*Imperf. voyais.—Pret. vis.—Fut. verrai.—COND. verrais.*

*IMPER. vois, voie, voyons, voyez, voient.*

*SUBJ. pres. voie, voies, voie, voyions, voyiez, voient.—Imp. visse.*

*Revoir*, to see again ; and *entrevoir*, to have a glimpse of, are conjugated in the same manner ; but *prévoir*, to foresee ; makes in the future and the conditional, *je prévoirai*, etc. *je prévoirais*, etc.

*Pourvoir*, to provide ; makes in the *pret. je pourvus*, *tu pourvus*, etc. *fut. je pourvoirai*, etc. *COND. je pourvoirais*, etc., and *imperf. SUBJ. que je pourvusse*, etc.

*Surseoir*, to supersede, though a compound of *seoir*, is conjugated like *voir*, except that it makes *fut. je surseoirai*, etc., *COND. je surseoirais*, etc. and *part. past. sursis*.

VALOIR, to be worth.

*Part. pres. valant.—Part. past. valu.*

*IND. pres. vaux, vaux, vaut, valons, valez, valent.*

*Imperf. valais.—Pret. valus.—Fut. vaudrai.—COND. vaudrais.*

*IMPER. vaux, vaille, valons, valez, vaillent.*

*SUBJ. pres. vaille, vailles, vaille, valions, valiez, vaillent.*

*Imperf. valusse.*

*Revaloir*, to pay off, and *équivaloir*, to be equivalent to, follow *valoir* ; but *prévaloir*, to prevail, makes in the *SUBJ. pres. que je prévale*, *que tu prévalues*, *qu'il prévale*, *que nous prévalions*, etc.

VOULOIR, to be willing.

*Part. pres. voulant.—Part. past. voulu.*

*IND. pres. veux, veux, veut, voulons, voulez, veulent.*

*Imperf. voulais.—Pret. voulus.—Fut. voudrai.—COND. voudrais.*

*SUBJ. pres. veuill-e, —es, —e, voulions, vouliez, veuillent.*

*Imperf. voulusse.*

The imperative is *veuille, veuillons, veuillez*, but the last person only is commonly used, in the sense of *be so kind or so good as, please to*

## EXERCISE.

*Behold* the admirable order of the universe. *Has* he again seen

2 m 1

his country and his friends? - (Had he *had a glimpse of*) the dawn  
*pays aurore*

of this fine day? To terminate their affairs, it would be neces-  
*pour falloir*

sary for them to (see one another). I clearly foresaw,  
cond-1 *que* \* *ils* \* *s'entrevoir* subj-2 *bien* 2

(from that time), all the obstacles he would have to surmount.  
*dès lors — m. que à surmonter*

Would you have had the judge (put off) the execution  
*vouloir* ind-2 *que juge surseoir* subj-2

of the sentence that he had pronounced? I shall not put off the  
*arrêt ind-2 rendu*

prosecution of that affair. If men do not provide (for it),  
*poursuite* f. pl. art. 2 y 1

God will provide (for it) (But for the cooking), this fish (would be  
2 y 1 *sans la sauce ne valoir*

good for nothing) You have not paid for this ground more than  
*rien* \*

it is worth; (are you afraid) that it is not worth six hundred  
*ne craindre que* subj-1

pounds? One ounce of gold is equivalent to fifteen  
*livre* f. pl. *sterling*? *once* f.

ounces of silver. Doubt not that reason and truth will  
*douter art. art. \**

prevail at last. I can and I will tell the truth. If you  
*ne* subj-1 *à la longue dire le*

are willing, he will be willing too. Let us resolve to resist  
*le aussi vouloir* \* *combattre*

our passions, and we shall be sure to conquer them. (Be so good as)  
*de vaincre* 2 1 *vouloir*

to lend me your grammar.

\* *prêter* 1.

## 142. IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

### BRANCH I. On *RENDRE*.

#### RESOUDRE, to resolve.

*Part. pres.* résolvant.—*Part. past.* résolu, or résous.

*IND. pres.* résous, résous, résout, résolv-*ons*, --*ez*, -*ent*.

*Imperf.* résolvais.—*Pret.* résolu*s*.—*Fut.* résoudrai.

*COND.* résoudrais.—*IMPER.* résous, résolve, résolv-*ons*, *ez*, -*ent*.

*SUBJ. pres.* résolve.—*Imperf.* résolusse.

This verb has two participles past, *résolu*, in the sense of *to determine, to fix*; *résous*, without a feminine, in the sense of *to resolve into, to turn into*.

*Absoudre*, absolve, is conjugated like *résoudre*; but has neither *pret.* *IND.* nor *imperf.* *SUBJ.*; its participle past is *absous*, *m. absoute*, *f.*

*Dissoudre*, to dissolve; has the same irregularities, and wants the same tenses as *absoudre*.

#### COUDRE, to sew.

*Part. pres.* cousant.—*Part. past.* cousu.

*IND. pres.* couds, couds, coud, cousons, cousez, cousent.

*Imperf.* cousais.—*Pret.* cousis.—*Fut.* coudrai.—*COND.* coudrais.

*IMPER.* couds.—*SUBJ. pres.* couse.—*Imperf.* cousisse.

*Découdre* to unsew; and *recoudre*, to sew again, are conjugated in the same manner.

#### METTRE, to put.

*Part. pres.* mettant.—*Part. past.* mis.

*IND. pres.* mets, mets, met, mettons, mettez, mettent.

*Imperf.* mettais.—*Pret.* mis.—*Fut.* mettrai.—*COND.* mettrais.

*IMPER.* mets.—*SUBJ. pres.* mette.—*Imperf.* misse.

In the same manner are conjugated the derivatives:

admettre	to admit	permettre	to permit
commettre	to commit	promettre	to promise
compromettre	to compromise	remettre	to replace
se démettre	{ to put out of joint to resign	soumettre	to subject
omettre	to omit	transmettre	to transmit
		s'entremettre	to intermeddle

#### EXERCISE.

Wood when burning resolves itself into ashes and smoke.  
art. bois *m.* que l'on brûle se résoudre en cendre *f.* pr. fumée *f.*



*Have they resolved on* peace or war? The fog has  
 \* art. f. art. f. *brouillard m. se*  
*resolved itself into rain.* Would that judge thus lightly  
*résoudre ind-4 2 pluie f. si légèrement*  
*absolve the guilty?* Strong waters dissolve metals.  
*cond-1 coupable m. pl. art. fort 2 f. pl. 1 art. on 1*  
*Those drugs were dissolved before they were but into*  
*drogue 3 ind-2 avant que de les \* mettre*  
*that medicine.* My sister did sew all day yesterday. That piece  
*remède m. \* hier m.*  
*is not well sewed, it must (be sewed over again) Unpick*  
*falloir la inf-1 découdre*  
*that lace, and sew it again very carefully. Does he*  
*dentelle f. 2 1 avec beaucoup de soin*  
*set a great value upon riches? I never admitted those*  
*mettre prix m. à art. ind-4*  
*principles. Has he committed that fault? If he (would take my*  
*faute f. me*  
*advice), he would resign his charge in favour of his*  
*croyait se démettre cond-1 de f. en =*  
*son. He put his arm out of joint yesterday. I will omit nothing*  
*se démettre le bras ind-4*  
*that depends on me to serve you. God frequently*  
*de ce dépendre ind-7 de pour souvent 2*  
*permits the wicked to prosper. Put this book*  
*1 que méchant m. pl. \* prospérer sub-1 remettre*  
*in its place again. Under whatever form of government*  
*—f. \* quelque gouvernement m. que*  
*you (may live), remember that your first duty is to be*  
*vivre subj-1 se souvenir devoir m. de*  
*obedient to the laws. It frequently happens that fathers transmit*  
*soumis 2 arriver 1 art.*  
*to their children both their vices and their virtues.*  
*et*  
*He has long meddled with public affairs; but his*  
*s'entremettre ind-4 long-temps de art. 2 1*  
*endeavours have not been crowned with success.*  
*effort couronner de art. m.*

## MOUDRE, to grind (corn, &amp;c.)

*Part. pres. moulant.—Part. past. moulu.*

*IND. pres. mouds, mouds, moud, moul-ons,—ez,—ent.*

*Imperf. moulais.—Pret. moulus.—Fut. moudrai.—COND. moudrais.*

*IMPER. mouds, moule, moulons, moulez, moulent.*

*SUBJ. pres. moule.—Imperf. moulusse.*

In the same manner are conjugated the derivatives :

émoudre { *to grind* | remoudre *to grind again* (corn, etc.)  
(knives, etc.) | rémoudre *to grind again* (knives, etc.)

PRENDRE, *to take*.

*Part. pres.* prenant.—*Part. past.* pris.

*IND. pres.* prends, prends, prend, pren-ons,—ez, prennent.

*Imperf.* prenais.—*Pret. pris.*—*Fut.* prendrai.—*COND.* prendrais.

*IMPER.* prends, preenne, prenons, prenez, prennent.

*SUBJ. pres.* prenn-e,—es,—e, pren-ions,—iez, prennent

*Imperf.* prisse.

In the same manner are conjugated :

apprendre	<i>to learn</i>	entreprendre	<i>to undertake</i>
désapprendre	<i>to unlearn</i>	se méprendre	<i>to mistake</i>
comprendre	<i>to understand</i>	reprendre	<i>to retake, to reply</i>
déprendre	<i>to separate</i>	surprendre	<i>to surprise</i>

ROMPRE, *to break*.

*Part. pres.* rompant.—*Part. past.* rompu.

*IND. pres.* romps, romps, rompt, romp-ons, —ez, —ent.

*Imperf.* rompais.—*Pret.* rompis.—*Fut.* romprai.—*COND.* rom-  
prais.

*IMPER.* romps, rompe, rompons, rompez, rompent.

*SUBJ. pres.* rompe.—*Imperf.* rompisse.

In the same manner are conjugated *corrompre*, to corrupt; and *interrompre*, to interrupt.

SOURDRE, to rush out of the ground, as water, has only infinitive, and *il* or *elle* sourd.

#### EXERCISE.

I took great pains. Grind those razors with care.  
ind-3 beaucoup de sing. rasoir m.

Those knives (are just) ground. This corn is not sufficiently  
couteau m. venir d'être grain m. assez

ground, it should be ground again. I wish that you would  
falloir ind-1 le vouloir cond-1

take courage. What news have you learnt? Philosophy  
subj-2 f. pl. art.

comprehends logic, ethics, physics, and  
art. logique f. art. morale f. art. physique f. art.

metaphysics. It is ~~is~~ (with difficulty) that he divests himself of  
métaphysique f. Ce difficilement que se déprendre

his opinions. He has forgotten all that he knew. I fear  
désapprendre ce que savoir ind-2 craindre que

you will undertake a task above your strength. Could  
ne subj-1 tâche f. au-dessus de f. pl.

he have been mistaken so grossly ? I reproved him  
*se méprendre cond-2 grossièrement reprendre ind-2 2 1*  
 continually for his faults, but (to no purpose). We surprised  
*sans cesse de défaut inutilement ind-4*  
 the enemy, and cut them to pieces. In the middle of the  
*pl. tailler 2 1 en à*  
 road the axle-tree of our carriage broke. Bad  
*chemin essieu m. carrosse se rompre ind-3 art. mauvais*  
 company corrupts the minds of young people. Why do  
*compagnie pl. sing. gens pourquoi*  
 you interrupt your brother, when you see him busy ?  
*quand 2 1 occupé*

## SUIVRE, to follow.

*Part. pres. suivant.—Part. past. suivi.*

*IND. pres. suis, suis, suit, suivons suivez, suivent.*

*Imperf. suivais—Pret. suivis—Fut. suivrai—COND. suivrais.*

*IMPER. suis, suive, suivons, suivez, suivent.*

*SUBJ. pres. suive—Imperf. suivisse.*

*Poursuivre*, is conjugated in the same way.

*S'ensuivre* also, but it has the third persons singular and plural only.

## VAINCRE, to conquer, to vanquish.

*Part. pres. vainquant—Part. past. vaincu.*

*IND. pres. vaines,\* vaines,\* vainc,\* vainqu-ons,\* —ez, —ent.*

*Imperf. vainquais—Pret. vainquis—Fut. vaincrai—COND. vaincrais.*

*SUBJ. pres. vainque—Imperf. vainquisse.*

\*All the persons of this verb, marked with an asterisk, are very little used. But its derivative, *convaincre*, to convince, is generally used in all its tenses and persons.

## EXERCISE.

(For a long while) we followed that method, which was only  
*long-temps 2 ind-3 1 f. ind-2 ne*  
 calculated to mislead us. What is the consequence ? See the errors  
*propre que à égarer 2 1 que s'ensuivre f.*  
 that have sprung from this proposition, which appeared so  
*s'ensuivre ind-4 — f. ind-2*  
 true. We pursued our course when some cries, which  
*suivre ind-2 chemin lorsque de art. cri, m. pl. \**  
 came from the midst of the forest brought terror into our  
*sortis fond m. forêt f. porter ind-3 art. = f.*  
 souls. The Greeks vanquished the Persians at Marathon, Salamis,  
*Grec Perse à pr. Salamine*  
 Platea, and Mycale. I have at last convinced him, by  
*pr. pr. convaincre en fin ind-4 2*



such powerful reasons, of the greatness of his fault, that 1  
*des si 2 fort 3 f. pl. 1 énormité faute f.*  
 (have no doubt) but he will repair it. It is during  
*ne douter nullement que ne reparer subj-1 2 1 Ce pendant*  
 winter that they thrash the corn in cold countries The  
*art. on battre froid 2 art. pays m. pl. 1*  
 enemy were so completely beaten in that engagement that they were  
*pl. ind-3 —ment rencontre f.*  
 forced to abandon thirty leagues of the country. The cannon beat  
*de lieue f. \* pays canon abat-*  
 down the tower. They were fighting with unexampled  
*tre ind-3 tour f. ind-2 un sans exemple 2*  
 rage when a panic terror made them take flight,  
*acharnement m. 1 panique 2 = f. 1 ind-3 2 leur 1 art. fuite f.*  
 and dispersed them in an instant. Beat these mattresses  
*2 1 —m. rebattre matelas m.*  
 again. Happy those who live in solitude! Long  
*art. retraite f. Que 1 long-temps 4*  
 live that good king! He did not long survive a person who  
*subj-1 3 2 2 2 survivre ind-3 à f.*  
 was so dear to him. Fathers live again in their children. He  
*2 1 art.*  
 was in a great dejection of mind; the news which he has received  
*accablement f. pl. f. pl.*  
 has revived him.  
*ont fait inf-1 2 1*

### BATTRE, to beat.

*Part. pres. battant—Part. past. battu.*

*IND pres. bats, bats, bat, battons, battez, battent.*

*Imperf. battais—Pret. battis—Fut. battrai—COND. battrais.*

*IMPER. bats—SUBJ. pres. batte—Imperf. battise.*

Conjugate in the same manner :

abattre	to pull down	combattre	to fight
rabattre	to abate	débattre	to debate
rebattre	to beat again	s'ébattre	to be merry

### VIVRE, to live.

*Part. pres. vivant—Part. past. vécu.*

*IND. pres. vis, vis, vit, vivons, vivez, vivent.—Imperf. vivais.*

*Pret. vécus—Fut. vivrai—COND. vivrais—IMP. vis.*

*SUBJ. pres. vive—Imperf. vécusse.*

In the same manner are conjugated *revivre*, to revive ;  
 and *survivre*, to survive.

BRANCH II. *Plaire.*

*Braire*, to bray ; is used in the third persons only and in the following tenses : *il brait, ils braient, il braira, ils brairont, il brairait, ils brairaient.*

## FAIRE, to do.

*Part. pres. faisant—Part. past. fait.*

*IND pres. fais, fais, fait, faisons, faites, font.*

*Imperf. faisais—Pret. fis—Fut. ferai—COND. ferais.*

*IMPER. fais, fasse, faisons, faites, fassent.*

*SUBJ. pres. fasse, fassions—Imperf. fisse.*

Some authors on account of the similarity of sound, write *nous fesons, fesant*, etc. but it is contrary to the opinion of the French Academy.

In the same manner are conjugated :

contrefaire	to counterfeit	refaire	to do again
défaire	to undo	satisfaire	to satisfy
redéfaire	to undo again	surfaire	to exact
forfaire*	to trespass	méfaire*	to misdo
malfaire	to do ill	parfaire	to perfect

## TRAIRE, to milk (defective.)

*Part. pres. trayant—Part. past. trait.*

*IND pres. trais, trais, trait, trayons, trayez, traient.*

*Imperf. trayais—(No pret.)—Fut. trairai—COND. trairais.*

*IMPER. trais, traye, trayons, trayez, traient.*

*SUBJ. pres. traye—(No imperf.)*

Conjugate in the same manner :

attirer	to allure	retraire	to finedraw
abstraire	to abstract	retraire	to redeem
distraindre	to divert	soustraire	to substract
extraire	to extract		

All these verbs are principally used in the compound tenses.

## EXERCISE.

What will you have him do? Do not make (so much)  
*Que vouloir \* que il sub-1 tant*

noise. Do they never exact? That women mimicked all the per-  
*de bruit ind-2 f.*

sons whom she saw. It was with difficulty he (divested himself)  
*pl. voir ind-3 Ceind-3 peine que se défaire*

\* These four verbs are only used in this form, and the partic. past, *forfait, malfait, méfait* and *parfait*.

of the false opinions which had been given him in his infancy.  
—f. on ind-2 \* 2 données 3 lui 1 f.

Is there no chance of our making again another trip to  
*n'est-il donc pas probable que* sub-1 *le voyage*

Paris, Rome, and Naples? He says that you have offended him,  
pr. pr. dit 2 offensé 3 1

and that, if you do not satisfy him quickly, he will find means  
*promptement* art. *moyen*

to satisfy himself. Every night, she milked her  
sing. *de se* *lui-même* art. *soir* m. pl. ind-2

cows, which gave her a (great quantity) of wholesome milk.

*ce qui* ind-2 *lui* *abondant* 2 \* *et sain* 3 *lait* m. 1

Have you milked your goats? Are the cows milked?  
*chèvre* f. pl. *vache* f. pl. art.

Salt is good to entice pigeons. You will never know the  
*Sel* m. *pour attirer* art. m. pl. *connaître*

nature of bodies, if you abstract not their accessory qualities  
art. = 2 = 1 1

from those which are inherent (in them), The least thing (diverts  
2 ——— *leur* 1 *moindre* *le*

his attention). Will you not extract that charming passage? Have  
*distraindre* ——— m.

you darned your gown? Should he not redeem that land?  
*rentraire* *devoir* cond-1

What! would you have me screen those guilty  
*Quoi!* ind-1 \* *que je soustraire* sub-1 *coupable* m. pl.

persons from the rigour of the laws?

\* *à* *rigueur* f.

### BRANCH III. *Paraître*.

NAÎTRE, *to be born*.

*Part. pres.* naissant—*Part. past.* né.

IND. *pres.* nais, nais, naît, naissons, naissez, naissent.

*Imperf.* naissais—*Pret.* naquis—*Fut.* naîtrai—COND. naîtrais.

IMPER. nais—SUBJ. *pres.* naisse—*Imperf.* naquisse.

This verb takes the auxiliary *être*; but its derivative, *re-naître*, to be born again, has no participle past, and, consequently, no compound tenses.

PAÎTRE, *to graze* (defective).

*Part. pres.* paissant—*Part. past.* pu.

IND. *pres.* pais, pais, paît, paissions, paisez, paissent.

*Imperf.* paissais—(No *pret.*)—*Fut.* paîtrai—COND. paîtrais.

IMPER. pais—SUBJ. *pres.* paisse—(No *imperf.*)

*Repaître*, to feed, to bait, is, like *paraître*, regular in all its tenses, making in the *pret.* IND. *je repus*, etc. and in the *imperf.* SUBJ. *je repusse*, etc.



## EXERCISE.

Was not Virgil born at Mantua ? It is from that poisoned  
 ind-3 Mantoue Ce empoisonné 2  
 source that have arisen all the cruel wars that have desolated  
 f. 1 que naître f. pl. 2 f. pl. 1 désoler  
 the universe. The fable says that, as soon as Hercules had  
 f. dit aussitôt que Hercules h m. ind-2  
 (cut off) one of the heads of the hydra, others sprang up  
 couper tête f. pl. hydre f. d'autres 2 il en renaître  
 While their united flocks fed on the  
 ind-2 1 tandis que réuni 2 troupeau m. pl. 1 paître ind-2 \*  
 tender and flowery grass, they sung under the shade of a  
 2 fleuri 3 herbe f. 1 chanter ind-2 à ombre  
 tree the sweets of rural life. Your horses have  
 douceur f. pl. art. champêtre 2 f. 1  
 not fed to-day ; you must have them fed. That is a  
 repaître d'aujourd'hui ; il faut leur faire donner à manger Ce  
 man who thirsts after nothing but blood and slaughter.  
 ne se repaître de 2 \* que 1 pr. carnage m.

## 145. BRANCH IV. Réduire.

*Bruire*, to roar, is defective ; it has only the *part. pres.* bruyant, oftener used as an adjective, as : *des flots bruyans* ; and the two third persons of the *imperf. IND.* il bruyait, ils bruyaient.

*Luire*, to shine ; and *reluire*, to glitter ; make the *part. past.* lui, relui, neither the *pret. IND.* nor *imperf. SUBJ.* are in use.

*Nuire*, to hurt ; making *part. pres.* nuisant, *past.* nui, is regular in all its tenses.

CONFIR, to pickle or preserve.

*Part. pres.* confisant—*Part. past.* confit.

*IND. pres.* conf-is,—is, it,—isons,—isez,—isent.

*Imperf.* confisais—*Pret* confis—*Fut.* confirai.

*COND.* confirais—*IMP.* confis—*SUBJ. pres.* confise.

*Imperf.* confisse.

Its derivative *déconfire*, to discomfit, is rather obsolete.

*Circoncire*, to circumcise, and *suffire*, to suffice, make in the *part. past.* circoncis and suffi, the rest is as *confire*.

## EXERCISE.

The thunder which roared from afar announced  
 tonnerre m. bruire ind-2 dans art. lointain m. ind-2  
 a dreadful storm. They heard the roaring of the waves of  
 terrible 2 orage m. 1 On ind-2 \* inf-1 \* flot m. pl.

an agitated sea. That street is too noisy for those who love  
*agité 2 mer f. 1 rue f. bruyant*  
 retirement and study. I (have a glimpse of) some thing  
 art. *retraite f. art. entrevoir quelque chose*  
 that shines through these trees. A ray of hope shone upon  
*au travers de rayon m. ind-4 2 \**  
 us in the midst of the misfortunes which overwhelmed us. Every  
 1 *à milieu malheur m. pl. accabler ind-2*  
 thing is well rubbed in that house : every thing shines, even to the  
*frotté y reluire jusque à*  
 floor. Would he not have hurt you in that affair ? Jesus  
*plancher m. cond-2 1*  
 Christ was circumcised a week after his birth. Shall you  
*huit jours naissance f.*  
 preserve these peaches with sugar, with honey, or with  
*confire à art. sucre m. art. miel m.*  
 brandy ? Have you pickled cucumbers,  
 art. *eau-de-vie f. de art. concombre m. pr-art.*  
 purslane, and sea-fennel ? If he loses his law-suit, all his  
*pourpier m. pr. art. perce-pierre f. procès m.*  
 property will not suffice.  
*bien*

## DIRE, to say.

*Part. pres. disant—Part. past. dit.*

*IND. pres. dis, dis, dit, disons, DITES,\* disent.*

*Imperf. disais—Pret. dis—Fut. dirai—COND. dirais.*

*IMPER. dis, dise, disons, DITES,\* disent.*

*SUBJ. pres. dise—Imperf. disse.*

## Ecrire, to write.

*Part. pres. écrivant—Part. past. écrit.*

*IND. pres. écris, écris, écrit, écriv-ons, —ez, —ent.*

*Imperf. écrivais—Pret. écrivis—Fut. écrirai—COND. écrirais.*

*IMP. écris—SUBJ. pres. écrive—Imperf. écrivisse.*

\**Redire*, to say again, conformably to its primitive, makes *redites*, but

contredire	to contradict	} make	{	vous contredisez
dédire	to unsay			vous dédisez
interdire	to forbid			vous interdisez
médire	to slander			vous médisez
prédire	to foretell			vous prédisez

*Maudire* is conjugated like *punir* with the exception of the participle past. which is *maudit*, *c. Maudissant, je maudis, nous maudissons ; je maudissais ; je maudis ; je maudirai ; je maudirais ; que je maudisse ; que je maudisse ; maudis.*

Conjugate in the same manner.

circonscrire	to circumscribe	proscrire	to proscribe
décrire	to describe	récrire	to write again
inscrire	to inscribe	souscrire	to subscribe
prescrire	to prescribe	transcrire	to transcribe

LIRE, to read.

*Part. pres.* lisant—*Part. past.* lu.

*IND. pres.* lis, lis, lit, lisons, lisez, lisent—*Imperf.* lisais.

*Pret.* lus—*Fut.* lirai—*COND.* lirais—*IMPER.* lis.

*SUBJ. pres.* lise—*Imperf.* lusse.

In the same manner are conjugated :

élire	to elect	relire	to read over again
-------	----------	--------	--------------------

RIRE, to laugh.

*Part. pres.* riant—*Past.* ri—*IND. pres.* ris, ris, rit, rions, riez, rient.

*Imperf.* riaais—*Pret.* ris—*Fut.* rirai—*COND.* rirais.

*IMPER.* ris—*SUBJ. pres.* ris—*Imperf.* risse.

*Sourire*, to smile ; is conjugated as *rire*.

*Frيره*, to fry ; besides the present of the infinitive, has only the *part. past.* frit ; *INDIC. pres.* je fris, tu fris, il frit ; *fut.* je firai, tu, etc. ; *COND.* je firais, tu, etc. ; *IMPER. sing.* fris. But it has all the compound tenses. The forms that are deficient are fully supplied by *faire*, prefixed to *frيره*, as : *faisant frيره*, *je faisais frيره*, etc.

#### EXERCISE.

Always *speak* the truth, but with discretion. Never contradict  
dire f.

(any one) in public. You thought you were serving me in  
personne en penser ind-4 \* \* inf-1 2 1 en

speaking thus : well, (let it be so) ; you shall not be contradicted  
parler ainsi ch bien soit en dédire

What ! would you forbid him all communication with his friends ?  
Quoi ! \* interdire 2 1 ——— f.

That woman slandered every one. You had foretold that event.  
ind-2 de ind-6

Let us curse no one ; let us remember that our laws forbids us  
ne personne se rappeler défendre

to curse even those who persecute us. Write down every  
de persécuter art. pl.

day the reflections which you make on the books which you read.

Did he not read that interesting history with (a great deal) of  
ind-2 2 1

pleasure ? God is an infinite being who is circumscribed neither  
2 être m. 1 ne ni



by time nor place. Shall you not describe that  
 art. *ni* pr. art. lieu m. pl. ;  
 dreadful tempest? Have those soles and whittings fried.  
*horrible* 2 f. 1 *faire* 1 — pron. *merlan* 3 inf-1 2  
 If you wish to form your taste, read the classics over and over  
*vouloir* \* *lire et relire les anciens*  
 He was elected by a great majority of voices. We have laughed  
 ind-4 à — f.  
 heartily and have resolved to (go on). He did not answer  
*de bon cœur* nous *résolu* *de continuer* *répondre*  
 him (any thing): but he smiled at him, as a sign of appro-  
 ind-3 lui rien ind-3 2\* lui 1 en \* —  
 bation, in the kindest manner.  
 — de *gracieux* 2 air m. 1.

## BOIRE, to drink.

*Part. pres.* buvant—*Past. bu.*

*IND. pres.* bois, bois, boit, buvons, buvez, boivent.

*Imperf.* buvais—*Pret. bus*—*Fut.* boirai—*COND.* boirais.

*IMPER.* bois, boive, buvons, buvez, boivent.

*SUBJ. pres.* boiv-e, —es, —e, buvions, buviez, boivent.

*Imperf.* busse.

In the same manner are conjugated.

reboire to drink again | s'emboire to imbibe, a technical term used in painting

*Clore*, to close; has only the *part. past.* clos; *ind. pres.* je clos, tu clos, il clôt; *fut.* je clorai, tu cloras, etc.; *cond.* je clorais, tu clorais, etc.; and the *IMP. sing.* clos.

*Déclore*, to disclose, *enclore*, to enclose, are defective in the same tenses as *clore*; but *forclore*, to debar, a law term, is only used in the *inf.* and *part. past.* forclos.

*Éclore*, to be hatched, as birds, or to blow like a flower, has only these forms; *inf.* éclore; *part. past.* éclos; *ind. pres.* il éclôt, ils éclosent; *fut.* il éclora, ils écloront; *cond.* il éclorait, ils écloraient; and the *subj. pres.* qu'il éclore, qu'ils éclosent. But its compound tenses, which are formed with *être*, are much used.

## CONCLURE, to conclude.

*Part. pres.* concluant—*Past. conclu.*

*IND. pres.* conclus, conclus, conclut, conclu-ons,—ez,—ent.

*Imperf.* concluais—*Pret. conclus*—*Fut.* conclurai.

*COND.* conclurais—*IMPER.* conclus—*SUBJ. pres.* conclue.

*Imperf.* conclusse,

*Exclure*, to exclude; is conjugated like *conclure*, except that it has two participles past, *exclu*, *e*, *exclus*, *e*.

## CROIRE, to believe.

Part. pres. croyant—Past. cru.

IND. pres. crois, crois, croit, croyons, croyez, croient.

Imperf. croyais—Pret. crus—Fut. croirai—COND. croirais.

IMPER. crois, croie, croyons, croyez, croient.

Imperf. crusse

It has no derivative but *accroire*, which is only used with *faire*, as : *faire accroire* or *en faire accroire*, to impose upon credulity ; and *s'en faire accroire* to be self-conceited.

## EXERCISE.

Seated under the shade of palm-trees, they milked their  
*Assis à art. palmier pl. traire ind-2*  
 goats and ewes, and merrily drank that nectar,  
*chèvre f. pl. pron. brebis f. pl. avec joie 2 ind-2 1 m.*  
 which (was renewed) every day. Would they drink  
*se renouveler ind-2 art. pl. boire cond-1*  
 their wine iced ? This window does not close well ; when you  
*à la glace f.*  
 have made some alterations (in it), it will close better. He  
*ind-8 2 3 réparation f. 4 y 1 mieux*  
 had scarcely closed his eyes, when the noise which they made  
*à peine ind-6 \* art. que que on ind-3*  
 at his door, awoke him. Have they not enclosed the suburbs  
*à réveiller ind-3 on faubourg*  
 within, the city ? Will you enclose your park with a wall,  
*m. pl. ville f. parc de mur m.*  
 or a hedge ? Put the eggs of those silk-worms in the  
*pr. haie f. mettez auf m. pl. ver-à-soie m. pl. à*  
 sun, that they may hatch. Those flowers just blown  
*soleil m. sub-1 nouvellement*  
 exhale the sweetest fragrance. When did they conclude this  
*répandre doux parfum m. ind-4*  
 treaty ? His enemies managed so well, that he was unanimously  
*traité m. faire ind-3 ind-3 unanimement*  
 excluded from the company. Did you think me capable of so  
*compagnie f. croire ind-1*  
 black an act ? He possesses some kind of knowledge ; but  
*noir 2 trait m. 1 avoir espèce savoir*  
 (not so much as he thinks).  
*il s'en fait trop accroire.*

## 146. BRANCH V. Joindre.

*Poindre*, to pierce, to peep, to dawn, has only besides the infinitive *il point, il poindra*.

## 147. GENERAL GUIDE TO THE CONJUGATION.

The following Tables, which exhibit at one view all the primitive tenses, both of the regular and irregular verbs, and most of the defective, with references to the pages where the other tenses are to be found, will, it is presumed, prove useful to those who will consult them.

TABLE OF THE PRIMITIVE TENSES OF THE  
FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS.

INFIN.	PARTICIPLES.		INDICATIVE	
PRESENT.	PART. PRES.	PART. PAST.	IND. PRES.	IND. PRETERIT

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

Parler | Parlant | Parlé | Je parle | Je parlai | 137

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

FIRST BRANCH. *Punir.*

Punir | Punissant | Puni | Jepunis | Je punis | 147

SECOND BRANCH. *Sentir.*

Sentir	Sentant	Senti	Je sens	Je sentis	} 147
Mentir	Mentant	Menti	Je mens	Je mentis	
Se repentir	Se repentant	Repenti	Je me repens	Jeme repentis	
Partir	Partant	Parti	Je pars	Je partis	
Sortir	Sortant	Sorti	Je sors	Je sortis	
Dormir	Dormant	Dormi	Je dors	Je dormis	
Servir	Servant	Servi	Je sers	Je servis	

THIRD BRANCH. *Ouvrir.*

Ouvre	Ouvrant	Ouvert	J'ouvre	J'ouvris	} 147
Offrir	Offrant	Offert	J'offre	J'offris	
Souffrir	Souffrant	Souffert	Je souffre	Je souffris	

FOURTH BRANCH. *Tenir.*

Tenir	Tenant	Tenu	Je tiens	Je tins	} 147
Venir	Venant	Venu	Je viens	Je vins	

FIFTH BRANCH. *Courir.*

Courir | Courant | Couru | Je cours | Je courus | 147

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

Recevoir	Recevant	Reçu	Je reçois	Je reçus	} 152
Devoir	Devant	Dû	Je dois	Je dus	



INFIN.	PARTICIPLES		INDICATIVE.	
PRESENT.	PART. PRES.	PART. PAST.	IND. PRES.	IND. PRETERIT.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

FIRST BRANCH. *Rendre.*

Répandre	Répandant	Répandu	Je répands	Je répandis	} 156
Rendre	Rendant	Rendu	Je rends	Je rendis	
Fondre	Fondant	Fondu	Je fonds	Je fondis	
Pondre	Pondant	Pondu	Je ponds	Je pondis	
Répondre	Répondant	Répondu	Je réponds	Je répondis	
Tondre	Tondant	Tondu	Je tonds	Je tondis	
Perdre	Perdant	Perdu	Je perds	Je perdis	
Mordre	Mordant	Mordu	Je mords	Je mordis	
Tordre	Tordant	Tordu	Je tords	Je tordis	

SECOND BRANCH. *Plaire.*

Plaire	Plaisant	Plu	Je plais	Je plus	} 156
Taire	Taisant	Tu	Je tais	Je tus	

THIRD BRANCH. *Paraître.*

Paraître	Paraissant	Paru	Je parais	Je parus	} 156
Croître	Croissant	Cru	Je crois	Je crus	
Connaître	Connaissant	Connu	Je connais	Je connus	
Reparaître	Reparaissant	Repu	Je repais	Je repus	

FOURTH BRANCH. *Réduire.*

Réduire	Réduisant	Réduit	Je réduis	Je réduisis	} 156
Instruire	Instruisant	Instruit	J'instruis	J'intruisis	

FIFTH BRANCH. *Craindre.*

Craindre	Craignant	Craint	Je crains	Je craignis	} 156
Peindre	Peignant	Peint	Je peins	Je peignis	
Joindre	Joignant	Joint	Je joins	Je joignis	

## 148. PRIMITIVE TENSES OF THE IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

Aller	Allant	Allé	Je vais	J'allai	176
-------	--------	------	---------	---------	-----

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

FIRST BRANCH. *Punir.*

Fleurir	Fleurissant	Fleuri	Je fleuris	Je fleuris	} 179
	Florissant				
Haïr	Haïsant	Haï	Je haïs	Je haïs	
Géir*	Gisant		Il git		

INFIN.	PARTICIPLES.		INDICATIVE.	
PRESENT.	PART. PRES.	PART. PAST.	IND. PRES.	IND. PRETERIT.

SECOND BRANCH. *Sentir.*

Bouillir	Bouillant	Bouilli	Je bous	Je bouillis	
Ebouillir		Ebouilli			
Faillir	Faillant*	Failli	Je faux*	Je faillis	
Défaillir		Défailli	Nous défail- lons	Je défail- lis	
Fuir	Fuyant	Fui	Je fuis	Je fuis	180
Mourir	Mourant	Mort	Je meurs	Je mourus	
Acquérir	Acquérant	Acquis	J'acquiers	J'acquis	
Conquérir	Conquérant	Conquis	Je conquiers	Je conquis	
Ouir	Oyant*	Oui		J'ouïs	
Vêtir	Vêtant	Vêtu	Je vêts	Je vêtis	
Revêtir	Revêtant	Revêtu	Je revêts	Je revêtis	

THIRD BRANCH. *Ouvrir.*

Cueillir	Cueillant	Cueilli	Je cueille	Je cueillis	183
Saillir	Saillant	Sailli	Il saille	Il saillit	
Tressaillir	Tressaillant	Tressailli	Je tressaille	Je tressaillis	

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Recevoir.*

Avoir	Ayant	Eu	J'ai	J'eus	184
Ravoir		Chu			
Choir		Déchu	Je déchois	Je déchus	
Déchoir		Echu	Il échoit	J'échus	
Echoir	Echéant				173
Falloir		Fallu	Il faut	Il fallut	
Mouvoir	Mouvant	Mu	Je meus	Je mus	187 à 189
Promouvoir		Promu		Je promus*	
Pleuvoir	Pleuvant	Plu	Il pleut	Il plut	
Pouvoir	Pouvant	Pu	Je puis	Je pus	
Savoir	Sachant	Su	Je sais	Je sus	
Seoir*	Seyant		Il sied		
Seoir*	Séant	Sis			
Asseoir	Asseyant	Assis	J'assieds	J'assis	
Surseoir		Sursis	Je sursois	Je sursis	
Voir	Voyant	Vu	Je vois	Je vis	
Prévoir	Prévoyant	Prévu	Je prévois	Je prévis	
Pourvoir	Pourvoyant	Pourvu	Je pourvois	Je pourvus	
Valoir	Valant	Valu	Je vaux	Je valus	
Vouloir	Voulant	Voulu	Je veux	Je voulus	

N.B.—The forms marked with an asterisk are rather obsolete.

INFIN.	PARTICIPLES.		INDICATIVE.	
PRESENT.	PART. PRES.	PART. PAST.	IND. PRES.	IND. PRETERIT.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

FIRST BRANCH. *Rendre.*

Résoudre	Résolvant	Résous, -lu	Je résous	Je résolu	19 )
Soudre	Solvant				
Absoudre	Absolvant	Absous	J'absous		
Dissoudre	Dissolvant	Dissous	Je dissous		
Coudre	Cousant	Cousu	Je couds	Je cousis	194 )
Soudre			Il sourt		
Mettre	Mettant	Mis	Je mets	Je mis	
Moudre	Moulant	Moulu	Je mouds	Je moulus	
Prendre	Prenant	Pris	Je prends	Je pris	194 )
Rompre	Rompant	Rompu	Je romps	Je rompis	
Suivre	Suivant	Suivi	Je suis	Je suivis	
S'ensuivre	S'ensuivant	Ensuivi	Il s'ensuit	Il s'ensuivit	
Vaincre	Vainquant	Vaincu	Je vains	Je vainquis	130 )
Battre	Battant	Battu	Je bats	Je battis	
Etre	Etant	Été	Je suis	Je fus	
Vivre	Vivant	Vécu	Je vis	Je vécus	

SECOND BRANCH. *Plaire.*

Braire			Il braît		195 )
Faire	Faisant	Fait	Je fais	Je fis	
Traire	Trayant	Trait	Je traïs		

THIRD BRANCH. *Paraître.*

Naitre	Naissant	Né	Je nais	Je naquis	196 )
Renaître	Renaissant		Je renaïs	Je renaquis*	
Paître	Paissant	Pu	Je pais		

FOURTH BRANCH, *Réduire.*

Bruire	Bruyant				197 )
Luire	Luisant	Lui	Je luis		
Nuire	Nuisant	Nui	Je nuis	Je nuisis	
Confire	Confisant	Confit	Je confis	Je confis	
Suffire	Suffisant	Suffi	Je suffis	Je suffis	201 )
Circoncire	Circoncisant	Circoncis	Je circoncis	Je circoncis	
Dire	Disant	Dit	Je dis	Je dis	
Médire	Médissant	Médis	Je médis	Je médis	
Maudire	Maudissant	Maudit	Je maudis	Je maudis	201 )
Ecrire	Ecrivant	Ecrit	J'écris	J'écrivis	
Lire	Lisant	Lu	Je lis	Je lus	
Rire	Riant	Ri	Je ris	Je ris	
Frيره		Frit	Je fris		201 )
Boire	Buvant	Bu	Je bois	Je bus	
Clore, clorre		Clos	Je elos		
Conclure	Concluant	Conclus	Je conclus	Je conelus	
Exclure	Excluant	Exclu or exclus	J'exclus	J'exclus	201 )
Croire	Croyant	Cru	Je crois	Je crus	



INFIN.		PARTICIPLES.		INDICATIVE.	
PRES.	PART.	PRES.	PART. PAST.	IND. PRES.	IND. PRETERIT.

FIFTH BRANCH, *Craindre*.

Peindre | | Il point | 201

N. B. The derivatives, which are not in this Table, will be found with the primitives, to which we have given references.

## CHAPTER VI.

## OF THE PREPOSITIONS.

149. *Prepositions*, so called, from their being *prefixed* to the nouns, which they govern, serve to show the relation which exists between two words. Thus, in this phrase, *le fruit de l'arbre*, the fruit of the tree, *de* expresses the relation between *fruit* and *arbre*. Likewise in this, *utile à l'homme*, useful to man; *à* shows the relation between the noun *homme* and the adjective *utile*. *De* and *à* are *prepositions*, and the word to which they are *prefixed*, is called their *regimen*.

*Prepositions* being invariable parts of speech, they remain the same whatever be the gender and number of the noun which they precede.

They are generally divided into classes, according to the nature of the relation they serve to express.

Some also require another preposition after them, *de* or *à*, whilst their equivalents in English do not, and *vice versa*.

These peculiarities deserve much attention and will, therefore, be noticed in order.

## 150. PREPOSITIONS DENOTING PLACE.

CHEZ. *Il est chez son père*, he is at the house of his father, or at his father's. *Nous sommes chez lui*, we are in his house. *Il est chez lui*, he is at home.

DANS. *Il se promène dans le jardin*; he is walking in the garden.

DEVANT. *Il est toujours devant mes yeux*; he is always before my eyes.

DERRIÈRE. *Il ne regarde jamais derrière lui*; he never looks behind him.

PARMI. *Que de fous parmi les hommes!* how many fools *among* men!

SOUS. *La taupe vit sous terre;* the mole lives *under* ground.

SUR. *Il a le chapeau sur la tête;* he has his hat *on* (his head.)

VERS. *L'aimant se tourne vers le nord;* the loadstone point *towards* the north.

OUTRE. *Percé d'outre en outre;* *through* and *through*.

## EXERCISE.

We find less real happiness *in* an elevated condition than *in*  
*On de 2 bonheur 1 2 f. 1.*

a middling state. One is never truly at peace but *at* home.  
*moyen 2 1 véritablement tranquille que soi*

He walked *before* me. There was a delightful grove *behind*  
*marcher ind-4 avoir ind-2 2 bosquet m. 1*

his house. Among (so many) different nations, there is not one  
*tant de 2 1 y en avoir*

that has not a religious worship. Nature displays her riches  
*qui sub-1. culte m. 1 art. déployer*

with magnificence *under* the torrid zone. Eternal snows  
*torride 3 f. 1 de art. 3 5 f. pl. 4*

(are to be seen) *on* the summit of the Alps. *Towards* the  
*on 1 voir ind-i 2 sommet*

north, nature presents a gloomy and wild aspect.  
*art. triste 2 sauvage 3 aspect m. 1.*

## PREPOSITIONS DENOTING ORDER.

AVANT. *La nouvelle est arrivée avant le courrier;* news is come *before* the courier.

APRÈS. *Il est trop vain pour marcher après les autres;* he is too proud to walk *after* other people.

ENTRE. *Elle a son enfant entre les bras;* she holds her child *in* (for *between*) her arms.

DEPUIS. Depuis *la création jusqu'à nous,* from the creation to the present time.

DES. Dès *son enfance;* from his infancy; dès *sa source;* from its source.

## EXERCISE.

We (were up) *before* day-light, (in order to) enjoy the  
*se lever ind-6 art. \* pour jouir de*

magnificent spectacle of the rising sun. *After* such great  
*magnifique 2 —m. 1. levant 2 1 de si*

faults, it only remained for us to repair them (as well as  
*faute f. pl. ne rester ind-2 2\* 1 que réparer 2 1 de notre*

we could). *Between* those two mountains is a deep hollow  
*mieux* *profond* 3 *et creux* 2  
road. Many very astonishing events (have taken place)  
*chemin* m 1 \* *de* art. 2 4 3 *il s'est passé* 1  
within these ten years. *From* my earliest infancy I have had an  
*depuis* \* *art. tendre* \*  
abhorrence for falsehood.  
*horreur* *de* art. *mensonge* m.

### PREPOSITIONS DENOTING UNION.

**AVEC.** *Il faut savoir avec qui on se lie*, we ought to know *with* whom we associate.

**DURANT.** *Durant la guerre*, during the war; *durant l'été*, during the summer.

**PENDANT.** *Pendant l'hiver*, in winter; *pendant la paix*, in time of Peace. This preposition denotes a duration more limited than *durant*.

**SUIVANT.** *Je me déciderai suivant les circonstances*, I shall determine *according to* circumstances.

**SELON.** *Le sage se conduit selon les maximes de la raison*, a wise man acts *according to* the dictates of reason.

### EXERCISE.

*With* wit, politeness, and a little (readiness to  
*de* art. *pr.* art. *peu de prévenance*  
oblige) one generally succeeds in the world. We are fit for  
*réussir* *on propre à* art.  
meditation during winter. (In the course of) that siege the com-  
*f* *pendant* *siège* m.  
mandant of the city made some very successful sallies.  
*ind.-3* *de* art. *heureux* 2 *sortie* f. pl. 1.  
*Besides* the exterior advantages of figure and the graces of  
2 1 art. art.  
deportment, she possesses an excellent heart, a correct judgment,  
*maintien* m. *avoir* 2 1 *sain* 2 *jugement* 1  
and a kind heart. Always act *according to* the maxims  
*sensible* 2 1 *se conduire* \* f. pl.  
which I have given you.  
*inculquer* f. pl.

### 152. PREPOSITIONS DENOTING OPPOSITION.

**CONTRE.** *Je plaide contre lui*, I plead against him.

**MALGRÉ.** *Il l'a fait malgré moi*, he has done it *in spite* of me.

**NONOBTANT.** *Nonobstant ce qu'on lui a dit*, *notwith-*  
standing what has been said to him.



## EXERCISE.

We cannot long act (*contrary to*) our own disposition  
*savoir cond-1 agir contre \* caractère m.*  
*notwithstanding* all the pains we take to disguise it, it shews  
*que pour 2 1 se mon-*  
 itself, and betrays us on many occasions. In vain we  
*trahir 2 1 en bien de art.*  
 dissemble; *in spite of* ourselves, we are known at last.  
*voir beau faire on nous connaît à la longue.*

153. PREPOSITIONS DENOTING PRIVATION,  
SEPARATION.

SANS. *Des troupes sans chefs*; troops without commanders.

EXCEPTÉ. *Excepté quelques malheureux*, except some wretches.

HORS. *Tout est perdu hors l'honneur*, all is lost save honour.

HORMIS. *Tous sont entrés hormis mon frère*, they are all come in except my brother.

## EXERCISE.

(*Had it not been for*) your care, I should have been ignorant all  
*sans pl. un*  
 my life. All the philosophers of antiquity, except a few  
*art. très-petit nom-*  
 have held the world to be eternal. All laid down their  
*bre croire \* \* mettre bas \**  
 arms, except two regiments, who preferred (making their way)  
*art. se faire jour*  
 through the enemy. Every thing is absurd and ridiculous in  
*au travers de pl.*  
 that work, except a chapter or two.

## 154. PREPOSITIONS DENOTING THE END.

ENVERS. *Il est charitable envers les pauvres*, he is charitable to the poor.

TOUCHANT. *Il a écrit touchant cette affaire*, he has written respecting that business.

POUR. *Il travaille pour le bien public*, he works for the public good.

## EXERCISE.

I have written to you concerning that business, in which I take  
*à laquelle*

the most lively interest; and as I know your benevolence *to-*  
*vif* 2 1 *connaître* *bienveillance* f.  
 wards the unfortunate, I (make not the least doubt) that you  
*ne douter nullement*  
 will carefully attend) (to it) (not so much) for the satisfac-  
*ne donner tout vos soins* sub-1 2 *y* 1 *moins*  
 tion of obliging me, as for the pleasure of justifying innocence,  
*inf-1* 2 1 *justifier* inf-1 art.  
 and confounding calumny.  
*pr. confondre* art. f.

## 155. PREPOSITIONS DENOTING CAUSE, MEANS.

PAR. *Il l'a fléchi par ses prières*, he has softened him  
 by his prayers.

MOYENNANT. *Il réussira moyennant vos avis*, he will  
 succeed by means of your counsels.

ATTENDU. *Il ne peut partir, attendu les vents con-*  
*traires*, he cannot sail on account of contrary winds.

## EXERCISE.

Is there any man that has never been softened by tears  
*y avoir aucun* sub-1 *fléchir* art.  
 or disarmed by submission? Through the precautions which  
*ni désarmer* art. *que*  
 we took we avoided the rocks of that dangerous coast. Owing  
*ind-3* *ind-3* *écueil* m. pl. 2 *côte* f. 1  
 to the bad state of my father's health, I shall not travel this  
 2 1 *voyager*  
 year.  
*année* f.

156. The prepositions *à*, *de*, *en* are so commonly used  
 in French, that they deserve particular attention.

*À* is generally used to express several relations, *destina-*  
*tion*, *tendency*, *place*, *time*, *situation*, etc. being often a sub-  
 stitute for various other prepositions, *Ex.*—*destination* —*to* :  
*aller à Londres*, to go to London.—*Tendency* —*to*, *toward* :  
*courir à sa perte*, to hasten to one's ruin.—*Aim* —*to*, *for* :  
*aspirer à la gloire*, to aspire to glory.—*Residence* —*at*, *in* :  
*être à Rome*, to be at Rome.—*Time* —*at* : *à midi*, at twelve  
 o'clock.—*Concern* —*on* : *à ce sujet*, on this subject.—*Man-*  
*ner* —*with* : *supplier à mains jointes*, to intreat earnestly.—  
*Means* —*with* : *peindre à l'huile*, to paint in, or with oil ; *bas*  
*à trois fils*, three thread-stockings, that is, with three threads.  
 —*Situation* —*at*, *with* : *être à son aise*, to be at ease.—*Pur-*  
*pose* —*for* : *une table à manger*, a dining table.—*Suitable-*

ness —for, to : *homme à réussir*, a man likely to succeed :—  
desert, *crime à ne pas pardonner*, a crime not to be forgiven,  
etc.

## EXERCISE.

Fathers ! give good counsels, and still better examples  
*de* *encore* 3 *pr. meilleur* 1 2  
 to your children. A good minister only aims at the glory of  
*ne aspirer que à*  
 serving his country well. When we were in the country we de-  
*inf-1* 2 *pays* 3 1 *ind-2* à *campagne* f. con-  
 voted the morning to study, we walked at noon  
*sacrer ind-2* *matinée* f. art. *se promener ind-2* *midi*  
 and, at three or four o'clock, we went a hunting, or fishing.  
*heure ind-2* art. *chasse* f. *pr. art. pêche* f.  
 Michel Angelo has painted (a great deal) in fresco. It is a  
*Michel Ange* *beaucoup* art. *fresque* f. *ce*  
 bed with ivory posts, and mahogany feet. That man with his  
*lit m. colonne d'ivoire pr. pied d'acajou \**  
 gloomy looks and surly behaviour, seems  
*sombre* 2 *regard m. 1 art brusque . 2 maintien m. 1 pr. art. ne semble*  
 fit only to serve as a scarecrow.  
*propre que de \* épouvantail.*

DE is generally used to express *separation, extraction, possession, appurtenance, cause, shift, result*, etc. and sup-  
 plies the place of several prepositions, as—*from* : *je viens*  
*de France*, I come from France ; *d'un bout à l'autre*, from  
 one end to the other.—*Of* : *le palais du roi*, the palace of  
 the king ; *les facultés de l'ame*, the faculties of the soul ;  
*un homme d'esprit*, a man of talent. In a partitive sense—  
*of* : *moitié de, quart de*, etc. the half of, the fourth of, etc. :  
 it is used for PAR—*by* : *il est aimé de tout le monde*, he is  
 beloved by every body ; for—*through, or by*, etc. : *mourir*  
*de faim, de soif*, to die of hunger, of thirst : *on, upon, with* :  
*vivre de fruits*, to live upon fruit.—*On account of, or for* :  
*sauter de joie*, to leap for joy.

## EXERCISE.

I come from London, where I have spent a week very agreeably.  
*où passé huit jours*  
 From one end of the horizon to the other, the sky was covered  
*bout m. m. ciel m. ind-2*  
 with thick black clouds. The marble of Paros is not  
*épais* 2 *et noir* 3 *nuage m. pl. 1.*



finer than that which we get from Carrara. Montaigne, Mad. de  
 72 *qui nous vient Carrare.*  
 Sévigné, and la Fontaine, were writers of truly original ge-  
 ind-2 de art. *écrivain un 2 3 1*  
 nius. One half of the terrestrial globe is covered with water  
*moitié f. terrestre 2 globe m. 1*  
 and above a (third part) of the rest is uninhabited, either through  
*plus de tiers m. inhabité ou par*  
 extreme heat, or through excessive cold. In that happy  
*un 2 chaleur f. 1 un = 2 froid m. 1.*  
 retreat, we lived on the milk of our flocks, and the delicious  
*asile m. ind-2 brebis pr. 2*  
 fruits of our orchards.  
 1 *verger m pl.*

EN serves to mark the relations of time, place, situation, etc. and is variously expressed, as *c'était en hiver*, it was during winter; *être en Angleterre*, to be in England; *aller en Italie*, to go into Italy; *elle est en bonne santé*, she is in good health; *il vaut mieux être en paix, qu'en guerre*, it is better to be at peace than at war; *il l'a fait en haine de lui*, he did it out of hatred to him, etc.

## EXERCISE.

He had for a (long while) lived in France; the troubles  
 3 \* *depuis 1 \* long-temps 2 vivre ind-2*  
 which agitated that fine kingdom obliged him to retire to Swit-  
 ind-4 *royaume m. ind-4 de se retirer Suisse*  
 zerland, whence he soon after went to Italy. We were  
*d'où 3 1 2 se rendre ind-4 ind-2*  
 at peace, and enjoyed all its blessings, when ambi-  
 pron. *goûter ind-2 en art. charme m. art.*  
 tion kindled again the flames of war, and forced us to put  
*rallumer ind-3 feu s. art. ind-3 de mettre*  
 our frontiers in a state of defence. The savage is almost con-  
*frontière f. pl. \* presque tou-*  
 tinually at war; he cannot remain at rest. He has acted, on  
*jours pouvoir en repos dans*  
 this occasion, like a great man.  
*en*

## CHAPTER VII.

## OF THE ADVERB.

157. The *adverb* is a word which is generally placed after the verb to express *where*, *when*, and *how* the action

is or was done. *Vous chantez bien*, you sing well ; *il partira demain*, he will set out to-morrow, etc. It is often also joined to an adjective, coupled with *être* ; *il est vraiment digne d'amitié*, he is truly deserving of friendship.

REMARK. There are adjectives which are sometimes used as adverbs, as, *il chante juste*, he sings right ; *elle chante faux*, she sings out of tune ; *ils ne voient pas clair*, they do not see clear ; *cette fleur sent bon*, this flower has a pleasant smell, etc. The adjectives, *juste*, *faux*, *clair* and *bon*, here supply the place of adverbs.

Adverbs are of different kinds.

The most numerous are those which express manner, and are formed from adjectives, in the following manner.

158. When the adjective ends, in the masculine, with a vowel, the adverb is formed by adding *ment* : as, *modestement*, modestly ; *poli-ment*, politely ; *ingénu-ment*, ingenuously, etc.

EXCEPTIONS. *Impuni* makes *impunément*, and *traître*, *traîtreusement*.

The following six take *é* close before *-ment*, instead of the *e* mute which is in the adjective.

aveuglement	blindly	conformément	conformably
incommodément	incommodiously	énormément	enormously
incommodément	incommodiously	opiniâtrément	obstinately

159. When the adjective ends with a consonant, in the masculine, the adverb is formed from the feminine termination, by adding *ment* ; as, *grand*, *grandement*, greatly, *franc*, *franchement*, frankly ; *naïf*, *naïvement*, artlessly, etc.

Observe that the adverbs,

follement	foolishly	bellement	softly
mollement	effeminately	nouvellement	newly

Are to be considered as coming from the adjectives *fol*, *mol*, *bel*, *nouvel*, and accordingly belong to the foregoing rule.

EXCEPTIONS. *Gentil*, makes *gentiment*, prettily.

The following eighth adverbs,

communément	commonly	importunément	importunately
confusément	confusedly	obscurément	obscurely
diffusément	diffusedly	précisément	precisely
expressément	expressly	profondément	deeply

take before *ment* the *é* close instead of the *e* mute, which is in the feminine of the adjectives, from which they are derived.

REM. The six following adverbs are not derived from adjectives.

comment	how	profusément	lavishly
incessamment	presently	nuitamment	by night
notamment	especially	sciemment	knowingly

Adjectives ending in *ant*, *ent*, form their adverbs by changing them into *-mment*, as *consta-nt*, *consta-mment*, constantly; *éloque-nt*, *éloque-mment*. Except *lent* and *présent*, the only two of this class, that follow the 159th rule, and make *lentement*, *présentement*.

160. Most adverbs denoting manner, and a few others, have the three degrees of comparison, as *profondément*, *aussi*, *plus*, or *moins profondément*, for *bien*, or *très-profondément*, and *le plus profondément*.

The following degrees of comparison are irregular.

Positive.	Comparative	Superlative.
bien <i>well</i>	mieux <i>better</i>	le mieux <i>the best</i>
mal <i>bad</i>	pis <i>worse</i>	le pis <i>the worst</i>
peu <i>little</i>	moins <i>less</i>	le moins <i>the least</i>

#### EXERCISE.

Bourdaloue and Masillon have both spoken very eloquently  
*l'un et l'autre*

on evangelical truths; but the former has principally (pro-  
*évangélique* 2 art. 1 *se pro-*

posed to himself) to convince the mind; the latter has generally  
*poser* ind-4 *de convaincre*

had in view to touch the heart. Several of la Bruyère's cha-  
*en vue de* art 2 1

racters are as finely drawn as they are delicately expressed. Buf-  
*finement tracé* \* \*

fon is one of the best writers of the last century; he thinks deeply,  
2 *siècle* m. 1.

describes forcibly, and expresses himself (with dignity). Cor-  
*fortement,* *noblement*

neille and Racine are the two best French tragic poets; the pieces  
*tragique* 2 1 f

of the former are strongly but incorrectly written; those of the lat-  
2 3 1

ter are more regularly beautiful, more purely expressed, and more  
*beau*

delicately conceived.  
*pensé*



161. There are likewise various other sorts of adverbs :

Affirmation, as <i>certes</i> , certainly ; <i>oui</i> , yes.	
Of {	Consent, .. <i>soit</i> . be it so ; <i>volontiers</i> , willingly.
	Doubt, .. <i>peut-être que</i> , perhaps.
	Denial, .. <i>non ne, ne-pas, ne-point</i> , no, not.
	Order, .. <i>premierement</i> , first : <i>secondement</i> , 2dly, etc.
	or .. <i>D'abord</i> , at first ; <i>ensuite</i> , <i>après</i> , afterwards.
Rank. .. <i>Avant, auparavant</i> , before.	

## EXERCISE.

*Certainly*, either I am mistaken, or the business passed (in  
*ou se tromper se passer ind-4*  
that manner). Do you think that he listens *willingly* to this pro-  
*ainsi penser écouter \**  
posal ? Have you ever read in Racine the famous scene of Phœdra's  
*f. Phèdre 2*  
delirium ? Yes, I have read it, and I own it is one of the  
*art. délire m. 1 lue la avouer que ce*  
finest of the French theatre. *Perhaps* you will discover, on a se-  
*2 m. 1 dans*  
perusal of la Fontaine's fables, beauties which you  
*lecture f. 2 art. 1 de art. f. pl. que*  
have not perceived at first Will you have some ? No. Will  
*- aperçues d'abord 2 1 \* en 1 3*  
you *not* have some ? The man who (is willing) to do good is  
*4 1 5 \* en 2 vouloir \* \* art. bien m.*  
*not* stopped by any obstacle. I will pay him what I owe,  
*arrêté aucun - lui ce que lui*  
but *not* all at once.  
*non pas à art. fois f.*

162. Of—place, or distance,  
*Où*, where ; *ici*, here ; *là*, there.

*Deçà*, on this side ; *de là*, on that side ; *partout*, every  
where.

*Près*, *proche*, near, nigh ; *loin*, far, etc.

## EXERCISE.

We ought *first* to avoid doing evil ; *afterwards* we ought  
*falloir ind-1 \* de inf-1 art. \**  
to do good. Read books of instruction *first*, and *afterwards*  
*\* art. 1 art. 3 4 2*  
you may proceed to those of entertainment. If you will (go  
*\* passer ind-7 72 agrément vouloir s'en*  
away), settle *first* what is to be done. The painter had  
*aller régler auparavant ce que falloir \* \* inf-1*

(brought together) in the same picture, several different objects :  
*rassembler un tableau 2 1*

here, a troop of Bacchantes; there, a troop of young people; here,  
*Bacchante gens*

a sacrifice; there, a disputation of philosophers. Sesostris carried  
*dispute pousser*

his conquests farther than Alexander did afterwards. Call  
*ind-4 conquête ne ind-4 depuis passer*

upon your cousin; he lives near here. I cannot see that, if I  
*chez loger 2 ici 1 savoir cond-1*

am not near it. When he knew where he was, he be-  
*ind-1 auprès \* quand savoir ind-3 ind-2 com-*

gan to fear the consequence of his imprudence. Contem-  
*mencer ind-3 à suite*

plate (at a distance) lofty mountains, if you wish to behold  
*de loin art. haut f. vouloir \* découvrir*

prospects ever varied and ever new.  
*de art. site m.*

263. Some express the present, as, *maintenant*, now; *à présent*, at present; *actuellement*, this moment, etc.

—the past, as, *hier*, yesterday; *avant-hier*, the day before yesterday; *autrefois*, formerly, etc.

—the future, as, *demain*, to-morrow, *après-demain*, the day after to-morrow, etc.

—indeterminate time, as, *souvent*, often; *d'ordinaire*, generally; *quelquefois*, sometimes; *matin*, early; *tôt*; soon; *tard*, late, etc.

#### EXERCISE.

I have finished the work you prescribed me; what do you  
*achever que ordonner ind-6 que*

wish me to do now? Formerly, education was neglected,  
*vouloir que je \* subj-1*

it is now (very much) attended to; it is (to be hoped) that  
*on \* 4 beaucoup 3 s'occuper 2 en 1 falloir espérer*

new views will be adopted soon. They grieved  
*on de 3 4 adopter ind-7 1 2 on s'affliger ind-8*

(at it) yesterday; now, they laugh (at it); to-morrow, it will  
*en 1 aujourd'hui rire 2 en 1 on 2 \**

no longer (be thought) of. It is one of those accidents which  
*ne plus 3 penser ind-7 2 y 1 c'est*

it is sometimes impossible to avoid. The evening air incommodes  
*de serein m. ind-4*

me (very much); I shall not (in future) walk so late. Rude  
*désormais se promener mal-*

and coarse criticism generally (does greater injury)  
*honnête* 2 *grossier* 3 *un* f. 1. *nuire plus*  
 to the person who indulges himself in it, than to him who is  
*se permettre* 2 \* *la* 1 *celle* 2  
 the object (of it.)  
 3 *en* 1

164. Some express quantity ; as, *peu*, little, *assez*, enough ; *trop*, too much ; *beaucoup*, much, very much ; *tant*, so much, etc. See rule 105.

165. Others express comparison ; as, *plus*, more ; *moins*, less ; *aussi*, also ; *autant*, as much, etc.

## EXERCISE.

There are many people who have pretensions ; but very few  
*y avoir beaucoup de* \* \* *à*  
 who have such as are well founded. To embellish a subject  
*en sub-1* \* \* \* \* *de fondé* f. pl. \* 2 3  
 too much, frequently betrays a want of judgment and taste. One  
 1 *souvent être faite*  
 very often experiences disgust in the midst of the most riotous  
*trouver art. ennui à* *bruyant* 2  
 pleasures. She is a giddy and thoughtless woman, who speaks  
 1 *ce léger* 2 *inconséquent* 2 1  
 much and reflects little. She has so much kindness in her, that it  
*réfléchir* *de bonté* \* \*  
 is impossible not to love her. These stuffs are beautiful ; conse-  
*de ne pas* *étouffé* f. *aussi*  
 quently are dear. This book has merit ; but there are  
*elles coûter cher.* *du* *yen avoir*  
 others as good. If he has done that, I can do (as much). She  
 \* *de* *en* *autant*  
 is six years younger than her brother. Nobody is more inte-  
*avoir* *de moins* *ne*  
 rested than you are (in the success) of the affair. You do  
 \* *à ce que* 1 *réussir* subj-1 3 \* 2  
 not offer enough for this garden ; give something more. The more  
*offrir* *de* 1  
 ignorant we are, the less we (believe ourselves, so.  
 4 *on* 2 3 \* *croire l'être*



## CHAPTER VIII.

## OF CONJUNCTIONS.

166. The conjunction is a word which serves to connect words or sentences, as, *Il pleure et rit en même temps*, he cries and laughs at the same time ; the word *et* unites the first sentence, *il pleure*, with the second, *il rit*. Likewise in *Pierre et Paul rient*, Peter and Paul laugh ; the word *et* unites these two sentences into one, *Pierre rit* and *Paul rit*.

167. There are different kinds of conjunctions.

Conjunctions are of different kinds, and serve to different purposes.

1st. To unite two sentences or two words, the same affirmation, or under the same negation, *et* is used for the affirmation, and *ni*, neither, nor, for the negation.

2ndly. To denote an alternative, or distinction, *ou* either, or ; *soit que*, whether, or ; *tantôt*, sometimes, etc.

3rdly. To restrict an idea ; *sinon*, but, except ; *quoique*, *encore que*, though, although ; *à moins que*, unless, till.

## EXERCISE.

Gold *and* silver are metals less useful than iron. To  
art. art. de art. art.

listen with joy to a slanderer, *and* to applaud him, is to cherish  
\* *médissant* \* *lui c'est \* réchauffer*  
the serpent who stings, that he may sting more effectually. I  
*piquer afin que* *plus sûrement.*

like neither flatterers nor the wicked, Those who have never  
*ne flatteur pl.* suffered, know nothing ; they know neither good nor  
*savoir ne connaître art. bien pl.*

evil. You may choose either a happy mediocrity, or a  
art. *mal pl.* *avoir à choisir de f. de*  
sphere more elevated, but exposed to many dangers. He is an  
*f. bien de art. ce*

inconsistent man ; he is sometimes of one opinion, and sometimes  
*inconséquent 2 1 tantôt avis*  
as another. I have (nothing more) to say to you, only that I  
*ne autre choose sinon que*

will have it so. I shall not yet pass to the perusal of the  
*vouloir 2 \* le 1 \* encore lecture f.*

authors of the second class, unless you advise me to it,  
*ordre m. ne conseiller sub-1 \**

5thly. To express a condition ; *si*, if ; *sinon que*, except that : *pourvu que*, save that, *à condition que*, on condition that.

7thly. To explain : *savoir, c'est-à-dire*, viz. that is to say ; *comme*, as.

The serpent bites; it is only a bite; but from this bite  
*de ne que morsure*  
 venom communicates itself to the whole body; the slanderer  
*venin*  
 speaks; it is but a word; but this word resounds every  
*ce ne que parole f. retentir*  
 where. (That is) certainly a superb picture; nevertheless, there  
*voilà tableau*  
 is some incorrectness in the design. Although Homer, according  
*in correction pl. dessin*  
 to Horace, slumbers (at times), he is nevertheless the  
*sommeiller sub-1 quelques fois ce n'en est pas moins*  
 first of all poets. You will succeed, provided you act with  
*art. réussir pourvu que agir sub-1*  
 vigour. We have within us two faculties seldom united, viz :  
*en art.*  
 imagination and judgment.  
*art.*

9thly. To express augmentation, *d'ailleurs*, besides, furthermore.

For diminution, *au moins, du moins, pour le moins, at least.*

10thly. To express the cause, or the reason of a thing ; *car*, for ; *comme*, as ; *parce que*, because ; *puisque*, since ; *pour que*, that, in order that, etc.

The most beautiful flowers last but a moment: thus, human  
*ne durer que* 2

life passes away. The (greatest part) of mankind have, *like*  
 art. 3 1 \* *plupart f.* art. *homme pl.*  
 plants, hidden qualities, which chance discovers.  
 art. *caché 2 de art. propriété f. 1* art. *hasard faire découvrir.*  
 Mad. de Sévigné's letters are models of elegance, simpli-  
 2 art. f. 1 *de art.* pr.  
 city, and taste; *besides*, they are replete with interesting anecdotes.  
 pr. *plein de 2 f. 1.*  
 Nothing is more entertaining than history; *besides*, nothing is  
 \* *de amusant art.* \*  
 more instructive. Circumstances make us known to others,  
*de art. occasion pl. faire connaître*  
 and still more to ourselves. I shall always advise you to take  
*encore conseiller de*  
 the ancients as your guide, *at least*, leave but  
*pour \* ne s'écarter que rarement de*  
 seldom the way which they have traced for you. We must, *at*  
*route f. que tracée \* \* falloir,*  
*least*, know the general principles of a language, before (we take  
 2 1 *langue f. de se*  
 upon ourselves) to teach it. Certain people hate grandeur,  
*mêler de \* enseigner f. gens art.*  
*because it lowers and humiliates them, and makes*  
*les rabaisser pron. que elle 2*  
 them feel the privation of the advantages which they love.  
*leur 1 bien pl.*

11thly. To draw a conclusion or inference; *or*, now; *donc*, then; *par conséquent*, consequently; *c'est pourquoi*, therefore.

12thly. To express a circumstance; *quand*, *lorsque*, when; *pendant que*, *tandis que*, etc. whilst, while; *tant que*, as long as; *depuis que*, ever since; *avant que*, before; *dès que*, *aussitôt que*, *d'abord que*, as soon as; *enfin*, in fine, finally, to conclude, etc.

13thly. To express a transition; *car*, for; *en effet*, indeed, in effect; *au reste*, besides, otherwise; *à propos*, now I think of it; *après tout*, after all.

## EXERCISE.

We ought to love what is amiable; *now*, virtue is ami-  
 \* *falloir ind-1 \* ce qui art.*  
 able; *therefore* we ought to love virtue. We ought to practise  
 \* \* art. \* *falloir \**  
 what the gospel commands us; *now* it commands us, not only  
*que évangile m. 2 1 non*



to forgive our enemies, but also to love them. Despréaux was  
*de pardonner à* *encore de*

extremely particular in not coming late, when he was  
*de la plus grande exactitude* *inf-1 trop* *ind-2*

invited to dinner; he said that all the faults of those who (keep  
*ind-2* *défaut* *se*

others waiting) present themselves to those who wait for them.  
*faire attendre* *attendre \**

The pride which possesses us, visible as it is, escapes our eyes.  
*posséder tout que à*

while it manifests itself to the eyes of the public, and displeases  
*choquer*

every one. After we had examined that singular effect, we  
*art. esprit pl.* *ind-5* *2* *1*

(inquired into) its causes. We had hardly done, when he came  
*rechercher ind-3 en art.* *ind-2* *finir que entrer*

in. None but an Englishman can (be a judge of) Shak-  
*\* il n'y a que* *qui subj-1* *juger de*

speare: for, what foreigner is sufficiently versed in the English

language to discover the sublime beauties of that author?

*langue f. pour*

168. The conjunction *que* is always placed between two ideas, and serves to connect them, so as to form of the two one preposition, as *je crois que vous vous trompez*, I think you are deceived. The conjugation *that* is almost always understood in English, whereas *que* is not only always expressed in French, but repeated before each member of the preposition. *Je crois que vous vous trompez et que vous ne réussirez pas*, I think you are mistaken, and that you will not succeed.

The frequent use of *que*, under several forms, and the government of conjunctions in general, form an important chapter of the Syntax, No. 388, which must be read attentively.

## EXERCISE.

(As long as I live), this image will be before my eyes  
*tout ma vie* *—f.* *peint*

and if ever the gods permit me to reign, I shall not forget  
*faire \**

after so terrible an example, that a king (is not worthy) to go-  
*n'est digne de com-*

vern (nor) happy in his power (but in proportion as) he  
*mander et n'est* *puissance f.* *qu'autant que*

subjects it to reason. I am very glad to see that you do not  
*soumettre* art: *de* \*  
 love flattery, and *that* one (runs no risk) in speaking to you with  
 art. *ne hasarder rien à* inf-l \*  
 sincerity.

---

## CHAPTER IX.

### OF INTERJECTIONS.

169. Interjections are words which serve to express the sudden emotion of the soul. The only point to be attended to is not to place them between words which custom has made inseparable. There are interjections for every feeling, or passion, viz :—

Of {	<i>pain</i>	ahi ! aïe ! ouf ! ah !
	<i>grief</i>	hélas ! mon Dieu, etc.
	<i>fear</i>	ha ! hé !
	<i>joy</i>	ah ! bon, bon ! o !
	<i>aversion</i>	fi ! fi donc ! oh, oh !
	<i>disgust</i>	pouah, pouah !
	<i>indignation</i>	foin de
	<i>imprecation</i>	peste de, la peste de
	<i>disbelief</i>	chansons, tarare
	<i>surprise</i>	ouais
	<i>astonishment</i>	oh ! bon Dieu ! miséricorde ! peste !
	<i>warning</i>	gare ! hem ! holà, ho !
	<i>checking</i>	tout beau ! holà.
	<i>encouraging</i>	alerte ! allons ! ça, courage !
	<i>applauding</i>	bravo, vivat !
	<i>encoring</i>	bis, bis
	<i>calling</i>	hola ! ho ! hem !
	<i>derision</i>	oh ! ch ! zest ! oh ! oh ! oh !
	<i>silence</i>	chut ! paix ! st.

## PART II.

---

### SYNTAX,

OR

### GRAMMATICAL CONSTRUCTION

OF

### WORDS IN FRENCH.

---

#### CHAPTER I.

##### § I.

#### OF THE SUBSTANTIVE OR NOUN.

The substantive has already been considered as to its individual nature, that is to say, its gender and number ; its functions in a sentence are now to be considered.

The noun is either the subject of the verb, or the governing word ; or it is governed by the verb, or what is called the regimen.

#### 170. EXPLANATION OF THE TERMS REGIMEN DIRECT, REGIMEN INDIRECT, OR CASES.

In *le père aime ses enfants*, the father loves his children ; *le père* is the subject, or governing word, or nominative case : and *enfants* is the governed word, or regimen, or accusative case. *Ses enfants* is also called a direct case, because there is no preposition intervening between it and the verb *aime*.

In *les enfants obéissent au père*, the children obey to the father ; *les enfants* is the subject, and *au père*, is the governed noun or regimen ; and the regimen is called indirect because it has a preposition (*à*) before it. It is also called the dative case.



In *le père envoie un présent à ses enfants*, the father sends presents to his children ; *les enfants reçoivent une lettre de leur père*, the children receive a letter from their father, *le père*, *les enfants*, are subjects, *un présent*, *une lettre* are objects, or accusative or direct cases, *à ses enfants*, *de leur père* are indirect cases because governed by a preposition, the former being what is called the dative, and the latter, the ablative case.

In the construction of a sentence two things are to be considered : 1st. ORDER, or arrangement. 2nd. GOVERNMENT, or cases.

## OF ORDER.

171. Order is invariable, 1st. the subject, whether the verb be affirmative or interrogative.

le père aime	le père aime-t-il ?
le père n'aime pas	le père n'aime-t-il pas

2ndly. The verb ; 3rdly, the direct case or object ; 4thly, the indirect case, or dative, or genitive or ablative.

It need hardly be told that if there is not a direct case, the indirect comes next to the verb, *les enfants obéissent au père*.

A deviation from this order or arrangement is called an INVERSION. See *Inversion*.

## EXERCISE.

My mother received two letters this morning, which (have <i>recevoir</i> ind-4	given) her * much pain.	Did not the soldiers resist the
ind-4 2 <i>lui</i> 1 <i>bien de la peine</i>		<i>résister à</i> ind 4
commands of their officers ?	Send this game to Mr. L. Have	
<i>ordre</i>	<i>Envoyer</i>	
you not thought of your sisters ?	My uncle (has just) bought a	
<i>penser à</i>	<i>venir de</i> †	
beautiful house in Paris.	Has the nurse maid given (any thing to	
<i>à</i>	<i>bonne à manger</i>	

\* Personal pronouns *me*, *te*, *nous*, *vous*, *lui*, *leur*, in the dative case, are placed before the verb, as is explained in the article *Pronoun Personal* 61. What is said here, must, in fact, be understood solely of *nouns substantives*.

† See examples on Difficulties, Chapter XIX, to which this figure refers. The learner must bear in mind that the figures which he will occasionally meet with in the Exercises refer to the general series of rules.

eat) to these poor children? Will not James send these  
 \*  
 books to his cousin when he has read them?  
*envoyer ind-7*  
*avoir ind-7*

## GOVERNMENT OR CASES.

172. By government, is meant the case in which a noun is to be put after the verb, that is, whether it will be direct or accusative, indirect or dative, genitive or ablative, or, to speak more plainly, whether that noun will be preceded by *à* or *de*.

173. DIFFERENCE BETWEEN THE TWO LANGUAGES  
AS TO THE GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

To those who are acquainted with the Latin language, this will present little or no difficulty, accustomed as they are to the proper distinction of cases; but to those who are not, and to female learners principally, the distinction is not obviously clear. As in learning the French language, much of the task consists in turning English into French; and also, as, when endeavouring to speak, people first think in English, and then translate, a very natural propensity leads them to translate literally, thereby expressing themselves in a way little in accordance with the peculiar construction of the French language. We cannot devise a more efficacious method to guard them from such erroneous proceeding, than by showing the different cases used in the one or the other language, after the corresponding verb.

## EXAMPLES.

penser <i>à</i> une chose	<i>to think of a thing</i>
obéir <i>à</i> la loi	<i>to obey the law</i>
dépendre <i>de</i> son père	<i>to be dependant on one's father</i>
mourir <i>de</i> peur	<i>to die with fear</i>
répondre <i>à</i> une question	<i>to answer a question</i>
jouir <i>de</i> sa fortune	<i>to enjoy one's fortune</i>
se réjouir <i>d'</i> une chose	<i>to rejoice at a thing</i>
plaire <i>à</i> ses amis	<i>to please one's friends</i>
se ressouvenir <i>d'</i> un accident	<i>to remember an accident</i>
jouer <i>du</i> violon	<i>to play on the violin</i>
écouter un avis	<i>to listen to an advice</i>

The list of the instances in which the two languages differ, in respect to the case of the governed words, might easily be extended to several pages, but the few examples here given, must be sufficient to awake the attention and carefulness of

the learner, and to make him sensible of the necessity of mastering this point.

A few more remarks may tend to impress still deeper in his mind the necessity of attending to it.

174. NECESSITY OF ATTENDING TO THE GOVERNMENT,  
WITH REGARD TO THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Sometimes, and even frequently, verbs govern a relative pronoun representing some noun antecedently expressed, and such pronoun must be put in the proper case, according to the preposition which would be placed before the noun. For instance, to translate "such is the law *which* you have not obeyed," *telle est la loi QUE vous n'avez pas obéi*, would be wrong, it must be *à LAQUELLE*, because we have seen that *obéir* requires the dative, or the preposition *à*. Again, to say *je vous donne de bons avis AUXQUELS vous n'écoutez pas*, would be literal and wrong, because, as we have seen also, *écouter* is active in French, that is, requires no preposition.

EXERCISE.

- I repent my idleness. Do you want this pen? I was  
*se repentir de* *Avoir besoin de* *penser*  
 thinking of my poor brother. He did not discharge his duty  
*à ind-2* *s'acquitter de, ind-4* *devoir m.*  
 to my satisfaction. I advise you to go and change your shoes.  
*conseiller 2 1 d'aller \* changer de \**  
 Have we not mistaken the road? We are very grateful for your  
*se tromper de ind-4 \** *être reconnaissant de*  
 kindness. You have gone too near the river. Are you not afraid  
*s'approcher de ind-4* *craindre*  
 of that cruel man? We did not expect such an answer. If you  
*\* 2 1 s'attendre à ind-2 2 1 3*  
 come to-night we will agree about terms. I am not fond of  
*ce soir convenir de nos condition aimer \**  
 music. I do not know why, but your brother left the  
*art. savoir* *sortir de ind-3*  
 room very abruptly. Do not mind his threats.\*  
*faire attention à*

---

\* The same difficulty occurs with regard to the preposition used before the infinitive in French. See *infinitive*, 394, 397.



## 175. KING'S PALACE, ETC. ETC.

This form of the genitive case, or of the casemarking possession, is rendered in French in an inverted manner, as if it were *the palace of the king*, *le palais du roi*.

## 176. OF COMPOUND WORDS.

## SILK-STOCKINGS, DINING-ROOM, ETC. ETC.

These are a sort of compound word of which the order is likewise inverted in French. *Bas de soie, salle à manger*.

Here again also, two different prepositions are used (*à, de*) the choice of which depends upon the nature of the expression.

*De* is used when *made of, composed of, coming from, of the, belonging to*, can be understood.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>Silk stockings, i.e. stocking made of silk.</i>	}	Bas de soie.
<i>Burgundy wine, i.e. wine coming from Burgundy.</i>		Vin de Bourgogne.
<i>Chambermaid, i.e. maid of the chamber.</i>	}	Femme de chambre
<i>Back door, i.e. the door of the back of the house.</i>		Porte de derrière
<i>Garden seat, i.e. seat belonging to the garden.</i>	}	Banc du jardin.

*A* is used when *for the purpose of, by means of, with*, may be understood.

## EXAMPLES.

moulin à vent	wind-mill i. e. mill going by wind
moulin à papier	paper-mill i. e. mill for the purpose of making paper
filles aux yeux bleus	blue eyed girl i. e. girl with blue eyes.

## EXERCISE.

My father's house.	The mayor's authority.	Shall you go to
père maison	maire	= aller
Mrs. B's party?	He has bought a gold box.	Go out at the
soirée f.	acheté or boîte f.	sortir par
front door.	What is	that long eared animal? Send
devant porte	Qu'est-ce que c'est que	longues oreilles——
me the letter box.	Where is the oil bottle?	Give me a wine glass,
	huile	verre
and a tea spoon.	Did you observe	that man with the
thé cuiller f.	remarquer ind-4	le



## EXERCISE.

I am a Frenchman and a merchant; after having (been at) the  
*négociant* *inf-1* *parcouru*  
 most famous (trading towns) in the Levant, my commercial con-  
 = *échelle* f. pl. *de* — m. *les affaires de mon*  
 cerns have brought me here. I am an unhappy Frenchman  
*commerce* *conduire*

where, a striking example of the vicissitudes of fortune,  
 \* *mémorable* 2 1 ——— art.

seek an asylum where I may end my days in peace. He was a  
*chercher* *asile* m. *puisse finir* *Ce*

man of uncommon probity and of tried virtue; (as a)  
*un rare* 2 f. 1 *un éprouvé* 2 1 *pour*

reward for the services he had rendered to the church  
*le récompenser de* *que* *ind-2* m. pl. *église*

and state, the king has made him a bishop. Neoptolemus  
*pr. art.* *évêque* *Néoptolème*

had hardly told me that he was a Greek, when I (cried out)  
*eut à peine dit* *que* *s'écrier* *ind-3*

O! enchanting words, after so many years of silence and  
*doux* *parole* f. pl. *de*

unceasing pain, O my son, what misfortune, what storm,  
*sans consolation* 2 pr. 1 *malheur* m. *tempête*

or rather, what propitious wind has brought you hither to end  
 f. *plutôt* *favorable* 2 1 *conduire* *ind-4* *pour*

my woes? He replied, I am of the Island of Scyros, I  
*mal* m. pl. *répondre* *ind-3* *île*

am returning thither; (I am said) (to be) the son of Achilles.  
*retourner* *ind-1* *y* *en dit* *que* *ind-1*

What a noise you make! What a mistake! A letter to Lord L.

We read the account of his death, an event full of interest. He  
*récit*

has not yet returned, a most unaccountable thing. He is modest  
*être* *revenir* *fort* *extraordinaire* 2 *chose* 1

a rare quality among poets. He is a very rich man.

2 1 *chez les* \*

178. The English make use of *a* or *an*, before nouns of measure, weight, and purchase, as: *wheat is sold for a crown a bushel; butter sells for sixpence a pound; wine sold yesterday for forty crowns a hogshead, it is more than a groat a bottle.* The French make use of the article *le*, *la*, as: *le blé se vend un écu le boisseau; le beurre se vend six sous la livre; le vin se vendit hier quarante écus le muid, c'est plus de quatre sous la bouteille.*



179. When speaking of *time*, *a* or *an* is expressed in French by the preposition *par*, as *so much a week*, *tant par semaine*. A head is also rendered *par tête*, but *a piece* is rendered by *la piece*; a man, *par homme* or *chacun*.

## EXERCISE.

Corn sells for eight shillings a bushel, veal and  
 art. *blé m. se vendre* \* *boisseau art. veau art.*  
 mutton cost ten pence a pound. This lace is sold at half a guinea  
*mouton coûter livre f. se vendre\* 2 1 3*  
 an ell. The best French wines are sold at ten shillings per  
*de France 2 1 se vendre \**  
 bottle. I see him twice a year. How much do you give  
*voir 2 1 deux fois combien donner 2*  
 him a day. She comes twice a week. We had an excellent  
*lui 1 faire ind-4*  
 dinner at five shillings a head. What beautiful peaches, how much  
*pêche f.*  
 do they cost a piece?

## OF THE ARTICLE DEFINITE.

180. The definite article is used in French, (*but omitted in English*) before substantives spoken of in a general sense; that is before *names of species, virtues, passions, sciences, metals, etc., etc.*, taken in the abstract.

## EXAMPLES.

*l'homme se repaît trop souvent man too often feeds on vain fancies*  
*de chimères*  
*l'or est un métal précieux gold is a precious metal*  
*évitons la paresse let us avoid idleness*

Before nouns specified by an adjective or some particular and individual circumstance.

## EXAMPLES.

*les hommes à imagination sont men of imagination are ever un-*  
*toujours malheureux happy*  
*l'homme dont vous parlez est the man of whom you speak is well*  
*instruit informed*  
*voici la maison de mon père this is my father's house*

181. It is also used before adjectives used substantively.

## EXAMPLES.

*le riche ne donne pas toujours rich men do not always give*  
*j'aime le vert I am fond of green*

After *tout* meaning *every*.

## EXAMPLES.

*tout le monde le voit every body sees it*  
*toute la ville était en l'air the whole town was in a bustle*

## EXERCISE.

1. The moment *elegance*, the most visible image of fine *taste*, appears, it is universally admired: *men* differ respecting the other constituent parts of \* *beauty*, but they all unite without hesitation in acknowledging the power of *elegance*.

2. *Men of superior genius* 2, while 1 they \* see 3 the rest of mankind painfully \* struggling to comprehend obvious 2 truths 1, penetrate themselves \* through \* the most remote 2 consequences 1, like lightning through a track that cannot be measured.

3. *The man who lives* under an habitual 2 sense 1 of the divine 2 presence 1, preserves a perpetual cheerfulness of temper, and enjoys every moment, the satisfaction of thinking himself \* in company with the dearest and best of friends.

4. Come and show me your sister's *room* for I cannot find it.

5. Yellow does not suit you at all.

6. When he returned, he found the whole school in an uproar.

(1.) The moment, *du moment que*; fine, *délicat*; appears, *se montrer*; is, *elle est*; respecting, *sur*; constituent, (*which constitute*); hesitation, *hésiter*; in, *pour*.

(2.) While, *tandis que*; struggling, *se tourmenter*; obvious, *qui s'offrent*; *d'elle-mêmes*; penetrate, *ils pénètrent en un instant*; lightning, *foudre*, f.; through, *traverse*; track, *espace*; that, *qu'on*; be measured, *mesurer*.

(3.) Under, *dans*; sense, *conviction*; preserves, *conserver*; perpetual, *constant*; cheerfulness, *gaieté*; temper, *caractère*; enjoys, *jouir de*; of thinking, *se croire*; in, *dans*; art.; with, *de*.

(4.) Come and show, *venir montrer*; I cannot, *je ne saurais*.

(5.) Yellow, *jaune*; to suit, *convenir*; at all, *du tout*.

(6.) To return, *revenir*, ind-3; to find, *trouver*, ind-3; in an uproar, *dans la confusion*.

182. The article is put before proper names of countries, provinces, islands, regions, rivers, winds, and mountains.\*

---

\* In speaking of *monts*, we say: *le Parnasse*, or *le Mont Parnasse*; *le Vésuve*, or *le Mont Vésuve*; *l'Etna*, or *le Mont Etna*; *les Pyrénées*, or *les Monts Pyrénées*. But in speaking of *Montagnes*, we say: *les Alpes*, or *les Montagnes des Alpes*, *la Castellane*, or *la Montagne de la Castellane*.

In speaking of some *rivières*, we say: *la rivière de Seine*, *la rivière de Saône*, *la rivière de Lille*, of others we say simply *la Loire*, *la Tamise*, *la Durance*, etc.

In speaking of *fleuves*, we say: *le fleuve du Rhône*, *le fleuve du Tage*, but of others simply *le Volga*, *le Danube*, etc.

Of *Mers*, we say also: *la Mer Méditerranée*, *la Mer Noire*, *la Mer Blanche*, *la Mer Rouge*, etc.

These are peculiarities which have nothing to do with grammar, but which chiefly depend upon use and custom.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>la France a les Pyrénées et la Méditerranée au sud, la Suisse et la Savoie à l'est, les Pays-Bas au nord, et l'océan à l'ouest</i>	<i>France is bounded on the south by the Pyrenees and the Mediterranean, on the east by Switzerland and Savoy, on the north by the Netherlands, and on the west by the ocean</i>
<i>le Japon, la Chine, le Mexique, la Martinique, le Mogol, l'Inde</i>	<i>Japan, China, Mexico, Martinique, Mogul, India</i>
<i>la Tamise, le Rhône, l'aquilon, les Alpes, le Cantal</i>	<i>the Thames, the Rhône, the north wind, the Alps, the Cantal</i>

## EXERCISE.

1. *Europe* is bounded on the north by the Frozen Ocean ; on the south by the Mediterranean Sea, which separates it from *Africa* ; on the east by the continent of *Asia* ; on the west by the Atlantic Ocean. It contains the following 2 states 1 : on the north, *Norway, Sweden, Denmark and Russia* ; in the middle, *Poland, Prussia, Germany, the United Provinces, the Netherlands, France, Switzerland, Bohemia, Hungary, the British Isles* ; on the south, *Spain, Portugal, Italy, Turkey in Europe*.

2. The principal rivers in Europe are : the *Wolga*, the *Don* or *Tanaïs* and the *Boristhenes* or *Nieper*, in Muscovy ; the *Danube*, the *Rhine*, and the *Elbe*, in Germany ; the *Vistula* or *Wezel*, in Poland ; the *Loire*, the *Seine*, the *Rhone*, and the *Garonne*, in France ; the *Ebro*, the *Tagus*, and the *Douro*, in Spain ; the *Po*, in Italy ; the *Thames*, and the *Severn*, in England ; and the *Shannon*, in Ireland.

3. The principal mountains in Europe are the *Daarne Fields*, between Norway and Sweden ; *Mount Krapel*, between Poland and Hungary ; the *Pyrenean Mountains*, between France and Spain ; the *Alps*, which divide France and Germany from Italy.

4. The bleak *north wind* never blows here, and the heat of summer is tempered by the cooling 2 *zephyrs* 1, which come to refresh the air towards the middle of the day.

(1) Bounded, *borné* ; on, *à* ; frozen, *mer glaciale*, f. ; south, *sud*, or *midi* ; Mediterranean sea, *Méditerranée* f. ; east, *est* or *orient* ; west, *ouest* or *occident* ; Norway, etc. See p. 59 ; British Isles, *îles Britanniques* ; Turkey in, *Turquie de*.

(2.) Muscovy, *Moscovie* ; Vistula, *Vistule*, f. ; Loire, f. , Seine, f. ; Rhone, m. ; Garonne, f. ; Ebro, *Ebre* ; Tagus, *Tago*, m. ; Thames, *Tamise*, f. ; Severn, *Saverne*, f.

(3.) Pyrenean Mountains, *Pyrénées*.

(4.) Bleak, *rigoureux* ; north wind, *aquillon* ; heat, *ardeur* ; cooling, *rafraîchissant* ; come, *venir* ; to refresh, *adoucir*.

183. EXCEPTIONS. The article is omitted before the names of countries.

1. When these are governed by the preposition *en*, as : *il est en France*, he is in France ; *il est en Espagne*, he is in Spain.



2. When those names are governed by some preceding noun, and have the meaning of an adjective, as: *roi de France*, king of France; *vins de France*, French wines; *noblesse d'Angleterre*, the English nobility.

3. When speaking of those countries as of places we come from, as: *je viens de France*, I come from France; *j'arrive d'Italie*, I am just arrived from Italy. However, when speaking of the four parts of the world, custom requires the use of the article, as: *je viens de l'Amérique*, *j'arrive de l'Asie*.

4. The article is also omitted, before proper names of places, and of persons; *Naples*, *Vénise*, *César*, etc.\*

## EXERCISE.

1. *Naples* may be called a paradise, from its beauty and fertility. From this country 2 some suppose 1 Virgil took the model of the Elysian 2 Fields 1.

2. I have been a \* prisoner in *Egypt*, as a \* Phœnician; under that name I have long suffered, and under that name I have been set at liberty.

3. *He* has received French and Spanish wines, Italian silks, Provence oil, and English wool.

4. We set sail from *Holland*, to go to the Cape of Good Hope.

5. I was but just arrived from *Russia*, when I had the misfortune to lose my father.

6. I had set off from *America*, when my brother arrived there.

(1.) From, *à cause de*; from this country, *que c'est là, où*; some suppose. *quelques personnes penser que*.

(2.) Prisoner, *captif*, under that name, *c'est sous ce nom que*, (both alike).

(4.) Set sail, *partir*; to go, *se rendre*.

(5.) I was but just, *ne faire que de*.

(6.) Set off, *partir*; there, *y*.

184. The definite article is not rendered in translating the following English sentences or others like them.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>book the tenth, chapter the fifth</i>	livre dix, chapitre cinq
<i>Louis the XIVth.</i>	Louis Quatorze
<i>George the Fourth.</i>	George Quatre
<i>he married Mary, the daughter of</i>	il épousa Marie, fille de Louis
<i>Louis Philippe</i>	Philippe

\* There are some proper names of authors, painters, and actors before which the article is used; *Le Tasse*, *le Dante*, *le Corrège*, *la Catalani*, *le Titien*, *la Champmeslé*, *l'Arioste*, *le Poussin*, *le Dominiquin*, *le Carache*, *l'Albane*. There are also some names of French towns which take the definite article. *La Flèche*, *la Rochelle*, *la Ferté*, *le Hâvre*, *le Perche* etc.

*the more you have, the less you give* plus vous avez, moins vous donnez  
*the richer you are, the less generous you are also,* plus vous êtes riche, moins vous êtes généreux  
*the more knowledge a man has, the more modest he is* plus un homme a de connaissance, plus il est modeste.

The definite article is never used after *en*, but always after *dans*.

## EXAMPLES.

il n'est pas en France *he is not in France*  
 ce n'est pas dans la France, que *it is not in France, that you will*  
 vous le trouverez *find him*

185. The definite article is not used before the word which qualifies the substantives *espèce, genre, sorte, multitude, genre, amas, quantité*, etc.

## EXAMPLES.

sorte de fruit	<i>a sort of fruit</i>
genre d'ouvrage	<i>a kind of work</i>
monceau d'argent	<i>a heap of money</i>
bande de voleurs	<i>a troop of robbers</i>
pile de livres	<i>a pile of books</i>
meute de chiens, etc.	<i>a pack of dogs</i>

186. The article is not used before substantives preceded by the pronominal adjectives *mon, ton, son, notre, votre, leur, ce, nul, aucun, chaque, tout* (used for *chaque*), *certain, plusieurs, tel*, or *cent, mille*.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>nos mœurs</i> mettent le prix à nos richesses	<i>our manners fix the value of our riches</i>
<i>toute nation</i> a ses lois	<i>each nation has its laws</i>
<i>cent ignorans</i> , doivent-ils l'emporter sur un homme instruit?	<i>are a hundred blockheads to be preferred to one learned man?</i>

## EXERCISE.

1. The roads are bordered with *laurels, pomegranates, jessamines*, and *other trees*, which \* are \* ever green, and ever in bloom. The mountains are covered with *flocks*, which yield a fine wool, in great request among all the known 2 nations 1 (of the world.\*)

2. The fleets of Solomon, under the guidance of the Phœnicians, made frequent voyages to the land of Ophir and Tharsis, (of the kingdom of Sophala, in Ethiopia), whence they returned at the end of three years, laden with *gold, silver, ivory, precious 2 stones 1*, and other kinds of *merchandise*.

3. *Costly furniture 2* is not allowed there 1, nor *magnificent attire*, nor *sumptuous feasts*, nor *golden palaces*.

4. We contemplated with pleasure the extensive fields covered with yellow ears of corn, the \* *rich gifts* of bounteous Ceres.

5. He was in a kind of *ecstasy*, when he perceived us.

6. In the most corrupt age, he lived and died a *wise man*.\*.

7. Are you surprised that the worthiest 2 men, 1 are *but men*, and betray remains of the weakness of humanity, amid the innumerable 2 snares 1 and difficulties which \* are \* inseparable from royalty ?

8. *He excited our pity*, when we saw him after his disgrace.

9. Hear, then, *O nations* full of valour ! and you, *O chiefs*, so wise and so united ! hear what I have \* to \* offer to you.

10. Out of this cavern issued, from time to time, a black 2 thick 3 smoke 1, which made a sort of *night* at mid-day.

11. *Those imitative 2 sounds* 1 are infused in all languages, and form, as it were, their \* real basis.

12. *Every man* has his foibles, his moments of ill \* humour, even his irregularities.

13. *Each plant* has virtues peculiar to itself, the knowledge 2 of which 1 could not but be infinitely useful.

14. In all his instructions, he is careful to bear in mind that grammar, logic, and rhetoric, are three sisters, that ought never to be disjoined.

(1.) Roads, *chemin*; with *de*; pomegranates, *grenadier*; in bloom, *fleuri*; yield, *fournir*; wool, *laine*, pl.; in great request, *recherché*; among, *de*.

(2.) Made, *faire*, ind-2; end, *bout*; laden *chargé*.

(3.) Is not allowed there, *on n'y souffre ni*; furniture, *meuble*; costly, *précieux*; attire, *ornement*; feasts, *repas*.

(4.) Extensive, *vaste*; fields, *campagne*; ears, *épi*; bounteous, *fécond*.

(5.) In a kind of, *comme en*.

(6.) Age, *siècle*.

(7.) That, *de ce que*; worthy, *estimable*; but, *encore*; betray, *montrer*; remains, *reste*; snares, *piège*; difficulties, *embarras*.

(8.) He excited our pity, *il nous fit pitié*.

(9.) Hear, *écouter*.

(10.) Out of, *de*; issued, *sortir*, ind-2; thick, *et épais*; smoke, *fumée*; f. mid-day, *milieu du jour*.

(11.) Infused, *fondue*; to, *dans*; and form as it were, *et ils en sont comme*; real, *fondamentale*.

(13.) Peculiar, *qui sont propres*; to it, *lui*; could, *cond-1*; not but, *ne que*.

(14.) He is careful to bear in mind, *ne point perdre de vue*; ought, *on devoir*, ind-1; to be disjoined, *séparer*.

187. Proper names of deities, men, animals, towns, and particular places, do not take the article.

#### EXAMPLES.

<i>Dieu</i> a créé le ciel et la terre,	<i>God</i> has made heaven and earth
<i>Jupiter</i> était le premier des dieux	<i>Jupiter</i> was the first of the gods
<i>Bucéphale</i> était le cheval d'Alexandre	<i>Bucephalus</i> was Alexander's horse

<i>Rome</i> est une ville d'une grande beauté	<i>Rome</i> is a city of great beauty
---	---------------------------------------



EXCEPTIONS. Proper names, however, take the article, when used in a restrictive sense.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>le</i> Dieu des Chrétiens	the <i>God</i> of Christians
<i>le</i> Dieu de paix	the <i>God</i> of peace
<i>le</i> Jupiter d'Homère	<i>Homer's Jupiter</i>
<i>le</i> Bucéphale d'Alexandre	<i>Alexander's Bucephalus</i>
<i>l'</i> ancienne Rome	<i>ancient Rome</i>
<i>la</i> Rome moderne	<i>modern Rome</i>

## EXERCISE.

1. *Jupiter* son of *Saturn* and *Cibele* or *Ops*, after having expelled his father from the throne, divided the paternal \* inheritance with his two brothers, *Neptune* and *Pluto*.

2. On a dispute, at a feast of the gods, between *Juno*, *Pallas* and *Venus*, for the pre-eminence of beauty, *Jupiter* not being able to bring them to an agreement, referred the decision to *Paris*, a shepherd of mount *Ida*, with directions that a golden apple should be given to the fairest. *Paris* assigned to *Venus* 2 the golden \* prize 1.

3. *God* said: let there\* be 2 light 1, and there \* was 2 light 1.

4. *The Apollo del Belvidere* and *the Venus di Medicis*, are valuable 2 remains 1 of antiquity.

5. *May* and *September* are the two finest months of the year in the south of France.

6. *The God of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob*, was the only true God.

(1.) Expelled, *chasser* ; divided, *en partager* ; inheritance, *héritage*.

(2.) On, *dans* ; at a feast, *qu'il y eut à un festin* ; being able, *pouvoir* ; to bring to an agreement, *accorder* ; referred, *renvoyer* ; directions, *ordre* ; that a golden, etc. to give a golden apple to ; assigned, *adjuger*.

(4.) *Del Belvidere, du Belvédér* ; valuable, *précieux*.

(6.) Only, *seul*.

OF THE PARTITIVE ARTICLE *du*.

188. In the exercises on the verb *avoir*, No. 102, 103, 104, 105, we have already had occasion to notice that *du*, *de la*, *des* are used before a noun, not mentioned, as if speaking of the totality of the species, but only as a part of it, and when, in English, the word *some* may be understood.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>du pain</i> et <i>de l'eau</i> me feraient plaisir	<i>some bread and water</i> would please me
je vis hier <i>des savans</i> qui ne pensent pas comme vous.	<i>I yesterday saw some learned men, who do not think as you do</i>

And also that *de* alone, without the article, is used when an adjective, an adverb of quantity or a negation precedes

the noun thus spoken of in a partial sense ; no regard being paid then to its gender or number.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>voilà de beaux tableaux</i>	<i>there are beautiful pictures</i>
<i>j'achetai hier beaucoup de livres</i>	<i>I bought yesterday many books</i>
<i>que de livres, j'achetai hier !</i>	<i>how many books I bought yesterday</i>
<i>il n'y eut jamais plus de lumières</i>	<i>there never was more learning</i>
<i>il y a moins d'habitans à Paris</i>	<i>there are fewer inhabitants in Paris</i>
<i>qu'à Londres</i>	<i>than in London</i>
<i>je ne manque pas d'amis*</i>	<i>I do not want for friends</i>

EXCEPTION. *Bien* is the only adverb of quantity which is followed by the article.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>il a bien de l'esprit</i>	<i>he has a great deal of wit</i>
<i>elle a bien de la grâce</i>	<i>she is very graceful</i>

190. OBSERVE. These expressions : *des petits-maîtres, des sages-femmes, des petits-pâtés*, etc. are not exceptions to the rule which requires *de* before an adjective, because, in cases of this kind, the substantives are so united with the adjectives, as to form but one and the same word. We must likewise say : *le propre des belles actions, les sentimens des anciens philosophes*. etc. ; because, in expressions of this kind, the substantives, are taken in a general sense.

191. It as been seen that, generally speaking, an article or some other sign precedes the noun in French, so as to point out whether we speak of a thing as to its general kind or merely as to a portion of it. There are however, many phrases in which no article or sign is required before the noun ; we subjoin those which are most commonly used.

avoir faim	faire profession
— soif	— tort
— dessein	— plaisir
— honte	— peur
— coutume	— provision
— pitié	— défense
— compassion	gagner pays
— froid	— chemin
— chaud	mettre fin
— patience	— ordre
— envie	parler français
— besoin	— anglais

---

\* See rule 109, bis.

donner envie	parler allemand
—— occasion	porter envie
—— leçon	—— bonheur
—— permission	—— malheur
—— parole	prendre parti
entendre raison	—— plaisir
—— raillerie	—— leçon
—— malice	—— patience
	—— jour

## EXERCISE.

1. We could not cast our eyes on either shore, Without seeing *opulent cities, country houses* agreeably situated, *lands* every year 2 covered 1 with a golden 2 harvest 1, *meadows*, abounding in flocks and herds, *husbandmen* bending under the weight of the fruits, and *shepherds* who made 1 the echoes 5 around them 6 repeat 2 the sweet sounds 3 of their pipes and flutes 4.

2. Provence and Languedoc produce *oranges, lemons, figs, olives, almonds, chesnuts, peaches, apricots, and grapes* of an uncommon sweetness.

3. The man who has never seen this pure light, is as \* blind as one who was born blind : he dies without having seen any thing ; at most, he perceives but *glimmering and false lights, vain shadows and phantoms* that have nothing real.

4. Among the Romans, those who were convicted of having used *illicit or unworthy means* to obtain an office, were excluded from it for ever.

5. Those who govern are like the celestial 2 bodies 1, which have *great splendour and no rest*.

6. *What beauty, sweetness, modesty, and at the same time what nobleness and greatness of mind !*

7. Themistocles, in order to ruin Aristides, made use of *many artifices*, which would have covered him with infamy in the eyes of posterity, had 1 not 4 the eminent services 2 which he rendered his country 3 blotted out 5 that stain.

(1.) Could, *pouvoir*, ind-2; our, *les*; either, *les deux*; seeing, *apercevoir*; every year, *tous les ans*; covered with, *qui se couvrir de*, ind-2; abounding in, *remplis de*; flocks and herds, *troupeau*; bending, *qui étaient accablés*; weight, *poids*; shepherds, *bergers*; pipes, *chaluméan*; the echoes, *aux échos*; around them, *d'alentour*.

(3.) Who is born blind, *aveugle-né*; without having, *n'avoir jamais*, inf-3; any thing, *rien*; at most, *tout au plus*; perceives, *apercevoir*; glimmering, *sombre*; lights, *lueur*; real, *de réel*

(4.) Used, *employer*; illicit, or unworthy means, *moyen illicite, ou voie indigne*, pl.; were, ind-2; from it, *en*.

(5.) Great, *beaucoup de*; splendour, *éclat*; no rest, (that have no rest) *repos*.

(6.) What, *que de*.

(7.) Ruin, *perdre*; made use of many, *employer bien*; artifices, *manœuvres*; covered, cond-3; with, *de*; infamy, *opprobre*; in, *à*; had, *si*; rendered, ind-3 *à*; blotted out, *effacer*, cond-3; stain, *tache*.



8. The consequences of *great passions* are blindness of mind and depravity of heart.

9. *Noblemen* should never forget that their high birth imposes great duties on \* them.

(8.) Of mind, art. *esprit*; of heart, *de*, art. *cœur*.

(9.) Noblemen, *gentilhomme*; should, *devoir*, ind-1.

### CHAPTER III.

#### OF THE ADJECTIVE.

##### 192. CONCORD OF THE ADJECTIVE WITH THE NOUN.

It has already been said that the nature of the adjective in French is to agree in gender and number with the noun to which it is joined, thus; *un grand jardin, une grande maison, de bons livres, de bonnes plumes*, and the manner of forming the plural and the feminine of adjectives has also been explained. (No 42.\*)

An adjective referring to two or more substantives singular of the same gender, *all subject of the same verb*, must be in the plural and assume their gender.

##### EXAMPLES.

la clémence et la majesté peintes sur son front, sont, etc.	<i>the clemency and majesty imprinted on his countenance, are, etc.</i>
le travail et le courage joints ensemble font surmonter des obstacles.	<i>labour and courage together united make us surmount obstacles.</i>

If the substantives are of different genders, the adjective must be in the masculine.

##### EXAMPLES.

votre frère et votre sœur sont peu instruits	<i>your brother and sister are not well informed</i>
la beauté et le vice réunis dans un même individu ne sau- raient attacher, etc.	<i>beauty and vice united in the same individual cannot attach, etc.</i>

When in speaking of *things*, (not of persons), an adjective belongs to two or more nouns which are *the object of or governed by a verb*, it is *customary* to make that adjective agree with the last noun, next to which it is placed.

---

\* See the peculiarities of *feu, nu, demi, bon, court, fort, bas*.

## EXAMPLES.

il avait la bouche et les yeux *his mouth and eyes were open*  
ouverts  
il avait les yeux et la bouche *his eyes and mouth were open.*  
ouverte

We say *customary*, because it is more *grammatical* to attach an idea of numbers to the adjective, when it expresses a quality or state common to several objects and to say,

## EXAMPLES.

il avait les yeux et la bouche *his eyes and mouth were open.*  
ouverts  
c'est un homme d'une valeur, *he is a man of tried valour, virtue*  
d'une vertu et d'une fidélité *and fidelity*  
éprouvées\*

## EXERCISE.

His impetuosity and courage, long restrained, soon surmounted  
= ——— *enchaîné 2 vaincre ind-3 1*  
all obstacles. The king and the shepherd are equal after death.  
This comedian acts with delightful taste and grace. He found  
*acteur jouer charmant 3 1 — 2 ind-3*  
the rivers and ponds frozen over. His whole life (was nothing  
*2 étang m. 1 glacé 3 n'être que*  
but) constant labour and occupation. It was lost time and trouble  
*ind-3 3 1 2 c'était 3 1 peine 2*  
Honours and riches are ever envied. Music and drawing are very  
entertaining. I teach the French and English tongues. Have you  
*amusant enseigner langue f.*  
read the Greek and Roman histories ?  
= f.

## ADJECTIVES OF DIMENSIONS.

193. In speaking of the dimensions of an object, the French make use of a very different form from the English, thus ;

---

\* There are certain locutions on the correctness of which grammarians are not agreed : this is not the place for discussing such questions but we will give both modes of expression, placing in the second column those which are preferable,

<i>Les cotes personnelle, mobiliare, et foncière.</i>	<i>La cote personnelle, la mobiliare et la somptuaire.</i>
<i>Uncours de langues Française, Italienne, et Espagnole.</i>	<i>Un cours de langue française, Italienne, et Espagnole.</i>
<i>Les langues Française et Espagnole</i>	<i>La langue Française et l'Espagnole.</i>

## EXAMPLES.

1. A tower two hundred feet high      *une tour de deux cents pieds de hauteur* or *de haut*
2. This tower is two hundred feet high      *cette tour a deux cents pieds de hauteur*

In the first example, *de* is used before the noun of numbers and before the adjective, to which the substantive of dimension may elegantly be substituted.

In the second, *to be* is rendered by *avoir*, and consequently, the substantive of dimension *hauteur*, can alone be used, since an adjective cannot be coupled with *avoir*.

## EXERCISE.

This box, which is six feet *long*, is very convenient. You  
*coffre, m.* *commode*  
 will be stopped in your march by a river three hundred feet *broad*  
*arrêté* *f.*  
 This observatory, (is twelve hundred) feet *high*. It is a terrace  
 = *deux cents toises* *ce terrace f.*  
 (a hundred and eighty) feet *broad*, and (twelve hundred) feet  
*trente* *toise f. pl. large* *deux cents \**  
*long.* The walls of our garden are twenty feet *high* and three  
*mur m. pl.*  
*broad.* It is one of the finest stones that was ever seen: it is  
*75* *on ait jamais vues*  
 twenty feet *long* and six *thick*. This ditch is nine feet six  
*longueur* *épaisseur* *fossé m.*  
 inches *deep* and six feet *broad*.  
*pouce m. pl. profondeur f.*

194. Adjectives, used substantively, require the definite article.

## EXAMPLE.

*les fous inventent les modes, et* *fools invent fashions, and wise men*  
*les sages s'y conforment* *conform to them*

## EXERCISE.

1. Were the *learned* of antiquity to come to life again, they would be much astonished at the extent of our knowledge.

2. The *ignorant* have, in a \* large stock of presumption, what they want in real knowledge, and that is the reason they are admired by *fools*.

(1.) Were the, *si les*; to come again, *revenir*, ind-2; life, *monde*; at, *de*; knowledge, *connaissance*, pl.

(2.) Large stock, *forte dose*; they want, *il leur manque*; knowledge, *science*; the reason, *ce qui fait que*; they are, etc. the fools admire them.



When a noun is accompanied by two adjectives, expressing different qualities incompatible in the same object, the article must be repeated before each adjective.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>les vieux et les nouveaux soldats</i>	<i>the old and the newly raised sol-</i>
<i>sont remplis d'ardeur</i>	<i>diers are full of ardour</i>
<i>il faut fréquenter la bonne com-</i>	<i>we ought to frequent good and</i>
<i>pagnie et fuir la mauvaise</i>	<i>shun bad company</i>

REMARK. But if those qualities be not incompatible, the article is not repeated, as : *le sage et pieux Fénelon* ; if merely expressing different ideas, it is perhaps better to repeat it, as : *le sensible et l'ingénieux Fénelon*.

## EXERCISE.

1. The *antient* 1 and *modern* 3 writers 2 are not agreed upon that point.

2. The wise man preserves the same tranquility of mind in *good* or *bad* fortune.

3. The man who is jealous of his reputation frequents *good* and shuns *bad* company.

4. *Grand* and *vigorous* thoughts were always the offspring of genius.

(1.) Writers, *auteur* ; are agreed, *s'accorder*.

(3.) Vigorous, *fort* ; offspring, *fruit*.

195. The article is used before the adjective which is joined to a proper name, either to express its quality, or to distinguished the person spoken of from those who might bear the same name.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>le sublime Bossuet</i>	<i>the sublime Bossuet</i>
<i>Louis le gros</i>	<i>Louis the fat</i>
<i>le vertueux Fénelon</i>	<i>the virtuous Fenelon</i>
<i>Louis le Juste</i>	<i>Louis the Just</i>
<i>le tendre Racine</i>	<i>the tender Racine</i>
<i>Louis le Grand</i>	<i>Louis the Great</i>

REMARK. If the adjective, which is joined to a proper name, precede that name, it expresses a quality which may be common to many ; but if it follow, it expresses a distinguishing quality. Thus : *le savant Varron*, and *Varron le savant*, do not convey the same meaning : in the first example, *Varron* merely obtains the quality of *savant* ; in the second, *Varron* is distinguished for his learning from all of the same name.

## EXERCISE.

1. The *great Corneille* astonishes by beauties of the first order, and by faults of the worst taste. If the *tender Racine* does not often rise so high, at least, he is always equal, and possesses the art of always interesting the heart.

2. The more we read the fables of the *good* and *artless La Fontaine*, the more we are convinced they are a book for all ages, and the manual of the man of taste.

3. It was only under the reign of *Louis the Just* (XIII.) that good taste began to show itself in France: but it was under that of *Louis the Great* that it was carried to perfection.

(1.) By, *par des*; order, *ordre*; is always equal, *se soutenir*; possesses, *avoir*.

(2.) The more we, *plus on*; artless, *simple*; are convinced, *on se convaincre*; they are, *que c'est*; a, *le*; for, *de*; manual, *manuel*.

(3.) Only, *ne que*; carried, *porter à*.

196. When a superlative relative precedes a substantive, the article is used once only; if it follow, it must be repeated before the noun and the adjective.

## EXAMPLES.

*les plus habiles gens font quelquefois les plus grandes fautes or les gens les plus habiles font quelquefois les fautes les plus grandes*  
*the ablest men sometimes commit the grossest blunders\*.*

## EXERCISE.

1. It has been said of the *Telemachus* of the virtuous *Fenelon*, that it is *the most useful* 2 present 1 the muses have made to mankind; for, could the happiness of man be produced by a poem, it would be by that.

2. *The smoothest* 2 waters 1 often conceal *the most dangerous* 2 gulfs 1.

(1.) It has been said, *on a dit*; present, *don que*; have made, subj-3; could, (if the, etc. could, ind-2); be produced by, *naître de*; would be, *naître*, cond-1.

(2.) Smoothest, *tranquille*.

---

\* OBSERVE. Cette planète est *la plus éloignée* du soleil. Lorsque cette planète est *le plus éloignée* du soleil.

There is a difference here with regard to the declinability of the article which must be understood.

If there is a comparison implied the article is declined. Thus, in the first sentence, we speak of the planets which are distant from the sun, and allude to that which is most so; but in the second, our thought bears on one planet alone, independant of all others; *le plus* is merely an adverb to the verb *être éloignée*, and consequently is undeclined as all adverbs are.

These remarks apply also to *le moins*, *la moins*, *les moins*.

## REMARKS ON SOME PARTICULAR MODES OF EXPRESSING COMPARISONS.

197. The manner of expressing comparisons of equality and of superiority and inferiority will be explained, (No. 211). But there are some phrases which it is the place to notice here.

*Equally with* is used for *as well as* and is thus rendered.

## EXAMPLES.

He blamed it equally with me	<i>il le blâma aussi bien que moi</i>
He was blamed equally with me	<i>il fut blâmé aussi bien que moi</i>

NOTHING *so pleasant, good, difficult, etc.*, is thus rendered.

## EXAMPLES.

Nothing so easy as to do it	<i>rien de si facile que de le faire</i>
Nothing so pleasant as to meet with friends	<i>rien de si agréable que de rencon- ter des amis</i>

QUOI, *what* ; *quelque chose*, something ; *rien*, nothing ; before adjectives require *de*.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>Quoi de plus agréable que d'être au coin d'un bon feu ?</i>	what is there more pleasant then to sit by a good fire ?
<i>Il n'y a rien de doux dans sa phy- sionomie.</i>	there is nothing sweet in her countenance
<i>J'ai remarqué quelque chose d'extra- ordinaire</i>	I noticed something extraordi- nary.

## THE PLACE OF ADJECTIVES.

198. Pronominal and numerical adjectives precede their substantive, as do generally the following sixteen ; *beau, bon, brave, cher, chétif, grand, gros, jeune, mauvais, méchant, meilleur, moindre, petit, saint, vieux*, and *vrai*, when taken in their literal sense.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>mon père</i>	my father
<i>quel homme</i>	what man
<i>vielle femme</i>	old woman
<i>dix guinées</i>	ten guineas
<i>plusieurs officiers</i>	several officers
<i>grand homme</i>	great man
<i>six arbres</i>	six trees
<i>chétive mine</i>	mean look



EXCEPTIONS. The pronoun *quelconque*.

## EXAMPLE.

*d'une manière quelconque*

in whatever manner.

## EXERCISE.

1. 'There have been ages, when a *great man* was a sort of prodigy produced by a mistake of nature.

2. In almost all nations, the *great geniuses* that have adorned them were contemporaries.

3. *Young people*, says Horace, are open to the enticements of vice, lavish, presumptuous, and equally impetuous and light in their passions; *old people*, on the contrary, are covetous, dilatory, timid, ever alarmed about the future, always complaining, hard to please, panegyrist of times past, censors of the present, and great givers of advice.

4. *What man* was ever satisfied with his condition, and dissatisfied with his abilities.

5. *Thirty chambers*, which have a communication one with another, and each of them an iron door, with six huge bolts, are the places where he shuts himself up.

(1.) Ages, *des siècles*; when, *où*; produced, *enfanter*.

(2.) In, *chez*; nations, *peuple*; adorned, *illustrer*, ind-4.

(3.) Old people, *vieilles gens*; open, *souple*; lavish, *prodigue*; impetuous, *vif*; (all those adjectives are m. pl.); covetous, *avare*; dilatory, *temporiseur*; about, *sur*; complaining, *plaintif*; hard, *difficile*; please, *contenter*; times, sing.

(4.) Dissatisfied, *mécontent*; abilities, *esprits*.

(5.) Have a communication, *communiquer*; each of them, *don't chacun avoir*; huge, *gros*; bolts, *verrou*; places, *lieu*, sing.; shuts himself, *renfermer*.

199. Adjectives of number, joined to proper names, pronouns, and substantives, are placed after the noun.

## EXAMPLES.

George *Trois*  
chapter *dix*  
page *trente*

George III.  
chapter 10  
page the 30th

200. The adjectives mentioned 198, when connected by a conjunction with another adjective, which is to be placed after the substantive, are themselves placed after the noun.

## EXAMPLE.

*c'est une femme grande et bien faite* she is tall well-made woman

201. In English, two, or even several adjectives may qualify a substantive, without a conjunction: but in French *et* is always placed before the last adjective *c'est un homme aimable et poli*, he is an amiable, well-behaved man.

OBSERVE that all the adjectives are put after the noun, *un homme riche, jeune et aimable*, except one of them, is one

of those which precede it, *c'est un grand homme sec*, he is a tall thin man.

202. Are placed after the noun, adjectives formed—from the participle present of verbs—*ouvrage divertissant*, entertaining work;—from the participle past; all those expressing form, physical qualities, etc. *figure arrondie*, round figure; *table ovale*, oval table;—colour, *maison blanche*, white house;—taste, *herbe amère*, bitter herb;—sound, *orgue harmonieux*, harmonious organ;—action, *procureur actif*, active attorney;—effect, *coutume abusive*, custom founded in abuse;—arrangement, *ordre grammatical*, grammatical order; species, *qualité occulte*, occult quality;—nation, *générosité Anglaise*, English generosity;—those ending in *-esque*, *-il*, *-ule*, *ic*, *ique*, *-in*:

*style burlesque*  
*jargon puéril*  
*femme crédule*  
*bien public*  
*ris sardonique*  
*voix enfantine*

burlesque style  
childish jargon  
credulous woman  
public welfare  
sardonic grin  
childish voice

but in this, custom is the best guide. •

#### EXERCISE.

1. An *affected* simplicity is a *refined* imposture.
2. The *smiling* images of Theocritus, Virgil, and Gessner, excite in the soul a gentle feeling.
3. In that *antique* palace are to be seen neither *wreathed* columns, nor *gilded* wainscots, nor *valuable* basso-relievoes, nor ceilings *curiously painted* nor *grotesque* figures of animals which never had existence but in the imagination of a child or a madman.
4. If *human* life is exposed to many troubles, it is also susceptible of many pleasures.
5. A *ridiculous* man is seldom so by halves.
6. *Spanish* manners have, at first sight, something harsh and uncivilized.
7. *French* urbanity has become a proverb among *foreign* nations

- (1.) Refined, *délicat*.
- (2.) Smiling, *riant*; excite, *porter*; soft, *doux*; feeling, *sensibilité*, f.
- (3.) Are to be seen, *on ne voit*; wreathed, *torse*; wainscot, *lambris*; basso-relievoes, *bas-relief*; ceilings, *plafond*; curiously, *artistement*; had existence, *exister*.
- (4.) Many, *bien de*; troubles, *peine*.
- (5.) So, *le*; by halves, *à demi*.
- (6.) Spanish, *Espagnol*; manners, *mœurs*; at first sight, *au premier abord*; uncivilized, *sauvage*.
- (7.) Become, *passer en*; among *chez*.

203. Although it may seem that adjectives expressing moral qualities are placed indifferently before, or after the substantive, yet taste and a correct ear will assign them their proper situation.

In conversation, or in a broken, loose style, it may be indifferent to say *femme aimable* or *aimable femme*; *talents sublimes*, or *sublimes talents*, etc.; but in the dignified style, the place of the adjective may, in a variety of instances, affect the beauty of a sentence.\*

## EXERCISE.

1. An *amiable* woman gives to every thing she says an *inexpressible* grace; the more we hear, the more we wish to hear her.

2. The *majestic* eloquence of Bossuet is like a river, which carries away every thing in its rapid course.

3. The *sublime* compositions of Rubens have made 1 an English traveller 3 say 2, that this *famous* painter was born in Flanders, through a mistake of nature.

(1.) Give to, *répandre* sur; we, *on*.

(2.) River, *fleuve*; carries away, *entraîner*; its rapid course, *la rapidité de son cours*.

(3.) Say, *dire à*; famous, *célèbre*; through, *par*; mistake *méprise*.

## GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

204. Adjectives are frequently followed by another substantive than that which they qualify, thus: *un homme digne de récompense*, *un homme enclin au bien*, they are also sometimes followed by an infinitive, *capable d'aimer*, *prompt à bien faire*, etc. In such cases a preposition is used according to the case or regimen which the adjective requires. That is called the government of adjectives.

205. Adjectives which govern the preposition DE.

digne	comblé	fou
indigne	taxé	avide
capable	chargé	ennuyé
incapable	plein	libre
aisé	accusé	qualifié
ravi	fatigué	vide
joyeux	las	dépendant
content	contrit	chéri
mécontent	enragé	

---

\* Such adjectives are more expressive when placed before the noun; but taste and harmony must be consulted. None but those well versed in the French Language can *feel* the proper place of the adjective; we recommend to the *learner* always to place it after the noun; which is quite correct, if not elegant.



206. Adjectives which govern the preposition *à*:

adroit	porté	âpre
bon	enclin	lent
beau	adonné	nuisible
laid	sujet	prompt
agréable	propre	prêt
ingénieux	inexorable	utile
contraire	désagréable	inutile
opposé	agile	sensible
conforme	alerte	aisé
semblable	habile	facile
pareil	ardent	cher

207. Adjectives which require *ENVERS*, *complaisant*, *généreux*, *affable*, *indulgent*, *prévenant*, *cruel*, *bon*, or any other expressing kindness or unkindness of feeling towards individuals.

Are you pleased with your horse? Do not be so greedy  
*content* *avide*  
 after riches. I am not unworthy of his friendship. They say  
*indigne* *on dit que*  
 he is very dissatisfied with his son. We were tired with  
*mécontent* *ind-2 fatigué*  
 running after him. Are we (not at liberty) to go? My  
*courir* *libre* *partir*  
 brother is not fit for the place. Send me some gloves  
*propre* *gant, m.*  
 like those which my sister has. If you are ready to go,  
*pareil*  
 I will order the carriage. Too much exercise may be  
*commander ind-7* *pouvoir être*  
 injurious to the health. You will not find that easy to do  
*nuisible* *cela facile*  
 Let us be kind (to one another). He was so kind to  
*les uns envers les autres* *bon*  
 his sisters.

208. OBSERVE. A noun may be governed by two adjectives, provided they do not require two different prepositions. Thus you may say : *cet homme est utile et cher à sa famille*, that man is useful and dear to his family ; but you may not say, *il est utile et chéri à sa famille*, because *chéri*, beloved, requires the genitive, or preposition *de* before a noun. Such sentences must be turned thus, *il est utile à sa famille et en est chéri*, he is useful to his family and beloved of them.

## ÊTRE WITH ADJECTIVES.

209. *Je suis bien aise, fâché, contrarié*, etc., or any other phrase expressing gladness or regret at a thing, requires the subjunctive mood, or the infinitive with *DE*, as:

*je suis enchanté que vous soyez* I am delighted that you have returned  
*de retour*  
*je suis enchanté d'être de retour* I am delighted that I have returned  
*à temps.* in time

In the first example, there are two different subjects *je vous*; the verb is on that account put in the subjunctive mood.

In the second example, there is but one and the same subject, the second verb is in the infinitive.

## EXERCISE.

She will be delighted to see you. How sorry I am you  
*enchanté* 2 1 *que* 2 1  
 were not at home last night. Call upon him, he will be  
 subj-2 *chez vous hier au soir* aller 1 voir 3 2  
 glad to see you. I cannot tell you how vexed I am  
*bien aise* *je ne saurais* *contrarié* 2  
 at my servant being so slow, and at your not receiving  
*être* subj-3 *ne recevoir pas* subj-3  
 my note. We are all very sorry you cannot come, for  
*billet m.* *bien fâché* *pouvoir* subj-1  
 we shall have a delightful evening.  
*passer* 2 *soirée f.* 1

210. *IL EST*, impersonal, joined to an adjective requires *de* before the infinitive. *C'est* requires *a*.

## EXAMPLES.

*il est beau de mourir pour sa pa-* it is noble to die for one's  
*trie* country  
*c'est horrible à voir* it is horrid to be seen

## EXERCISE.

It was amusing to see them. How pleasant it is to  
*il* ind-2 *que agréable* 2 *il* 1  
 enjoy good health! This is most painful to hear.  
*jouir de* *ce* *on ne peut plus pénible*  
 It was very disagreeable (for me) to witness all their  
*il* 2 ind-2 3 *me* 1 *être présent à*  
 quarrels. It may be pleasant to look at, but is it very  
*cela* *voir* \*  
 useful?

## ADJECTIVES IN THE COMPARATIVE DEGREE.

211. The verb which follows an adjective in the comparative requires *ne* before it.

## EXAMPLE.

*vous êtes plus heureux que vous n'étiez* you are happier than you were.

But if the first member of the sentence is negative or interrogative the *ne* is suppressed.

## EXAMPLES.

*vous n'êtes pas plus heureux que vous l'étiez* you are not happier than you were  
*peut-on être plus heureux que vous l'êtes?* can any one be happier than you are?

The *ne* is also suppressed after *quand*, *dans le temps*, or any adverb.

## EXAMPLE.

*vous êtes plus heureux que quand vous étiez en France* you are happier than when you were in France.

*Tout autre, autrement, mieux, moins bien, plus mal*, also require the *ne*, before the verb.

## EXAMPLE.

*il est tout autre qu'il n'était* he is quite different from what he was

## EXERCISE.

He is much richer than you think. You sing better than  
*faire ind-2* *croire ind-2*  
 you did. He has been better received than he thought.  
 Sciences are now more cultivated than they were. Since  
*être ind-2*  
 the invention of gun powder battles are less bloody than they  
 were. That war was not less successful than it was just.  
*être ind-3* *heureuse* *être ind-2*  
 (Can any one) be more amiable than she is? Is he not  
*peut-on*  
 much richer than he was? The poor are not so sick,  
*pl.* *moins malade*  
 (for want of) food, as the rich are for taking too much.  
*faute de* *que* *pl.* *en prendre*



## ADJECTIVES IN THE SUPERLATIVE DEGREE.

212. An adjective in the superlative degree requires that the verb which follows it should be in the subjunctive mood, or that the noun should be in the genitive case, that is, have the preposition *de* before it.

## EXAMPLES.

*donnez-moi la meilleure plume que vous ayez* give me the best pen you have  
*la plus belle fleur du jardin.* the prettiest flower in the garden

The absolute, *le seul, l'unique, le premier, le dernier, aucun*, must be considered as superlatives, and included in this rule.

## EXERCISE.

You see the largest tree there is in the park. Is he  
*grand arbre y avoir*  
 not the richest man in the town? I give you the only one  
*riche \* donner ind-4*  
 I had. They say he is the cleverest boy in the school.  
*avoir subj-2 on dit que c'est habile*  
 She is certainly the prettiest girl I ever saw. I am not the  
*c'est personne voir subj-3*  
 only one, I believe, who accepted his invitation. There  
*à ce que je crois accepter subj-3 il y*  
 were present some of the most celebrated men in Europe,  
*avait là quelques-uns*  
 but (no one could get a peep at them), so great was the  
*il était impossible d'en approcher tant 1 4 3*  
 crowd.  
 2

213. *By*, after a comparative, is rendered by *de*.

## EXAMPLE.

*il est plus grand d'un pouce* he is taller by one inch

## ADJECTIVES OF NUMBER.

214. *Unième*, is used only after *vingt, trente, quarante, cinquante, soixante, quatre-vingt, cent* and *mille*. *C'est la vingt-et-unième fois*, it is the twenty-first time.

*Cent*, in the plural takes an *s*, except when followed by another noun of number, as :

<i>ils étaient deux cents</i>	there were two hundred
<i>trois cents hommes</i>	three hundred men
<i>ils étaient deux cent dix</i>	there were two hundred and ten

*Vingt* in *quatre-vingt*, and *six-vingt*, also take an *s*, when followed by a substantive, as :

*quatre-vingts hommes*  
*six vingts abricots*

eighty men  
six score apricots

But it takes no *s*, when followed by another term expressing number, *quatre-vingt-un arbres*, *quatre-vingt-dix hommes*.

The ordinary numbers, collective and distributive, always take the sign of the plural : *les premières douzaines*, the first dozens ; *les quatre cinquièmes*, the four fifths.

For dates the French write *mil*, as : *mil sept cent-quatre-vingt-dix-neuf*, one thousand seven hundred and ninety-nine, etc.

REMARK. *Cent* and *mille* are used indefinitely, as,

*il lui fit cent caresses*

he shewed him *a hundred* marks  
of kindness

*faites-lui mille amitiés*

present him *a thousand* compliments

#### EXERCISE.

1. It was the *thirty-first* year after so glorious a peace, when the war broke out again with a fury of which history offers few examples.

2. There were only *three hundred*, and in spite of their inferiority in numbers\*, they attacked the enemy, beat and dispersed them.

3. He has sold his country house for\* *two thousand five hundred and fifty* pounds.

4. Choose out of your nursery ground *eighty* fruit trees and *ninety* dwarf-trees, divide them into dozens, and put in the two first dozens of each sort, those whose fruits are most esteemed.

5. When Louis the Fourteenth made his entry into Strasbourg, the Swiss deputies having come to pay their respects to him, Le Tellier, archbishop of Rheims, who saw among them the bishop of Basle, said to one near him : that bishop is apparently some poor beggar.—How, replied the other, he has a *hundred thousand* livres a year.—Oh ! oh ! said the archbishop, he is then a respectable man, and shewed him a thousand civilities.

(1.) Year, *année* ; when, *que* ; broke out again, *se rallumer* ; ind-3.

(2.) Only, *ne que* ; in spite of, *malgré*.

(3.) Pounds, *livre sterling*.

(4.) Out of, *dans* ; nursery-ground, *pépinière* ; fruit-trees, *piéd d'arbre fruitier* ; dwarf-trees, *arbre nain*.

(5.) Swiss, (of the Swiss) ; pay, *présenter* ; respect, *hommage*, pl. ; one near him, *son voisin* ; that bishop, etc. *c'est un misérable apparemment que cet évêque* ; a year, *de rente* ; shewed, *faire*, ind-3 ; civilities, *caresses*.

The French say, *le onze, du onze, au onze, sur les onze heures, sur les une heure*, pronouncing the words *onze* and *une*, as if they were written with an *h* aspirated.

215. The cardinal numbers are used for the ordinal.

1. In reckoning time, that is, the *hour* of the day, the *day* of the month, the *year* of an era, as : *il est trois heures*, it is three o'clock ; *le vingt de Mars*, the twentieth of March ; *l'an mil sept cent dix*, etc.,

216. 2. In speaking of the order of succession of sovereigns, as : *Louis seize, George trois*, except the first two of the series, as : *Henri premier, George second*. *Quint* for *cinq* is only said of the *Empereur Charles-quint*, and the *Pape Sixte-quint*.

#### EXERCISE.

1. They made in the parish and in the neighbouring places a collection which produces a *hundred and twenty-one* guineas.

2. William, surnamed the Conqueror, king of England and duke of Normandy, was one of the greatest generals of the *eleventh* century : he was born at Falaise, and was the natural son of Robert, duke of Normandy, and of Arlotte, a furrier's daughter.

3. Make haste ; it will soon be *ten* o'clock. We shall have a great difficulty to arrive in time.

4. The winter was so severe in *one thousand seven hundred and nine*, that there was but one olive tree that resisted it\*, in a plain where there had been more than ten thousand.

5. It was the *twenty-first* of January, one thousand seven hundred and ninety-three, that the unhappy Louis *the sixteenth* was led to the scaffold.

(1.) They, *on* ; neighbouring places, *voisinage*, sing. ; collection, *quête*.

(2.) William, *Guillaume* ; furrier, *fourreur*.

(3.) Make haste, *se dépêcher* ; will be, ind-1 ; great difficulty, *rien de la peine* ; in à.

(4.) Severe, *rude* ; but, *ne que*, had been, *y en avoir*, ind-2.

### CHAPTER IV.

#### PRONOUNS.

##### § I.

#### PERSONAL PRONOUNS,

##### DISTINCTION BETWEEN THE SUBJECT AND THE OBJECT.

217. Personal pronouns, like the substantives which they represent, whether persons or things, are either the *subject* or *object* of a verb.



As object or regimen, they are also *direct* or *indirect*.  
See 170, 173.

## SUBJECT.

Common to persons and things *tu, je, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles*.

Also *moi, toi, lui, eux*.

## OBJECT DIRECT.

Common to persons and things, *me, te, le, la, nous, vous, les*, m. f.

Also *moi, toi*.

## OBJECT INDIRECT. (DATIVE.)

Of persons, *me te, lui*, m. f. *nous, vous, leur*, m. f.

Also, *moi, toi*.

Also *à moi, à toi, à lui, à elle, à nous, à vous, à eux, à elles*.

Of things, *y* of both genders and numbers.

OBJECT INDIRECT, (*genitive or ablative*.)

Of persons *de moi, de toi, de lui, d'elle, de nous, de vous, d'eux, d'elles*; sometimes *en*.

Of things, *en* of both gender and number.

## PRONOUNS GOVERNED BY PREPOSITIONS.

*Moi, toi, lui, elle, nous, vous, eux, elles*.

## PRONOUN SUBJECT.

218. The place of the subject is before the verb, if affirmative, after it, if interrogative.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>je parle</i>	<i>I speak</i>
<i>il raconta son histoire</i>	<i>he related his history</i>
<i>est-il heureux ?</i>	<i>is he happy ?</i>

219. Sometimes there are two or more subjects to the verb, such as *you, he, and I are agreed to go*; in such cases, *moi, toi, lui, eux*, are used instead of *je, tu, il, ils*, and it is polite to place the first person last.

## EXAMPLE.

*vous et moi, nous irons*                      *you and I we shall go.*

## EXERCISE.

My sister and I we were walking by the last rays of the  
*se promener* ind-2 à                      *rayons* m. pl.

setting sun, and we were saying, what a soft splendour does it  
*couchant* 2 1      *dire* ind-2      *doux éclat* m.      \* 2

still spread over all nature! In the long winter even-  
*pas* 3 4 *ne répand* 1      art.      *de* 2      *soi-*

ings, my father, my brothers, and I used (to spend) two  
*rée* f. pl. 1      *nous passer* ind-2

hours in the library, and to read there, (in order to)  
*bibliothèque* f.      *nous lire*, ind-2      *y*      *pour*

(unbend our minds) from the serious studies of the day, those  
*se délasser*      = 2      1

amiable poets who interest most the heart, by the charms of a lively  
 2      1      *le plus*      *riant* 2

imagination, and make us love truth, by disguising it under the  
 1      2      1      art.      *en déguiser*

mask of an ingenious fiction. You and your friend shall  
*trait* m. pl.      = 2      f. 1

accompany me to the museum, where we shall study nature in her  
*—pagner* 2      1      *musée* m.      *où*

kingdoms.  
*règne* m. pl.

220. *Moi, toi, lui, eux* are also used instead of *je, tu, il, ils*.

1st. After *que* in comparisons.

#### EXAMPLE.

*vous êtes plus grand que moi*      *you are taller than I.*

2nd. After *c'est*, and in answer to a question.

#### EXAMPLES.

*ce n'est pas moi qui l'ai fait*      *it is not I who did it*  
*que vous reste-t-il ?*      *Moi*      *whom have you left ?*      *I*

3rd. Before a relative pronoun or an infinitive, speaking emphatically and by apposition.

#### EXAMPLES.

<i>moi, dont il déchire la réputation</i>	<i>I whose reputation he destroys</i>
<i>toi, qui fais le brave</i>	<i>thou who lookest so valiant</i>
<i>moi, trahir le meilleur de mes amis !</i>	<i>I, betray my best friend ?</i>
<i>voudrez-vous me perdre, moi votre allié ?</i>	<i>would you ruin me, who am your ally ?</i>
<i>eux m'ont relevé, et lui m'a pansé</i>	<i>they picked me up, and he dressed my wounds.</i>

OBSERVE. In English, it is allowed to place the adverb between the subject and the verb, *I certainly do not think he would come*. The adverb must always come last in French, *Je ne pensais certainement pas qu'il viendrait*.

## EXERCISE.

You write (a great deal better) than I do. If you are not so rich  
*beaucoup mieux* \*  
 as he is, I think you are as happy Who calls? I do  
*que* \* *tout aussi heureux* \*  
 Is it you or he who said so? It is not I. I! stoop to the  
*l'avez dit* *m'abaisser devant*  
 man who dipped his hands in the blood of his king! Your  
*tremper ind-4*  
 brothers and mine undertake it. They find the money and he  
*s'en charger* *fournir*  
 will manage the work. It is I who have prevailed upon him to un-  
*conduire* 2 *engagé* 3 \* *le* 1 *à*  
 undertake that journey. Can you act so towards him, he who ever  
 2  
 was your best friend?  
 ind-3 1

## THINGS MASCULINE OR FEMININE.

221. It is almost useless to repeat that inanimate things in French are either masculine or feminine, and consequently that the pronouns *il*, *elle*, *ils*, *elles*, are used accordingly in speaking of such.

Thus speaking of a rose, *rose* f. we say

## EXAMPLES.

*elle est belle* *it is beautiful*  
*ne sent-elle pas bon?* *does it not smell nice?*

Of a book, *livre*, m.

## EXAMPLES.

*il est bien écrit* *it is well written*  
*vous a-t-il amusé?* *has it amused you?*

## EXERCISE.

(Look at) that magnificent building; *it* unites grace to  
*Regarder* — *fi que* *bâtiment* m. *réunir* art. *grâce* f. art.  
 beauty, and elegance to simplicity. Ignorance is jealous,  
 = f. art — f. art. = f. — f.  
 presumptuous, and vain: *it* sees difficulties in nothing, (is  
*présomptueux* — *ne* *de* = f. pl. *à* *rien* *ne*  
 surprised) at nothing, and stops at nothing. Let us gather  
*s'étonner de* *ne s'arrêter* *à* *cueillir*  
 these roses; what a sweet fragrance they exhale! Never judge.  
*quel* \* *parfum* — *ler*



from appearances; *they* are often deceitful: the wise man examines them, and does not decide upon *them*, till he has  
 sur art. f. \*

\* se décider d'après f. que lorsque

had time to fix his judgment.  
 art. m. de fixer

#### AUSSI, ENCORE, PEUT-ETRE, ETC. FOLLOWED BY THE INTERROGATIVE FORM.

222. Although placing the personal pronoun *subject*, after the verb, is the sign of a question, there are some cases in which custom requires or admits, that the pronoun should be so placed, though no interrogation is meant.

1st. After *aussi*, and on that account, and for this reason, *peut-être*, may be, perchance; *encore*, and yet, besides, with all that; *toujours*, still; *en vain*, in vain, *du moins*, *au moins*, at least.

2nd. In narrations, as in English, said I, *dis-je*; replied I, *répondis-je*.

3rd. In the imperative mood of *pouvoir*, *devoir*.

#### EXAMPLES.

puissé-je le voir !	<i>oh that I may see him</i>
dussé-je mourir	<i>were I to die</i>

#### OF PRONOUNS BEING DIRECT AND INDIRECT REGIMEN.

223. It has been shown (No. 170), in speaking of the government of the substantive, that the use of the proper preposition before the noun, or the using no preposition at all, entirely depends upon the knowledge of the regimen of the verb; and it has also been shown, by comparison, that the two languages are far from agreeing in that respect, because the French equivalent of an active English verb, may be neuter, and vice versâ; *obéir*, for instance, requires *à*, *obéir à la loi*, whereas in English *to obey*, is active, *to obey the law*. Now, if instead of a noun, a pronoun is used, as the object of a verb, it must necessarily be put in the same case as the noun itself would; pains must therefore be taken to ascertain whether the governing verb requires a direct or an indirect case. *I resist him*, for example, must not be rendered by *je le résiste*, but by *je lui résiste*, because *to resist a man*, is, in French, *résister à un homme*. *I want them*, cannot be *je les ai besoin*, but *j'ai besoin d'eux*, because *to want a person*,

is *avoir besoin d'une personne*. Again, the English make no difference between the *direct* and *indirect* case; *him, her, them*, serve for both; not so in French, *him* is rendered by *le* or *lui*, not indifferently, but according to circumstance. Thus we say, *I see him, je le vois*, and *I send him a book, je lui envoie un livre*, because *him* being the case direct or accusative of *I see*; so is *le* of *je vois*; but *him* is the indirect case or dative of *I send*, and book the direct case, consequently *lui* must be used in French, to show that difference.

Having endeavoured to point out the different manner of using personal pronouns in French and in English, we will now give rules as to the place they are to occupy in French, as direct and indirect cases of the verb.

In order to give every assistance to the learner, the proper preposition will be placed after the infinitive, in the exercises.

224. The pronouns *me, te, se, lui, leur, le, la, les, nous, vous, y* and *en*, are generally placed before verbs.

#### EXAMPLES.

Il me dit	<i>He tells me</i>	Je lui parle	<i>I speak to him</i>
Je le vois	<i>I see him</i>	J'y songerai	<i>I will think of it</i>
Je les écoute	<i>I listen to them</i>	J'en suis ravi	<i>I am delighted at it</i>

#### EXERCISE:

(As soon as) he had explained to us the maxims of Socrates,  
*Dès que expliquer ind-5 \* Socrate*  
 he said: you see that it is not without reason he (is looked  
 ind-3 *ce que on regarde*  
 upon) as truly wise. He was continually saying to me, yet a little  
*un vrai ind-2 \**  
 patience, and you will disarm even envy itself. You have  
*de désarmer \* art. être,*  
 no doubt (some ground) for reproaching him with faults; but is  
*sans doute fonde à reprocher inf-1 des m. pl.*  
 there (any man) on earth that is exempt (from them)? To  
*quelqu'un art. qui subj-1 en pour*  
 please her, you must never flatter her. To abandon ones self to  
*lui falloir flatter*  
 metaphysical abstractions, is to plunge into an unfathomable  
*des métaphysique2 — 1 ce \* se jeter sans fond 2*  
 abyss.  
*abîme m. 1.*

225. The pronouns *moi, toi, soi, nous, vous, lui, eux, elle, and elles*, are placed after verbs, when they are preceded by a preposition.

## -EXAMPLES.

cela dépend de moi	<i>that depends on me</i>
je pense à toi	<i>I think of thee</i>
on s'occupe trop de soi	<i>we think too much about ourselves</i>
que dites-vous d'eux ?	<i>what do you say of them.</i>

## EXERCISE.

My father loved me so tenderly, that he thought of none but  
 ind-2 *ne penser ind-2 à* \* *que*  
*me*, (was wholly taken up) with *me*, and saw none but *me*, in the  
*ne s'occuper ind-2 que de voir ind-2 \* que à*  
 universe. If you wish to obtain that favour, you must speak to him  
*de* \* *falloir*  
*himself*. It depended on *you* to excel your rivals, but you  
 ind-2 *de de l'emporter sur*  
 would not. Philip, father of Alexander being advised  
*vouloir ind-4 Philippe 2 comme on conseil-*  
 to expel from his dominions a man, who (had been speaking)  
*était à de chasser état m. pl. parler ind-6*  
 ill of *him*; I shall take care not to do that, said he, he would go and  
*se garder bien \* \* \* en ind-3 aller \**  
 slander *me* every where.  
*médire de*

225\* In imperative phrases, when affirmative, *moi, toi, nous, vous, lui, leur, eux, elle, elles, le, la, les, y* and *en*, are placed after the verb; but, when negative, *me, te, se, nous, vous, lui, leur, le, la, les, y*, and *en*, are placed before it.

## EXAMPLES.

dites-moi	<i>tell me</i>	ne me dites pas	<i>do not tell me</i>
donnez-m'en	<i>give me half</i>	ne m'en donnez	<i>do not give me</i>
la moitié	<i>of it</i>	point	<i>any</i>
songez-y sérieusement	<i>think of it seriously</i>	n'y songez pas	<i>do not think of it</i>

REMARK. If the pronouns *me, te, moi, toi*, intervene betwixt an imperative and an infinitive, *me, te*, are used when the imperative is without a regimen direct.

## EXAMPLES.

venez me parler,	<i>come and speak to me</i>
va te faire coiffer	<i>go and get thy hair dressed.</i>



But *moi, toi*, are used if the imperative have a regimen direct.

## EXAMPLES.

laissez-moi faire  
fais-toi coiffer

let me do it  
get thy hair dressed

226. If *moi, toi*, when placed after the imperative, be followed by the pronoun, *en*, they are changed into *me, te*.

## EXAMPLES.

donnez-m'en give me some | retourne-t'en go back

227. When there are two imperatives joined together by the conjunctions *et, ou*, it is more elegant to repeat the pronoun before the second verb.

## EXAMPLES.

polissez-le sans cesse et le repolissez polish and re-polish it continually  
gardez-les, ou les renvoyez keep them or send them back

## EXERCISE.

Listen to *me*, do not condemn *me*, without a hearing. Com-  
écouter \* \* m'entendre se

plain thou hast just cause of complaint; however, do not com-  
plaindre un sujet plainte

plain too bitterly of the injustice of mankind. Give some. Do  
amèrement art. homme pl.

not give any. Think (of it). Do not think of it. Repeat to them  
y

Continually, that, without honesty, one can' never succeed in the  
World. Do not repeat to them continually the same things. Ac-

knowledge him as your master, and obey him. Tread upon  
reconnaître pour lui marcher

that spider and kill it.  
araignée f. écraser

228. When several pronouns accompany a verb, *me, te, se, nous, vous*, must precede the others: *le, la, les*, come before *lui, leur*; *y* comes before *en*, and *en* is always the last.

## EXAMPLES.

Prêtez-moi ce livre; je vous le  
rendrai demain; si vous me  
le refusez, je saurai m'en pas-  
ser

lend me that book; I will return  
it to you to-morrow; if you refuse  
me, I can make shift without it.

aurez-vous la force de le leur dire ?	will you have resolution enough to tell it them ?
il n'a pas voulu vous y mener	he would not take you there
je vous y en porterai	I will bring you some there

EXCEPTION. In an imperative sentence, when affirmative, *le, la, les*, are always placed first, as, *donnez-le-moi*, give it me, *offrez-la-lui*, offer it to him; *conduisez-les-y*, conduct them thither; and *moi* is placed after *y*, as *menez-y-moi*, carry me thither: but *nous* must precede *y*, as, *menez-nous-y* carry us thither.

## EXERCISE.

You wish to make a present to your sister. (There is) a beautiful fan you should present her with it. (How many) éventail m. — devoir cond-1 offrir lui \* que de people are there without merit and without occupation, who (would gens \* \* ne tenir be mere nothings) in society, did not gaming introduce à rien cond-1 art. si art. jeu m. introduire ind-2 them (into it). I shall speak to them (about it) and give you a y en je rendre ind-7 faithful account of it. It is certain that old G ron te has re-exact 2 compte m. 1 art. fused his daughter to Valere; but because he does not give her to him, it does not follow. That he will give her to you. s'en suivre

229. REMARK. The word *m me* is sometimes added to the pronouns, *moi, toi, soi, nous, vous, eux, lui, elle, elles*, to assist in specifying more particularly the person or thing spoken of.

## EXAMPLES.

ils se sont perdus eux m�mes	they have ruined themselves.
le monde estime bien des choses	the world prizes many things
qui, en elles-m�mes, sont fort m�prisables	which, in themselves, are worthless

## DIRECTIONS ON THE USE OF THE PROPER PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

230. The direct regimen *me, te, le, la, nous, vous, les*, m. f. are used when the verb is active, i.e. when it requires no preposition before the noun which it governs, such as *donner un livre*.

## EXAMPLES.

je le donne	I give it
vous le donnerez	you will give it
ne le donnez pas	do not give it

*Aimer une personne.*

## EXAMPLES.

je le donne	<i>we love him</i>
aimez-la	<i>love her</i>
il ne les aime pas	<i>he does not like them</i>
aimez-moi	<i>love me</i>

INDIRECT, (*dative.*)

231. The indirect *me, te, lui, m. f. nous, vous, leur, m. f.* are used when the preposition *à* must be placed before the noun they represent.

Thus, *donner une chose à une personne.*

## EXAMPLES.

nous lui donnerons un gâteau	<i>we will give her a cake</i>
lui avez-vous envoyé la lettre ?	<i>have you sent him the letter ?</i>
ne me donnez pas de vin	<i>do not give me any wine</i>

*À moi, à toi, à lui, à elle, à nous, à vous, à eux,* serve also to express the dative ; but in four cases only.

1st. After *penser, aller, courir, venir, boire, en avoir.*

## EXAMPLES.

nous penserons à lui	<i>we will think of him</i>
ils coururent à elle	<i>they ran to her</i>
en avez-vous à moi ?	<i>are you speaking to me ?</i>

2nd. After reflected verbs,

adressez-vous à lui	<i>apply to him</i>
---------------------	---------------------

3rd. After *c'est.*

## EXAMPLES.

<i>c'est à moi à y aller</i>	<i>it is my turn to go</i>
<i>est-ce à vous à parler ainsi ?</i>	<i>is it for you to speak to me in this manner ?</i>

4. When there are two datives

## EXAMPLES.

je l'enverrai à vous et à elle	<i>I will send it to you and her</i>
il parlait à mon frère et à moi	<i>he was speaking to my brother and me</i>

232. *Y* is used in speaking of things in all cases, and is of both genders and numbers.\* Thus, of a *lettre f.* we say.

mettez-y l'adresse	<i>put the direction to it</i>
j'y ajouterai un mot	<i>I will add a word to it</i>

---

\* There are one or two exceptions mentioned in the following pages.



Of a project, *projet* m.

## EXAMPLES.

*vous n'y réfléchissez pas assez*      *you do not sufficiently think upon it ?*  
*pensez-y un peu plus*      *consider it a little more*

Of threats, menaces, f. pl.

## EXAMPLE.

*je n'y fais aucune attention*      *I do not mind them*

## EXERCISE.

1. He has been speaking *to them* with such energy, as has astonished *them*.
  2. Women ought to be very circumspect ; for a mere appearance is sometimes more prejudicial *to them* than a real fault.
  3. He comes up to me with a smiling air, and pressing my hand, says : My friend, I expect you to-morrow at my house.
  4. He said *to me* : Wilt thou ever torment thyself for advantages, the enjoyment 2 of which I could not render *thee* more happy ? Cast thy eyes round *thee* : see how every thing smiles on *thee*, and seems to invite *thee* to prefer a retired and tranquil life to the tumultuous pleasures of a vain 2 world 1.
  5. The ambitious man \* agitates, torments, and wastes *himself* to obtain the places or the honours to which he aspires ; and when he has obtained *them*, he is still dissatisfied.
  6. I have known *him* since his childhood, and I always loved *him* on account of the goodness of his temper.
  7. That woman is always engaged in doing good works : you see *her* constantly consoling the unhappy, relieving the poor, reconciling enemies, and promoting the happiness of every one around *her*.
  8. The more you live with men, the more you will be convinced that it is necessary to know *them* well before you \* form a connection with them.
  9. Enjoy the pleasures of the world, I consent *to it* ; but never give yourself up *to them*.
- (1.) Such energy as, *une force qui*.
  - (2.) Mere, *simple* ; to be more prejudicial, *faire plus de tort*.
  - (3.) Comes up with, *aborder de* ; pressing, *serrer* ; my hand, *la main* ; says, *il me dit* ; at my house, *chez moi*.
  - (4.) Incessantly, *sans cesse* ; advantages, *des biens* ; could, *savoir*, cond-1 ; cast, *porter* ; thy, *art* ; smiles, *sourire à*.
  - (5.) Destroys, *consumer* ; to, *pour*.
  - (6.) Have known, *connaître*, ind-1 ; loved, ind-4 ; on account, *cause* ; the goodness of his, (*his good*) ; temper, *caractère*, m.
  - (7.) In, *à* ; works, *œuvres*, f. pl. ; constantly, *sans cesse* ; consoling, etc. inf-1 relieving, *assister* ; promoting, *faire* ; every one around her, *tout ce qui l'environne*.
  - (8.) Live, ind-7 ; be convinced, *se convaincre*, ind-7 ; before, *avant de* ; form a connection, *vous lier*.
  - (9.) Enjoy, *jouir de* ; give yourself up, *se livrer*.

233. The regimen indirect *de moi, de toi, de lui, d'elle, de nous, de vous, d'eux, d'elles*, (the genitive and ablative cases) are used when the proposition *de* comes before the noun they represent. Thus,

*Parler d'une personne, d'un homme.*

#### EXAMPLES.

nous ne parions pas de lui      *we do not speak of him*

*Dépendre de son père.*

#### EXAMPLES.

je dépends de lui	<i>I am dependant on him</i>
ils n'ont pas le droit de me parler	<i>they have no right to speak to me</i>
ainsi, puisque je ne dépends pas d'eux.	<i>in this manner, I am not their dependant.</i>

234. *En* is used in speaking of things, and is of both genders and numbers ; as *s'abstenir de vin*.

#### EXAMPLES.

le vin m'est contraire, je m'en abstiendrai	<i>wine is bad for me I will abstain from it</i>
vous devriez vous en abstenir	<i>you should abstain from it</i>

#### EXERCISE.

1. He was suddenly taken ill of the cholera and died of it.
2. He is so absurd that every one laughs at him.
3. What reason has he to complain of me, what harm have I done him ?
4. His fortune is very large, it is true, but he does not know how \* to enjoy it.
5. Those are things which make a deep impression on the mind, I will remember them as long as I live.
6. Your things are exactly as they were when you left, no one has used them.
7. If you meet my brother; have the goodness to tell him that I shall want him at 5 o'clock precisely.
8. She must not be uneasy ; we will think about her, but she must have patience.

- (1.) *Avoir une attaque soudaine de*, ind-4; *mourir de*, ind-4.
- (2.) *Ridicule, se moquer de*.
- (3.) *Se plaindre de*; harm, mal.
- (4.) It is true, *j'en conviens*; to enjoy, *jouir de*.
- (5.) Those are things, *ce sont de ces choses*; to remember, *se souvenir de*; to live, *vivre*, ind-7.
- (6.) Things, *affaires*; as they were, *dans l'état où elles étaient*; to leave, *partir*, ind-4; to use, *se servir de*, ind-4.
- (7.) To tell, *de dire*; to want, *avoir besoin de*,
- (8.) To be uneasy, *s'inquiéter*; to think about, *s'occuper de*; to have patience, *patienter*.

PARTICULAR USE OF *y* AND *en*.

235. These two pronouns are very frequently used in French, in cases when they have no equivalent in English, or at least when it is almost ever understood ; they may be then considered as relative personal pronouns.

## EN.

*En* stands for *some of them, some of it, any of them, one, any*, and refers to a noun antecedently named.

## EXAMPLES.

si vous n'avez pas de manteau,	if you have no cloak, I will lend
je vous <i>en</i> prêterai un	you one
avez-vous un canif ? oui, j' <i>en</i> ai un	have you got a pen-knife ? yes, I have
ces oranges sont fort bonnes,	these oranges are very good, send
envoyez-m' <i>en</i> deux douzaines	me two dozen
à propos de fleurs, j' <i>en</i> ai de bien belles à vous montrer	talking of flowers, I have beautiful ones to show you

## Y.

236. *Y* has generally been called an adverb because it may commonly be rendered by *these, here*, always understood ; but it is frequently used for *in it, into it*, when it relates to *things* as well as to *places*.

## EXAMPLES.

cette affaire est fort obscure, je n'y conçois rien	this is a very obscure affair, I can make nothing of it
cela ne m'intéresse nullement, je n'y suis pour rien	this does not at all concern me, I have nothing to do with it
si vous allez au spectacle, je serai bien aise d'y aller avec vous	if you go to the play, I shall be glad to go with you

*Y* is used in speaking of persons with the verb *se fier*, and with *penser* in reference to a dead person.

## EXAMPLES.

c'est un honnête homme, vous pouvez vous y fier	he is honest man, you may trust to him
il est mort, on n'y pense plus	he is dead, no one thinks of him any more

## EXERCISE.

1. Do you want a pen ? here is a very good one.
2. He was in the garden then, but I do not think he is now.
3. Since you like game, I will send you a basket.
4. As to their father, although he has not been dead six months, they think no more of him.



5. I never could play chess ; I cannot imagine, what pleasure you find in it.

(1.) To want, *falloir à* ; here is, *voici*.

(2.) *Etre*, ind-2 ; he is, *être*, subj-1.

(3.) Game, *gibier*, m.

(4.) Although, etc., *quoiqu'il y ait six mois qu'il est mort*.

(5.) Could, *pouvoir*, ind-4 ; I cannot, *je ne saurais*.

#### USE OF *ce* INSTEAD OF *il*, *elle*, *ils*, *elles*, IN DESCRIPTIVE AND EXPLANATORY SENTENCES.

237. When we speak in reference to an object already named, *il*, *elle*, *ils*, *elles*, are used according to its gender and number ; but when we define objects, when we express what they are, *ce* must be used, as well of persons as of things, thus :

qu'est-ce que c'est que ce grand bâtiment, est-ce une église ?	what is that large building, is it a church ?
non, c'est la maison commune	no, it is the town-hall
savez-vous qui est ce monsieur ?	do you know who that gentlemen is ?
oui, c'est un Allemand	yes, he is a German
chacun admire Cicéron et Démosthènes ; ce sont les plus grands orateurs de l'antiquité	every one admires Cicero and Demosthenes, they are the greatest orators of antiquity

#### EXERCISE.

1. White negroes are degenerated blacks, but they are not a distinct species of men.

2. I will not trouble myself about them, they are ungrateful children.

3. What flowers are those ? they are tulips just come from Holland ; they cost me ten guineas each.

4. I do not know him, but they tell me he is a clever architect.

5. Have you noticed this box ? it is a snuff-box which belonged to my grand-father.

6. She is certainly the prettiest girl in the room.

(1.) Distinct *particulière*.

(2.) To trouble one's self about, *s'occuper de*.

(3.) What, etc., *comment nommez-vous ces fleurs-là* ? just, *fraîchement*.

(4.) They tell me, *on me dit que*.

(5.) Noticed, *remarqué* ; to belong, *appartenir*, ind-2.

(6.) Certainly, *bien certainement*.

#### CASES WHERE THE PRONOUNS *lui*, *eux*, *elle*, *elles*, MAY APPLY TO THINGS.

238. The personal pronouns *lui*, *elle*, *eux*, *elles*, after some prepositions, apply to persons only. Thus in speaking of a woman, we must say : *je m'approchai d'elle*, *je m'assis*

*près d'elle* ; but in speaking of a table : *je m'en approchai, je m'assis auprès.*

However with the prepositions *avec, après, à de, pour, en, etc. lui, elle, eux, elles*, may be applied to things. Thus it is correct to say of a river.

## EXAMPLE.

cette rivière est si rapide quand elle déborde, qu'elle entraîne avec elle tout ce qu'elle rencontre ; elle ne laisse après elle que du sable et des cailloux

*that river is so rapid when it overflows, that it carries away every thing it meets with in its course it leaves nothing behind but sand and pebbles.*

Of an enemy's army.

## EXAMPLE.

nous marchâmes à elle

*we marched up to them*

Of things, reasons, truth, virtues and vices personified, etc. as :

ces choses sont bonnes d'elles-mêmes

*these things are good in themselves*

j'aime le vérité au point que je sacrifierais tout pour elle

*I love truth to that degree, that I would sacrifice every thing for it*

ces raisons sont solides en elles-mêmes

*those reasons are solid in themselves*

239. After the verb, *être*, they are applied only to persons, and likewise when they are followed by the relatives *qui* and *que*, as : *c'est à elle, c'est d'elles que je parle, c'est elle-même qui vient.*

The same may be said of the pronoun *eux*, which is also generally applied to persons only, yet custom allows us to say,

ce chien et ces oiseaux font tout mon plaisir, je n'aime qu'eux ; eux seuls sont mon amusement, je ne songe qu'à eux

*this dog and these birds are all my pleasure, I love nothing but them ; they alone are my diversion, I think of nothing else*

240. *Lui* and *leur* are generally applied to persons, but are sometimes used in speaking of animals, plants, and even inanimate objects with *donner, rendre, être redevable, devoir*, etc. as :

ces chevaux sont rendus, faites leur donner un peu de vin

*those horses are exhausted, give them a little wine*

ces orangers vont périr, si on ne leur donne de l'eau

*these orange-trees will die unless they have a little water*

ces murs sont mal faits, on ne leur a pas donné assez de talus

*those walls are badly built, they have not sufficient inclination*

## EXERCISE.

1. Virtue is the first of blessings ; it is *from it* alone we are to expect happiness.

2. The labyrinth had been built upon the lake Meris, and they had given *it* a prospect proportioned to its grandeur.

3. Mountains are frequented on account of the air one breathes on them : how many people are indebted *to them* for the recovery of their health ?

4. War brings in its train numberless evils.

5. It is a delicate 2 affair 1 which must not be too deeply investigated, it must be lightly passed over.

6. I have had my house repaired, and have given *it* an appearance quite \* new.

7. Those trees are too much loaded : strip *them* of part of their fruit.

8. This book cost me a great deal, but I am indebted *to it* for my knowledge.

9. Self-love is captious ; we, however, take *it* for our \* guide ; *to it* are all our actions directed, and *from it* we take counsel.

10. These arguments, although very solid *in themselves*, yet made no impression upon him, so strong a tie is habit.

11. These reasons convinced me, and *by them* I formed my decision.

12. I leave you the care of that bird, do not forget to give *it* water.

(1.) Blessings, *bien* ; are, *devoir*.

(2.) Had been built, *on bâtir*, ind-6 ; prospect, *vue*.

(3.) On account, *à cause* ; breathes, *respirer* ; on them, *y* ; are indebted for, *devoir* , recovery, *rétablissement*.

(4.) Brings, *entraîner* ; in its train, *avec elle* ; numberless, *bien de*.

(5.) Affair, *matière* ; must, ind-1 ; be deeply investigated, *approfondir*, inf-1 ; be passed, *glisser* ; over, *dessus*.

(6.) Have had, *faire*, ind-4 ; appearance, *air*.

(7.) Strip, *ôter à* ; of part, *une partie*.

(8.) A great deal, *cher* ; knowledge, *instruction*.

(9.) We (*it is it that we*) ; to it, (*it is to it that we direct all, etc.*) ; direct, *rapporter* ; from it, (*and it is from it that etc.*)

(10.) No, *ne aucun* ; so strong, etc. (*so much habit is a, etc.*) habit, *habitude*.

(11.) And from, (*and it is from them that*) ; by, *d'après* ; formed my decision, *se décider*.

## DIFFICULTY RESPECTING THE SUPPLYING PRONOUN

*le* EXPLAINED.

241. *LE* is used in French to supply the place of an antecedent phrase, of a substantive or an adjective. In such case, its equivalent in English is *so* or *it*, which is almost ever understood.

## EXAMPLES.

je suis père, et vous *le* serez  
aussi un jour

*I am a father and some day or  
other, you will be (one) also*



ils ne sont pas aussi riches que  
nous *le* sommes  
je le ferai, si je *le* puis

*they are not so rich as we are (it,  
i. e. rich)*  
*I will do it, if I can (do it)*

LE, thus used, is declined in some cases, and not in others.

When *le* supplies the place of a substantive, it then assumes the gender and number of that substantive, as :  
*Madame, êtes-vous la mère de cet enfant ?—Oui, je la suis ;* Madam, are you the mother of that child ?—Yes, I am. *Mesdames, êtes-vous les parentes dont Monsieur m'a parlé ?—Oui, nous les sommes.*

## EXERCISE.

1. The laws of nature and decency oblige us equally to defend the honor and interest of our parents, when we can do *it* without injustice.

2. We ought not to condemn, after their death, those that have not been *condemned* during their life.

3. Is that your idea ?—Can you doubt that it is ?

4. Are you Mrs. Such-a-one ?—Yes, I am.

5. Are those your servants ?—Yes, they are.

6. Ladies, are you glad to have seen the new piece ?—Yes, we are.

7. I, a \* slave ! I, born to command ! alas ! it is but too true that I am *so*.

8. She was jealous of her authority, and she must be *so*.

9. Was there ever a girl more unhappy, and treated with more ridicule than I am ?

10. You have found me amiable : why have I ceased to appear *so* to you ?

11. Have we ever been so quiet as we are ?

12. Madam, are you married ?—Yes, I am.

13. Madam, are you the bride ?—Yes, I am.

(1.) Decency, *bienséance*.

(2.) We ought, *falloir* ; condemned, *le*.

(3.) Idea, *pensée* ; that it is, *ce être*, subj-1.

(4.) Mrs. *madame* ; such-a-one, *un tel*.

(5.) Those, *ce là* ; they, *ce*.

(6.) Ladies, *mesdames*.

(7.) Slave, *esclave* ; but, *ne que*.

(8.) Must, *devoir*, ind-2.

(9.) With more ridicule, *plus ridiculement*.

242. When *le* supplies an antecedent, adjective or a verb, it is undeclined.

## EXAMPLES.

je le ferai si je le puis (le faire) *I will do it if I can.*

Madame, êtes-vous enrhumée ?—Oui, je le suis.

Mesdames, êtes-vous contentes de ce discours ?—Oui, nous le sommes.

Fut-il jamais une femme plus malheureuse que je le suis ?

REMARK. The *le* is also undeclined, when substantives are used adjectively, as :

Madame, êtes-vous mère ? —Oui, je le suis.

Mesdames, êtes-vous parentes ?—Oui, nous le sommes.

Elle est fille, et le sera toute la vie.

But it is declined if the adjectives be used substantively, as :

Madame, êtes-vous la malade ?—Oui, je la suis.

Therefore this question : *êtes-vous fille de M. le duc !* is to be answered, *oui, je le suis* ; but this, *êtes-vous la fille de M. le duc ?* it is to be by *Oui, je la suis*.

#### REPETITION OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

243. Pronouns in the first and second persons, when the subject, must be repeated before every verb, if each of them is in different tenses. It is always even preferable to repeat them, when the verbs are in the same tense.

#### EXAMPLES

je soutiens et je soutiendrai toujours	<i>I maintain, and (I) will always maintain</i>
vous dites, et vous avez toujours dit	<i>you say, and (you) have always said</i>
accablé de douleur, je m'écriai, et je dis	<i>overwhelmed with sorrow, I exclaimed and (I) said</i>
nous nous promenions sur le haut du rocher, et nous voyions sous nos pieds, etc.	<i>we were walking upon the summit of the rock, and we saw under our feet, etc.</i>

In all cases, these pronouns must be repeated, though the tenses of the verbs be the same, if the first is followed by a regimen, or accusative.

#### EXAMPLE.

vous aimerez le seigneur votre Dieu, et vous observerez sa loi	<i>you shall love the Lord your God, and (you shall) observe his law.</i>
--	---

244. The pronouns of the third person, when the subject, are hardly ever repeated before verbs, except those verbs be in different tenses.

#### EXAMPLES.

la bonne grâce ne gâte rien ; elle ajoute à la beauté, relève la modestie, et y donne du lustre	<i>a graceful manner spoils nothing ; it adds to beauty, heightens modesty, and gives it lustre</i>
il n'a jamais rien valu, et ne vaudra jamais rien	<i>he never was good for any thing, and never will be</i>
il est arrivé ce matin, et il repartira ce soir	<i>he is arrived this morning, and (he) will set off again this evening</i>

## EXERCISE.

1. My dear child, *I* love you, and *I* shall never cease to love you : but it is that very love that I have for you which obliges me to correct you for your faults, and to punish you when you deserve it.

2. *I* heard and admired these words, which comforted me a little, but my mind was not sufficiently free to make him a reply.

3. *Thou* art young, and *thou* aimest, no doubt, at the glory of surpassing thy comrades.

4. God has said : *you* shall love your enemies, bless those that curse you, do good to those that persecute you, and pray for those who slander you. What a difference between these morals and those of philosophers !

(1.) Correct for, *réprendre de*.

(2.) Heard, *écouter* ind-2; words, *discours*, sing.; my mind., etc. (*I had not the mind, etc.*); sufficiently free, *assez libre*; to make a reply, *répondre à*.

(3.) Aimest at, *aspirer à*; surpassing, *l'emporter*, etc.

(4.) Slander, *calomnier*; between, *ae*; morals, *morale*, f.; and that, *à celle*.

However, perspicuity requires the repetition of the pronoun, when the second verb is preceded by a long incidental phrase, as : *il fond sur son ennemi, et, après l'avoir saisi d'une main victorieuse, il le renverse, comme le cruel aquilon abat les tendres moissons qui dorent la campagne*.

## EXERCISE.

1. *He* took the strongest cities, conquered the most considerable provinces, and overturned the most powerful empires.

2. *He* takes a hatchet, completely cuts down the mast which was already broken, throws it into the sea, jumps upon it amidst the furious billows, calls me by my name, and encourages me to follow him.

4. *He* marshals the soldiers, marches at their head, advances in good order towards the enemy, attacks and routs them, and after having entirely routed them, (he) cuts them to pieces.

(1.) Overturned, *renverser*.

(2.) Completely cuts down, *achever de couper*; jumps upon it *s'élan- cer dessus*; billows, *onde*.

(3.) Marshals, *ranger en bataille*; routs, *renverser*; entirely routed *achever de mettre en désordre*; cuts, *tailler*.

245. A personal pronoun, when the *subject*, must be repeated before verbs, when passing from an affirmation to a negation, and *vice versâ*, or when the verbs are joined by a conjunction, except *et* and *ni*.

## EXAMPLES.

il veut, et il ne veut pas  
il donne d'excellents principes,  
parce qu'il sait que les progrès  
ultérieurs en dépendent

he will and he will not  
he lays down excellent principles,  
because he knows that upon them  
depends all further progress



il donne et reçoit  
il ne donne ni ne reçoit

*he gives and receives  
he neither gives nor receives.*

Pronouns, when the regimen, or the object are repeated before any verb.

l'idée de ses malheurs le poursuit, le tourmente et l'accable

*the idea of his misfortunes pursues (him), torments (him), and overwhelms him*

il nous ennuie et nous obsède sans cesse.

*he wearies (us) and besets us unceasingly.*

EXCEPTION. They are not repeated before such compound verbs as express the repetition of the same action, and when the verbs are in the same tense, as :

*Je vous le dis et redis, il le fait et refait sans cesse.*

#### EXERCISE.

1. It is inconceivable how whimsical she is; from one moment to another *she* will and *she* will not.

2. The Jews are forbidden to work on the sabbath; *they* are as it \* were \* locked in slumber; *they* light no fire, and carry no water.

3. For nearly a week *she* has neither eaten nor drunk.

4. The soldier was not repressed by authority, but stopped from satiety and shame.

(1.) (*She is of a whimsical cast inconceivable*) whimsical cast, *bizarrière* f.

(2.) (*It is forbidden to*), forbidden, *défendre*; sabbath, *jour du sabbat*; locked, *enchaîné*; slumber, *repos*; light, *allumer*.

(3.) For, *depuis*; nearly, *près de*, a week, *huit jours*; has eaten.... drunk, ind-1.

(4.) Repressed, *réprimer*; stopped, *s'arrêter*, ind-3; from, *par*.

#### RELATION OF THE PRONOUN OF THE THIRD PERSON TO A NOUN EXPRESSED BEFORE.

246. The pronouns of the third person, *il ils, elle, elles, le, la, les*, must always relate to a noun, whether subject or regimen, taken only in a definite sense, antecedently expressed; but they must not be applied to a subject and regimen, at the same time.

#### EXAMPLES.

*la rose est la reine des fleurs,  
aussi est-elle l'emblème de la  
beauté*

*the rose is the queen of flowers;  
therefore it is the emblem of beauty*

*j'aime l'ananas; il est exquis*

*I like the pine-apple; it is delicious*

#### EXERCISE.

1. It is taste that selects the expressions, that combines, arranges, and varies *them*, so as to produce the greatest effect.

2. Horace answered his stupid critics not so much to instruct *them*, as to shew their ignorance, and let *them* see that they did not even know what poetry was.

3. Man embellishes nature itself: he cultivates, extends, and polishes it.

4. The Messiah is expected by the Hebrews; *he* comes and calls the Gentiles, as had been announced by the prophecies; the people that acknowledges *him* as come, is incorporated with the people that expected *him*, without a single moment of interruption.

(1.) So as to, *de manière à ce qu'elles*, subj-1.

(2.) Stupid, *st*; not so much, *moins*; as to, *pour*; show, (*to them*), *leur*, etc.; let see, *faire entendre*; was *c'était que*.

(4.) Gentiles, *Gentil*; (the prophecies had announced it); acknowledges, *reconnaître*; with, *à*; without, *sans qu'il y ait*; single, *seul*.

But the two following sentences would be equivocal:

*Racine* a imité *Euripide*, en tout  
ce qu'il a de plus beau dans  
sa *Phèdre*

le légat publia une sentence  
d'interdit; *il* dura trois mois

*Racine* has imitated *Euripides* in  
all that he has most beautiful  
in his *Phedra*

the legate published a sentence of  
interdiction; it lasted three  
months

because, in the first of these two sentences, *il* may relate, either to *Racine*, or to *Euripides*; and, from the construction of the second sentence, *il*, relating to *interdit*, appears also to relate to *légat*. Again, it is not altogether correct to say:

*nulle paix* pour l'impie; *il la*  
cherche, *elle* fuit

no peace for the wicked: he seeks  
it, it flies

Because, from the construction, the pronouns *la* and *elle* seem to relate to *nulle paix*, whereas their royal antecedent is the substantive *paix*, but without the negative *nulle*.

#### EXERCISE.

1. Poetry embraces all sorts of subjects; *it* takes in every thing that is most brilliant in history; *it* enters the fields of philosophy; *it* soars to the skies; *it* plunges into the abyss; *it* penetrates to the dead; *it* makes the universe its domain; and if this world be not sufficient, *it* creates new ones, which *it* embellishes with enchanting abodes, which *it* peoples with a thousand various inhabitants.

2. Egypt aimed at greatness; and wished to \* strike the eye at a distance, always pleasing *it* by the justness of proportion.

3. Egypt, satisfied with its own territory, where every thing was in abundance, thought not of conquests; *it* extended itself in another manner, by sending colonies to every part of the globe, and with *them* politeness and laws.

(1.) Subjects, *matière*; takes in *se charger de*; that is, *y avoir de*; (in) the fields, soars to, *s'élancer dans*; plunges, *s'enfoncer*; to *chez*:

(its domain of the universe); be sufficient, *suffire*; ones, *monde*; enchanting, *enchanté*; abodes, *demeure*; various, *divers*.

(2.) Greatness, *grand*; wished, *vouloir*; eye, pl.; at a distance, *dans l'éloignement*; (in) pleasing, *contenter*.

(3.) Was in abundance, *abonder*; thought of, *songer à*; in, *de*; by, *en*; to, *par*; part of the globe, *terre*.

#### ON THE PRONOUN *soi*.

247. *Soi* is generally accompanied by a preposition, and is used in phrases, where there is an indeterminate pronoun either expressed, or understood: *on doit rarement parler de soi*; *il est essentiel de prendre garde à soi*. In this case, it is the regimen indirect; but it may be employed without a preposition.

1. With the verb *être*, as: *en cherchant à tromper les autres, c'est souvent soi qu'on trompe* or *on est souvent trompé soi-même*, in attempting to deceive others, we frequently deceive ourselves. In this situation it is the subject

2. After *ne que*, or by apposition, as :

n'aimer que soi, c'est n'être bon à rien	to love only ourselves, is being good for very little.
penser ainsi, c'est s'aveugler soi-même	to think in this manner, is to blind one's-self

It is, in these examples, the regimen; but when *de soi* and *en soi* are used in a definite sense, in speaking of things, they mean *de sa nature* and *dans sa nature*.

#### EXERCISE.

1. To excuse in *one's-self* the follies which one cannot excuse in others, is to prefer being a fool *one's-self* to seeing others so.

2. To be too much dissatisfied with *ourselves* is a weakness; but to be too much satisfied (*with ourselves*) is (a) folly.

3. We ought to despise no one: how often have we needed the assistance of one more insignificant than *ourselves*?

4. If we did not attend so much to *ourselves*, there would be less selfishness in the world.

5. Vice is odious in *itself*.

6. The loadstone attracts iron (to *itself*.)

(1.) Follies, *sottises*; others, *autrui*; prefer, *aimer mieux*; fool, *sot*; to seeing, *que de voir*; so, *tel*.

(3.) We ought, *falloir*, ind-1; how often, *combien de fois*; we, *on*; needed the assistance, *n'avoir pas besoin*; insignificant, *petit*.

(4.) We, *on*; attend to, *s'occuper de*; selfishness, *égoïsme*.

(6.) Loadstone, *aimant*.



## POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

248. Possessive pronouns, conjunctive as : *mon, ma, mes* ; relative, as : *le mien, la mienne, les miens, les miennes*, agree in gender and number with the noun to which they are joined or are related.

ITS, their, (his, her,) which, in English, are used in reference to things, are rendered by *son, sa, ses*, according as the case requires ; thus, in speaking of England, we say :

*son* parlement est le *sanctuaire*  
de la plus sage politique  
*son* roi n'a de pouvoir que pour  
faire le bien  
elle envoie ses flottes dans toutes  
les mers

*her* parliament is the seat of the  
wisest policy  
*her* king possesses power only to do  
good  
*she* sends *her* fleet in all the seas

249. But, sometimes by the construction of the phrase, ITS may be turned by *of it* ; then, it is not rendered by a possessive pronoun, but by the personal pronoun *en*, which, as it has been explained, is placed before the verb. Thus, speaking again of England, we say :

tout enfin contribue à m'en faire  
aimer le séjour ; j'en admire  
surtout l'exacte police, en  
même temps que les lois m'en  
paraissent extrêmement sages

*in short every thing conspires to*  
*make me love its sojourn ; I par-*  
*ticularly admire the strictness of*  
*her police, at the same time that*  
*her laws appear to me extremely*  
*wise*

regardez cet arbre, n'en admi-  
rez-vous pas la fraîcheur ?

*look at that tree, do you not admire*  
*its freshness ?*

## EXERCISE.

1. A new custom was a phenomenon in Egypt ; for which reason, there never was a people that preserved so long *its* customs, *its* laws and even *its* ceremonies.

2. Solomon abandons himself to the love of women : *his* understanding fails, *his* heart weakens, and *his* piety degenerates into idolatry.

3. That superb temple was upon the summit of a hill : *its* columns were of Parian marble, and *its* gates of gold.

4. Laocoon is one of the finest statues in France : not only the whole, but all *its* features, even the least, are admirable.

5. The Thames is a magnificent river : *its* channel is so wide and so deep, below London Bridge, that several thousands of vessel lie at their ease in it.

6. This fine country is justly admired by foreigners : *its* climate is delightful, *its* soil fruitful, *its* laws wise, and *its* government just and moderate.

7. The trees of that orchard have sun enough, yet *its* fruits are but indifferent.

8. The Seine has *its* source in Burgundy, *its* mouth is at Havre-de-Grace.

9. The pyramids of Egypt astonish, both by the enormity of *their* bulk, and the justness of *their* proportions.

10. Egypt alone could erect monuments for posterity : *its* obelisks are to this day, as well for *their* beauty as for *their* height, the principal ornaments of Rome.

11. History and geography throw mutual light on each other : a \* perfect knowledge of *them* ought to enter into the plan of good education.

(1.) Phenomenon, *prodige*; for which reason, *aussi*; a *de* preserved, subj-3.

(2.) Understanding, *esprit*; declines, *baisser*; weakens, *s'affaiblir*.

(3.) Summit, *haut*; hill, *colline*; Parian, *de Paros*.

(4.) In, *qu'il y ait en*; the whole, *l'ensemble*; even, *jusqu'à*.

(5.) Magnificent, *superbe*; channel, *lit*; below, *au-dessous de*; lie at, *être à*; their, *art.*; in it, *y*.

(6.) Justly, *avec raison*; soil, *sol*; the verb *être* must be repeated.

(7.) Have sun enough, *être bien exposé*; but indifferent, *assez mauvais*.

(8.) Mouth, *embouchure*; Havre, *le Havre*.

(9.) Both, *également et*; bulk, *masse*; and *et par*.

(10.) Egypt alone could, *il n'appartenait qu'à l'Égypte de*; erect, *élever*; to this day, *encore aujourd'hui*; as well for, *autant par*; height, *hauteur*.

(11.) Throw mutual light, etc. *s'éclairer l'une par l'autre*; of them (their.)

250. *Mine, thine, his, hers, ours, yours, theirs*, which, in English, are used with *to be*, in the sense of *to belong*, are expressed, in French, by *à moi, à toi, à lui, à elle, à nous, à vous, à eux, à elles*.

#### EXAMPLES.

ce cheval est-il à vous ?

*is this horse yours ?*

on dirait à l'entendre que le monde est à lui.

*he talks as if the world were his*

251. The forms *my father's, your uncle's*, etc., etc. are also rendered *à mon père, à votre oncle*.

#### EXAMPLE.

la maison que nous habitons est *the house we inhabit is Mr. B's.*  
(ou appartient) à Monsieur B.

#### EXERCISE.

The carriage is not theirs, it is their uncle's. If this house was mine I would sell it; for I do not like its situation. You have no right to give what is not yours. This pretty dog is my sister's, I have promised to take care of it *in* her absence.

No right, *le droit de*.

In, *pendant*.

252. *Les miens, les tiens, les siens, les nôtres, les vôtres*, are used to express one's family, relations, clients, etc.

## EXAMPLES.

il est allé en Amérique avec tous les siens      *he has gone to America with all his family*  
 toi et les tiens vous avez toujours mal parlé de moi      *you and your whole race have always spoken ill of me*

253. *A friend of yours, a horse of mine, and such phrases, are turned in this manner in French, un de vos amis, un de mes chevaux.\**

## EXAMPLE.

c'est un de ses tours      *this is a trick of his*

254. in speaking to a person of his own relations, politeness requires that we put: *monsieur, madame, mademoiselle, messieurs, mesdames, mesdemoiselles*, before the possessive pronoun.

## EXAMPLES.

J'ai rencontré Monsieur votre père      *I met your father*  
 Messieurs vos frères sont-ils arrivés ?      *are your brothers come ?*

255. Custom requires the use of the possessive pronoun before the names of relations, in addressing them.

ma sœur, venez ici que je vous parle      *sister, come here, I want to speak to you*  
 mon oncle, quand partez-vous ?      *uncle, when do you go ?*

EXCEP. *Papa, maman.*

256. Possessive pronouns are repeated before every noun of the same sentence.

## EXAMPLE.

mon père et ma mère sont venus.      *my father and mother have come.*  
 donnez-moi mon habit et mon chapeau.      *give me my coat and hat.*

257. When two adjectives qualify the same noun, the pronoun possessive is repeated, if they express opposite or

---

\* *This is no business of yours, must be rendered by ce n'est pas là votre affaire, or cette affaire là ne vous regarde pas. This is applicable to any sentence which may not be turned, like the above, by this is one of his tricks; that brother of yours must, therefore, be turned by your brother.*

† Custom admits *mes père et mère*, My father and mother, instead of *mon père et ma mère*; it admits also, *ses père et mère, vos père et mère.*



incompatible qualities; it is not repeated, in the contrary case.

## EXAMPLE.

je lui ai montré mes beaux et mes vilains habits.	<i>I showed him both my fine and ugly dresses.</i>
je lui ai montré mes beaux et magnifiques habits.	<i>I showed him my beautiful and magnificent dresses.</i>

## EXERCISE.

1. I fear neither you nor yours.
2. He left France with all his family at the time of the revolution.
3. A friend of mine told me this morning that Parliament is to be dissolved.
4. That son of yours will give you a great deal of trouble.
5. Is your mother returned from the country?
6. Allow me to congratulate you on your brother's appointment.
7. Cousin, I am glad to see you, when did you return?
8. I believe that his father and mother are dead.

- (1.) *Ne craindre ni.*
- (2.) *To leave, abandonner.*
- (3.) *Dire, ind-4; is to be, etc., que l'en va dissoudre le.*
- (4.) *Trouble, embarras.*
- (5.) *Appointment, nomination.*
- (7.) *When did you, etc., depuis quand êtes vous de retour?*

## PARTS OF THE BODY, PHYSICAL AND INTELLECTUAL FACULTIES.

258. There is peculiarity of construction with regard to these, which require particular attention and notice. The French in speaking of them do not, generally, make use of the possessive pronoun, but of the definite article.

## EXAMPLES.

j'ai mal à la tête*,	<i>I have a pain in my head.</i>
j'ai reçu un coup de feu au bras droit,	<i>I received a shot in my right arm.</i>
il a perdu l'esprit.	<i>he has lost his senses.</i>
mieux vaut perdre la vie que l'honneur,	<i>better lose one's life than one's honour.</i>
la tête me fait mal,	<i>my head aches</i>

259. When speaking of any thing done to any part of the body, or of the understanding, such as *to wash one's hands*,

---

\* The reason of this custom is that there cannot be any ambiguity as to whose head is aching, and, consequently, that the definite article is sufficient.

*to improve one's mind*, a pronoun, in the dative case, is placed in conjunction with the verb, in order to show *whose hands, whose understanding* are thus affected ; *me laver les mains, lui former l'esprit*, to wash my hands, to form his mind.

If the thing is done *to ourselves*, and *by ourselves*, the verb is reflected.

## EXAMPLES.

je me lave les mains,	<i>I wash my hands, or I wash the hands to myself.</i>
tu te coupes le doigt,	<i>you cut your finger.</i>
il se fait la barbe,	<i>he shaves his beard.</i>
nous nous rinçons la bouche.	<i>we wash our mouths.</i>
nous nous sommes lavé les mains,	<i>we have washed our hands.</i>
vous vous formez l'esprit,	<i>you improve your mind.</i>
ils s'enrichissent la mémoire,	<i>they enrich their memory.</i>

260. If the thing is done *to another*, the indirect regimen, *me, te, lui, nous, vous, leur*, are used with the verb, according to the rules 224, 225, and 225\*.

## EXAMPLES.

vous me blessez la main,	<i>you hurt my hand, or you hurt the hand to me.</i>
tenez-moi la tête,	<i>hold my head.</i>
vous lui avez cassé le bras,	<i>you have broken his arm.</i>
ils nous ont fendu la tête,	<i>they split our head.</i>
vous ai-je marché sur le pied ?	<i>did I tread on your foot ?</i>
on leur a arraché les yeux,	<i>they tore their eyes out.</i>

## EXERCISE.

1. Our carriage passed over his body, and broke two ribs.
2. Writing so long makes\* my hand ache.
3. She was so shocked by the sudden death of her husband, that she lost her mind.
4. Come give me your hand, let us be friends.
5. Do not cut your nails with my penknife, you will spoil it.
6. Where did he lose his leg ?
7. You have not washed your face.
8. Who has cut your hair ?
9. Have you not cut your finger ?
10. Last year, I sprained my foot, by leaping over a ditch.
11. The wound is so bad that they say they will be obliged to amputate his leg.
12. She took my hand, and put a pretty ring on my little finger.

(1.) To pass over, *passer*.

(2.) *A force d'écrire* ; to ache, *faire mal*.

(3.) Shocked, *affecté* ; to lose *en perdre*, ind-3.

(5.) Nails, *ongles*.

- (6.) To lose, *perdre* ind-4.  
 (8.) Hair, *les cheveux*.  
 (10.) To sprain, *se donner une entorse à*.  
 (11.) They will be obliged, *il faudra*.  
 (12.) Put, *mettre*, ind-3; on, *à*.

261. If however, the part of the body spoken of is the subject of the verb, it is then necessary to use the possessive pronoun, otherwise there would be imbiguity.

#### EXAMPLES.

je vois que ma jambe enfle,      *I see my leg is swelling.*  
 son esprit succomba,      *his mind failed.*

In some other cases, it is also necessary to use the possessive pronoun for the sake of clearness.

#### EXAMPLES.

*il* lui donna sa main à baiser,      *he gave him his hand to kiss.*  
*elle* a donné hardiment son bras au      *she courageously presented her*  
 chirurgien,      *arm to the surgeon.*

#### EXERCISE.

1. In this interview, they made each other presents; she gave him *her* portrait, and he gave her his finest diamond.

2. A young surgeon preparing to bleed the great Condé, this prince said to him smiling, do not you tremble to bleed me? I, my lord, no, certainly; it is not I, it is you who ought to tremble. The prince, charmed with the reply, immediately gave him *his* arm.

(1.) Interview, *entrevue*; made each other, *se faire mutuellement*.

(2.) Preparing, *se disposer*; bleed, *saigner*; smiling, *d'un air riant*; it is not I, (it is not to me); it is you, (it is to you); who ought to, *de*; reply, *repartie*. f.

262, Although verbs which are conjugated with two pronouns of the same person generally remove every kind of amphibology, yet custom authorizes some familiar expressions, although the possessive pronoun seems to be redundant, as:

*il se tient ferme sur ses pieds,*      *he stands firm upon his feet.*  
*je l'ai vu, de mes propres yeux,*      *I have seen it with my own eyes.*

When speaking of an habitual complaint, the possessive pronoun is also properly used, as:

*Sa migraine l'a repris,*      *his head-ache is returned.*

#### EXERCISE.

1. Whatever he may do, he always finds himself safe.

2. Can you still doubt the truth of what I tell you? Would you ask a stronger proof than that I give you, it is that I heard it, yes, heard it with *my* own ears.



3. *My* gout does not allow me a moment's repose.

4. It is in vain that I exhort you to work and study ; *your* idleness, that cruel disease under which you labour, renders useless all the exhortations of friendship.

(1.) Finds himself, *se retrouver* ; safe, *sur ses jambes*.

(2.) Can, *cond-1* ; doubt, *douter de* ; ask, *exiger*.

(3.) Allow, *laisser*.

(4.) It is in vain that I, *je* *avoir beau* ; you labour, *qui vous travaille*.

## DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

For their concord with the noun, see Nos. 70, 71, 72.

263. *ETRE*, used in conjunction with *ce*, must be in the singular, although relating to the first and second person plural.

### EXAMPLES :

<i>c'est moi qui l'ai dit,</i>	<i>it is I who said so</i>
<i>ce sera vous qui en jouirez,</i>	<i>you will be the person to enjoy it.</i>
<i>est-ce nous qui vous avons trompé ?</i>	<i>is it we who deceived you ?</i>
<i>ce n'est pas lui que j'ai envoyé chercher,</i>	<i>he is not the person I sent for.</i>

264. With regard to the third person plural, the verb *être* is sometimes plural, sometimes singular ; this difference does not arise from any rule or principle, but merely from custom, and, as it cannot be explained, an example of each case is given for reference.

*C'EST* with *eux, elles*.

### EXAMPLES.

<i>ce sont eux,</i>	<i>est-ce eux ?</i>
<i>ce sont elles,</i>	<i>est-ce elles ?</i>
<i>ce furent eux,</i>	<i>est-ce que ce furent-eux ?</i>
<i>ce seront eux,</i>	<i>sera-ce eux ou elles ?</i>
<i>que ce soient eux,</i>	<i>seraient-ce eux ou elles ?</i>
<i>que ce fussent eux,</i>	

265. *C'EST* with nouns substantives.

### EXAMPLES.

<i>ce sont les français qui,</i>	<i>sont-ce les français qui,</i>
<i>c'étaient les gardes qui,</i>	<i>étaient-ce les gardes ?</i>
<i>ce seront les anglais qui,</i>	<i>est-ce que ce seront les anglais ?</i>
<i>ce furent les allemands qui,</i>	<i>est-ce que ce furent les allemands ?</i>
<i>ce sont ses élèves, qui lui ont fait ce présent,</i>	<i>his pupils have made him this present.</i>
<i>on dit que ce seront les grenadiers, qui feront le service du château,</i>	<i>they say the grenadiers are to be on duty at the castle.</i>
<i>sont-ce les honneurs que vous cherchez ?</i>	<i>is it honours that you seek ?</i>

266. *Ce* is used before *être*, instead of the pronouns *il*, *elle*, *ils*, *elles*, in reference to a noun, singular or plural, antecedently named, at the beginning of the sentence which declares the nature or the actions of such a noun. Thus, having mentioned the Phenicians, we say :

ce furent eux qui inventèrent l'écriture.	<i>they were the inventors of writing.</i>
lisez Homère et Virgile : ce sont les plus grands poètes de l'antiquité.	<i>read Homer and Virgil : they are the best poets of antiquity.</i>
la douceur l'affabilité et une certaine urbanité, distinguent l'homme qui vit dans le grand monde ; ce sont là les marques auxquelles on le reconnaît.	<i>gentleness, affability, and a certain urbanity, distinguish the man that frequents polite company ; these are marks by which he may be known.</i>
avez-vous lu Platon ? c'est un des plus beaux génies de l'antiquité.	<i>have you read Plato ? he is one of the greatest geniuses of antiquity.</i>

But when the verb *être* is followed by an adjective, or by a substantive taken adjectively, *il* or *elle*, must be used.

lisez Démosthènes et Cicéron ; ils sont très-éloquents,	<i>read Demosthenes and Cicero ; they are very eloquent.</i>
j'ai vu l'hôpital de Greenwich ; il est magnifique et digne d'une grande nation,	<i>I have seen Greenwich Hospital ; it is superb and worthy of a great nation.</i>
compteriez-vous sur Valère ? ignorez-vous qu'il est homme à ne jamais revenir de ses premières idées ?	<i>would you rely upon Valère ? do you not know that he is a man who will never abandon his first opinions ?</i>

267. A distinction is made in English, as to the singular or the plural, in sentences like these, *this is my horse*, *these are my children* ; *ce* is again used in French before both numbers.

#### EXAMPLES.

c'est-là mon cheval,	<i>ce</i> sont mes enfans
	<i>or,</i>
voici <i>or</i> voilà mon cheval,	voici mes enfans,

#### EXERCISE.

1. It is *we* who have drawn that misfortune upon \* us, through our thoughtlessness and imprudence.

2. *It was* the Egyptians that first observed the course of the stars, regulated the year, and invented arithmetic.

3. Peruse attentively Plato and Cicero: *they are* the two philosophers of antiquity who have given us the most sound and luminous ideas upon morality.

4. If you are intended for the pulpit, read over and over again Bourdaloue and Massillon : *they are both very eloquent* ; but the aim of the former is to convince, and that of the latter to persuade.

5. Are not these the gloves you *bought* yesterday ? This is not my house. These are not my books ; mine are in another room.

(1.) Have drawn, *s'attirer* ; thoughtlessness, *légèreté*.

(2.) First, *les premiers* ; stars, *astres*,

(3.) Peruse, *lire* ; sound, *sain* ; morality, *morale*.

(4.) Are intended for, *se destiner à* ; pulpit, *chaire* ; read over and over again, *lire et relire sans cesse* ; aim but.

(5.) To buy, *acheter*, ind-4.

268. *CE* is much used in conjunction with *qui*, *dont*, *à quoi*, *que*, in the sense of *what*, *that which*, *that thing which*. It is used in speaking of things only, and the adjective which relates to it, is of the masculine gender singular.

#### EXAMPLE.

*ce qui flatte est plus dangereux*      *what flatters is more dangerous*  
*que ce qui offense,*      *than what offends.*

*Ce*, joined to the relative pronouns, *qui*, *que*, *dont* and *quoi*, has, in some instances, a construction peculiar to itself. Both *ce* and the relative pronoun that follows it, form with the verb which they precede, the subject of another phrase, of which the verb is always *être*. Now, *être* may be followed by another verb, an adjective, or a noun.

When *être* is followed by another verb, the demonstrative *ce* must be repeated, as :

*ce que j'aime le plus, c'est d'être*      *what I like most is to be alone.*  
*seul*

When followed by an adjective, the demonstrative *ce* is not repeated, as :

*ce dont vous venez de me parler*      *what you have been mentioning to*  
*est horrible*      *me is horrid.*

When *être* is followed by a substantive, the demonstrative may either be repeated, or not, at pleasure, except in the case of a plural, or of a personal pronoun, Thus :

*ce que je dis, est la vérité, or c'est*      *what I say is true*  
*la vérité*

*ce qui m'indigne, ce sont les in-*      *what provokes me, are the injuries*  
*justices, qu'on ne cesse de*      *which are continually commit-*  
*faire*      *ted*

*ce qui m'arrache au sentiment*      *what alleviates the grief that op-*  
*qui m'accable, c'est vous*      *presses me, is you*



## EXERCISE.

1. *What* is astonishing is not *what* is pleasing.
2. *What* the miser thinks least of, is to enjoy his riches.
3. *What* pleases us in the writings of the ancients, is to see that they have taken nature as a model, and that they have painted her with noble simplicity.
4. *What* that good king has done for the happiness of his people, deserves to be handed down to the remotest posterity.
5. *What* constitutes poetry is not the exact number and regular cadence of syllables: but *it is* the sentiment which animates every thing, the lively fictions, bold figures, \* beauty and variety of the imagery: *it is* the enthusiasm, fire, impetuosity, force, a something in the words and thoughts which nature alone can impart.
6. *What* we justly admire in Shakespeare *are* those characters always natural and always well \* sustained.
7. *What* keeps me attached to life, is *you*, my son, whose tender age has still need of my care and advice.

- (1.) To be astonishing, *étonner*; to be pleasing, *plaire*.
- (2.) What, (that to which); miser, *avare*.
- (3.) As a, *pour*.
- (4.) Deserves, *être digne*; to be handed down, *être transmis*; remotest, *la plus reculée*.
- (5.) Constitutes, *faire*; exact, *fixe*; lively, *vif*; imagery, *image*, pl; a something, *un je ne sais quoi*; words, *parole*; impart, *donner*.
- (6.) We, *on*; justly, *avec justice*; natural, *dans la nature*; sustained, *soutenu*.
- (7.) Keeps attached, *attacher*; care advice, pl.

269. *Celui, celle, ceux, celles* are frequently used in conjunction with the relatives *qui, dont, auquel, à laquelle*, and *que* in the sense of *he who, she who, they who*, or *whom, whichever, whoever*, and *that which*, etc.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>celui qui</i> ne pense qu'à lui seul,	<i>he who</i> thinks of nobody but him-
dispense les autres d'y penser	self, excuses others from think-
	ing of him.
<i>voire nouvelle</i> est plus sûre que	<i>your intelligence</i> is more authentic
<i>celle qu'on</i> débitait hier,	than that which was circulated
	yesterday
<i>celui qui</i> arrivera le premier	<i>whichever</i> comes first shall have it.
<i>l'aura,</i>	
<i>ce n'est pas là celui</i> dont nous	<i>this is not the one we were speak-</i>
<i>parlions,</i>	ing of. <i>It was not this we were</i>
	<i>speaking of.</i>

In these two cases it is applied both to persons and things.

270. *Celui, celle, etc.* are also followed by a genitive case.

## EXAMPLE.

cette maison ne m'appartient pas, *this house does not belong to me,*  
c'est celle de mon oncle, *it is my uncle's.*

271. WHICH, standing for *that which, a thing which*, and having a sentence for its antecedent, is rendered by *ce qui* in French.

## EXAMPLES.

il a plu toute la nuit, *ce qui nous* *it rained all night, which pre-*  
a empêchés de sortir ce matin *vented our going out this morn-*  
*ing.*

272. *This day week, this day month, this day twelve months*, are rendered thus : *d'aujourd'hui en huit, dans huit jours, dans un mois, au bout d'un an.*

273. *Celui* is sometimes omitted, and this turn gives strength and elegance to the expression, as :

qui veut trop se faire craindre, *se* *he who wishes to make himself too*  
fait rarement aimer *much feared, seldom makes him-*  
*self beloved.*

274. *Ceci* and *cela* apply only to things, and when they have not been named, and are mentioned in an indeterminate manner.

ne touchez pas à cela *do not touch that*

However, in the familiar style, custom authorizes us to say, in speaking of one person individually, or of many collectively ; *cela est heureux ! cela croupit dans la fange ; cela est gueux et fier, etc.*

## EXERCISE.

1. *Whichever of you* shall be found to excel the others both in mind and body, shall be acknowledged king of the island.

2. These are admirable pictures : *these* are after the manner of Rubens, and *those* after the manner of Van-Huisum.

3. Why are the statues of the most celebrated modern sculptors, notwithstanding the perfection to which the arts have been carried, so much inferior *to those* of the ancients ?

4. *He* whose soul, glowing, as it were, with divine fire, shall represent to himself the whole of nature, and shall breathe into objects that spirit of life which animates them, those affecting traits which delight and ravish us, will be a man of real genius.

5. *He that* judges of others by himself, is liable to many mistakes.

6. *He that* is easily offended, discovers his weak side, and affords his enemies an opportunity of taking advantage of it.

7. *He who* loves none but himself, deserves not to be loved by others.

8. I have shown my flowers to you, but you have not seen my sister's yet.

9. I cannot lend you my horse to-day, but you may ride my brother's, he is not going out.

10. Come this day week, and I will pay you.

(1.) Be found to excel the other, *on juger vainqueur*; both in, *et pour* (repeated.)

(2.) These are, *voilà de*; picture, *tableau*; are after, *être dans*; manner, *genre*.

(3.) Are, (to be placed before *so much inferior*); have been carried (active voice), with, *on*; inferior, *au-dessous*.

(4.) Glowing with, *enflammé de*; as it were, *pour ainsi dire*; the whole of, *tout*; shall breathe into, *répandre sur*; affecting, *touchant*; delight, *séduire*; real, *vrai*.

(5.) By, *d'après*; liable, *exposé*; mistake, *méprise*.

(6.) Is offended, *s'offenser*; weak side, *faible*; affords, *fournir à*; of taking advantage, *profiter*.

275. It signifying *that*, *that thing*, is also expressed by *cela*.

*vous rentrez tard, et cela lui dé-*  
*plaît,*

*you keep late hours, and it dis-*  
*pleases him.*

### RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

276. *Qui*, when it is the subject, relates equally to persons and things, of both numbers and genders.

#### EXAMPLES.

<i>l'homme qui joue perd son temps,</i>	<i>the man who games loses his time.</i>
<i>le livre, qui plaît le plus, n'est,</i>	<i>the book which pleases most is not</i>
<i>pas toujours le plus utile,</i>	<i>always the most useful.</i>

But when *qui* is the regimen, that is, the object or accusative of a verb, or when it is governed by a preposition, such as *de*, *à*, *sans*, *par*, etc, it can only be used of persons, or of things personified.

#### EXAMPLES.

<i>quand on est délicat et sage dans</i>	<i>he who is wise and discriminate in</i>
<i>ses goûts, on ne s'attache pas,</i>	<i>his choice, does not form an attach-</i>
<i>sans savoir qui l'on aime,</i>	<i>ment, without knowing whom he</i>
	<i>loves.</i>
<i>l'homme à qui appartient ce beau</i>	<i>the man to whom this fine garden</i>
<i>jardin est très-riche,</i>	<i>belongs, is very rich.</i>
<i>de qui parlez-vous ?</i>	<i>of whom do you speak ?</i>
<i>à qui en enverrez-vous ?</i>	<i>to whom will you send some ?</i>
<i>ne voulez-vous pas me dire</i>	<i>will you not tell me whom you were</i>
<i>avec qui vous étiez ?</i>	<i>with ?</i>
<i>qui inviterons-nous ?</i>	<i>whom shall we invite ?</i>

277. *Qui* for *whom* is particularly used in interrogative sentences. In any other, as in the second of these examples, *auquel* may properly be substituted to it.

278. *What*, as the object or direct regimen of an interrogative verb, is rendered by *que*.



## EXAMPLES.

que faites-vous ?  
que dit-il ?

*what are you doing ?  
what is he saying ?*

279. When the regimen indirect is expressed by the preposition *de*, then *dont* should be preferred to *de qui*. It is better to say : *la femme dont vous parlez*, than *de qui* ; however, when the verb expresses transmission from one individual to another, *de qui* must be used, as,

celui de qui je tiens cette nouvelle *the person from whom I had that intelligence.*

280. Relative pronouns must not be separated from their antecedent, when that antecedent is a noun.

## EXAMPLE.

*un jeune homme qui est docile aux conseil qu'on lui donne, et qui aime à en recevoir, aura infailliblement du mérite,* *a young man who is obedient to the advice that is given him and who loves to receive some, will infallibly acquire merit.*

REMARK. In some phrases, *qui* may be separated from the substantive by several words, when these words serve to qualify the substantive, and are so connected with it, as to give the idea of one thing only, as

Il a fallu, avant toute chose, vous faire lire dans l'écriture sainte, *l'histoire du peuple de Dieu, qui fait le fondement de la religion.*

This sentence is very correct, because as *du peuple* determines the kind of history, and *de Dieu* the kind of people, the mind necessarily goes back to the substantive *histoire*, to which the incidental phrase, *du peuple de Dieu*, refers.

## EXERCISE.

1 I will show you a watch, which did not cost me half so much as yours, and which is a great deal better,

2. If you buy any furniture, buy that which will be durable, in preference to that which is elegant only.

3. Could I ever expect that a man for whom I made such sacrifices, and to whom I devoted so much of my time, would thus abandon me in the moment of need ?

4. I cannot name the man whom I have this report from, but I can tell you he is trustworthy.

5. Whom is this letter for ?

6. Pray, what have you done with the pencil case which was upon the table this morning ? I cannot find it any where.

7. That man is truly happy who can be content with his lot.

[1.] Cost, *coûter*, ind-4 ; half so much as, *la moitié de la* ; to be better, *valoir mieux*.

(2.) Any furniture, *des meubles*. m. ; in, *de* ; only, *ne-que*.

(3.) *Pouvoir*, ind-2 ; to expect, *s'attendre que* ; to make, *faire*, ind-4 ; such, *tant de* ; to devote, *consacrer*, ind-4 ; so much of, *une si grande partie de* ; would abandon, *abandonner*, subj-3 ; in the, *au*.

(4.) Cannot, *savoir*, cond-1 ; man, *personne*, f. ; trust-worthy, *digne*, *de confiance*.

(6.) Pray, *dites-donc* ; with, *de* ; to be, *être*, ind-2 ; any where, *nulle part*

[7.] To be content with, *se contenter de*.

280. *Qui*, may likewise be separated from its antecedent, by the verb, when the antecedent is a pronoun used as the regimen direct, or object of the verb.

#### EXAMPLE.

Il la trouva *qui* pleurait à chaudes larmes, *he found her crying bitterly.*  
je le vois *qui* joue, *I see him playing.\**

281. A whole sentence may also be the antecedent of the relative pronoun *qui*.

#### EXAMPLE.

*ceux-là ne sont pas les plus mal-heureux, qui se plaignent le plus,* *those are not the most unhappy, who complain the most.*

But it is more according to grammar to say, *ceux qui se plaignent le plus ne sont pas les plus malheureux*. Observe also that the first manner of construing would be incorrect without the addition of the particle *là*.

#### EXERCISE.

1. A young man *who* loves vanity of dress, like a woman, is unworthy of wisdom and glory ; glory is only due to a heart *that* knows how \* to \* suffer pain and trample upon pleasure.

2. Thyself, O my son, my dear son, thou \* thyself *that* now enjoyest a youth so cheerful and so full of pleasure, remember that this delightful age is but a flower *which* will be 1 withered 3 almost as soon 2 as blown.

3. Men pass away like flowers, *which* open in \* the morning, and at night are withered and trampled under foot.

4. You must have a man *that* loves nothing but truth and you, *that* will speak the truth in spite of you, *that* will force all your entrenchments ; and that indispensable being is the very man whom you have sent into exile.

5. We perceived him waiting for us, quietly sitting under the shade of a tree.

---

\* See manner of rendering the English participle present, No. 398, 399.

(1.) Vanity of dress, *à se parer vainement* ; trample upon, *fouler aux pieds*.

(2.) Cheerful, *vif* ; full of, *féconde en* ; remember, *se souvenir* ; delightful, *bel* ; withered, *sécher* ; blown, *éclore*.

(3.) Open, *s'épanouir* ; and (which) ; at night, *le soir* ; withered, *flétrir* ; under, *à* ; foot, art. pl. *piéd*, m.

(4.) You must have, *il vous falloir* ; nothing but, *ne que* ; will speak, will force, subj-1 ; entrenchments, *retranchement* ; indispensable being, *être si utile* ; very man, *homme même* ; sent into exile *exiler*.

(5.) Waiting for, (who waited), *attendre*, ind-2. under, *à*.

282. The relative *qui* must always have reference to a noun taken in a determinate sense.

#### EXAMPLES.

*L'homme est un animal raisonnable, qui etc. Il me reçut avec une politesse, qui, etc.*

But we cannot say, *l'homme est animal raisonnable, qui, etc. Il me reçut avec politesse, qui, etc.*

283. When the antecedent of *qui* is the subject of a verb in the negative or the interrogative form, the following verb must be in the subjunctive mood.

#### EXAMPLES.

*il n'a point de livre, qui ne soit de son choix, he has not a book that is not of his own selecting.*

*y a-t-il ville dans le royaume qui soit plus favorisée ? is there a city in the kingdom that is more favoured ?*

284. *Que* relates both to person and things. It is always the regimen direct, and always follows its antecedent.

#### EXAMPLES.

*l'homme que je vois, the man whom I see.*  
*les pêches que je mange, the peaches which I eat.*

The antecedent of *que* may also be a noun, qualified or determined by several words, which separate it from the relative ; as

*Qu'est-ce qu'une armée ?—c'est un corps animé d'une infinité de passions différentes, qu'un homme habile fait mouvoir pour la défense de la patrie.*

#### EXERCISE.

1. He received us with such *goodness, civility and grace*, as charmed us, and made us forget all we had suffered.

2. There is no *city* in the world *where* there are more riches and a greater population.

3. Is there a *man* can say, I shall live till to-morrow ?

4. He has not a *friend* but would make for him every kind of sacrifice.



5. He is surrounded by *enemies*, *who* are continually watching him, and would be very glad to detect him in a \* fault.

6. In his retreat, he lives like a *philosopher who* knows mankind and mistrusts them.

7. The pine-apple is *a sort of fruit* which, in Europe, ripens only in hot-houses.

8. That man is *a sort of pedant*, *who* takes words for ideas, and facts confusedly heaped up for knowledge.

(1.) Civility, *politesse*; such, *une*; as, *qui*.

(2.) There are, *y avoir*, subj-1.

(3.) Man, (who); *can*, subj 1. to live, *vivre*.

(4.) But, *qui ne*; would make, subj-2.

(6.) Like a, *en*; philosopher, *sage*; mistrusts, *se défier de*.

(7.) Pine apple, *ananas*; hot-houses, *serre chaude*.

(8.) Heaped up, *entasser*; knowledge, *savoir*.

285. Observe that the relative *whom*, *which*, *that*, being the object or accusative, are almost ever understood in English, but *que* is always expressed in French.

#### EXAMPLES.

les hommes *que* nous avons vus, *the men we saw.*

le vin *que* nous avons bu, *the wine we drank.*

286. There are some cases in which it is customary to use *que* for *à qui*, or *dont*, as: *C'est à vous que je parle; de la façon que j'ai dit la chose.* *That* is used in the same way, in English it is to you *that* I speak; in the way *that* I did the thing. See 295.

287. *Lequel* and *dont* relate both to persons and things. But *lequel*, *duquel*, ought never to be used either as a subject or object, except in cases when a distinction is to be made between objects of the same nature, and to avoid ambiguity; for whenever the sense is clear, *qui* or *que* must be used, thus:

la Tamise *dont* le lit, and not, *de laquelle*.

le prince *dont* la protection, and not, *duquel*.

288. Sometimes, *duquel*, *de laquelle*,\* (common to persons and things,) and *de qui*, are separated from their antecedent by an other noun substantive governed by a preposition.

---

\* It is generally allowed, in English, to place the preposition governing *which* last; *The thing you think of*, for *the thing of which you think*; that must not be the case in French, the preposition must be first, *la chose à laquelle vous pensez*.

## EXAMPLES.

la Tamise dans le lit de laquelle    *the Thames in the bed of which*  
 mille poissons se jouent,            *myriads of fish are playing.*  
 le prince à la protection duquel    *the prince to whose protection I*  
 je dois ma place,                      *owe my place.*

## EXERCISE.

1. The *God whom* the Hebrews and Christians have always served, has nothing in common with the deities full of imperfection and even of vice worshipped by the rest of the world.

2. The Epic Poem is not the panegyric of a *hero who* is proposed as a \* pattern, but the recital of great and illustrious actions, *which* are exhibited for imitation.

3. The *good which* we hope for \* presents itself to us, and disappears like an empty dream, *which* vanishes when we awake : to teach us, that the very things *which* we think we hold fast in our hands, may slip away in an instant.

4. Plato says, that, in writing, we ought to hide ourselves, to disappear, to make the world forget us, that we may present nothing but the truths we wish to impress,

She is a woman on whose character nothing can be said.

6. The sheep to the spoils of which men are indebted for their garments.

7. Religion, whose maxims we despise, is, however, our greatest comfort in adversity.

8. The grand principle *on which* the whole turns is, that all \* the world is but one republic, *of which* God is the common father, and in *which* every nation forms, as it were, one great family.

9. Homer, *whose* genius is grand and sublime like nature, is the greatest poet, and perhaps the most profound moralist of antiquity.

10. The celebrated Zenobia, *whose* noble firmness 2 you have admired 1, preferred dying with the title of queen, rather \* than accept the advantageous 2 offers 1 which Aurelian made her.

11. The Alps on the summit *of which* the astonished eye discovers perpetual snow and ice, present, at sun-set, the most striking and most magnificent spectacle.

12. A king, *to whose* care we owe a good law, has done more for his own glory, than if he had conquered the universe.

(1.) (That the rest of the world worshipped.)

(2.) Is proposed, *on propose* ; as, *pour* ; pattern, *modèle* ; is exhibited. *on donner* ; imitation, *exemple*.

(3.) Good, *bien* ; disappears, *s'envoler* ; empty, *vain* ; vanishes, etc. *le réveil fait évanouir* ; we \* hold fast, *tenir le mieux* ; in our hands \* ; slip away, *nous échapper*.

(2.) We, *on* ; to make the world forget, *se faire oublier* ; that we may present but, *pour ne produire que* ; wish, *vouloir* ; impress, *persuader*.

(5.) She is, *c'est* ; character, *compte* ; nothing can be said, *on ne saurait rien dire*.

(6.) Spoils, *dépouille*, f. ; to be indebted, *devoir*.

(7.) However, *pourtant*.

(8.) Turns, *rouler* ; every, *chaque* ; as it were, *comme*.

(9.) Preferred, *aimer mieux* ; than, *que de*.

(10.) Perpetual, *éternel*; snow, ice, pl.; sun-set, *soleil couchant*; striking, *imposant*.

(11.) Care, *solicitude*.

289. *Lequel, laquelle*, are used in conjunction with prepositions, in speaking of things, but *qui* is preferable, in speaking of persons.

#### EXAMPLE.

la place à laquelle il aspire, *the situation he aims at.*  
les rois à qui on doit obéir, *the kings to whom one must obey.*

#### EXERCISE.

1. The ambitious man \* sees nothing but pleasure in the possession of the places *to which he aspires* which so much eagerness, instead of seeing the trouble that is inseparable from them.

2. Kings, *whom* religion makes it our duty to obey, are, upon earth, the true representation of the providence of God.

(1.) (To) whom; makes it our duty to, *faire un devoir de*; representation, *image*.

290. *Quoi* is said of things, and when speaking in a vague or indefinite manner; that is, when the object is not specifically named. It is generally preceded by a preposition, and rendered by *what* in English.

#### EXAMPLE.

c'est de quoi je m'occupe sans *this is what I am always thinking*  
cesse, *about.*  
à quoi pensez-vous? *what are you thinking of?*  
avec quoi fait-on l'encre? *what is ink made of?*

*Quoi* is sometimes used relatively to a thing named and of which the gender is known; but *lequel, laquelle* would be more correct.

#### EXAMPLE.

la chose à quoi on pense, *the thing of which they are thinking.*  
voilà les conditions sans quoi la chose ne peut se faire. *these are the terms without which the thing cannot be done.*

#### WHOSE.

291. *Whose is, whose are*, are generally rendered by *à qui est, à qui sont*, or *à qui appartient, à qui appartiennent*, etc. etc.

#### EXAMPLES.

*whose house is this? I cannot tell* à qui est cette maison? je ne saurais vous dire à qui elle appartient.  
*you whose it is,*



*whose gloves are these ?*

*God, whose we are,*

*God, whose creatures we are,*

*à qui appartiennent ces gants ?*

*Dieu à qui nous sommes.*

*Dieu dont nous sommes les créatures.*

*that man, on whose account I came, disappointed me,*

*cet homme pour le compte duquel, à cause de qui, pour l'affaire duquel je suis venu, m'a trompé.*

292. *Which* is used antecedently, as a sort of demonstrative pronoun, in *which* case it is rendered as follows :

*I had some business, on which account (on account of which) I came to town,*

*he might come to-night, in which case we had better not go out,*

*I had determined to go to Paris, for which purpose I saved all the money I could,*

*j'avais quelques affaires pour lesquelles, à cause desquelles, ou de quoi, je suis venu à Londres. il pourrait se faire qu'il vint ce soir, dans ce cas-là nous ferons bien de ne pas sortir. j'avais résolu d'aller à Paris; à ce dessein, je faisais toutes les épargnes possibles.*

## EXERCISE.

1. Do you know whose beautiful carriage this is ?

2. This dog was found this morning in the stable, and no one knows whose it is.

3. That man, whose slave you have been, despises you, and will cast you off when you are no longer useful to his purpose.

4. His poor daughter, on whose account he had undertaken a journey to Italy, died at Genoa, almost immediately on landing.

5. He wished to get up early, in which intention he had desired his servant to call him up at four o'clock.

(1.) *Savoir.*

(2.) To find, *trouver* ; pass. voice, ind-2. ; no one, *personne*.

(3.) To cast off, *abandonner* ; you are, *être*, ind-7 ; no longer, *ne plus*.

(4.) A journey to, *le voyage de* ; to die, *mourir*, ind-3 ; on landing, *après avoir débarqué*

(5.) To wish, *avoir le désir de*, ind-2 ; to desire, *dire à*, ind-6 ; to call up, *de réveiller*.

293. *Où, d'où, par où*, relate only to things. They are never used, but when the nouns, to which they refer, express some kind of motion, or rest, at least metaphorically they stand for *auquel, duquel*, thus :

*voilà le but, où (auquel) il tend,*

*c'est une chose d'où (de laquelle)*

*dépend le bonheur public,*

*les lieux par où (lesquels) il a passé,*

*par où commencerons-nous (par quelle chose ?)*

*that is the end he aims at*

*it is a thing upon which the public happiness depends*

*the places through which he has passed.*

*what shall we begin with ?*

par où a-t-il passé ? (par quel endroit, quel chemin)	<i>which way has he passed ?</i>
par où êtes-vous venu ?	<i>which way have you come ?</i>
d'où venez-vous ? (de quel endroit, de quelle place)	<i>whence are you coming ? what place are you coming from ?</i>

## EXERCISE.

1. *What* a young man, who begins the world ought principally to attend to, is not to give it a high opinion of his understanding, but to gain numerous friends by the qualities of his heart.

2. A youth, passed in idleness, effeminacy, and pleasure, lays up for \* us nothing but sorrow and disgust in old age : this, however, is *what* we little think of when we are young.

3. There is nothing *by which* we are more affected than the loss of fortune, although, being frail and perishable by its nature, it cannot contribute to our happiness.

4. A grove *in which* I defy the ardours of the dog-days, a retired valley *where* I can meditate in peace, a high hill *whence* my eye extends over immense plains, are the places *where* I spend the happiest moments of my life.

5. No one could tell which way he had come into the room.

6. This is what we are to begin with.

(1.) To what, *ce à quoi* ; begins, *entrer dans* ; to attend, *s'attacher* ; it *y* ; opinion, *idée* ; understanding, *esprit* ; to gain, *se faire* ; numerous *beaucoup de*.

(2.) Idleness, *inutilité* ; effeminacy, *mollesse* ; pleasure, *volupté* ; lays up, *préparer* ; of, *à* ; we *on*.

(3.) By, *à* ; we, *on* ; affected, *sensible* ; frail, *frêle* ; by, *de* ; cannot, subj. 1. our, (the).

(4.) Grove, *bosquet* ; defy, *braver* ; dog-days, *canicule* ; spend, *passer*.

(5.) Had come, *était entré*.

(6.) We are, *il faut*.

## IV.

## ABSOLUTE PRONOUNS.

294. *Qui* is used in interrogations, with reference to persons, in a vague and indeterminate way.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>Qui</i> sera assez hardi pour l'attaquer ?	<i>who will be bold enough to attack him ?</i>
---	--

It is likewise used in the feminine, and in the plural, as,

<i>Qui</i> est cette personne-là ?	<i>who is that person ?</i>
<i>Qui</i> sont ces femmes-là ?	<i>who are those women ?</i>

*Que* and *quoi* relate to things only, as,

<i>Que</i> pouvait la valeur en ce combat funeste ?	<i>what could valour in that fatal combat ?</i>
<i>À quoi</i> pensez-vous ?	<i>what are you thinking of ?</i>



295. *Que* is sometimes used for *à quoi, de quoi*, as,

*Que sert la science sans la vertu ?*      *what avails learning without vir-*  
     *(à quoi sert)*      *tue ?*  
*Que sert à l'avare d'avoir des trésors ?*      *what use is it to the miser to pos-*  
     *(de quoi sert)*      *sess treasures ?*

*Quoi, de quoi, à quoi*, may be used in reference to a sentence antecedent, as a sort of pronoun *neuter*, the thing to which it refers being neither *masculine* nor *feminine*.

la vie passe comme un songe : c'est cependant *à quoi* on ne pense guères.

296. *Que* and *quoi* require the preposition *de* before the adjective or substantive that follows them, having then the force of an adverb of quantity, as :

*Que dit-on de nouveau ? quoi de plus agréable !*  
*Que d'inconséquences dans sa conduite !*

*Quel* relates both to persons and things, as :

*Quel homme peut se promettre un bonheur constant ?*  
*Quelle grâce ! quelle beauté ! mais quelle modestie !*

#### EXERCISE.

1. *Who* could ever persuade himself, did not daily experience convince us of it, that, out of a hundred persons, there are ninety who sacrifice, to the enjoyment of the present, all the best founded hopes of the future ?

2. *Who* would not love virtue for its own sake, could he see it in all its beauty ?

3. He who does not know how \* to apply himself in his youth, does not know *what* to do when arrived at maturity.

4. He was a wise legislator, who, having given to his countrymen laws calculated to make them good and happy, made them swear not to violate any of those laws during his absence : after *which*, he went away, exiled himself from his country, and died poor in a foreign land.

5. *What* people of antiquity ever had better laws than the Egyptians ? *What* other nation ever undertook to erect monuments calculated to triumph over both time and barbarism ?

6. *What* more instructing and entertaining than to read celebrated authors in their own language ? *What* beauty, *what* delicacy and grace which cannot be thrown into a translation, are discovered in them !

7. When Ménage had published his book on the Origin of the French Language, Christina, queen of Sweden, said : " Ménage is the most troublesome 3 man 1 in the world 2 : he cannot let one word 2 go 1 without its passport : he must know *whence* it comes, *where* it has passed *through*, and *whither* it is going."

(1.) Did, *si* ; out of, *sur* ; future, *avenir*.

(2.) Its own sake, *elle-même* ; could he, *si on pouvoir*, ind-2

(3.) (To) what ; to do, *s'occuper* ; when arrived, etc., *dans l'âge mûr*.



(4.) He, *ce* ; calculated, *propre* ; not to, (that they would not) ; went away, *partir*.

(5.) Calculated to, *fait pour* ; both, *également* ; over, *de*.

(6.) Language, *langue* ; delicacy, *finesse* ; which cannot, *qu'on ne peut* ; be thrown, *faire passer* ; translation, *traduction* ; are, etc. *n'y découvre-t-on pas*.

(7.) When, *après que* ; Christina, *Christine* ; troublesome, *incommodé* ; the, *de*, art. ; cannot, *ne saurait* ; go, *passer* ; must, *vouloir*.

## V.

## PRONOUNS INDIFINITE.

297. These pronouns have been divided into four classes in the grammar, (No. 85). The following remarks are arranged in the same order.

## FIRST CLASS.

Of these which are never joined to a noun substantive.

## ON

298. Examples have already been given, (No. 86) of the use of *ON*, in French, with an explanation of its reasonably supposed etymology. As it is a word which frequently occurs, and in a manner totally different from the English idiom, it has been thought necessary to devote another chapter to it, in which its use will be more fully explained.

The general meaning of *on* is : one, people, men, we.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>on</i> secourt plus volontiers les malheureux quand <i>on</i> l'a été soi-même,	<i>we</i> succour the unfortunate more readily when we have been so ourselves.
<i>on</i> ne doit pas attribuer à la religion les défauts de ses ministres,	<i>man</i> ought not to charge religion with the faults of her ministers.
<i>on</i> relit tout Racine, <i>on</i> choisit dans Voltaire,	<i>people</i> read the whole of Racine again, they choose in Voltaire.
<i>on</i> fait du bruit dans la rue,	<i>people</i> are making a noise in the street.
<i>on</i> n'est pas toujours heureux,	<i>people</i> are not always fortunate.
<i>on</i> dit qu'il va se marier,	<i>people</i> say, they say, he is going to be married.

OBSERVE. That the adjective referring to *on* is in the masculine gender, when that pronoun is taken in a vague and indeterminate sense ; but when it applies to any person in particular, as in the case stated No. 298, then the adjective agrees with the person understood. Thus, a

woman would say . *on n'est pas toujours jeune et jolie*, we cannot be young and pretty for ever.

Observe also that we must not say *qu'on*, *et on*, *aussi on*, but *que l'on*, *et l'on*, *aussi l'on*. Ex: *je crois que l'on frappe*. The *l'* thus prefixed is for euphony's sake. But if the word following begins with an *l*, then we say : *je crois qu'on l'appelle*, because *je crois que l'on l'appelle* would equally be disagreeable.

298. ON, according to the above examples, has a vague and indefinite meaning ; it is indeed the subject of the verb, but not specified, not applied to any one person in particular.

There are, however, two cases in which *on* is very significantly used in French, in a definite sense, and as applicable to one individual alone.

1. A master speaking to his servants, a father to his child, a tutor to his pupil, says *on*, instead of *vous* or *tu*, either to put greater distance between the persons, or to assume a more serious tone, or also a sort of mock gravity.

#### EXAMPLES.

a-t-on passé chez le Colonel Sainville ?	<i>did you call at the house of Colonel Sainville ?</i>
eh bien, a-t-on été bien sage en mon absence ?	<i>well, have you been good in my absence ?</i>
finira-t-on ce bruit-là bientôt ?	<i>will you put an end to that noise ?</i>

2. A person, speaking of himself, says *on*, as the English sometimes say *we* ; or applies it to another, also in the same manner as the English use *we* for *you*.

#### EXAMPLES.

on n'est pas des esclaves pour essayer de si mauvais traitements,	<i>we are not slaves (I am not a slave) to bear such ill usages.</i>
on vous l'a dit mille fois, depuis quand est-on de retour ?	<i>I have told you so a thousand times. how long have we (you) been back ?</i>

299. ON is also much used in French as the subject of an active verb, when the passive voice is used in English. (See 95.)

#### EXAMPLES.

on me trompe,	<i>I am deceived.</i>
on m'a dit ce matin que le roi va en Irlande,	<i>I have been told this morning that the king is going to Ireland</i>

This form is adopted in almost every case, except when the verb expresses *love, esteem, hatred, feeling*.

## EXAMPLE.

they are much loved, *il sont très-aimés.*

## EXERCISE.

1. If we knew how to limit our wishes, we would spare ourselves many troubles and we should be happier.

2. At the last judgment we shall not be asked what we have read, but what we have done.

3. I will not have him be teased.

4. The people do not come to the world musicians.

5. When men regulate their wants on nature, they save themselves many cares and difficulties.

6. They praise him, they threaten him, they caress him; but whatever they do, they cannot conquer him.

7. They say the town has been taken.

8. My father has been robbed.

(1.) To limit, *borner*; to spare, *s'épargner*; troubles, *maux*.

(2.) To ask, *demander*.

(3.) To will, *vouloir que*; to tease, *tourmenter*.

(4.) To come to the world, *naître*.

(5.) To save one's self, *s'épargner*; difficulties, *travaux*.

(6.) Whatever they do, *quoique l'on fasse*; cannot, *savoir*, cond-I.

300. *Quelqu'un* is relative, and agrees in gender, with the noun to which it refers.

## EXAMPLES.

nous attendons des hommes, il *we expect men, some of them will*  
en viendra quelqu'un, *come.*

plusieurs femmes m'ont promis *several ladies have promised me to*  
de venir, il en viendra quel- *come, some one of them will come.*  
qu'une.

quelques-uns assurent, *some people affirm.*

entre les nouvelles qu'il a débi- *among the reports he has circulated,*  
tées, il y en a quelques-unes *there are some which are true.*  
de vraies,

*Quelqu'un* taken absolutely and substantively, is of the masculine gender.

## EXAMPLES.

j'attends ici quelqu'un, *I wait here for somebody.*  
quelqu'un en doute-t-il ? *does any one doubt it ?*

*Quiconque*, whoever, signifies *quelque personne que ce soit, qui que ce soit*, any person whatever; the verb which it governs is in the singular, and the adjective which refers to it, is masculine.



## EXAMPLE.

ce discours s'adresse à quicon- *this speech is addressed to whoever*  
que est coupable, *is guilty.*

*Quiconque* is also used for *celui qui*, *celle qui*, *celui de nous*, *de vous*, *celle de nous*, *de vous*.

## EXAMPLE.

quiconque (de vous) fera du bruit, *whoever makes a noise, I shall*  
je l'en punirai, *punish him.*

301. *Chacun*, each, every one, is used either distributively, or collectively.

Distributively, it means *chaque personne*, *chaque chose*, each person or thing. It is then of both genders.

## EXAMPLES.

chacun de nous vit à sa mode, *each of us lives as he pleases.*  
donnez à chacune sa part,\* *give to each his share.*

Collectively, it signifies *toute personne*, every person.

## EXAMPLE.

chacun a ses défauts, *every body has his faults.*

## EXERCISE.

Can *any one* (be still ignorant) that it is from the  
*pourrait-il* 2 1 *ignorer encore* *ce dès*  
earliest infancy we ought to form the mind, the heart and  
*tendre enfance* f. *que l'on doit* \* *former*  
the taste? Will not *some one* of these ladies be of the party?  
f. *partie* f.  
*Some people* like to read (every thing new). (These are) beautiful  
*aimer à* *toutes les nouveautés* *voilà de superbe*  
pictures; I would wish to buy *some*. *Whoever* has studied  
*tableau* m. *vouloir en* \* *acheter*

\* There is apparently some difficulty in determining whether the possessive pronoun after *chacun* is to be plural or singular; some examples will illustrate and explain the case.

*il a donné à chacun sa part*, each man can have but *one* share.  
*toute la compagnie se retira chacun*  
*chez soi*, each to his own house.  
*ils apportaient des offrandes chacun*  
*suivant sa dévotion*, according to the devotion of each.

*Ils ont apporté chacun leur offrande.* *Chacun*, is here taken collectively, and may be considered as an adverb having the sense of *all*, *generally*.

the principles of an art, knows that it (is only) (by length of time)  
 —pes —m. savoir ce n'est que à la longue  
 and by deep reflections, that he can succeed in making it  
 de profond réflexion f. réussir à se 1 rendre 3 le 2  
 his own. All the ladies of the ball were very finely dressed,  
 \* propre 4 bal m. ind-2 \* superbement paré  
 and each differently. Every one should for  
 avait une parure différente. devrait, pour  
 (the sake of) his own happiness, listen only to the voice of  
 \* propre m. n'écouter que \* voix f. art.  
 reason and of truth. What is the price of each of these medals?  
 raison f. art. vérité f. prix m. f. médaille

*Autrui*, others, only applies to persons, is never joined to an adjective, has no plural, and is always preceded by a preposition:

EXAMPLE.

la charité se réjouit du bonheur d'autrui, charity rejoices in the happiness of others.

302. *Personne* as an indeterminate pronoun, and signifying *no one*, *nobody*, is always masculine. It requires *ne* before the verb.

EXAMPLES.

personne n'est venu ? no one has come ?  
 n'est-il venu personne ? has nobody come ?  
 nous ne voyons personne, we see nobody ?

When it is used substantively it is feminine.

c'est une personne active, he is an active person.  
 ces personnes sont-elles riches ? are those people rich ?

In interrogative phrases not a negative, or in those expressing doubt, *personne* signifies *quelqu'un* any body.

EXAMPLES.

personne oserait-il nier ? would any body dare deny ?  
 je doute que personne soit assez hardi, I doubt whether any body be bold enough.

When *personne* is placed in the second member of a comparison, it also means *any body*.

EXAMPLE.

cette place lui convient mieux qu'à personne, that place suits him better than any body

303. *Rien*, nothing; which is masculine and singular, generally requires the negation, before the verb; in which case it signifies *nulle chose*, nothing.

## EXAMPLE.

il ne s'attache à rien de solide,      *he applies himself to nothing solid.*

When used without a negation, it means *quelque chose*, something.

## EXAMPLE.

je doute que rien soit plus propre à faire impression que,      *I doubt whether any thing be more suited to make an impression, etc.*

*Rien* is sometimes used absolutely, in answer to a question; *que vous a coûté cela? rien*, how much did you pay for it? nothing.

It always requires the preposition *de* before the adjective, or participle that follows it, and then the verb is understood, as is likewise the negation, as: *rien de beau que le vrai*, nothing is noble but truth; as if it were, *il n'y a rien de beau que le vrai*.

304. *NI L'UN NI L'AUTRE*, require *ne* before the verb.

## EXAMPLES.

ni l'un ni l'autre n'ont fait leur devoir,      *they have not either of them done their duty.*  
 ni l'un ni l'autre ne l'aura,      *neither of them shall have it.*  
 ils ne sont morts ni l'un ni l'autre,      *they are not dead either of them.*  
 ni l'un ni l'autre n'est mort,      *neither of them is dead.*

305. *Tout* means every thing, *all*.

## EXAMPLES.

il rit de tout      *he laughs at every thing.*  
 il ne lui a pas tout dit, parce que tout n'est pas bon à dire,      *he did not tell him all, because every thing is not to be told.*

*Tout* is adverb and adjective, see No. 44.

## EXERCISE.

To most men, the misfortunes of others are but  
*Pour la plupart de art. mal in. ne que*  
 a dream. Do not tell others what you would not wish to be  
*songe in. ne vouloir pas que cond-1 on*  
 done to you. No one knows whether he deserves love or  
*faire sub-3 savoir si être digne*  
 hatred. An egotist loves nobody, not even his own children;  
*égoïste pas même propre*



in the whole universe he sees no one but himself. He is more  
*dans \* univers ne voit \* que lui seul*  
 than (*any body*) worthy of the confidence with which the king  
*digne confiance f.*

honours him. I doubt whether *any one* ever painted  
*honorer de que ait jamais peint*  
 nature, in its amiable simplicity, better than the feeling Gessner.  
 —f. = f. *sensible* —

Has *any body* called on me this morning? *Nobody*. There  
*venir ind-1 2 1 chez matin m. y avoir*  
 was *nothing* (but what was great) in the designs and  
*ind-2 que de grand dans dessein, m. pl. art.*  
 works of the Egyptians. I doubt whether there is  
*ouvrage m. pl. —tiens que \* subj-1 2*  
*any thing* better calculated to exalt the soul than the contemplation  
*1 plus propre — f.*  
 of the wonders of nature.  
*merveille f. art. —f.*

## SECOND CLASS.

OF THOSE WHICH ARE ALWAYS JOINED TO A SUBSTANTIVE.

306. *Quelque*, some ; signifies, *un, une entre plusieurs*, one out of several ; it is of both genders, and takes the number of the substantive, before which it is placed.

### EXAMPLE.

adressez-vous à quelque autre per- *apply to somebody else.*  
 sonne,

*Quelque, quel que*, may be considered as adjectives on account of their being declinable, see, No. 44.

307. *Chaque*, each, every ; which is of both genders, has no plural.

### EXAMPLE.

chaque pays a ses coutumes, *each country has its customs.*

308. *Aucun*, followed of *quelconque* or *que ce soit*, agrees in gender with the noun to which it is joined ; it is always used with a negative phrase.

### EXERCISE.

il ne veut se soumettre à aucune *he will submit to no authority what-*  
 autorité quelconque, *ever.*

309. *Quelconque*, is sometimes used as synonymous with *que ce soit, quel qu'il soit*, and with an affirmative phrase ; it takes the sign of the plural.

## EXAMPLE.

deux points quelconques étant *any two points being given.*  
donnés,

310. *Certain*, certain, some ; in this sense is used alike of persons and things, with which it agrees in gender ; but it is always placed before the substantive.

## EXAMPLE.

j'ai ouï dire à certain homme, *I have heard some man, or woman*  
ou, à une certaine femme, *say.*

311. *Un, une*, a or an ; when used indeterminately for *quelque, certain*, some person, or some thing, takes the gender of the substantive with which it is joined.

## EXAMPLES.

j'ai vu un homme qui courait, *I saw a man who was running.*  
je me suis promené dans une *I walked in a large and beautiful*  
grande et belle prairie, *meadow.*

## EXERCISE.

Some enlightened people among the Egyptians preserved  
éclairé 2 esprit m. pl. 1 parmi —tiens conserver  
the idea of a first being, whose attributes they  
ind-2 idée être art. —but m. pl. 3 1  
represented under various symbols ; this (is proved)  
représenter ind-2 2 différent symbole m. c'est ce que prouve  
by the following inscription upon a temple, "I am all that  
\* \* cette \* —f. de —m. ce qui  
has been, is and shall be ; no mortal ever removed the veil that  
3 mortel 2 1 lever ind-4 voile m.  
covers me." Every nation has (in its turn) shone on the  
f. à son tour 2 brillé 1  
stage of the world. There is no reason whatever that can  
théâtre raison f.  
bring him to it. Some figures appear monstrous and  
déterminer le 1 y 2 —f. —trueux  
deformed, considered separately, or too near ; but, if they are  
difforme f. pl. séparément de près on les  
put in their proper light and place, the true point of view  
met \* jour à leur — m. vue f.  
restores them to beauty and grace. Yesterday I say  
leur rendre \* art. = f. art. -- f. 2 voir  
a lady remarkably beautiful.  
ind-4 1 d'une rare 2 beauté 1.

## THIRD CLASS.

OF THOSE WHICH ARE SOMETIMES JOINED TO A  
SUBSTANTIVE, AND SOMETIMES NOT.

312. *Nul* and *pas un*, no, not any, not one ; are used either relatively to, or with a substantive, with which they agree in gender, and require *ne* before the verb which they govern.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>nul</i> de tous ceux qui y ont été,	<i>not one of those who went there has</i>
<i>n'en est revenu,</i>	<i>returned.</i>
<i>pas un</i> ne croit cette nouvelle,	<i>not one believes that intelligence.</i>
<i>je n'en ai nulle connaissance,</i>	<i>I have no knowledge of it.</i>
<i>il n'y a pas une seule personne</i>	<i>there is not a single person that be-</i>
<i>qui le croie,</i>	<i>lieves it.</i>

313. *Aucun* signifies *nul*, no, not any, when accompanied by a negation, and may be followed by the preposition *de*.

## EXAMPLE.

<i>vous n'avez aucun moyen de</i>	<i>you have no means of succeeding in</i>
<i>réussir dans cette affaire,</i>	<i>that affair.</i>

This pronoun is seldom used in the plural, except before substantives, which, in some particular sense, are better employed in that number.

## EXAMPLE.

*il n'a fait aucunes dispositions,* *he has made no preparations.*

REM. *Aucun* may be used without the negation in interrogative sentences, or in those which express doubt, or exclusion.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>aucun homme fut-il jamais plus</i>	<i>was ever any man more successful ?</i>
<i>heureux ?</i>	
<i>on doute qu'aucune de ces af-</i>	<i>they doubt whether any of those</i>
<i>fares réussisse,</i>	<i>affairs will succeed.</i>
<i>le plus beau morceau d'élo-</i>	<i>the finest piece of eloquence that</i>
<i>quence qu'il y ait dans au-</i>	<i>exists in any language, etc.</i>
<i>cune langue, etc,</i>	

## EXERCISE.

*No one* likes (to see himself) as he is. *No* expression, *no*  
*se voir* *tel que* *—f.*  
*truth of design and colouring, no strokes of genius in that great*  
*f. dessin de coloris trait*



work. He is as learned as any one. Not one of these en-  
 ouvrage m. *savant*  
 gravings announces any great skill. None of his works will  
 gravure f. pl. *annoncer un talent m.*  
 descend to posterity. He is so ignorant, and at the same  
 passer art. = f. *en \* même*  
 time so obstinate, that he will not (be convinced) by any  
 temps *obstiné \* se rendre ind-1 à*  
 reasoning. Did any man ever attain to such a  
 raisonnement m. *jamais 2 parvenir ind-4 1 ce \**  
 pitch of glory! I doubt whether there be in any science a  
 comble m. = *que y avoir subj-1 ——— f.*  
 more evident principle.  
 plus lumineux 2——pe m. 1

314. *Autre*, other, expresses a difference between two objects, or between one and several, as: *quelle autre chose souhaitez-vous de moi?* what else do you wish of me?

REM. *Autre* is sometimes used relatively of persons, but in an indeterminate manner, as: *j'aime mieux que vous l'appreniez de tout autre que de moi*, I had rather you learn it of any other person than me.

315. *L'un l'autre*, is of both genders and numbers, *l'un l'autre, les uns les autres, les unes les autres*, each other, one another.

## EXAMPLE.

*il faut se secourir l'un l'autre, we ought to assist one another.*

*Of one another, to one another, of each other, to each other*, are rendered by, *l'un de l'autre, l'un à l'autre*, the preposition being placed before *l'autre*\*.

When used separately, they denote a difference.

## EXAMPLE.

*les passions s'entendent les unes avec les autres; si l'on se laisse aller aux unes, on attire bientôt les autres, our passions correspond with one another; if we abandon ourselves to the ones, the others will soon follow.*

REM. In the latter case *l'un* is used for the person, or thing first mentioned, and *l'autre*, for the person, or thing last spoken of.

\* This is according to common rules of grammatical construction; *l'un* being the subject and *l'autre* the object. *Ils méditent l'un de l'autre*, that is, *l'un médite de l'autre*.

316. *L'un et l'autre*, both ; these two words mark union ;  
*l'une et l'autre sont bonnes*, both are good.\*

## EXERCISE.

Ask another. Would any other have been so  
*Demander à avoir cond-2 assez*  
 self-conceited as to think that his private opinion could  
*d'amour-propre \* pour penser que particulier 2 —f.1 pouvoir*  
 counterbalance the public sentiment? Reason and faith  
 sub-3 *balancer 2 opinion f. 1 Raison f. foi f.*  
 equally demonstrate that we were created for another life  
 2 *démontrer 1 créer ind-4 f.*  
 They speak ill of one another. The happiness of the people con-  
*parler mal de m.*  
 stitutes that of the prince; their true interests are connected with  
*faire —m. intérêt m. lié à*  
 each other. Presumption and pride easily insinuate them-  
 pl pl. art. *présomption f. art. orgueil 2 se glis-*  
 selves into the heart; if we allow one admission, it is  
*ser 1 m. l'on y donne à 2 f. 3 entrée 1*  
 much to (be feared) that we shall soon (abandon ourselves) to the  
*bien craindre on \* bientôt 2 ne se livre 1*  
 other. Both relate the same story, though neither believes  
*rapporter fait m. ne penser*  
 it to be true.  
*que \* soit*

317. *Le même, la même, les mêmes*, the same, the very  
 same, are used relatively to, or with a noun, and agree in  
 gender and number with it.

*ce sont les mêmes raisons, they are the same reasons,*  
*ce poème est le même que celui this poem is the same that I was*  
*dont je vous ai parlé, mentioning to you*

318. *Tel, telle*, although properly adjectives, may also be  
 used relatively in speaking of persons.

---

\* *L'un et l'autre, ni l'un ni l'autre*. In the new edition of the *Dic-*  
*tionnaire de l'Académie*, the following examples are given.

*l'un et l'autre y a manqué, each of them has failed.*  
*l'un et l'autre sont venus, both have come.*  
*ni l'un ni l'autre ne viendront they will not come either of them.*  
*ni l'un ni l'autre ne viendra, neither of them will come.*

It seems that the verbs in the plural when *l'un et l'autre, ni l'un ni l'autre*, may be transferred after the verb, as an adverb, *ils sont venus l'un et l'autre*, but when there is no distinction, but union in the action.—See *Peculiarities* No 326.

## EXAMPLE.

tel fait des libéralités, qui ne *such is liberal in giving who does*  
 paie pas ses dettes, *not pay his debts*

319. *Plusieurs*, which is always, as an adjective, joined to a noun plural, may also be used absolutely in reference to persons. The verb which it governs must be in the third person plural.

## EXAMPLE.

plusieurs ont cru le monde éternel, *some or several have thought the world to be eternal*

## EXERCISE.

Does he always maintain the same principles? Yes, they are  
*soutenir* --pe oui se  
 absolutely the same. That general is the same who commanded  
 —ment pl. — —der ind-2  
 last year. Such a conduct is inexplicable  
 art. dernier 2 année f. 1 2 1 conduite f. —  
 There are no such customs in this country. I never  
*de coutumes f. pays m. ai*  
 heard (any thing) like it. Such a man sows who  
*entendu dire rien de \* \* semer*  
 often reaps nothing. I this morning received several  
*recueillir 1 3 matin 4 recevoir ind-4 2*  
 letters Of those manuscripts, there are several much  
*lettre f. pl. Parmi —crits y en avoir qu'on beau-*  
 esteemed. Many by endeavouring to injure others  
*coup 2 estime 1 en s'efforcer de nuire à art.*  
 injure themselves more than they think.  
*se nuire à ne penser*

## FOURTH CLASS.

320. OF THOSE WHICH ARE FOLLOWED BY THE CONJUNCTION  
*que*, AND WHICH REQUIRE THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

They are *qui que ce soit, quoi que ce soit, quoi que, quel-que, quel que*.

*Qui que*, whoever, is only said of persons, and signifies *quelque personne que*, whatever person; it requires the verb following to be in the subjunctive.

## EXAMPLES.

qui que ce soit qui ait fait cela, *whoever has done that, is a man of*  
*c'est un habile homme, talents.*  
 qui que je sois, *whoever I may be.*  
 qui que ç'ait été, *whoever it may have been.*  
 qui que c'eût été, *whoever it might have been*



qui que ce puisse être,  
je n'ai vu qui que ce soit,

whoever it may be.

I saw nobody; I did not see any-  
body whatever.

quoi que ce soit qu'il fasse, ou  
qu'il dise, on se défie de lui;

whatever he does or says, he is dis-  
trusted.

quoi que vous disiez, je le ferai,  
sans application, on ne peut réus-  
sir en quoi que ce soit,

whatever you may say, I will do it.  
without application, it is impossible  
to succeed in any thing whatever.

#### EXERCISE.

Whoever *ce soit qui* has told you so, he is mistaken. *le se tromper ind-4 Pas-*  
senger, *whoever* thou be, contemplate with religious veneration, *sant contempler un = 2 respect m.1*  
this monument erected by gratitude; it is the tomb  
— m. *élevé art. reconnaissance f. ce tombeau m.*  
of a just and benevolent man How can he hope to be  
2 *bienfaisant 3 1 Comment espérer de*  
beloved who has regard for no one? *lui ne d'égards Whatever he*  
may do or say, he (will find it) very difficult to destroy  
*qu'il aura bien de la peine détruire*  
prejudices so deeply rooted. A vain, presumptuous  
*des préjugé m. si profondément enraciné — présomptueux*  
and inconsistent mind will never succeed in any thing whatever.  
*sans consistance réussir*  
Whatever a frivolous world may think of you, never swerve  
*frivole 2 monde 1 puisse se détourner*  
from the path of virtue,  
*chemin m. art f.*

### CHAPTER V.

#### OF THE VERB.

##### 321. CONCORD BETWEEN THE VERB AND THE SUBJECT.

The subject is that of which something is affirmed, and may always be known by the answer to this question, *qui est-ce qui?* who, or what is it? as: *Pierre vit*, Peter lives; *l'oiseau vole*, the bird flies; if it be asked, *qui est-ce qui vit?* who is it that lives? *qui est-ce qui vole?* what is it that flies? The answers *Pierre* and *l'oiseau*, shew that *Pierre* and *l'oiseau* are the subjects of the verb *vit* and *vole*.

There are three subjects or persons, *je, tu, il, elle, I, thou, he, she*, singular; *nous, vous, ils, elles*, plural.

The verb must be of the same number and person as its subject.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>je ris</i>	<i>I laugh</i>	<i>nous parlons</i>	<i>we speak</i>
<i>tu joues</i>	<i>thou playest</i>	<i>vous plaisantez</i>	<i>you jest</i>
<i>il aime</i>	<i>he loves</i>	<i>ils sont fous</i>	<i>they are mad</i>

*la vertu est aimable, virtue is amiable.*

*Ris* is in the singular number, and the first person, because *je*, its subject, is in the singular, and the first person. *Joues* is in the singular, and the second person, as *tu*, is in the singular, and the second person, etc.

## EXERCISE.

The most free of men is he who can be free even in  
*libre art. celui même*  
 slavery. Are we not often blind to our defects?  
*art. esclavage m. \* s'aveugler ind-1 sur défaut*  
 All men (are inclined) to laziness, but the savages of hot  
*art. tendre ind-1 art. sauvage chaud 2*  
 countries are the laziest of all men. Do you think of imposing  
*art. pays 1 \* en imposer*  
 long on the credulity of the public! Thou canst not deny  
*long-temps à = f. —m. pouvoir nier*  
 that he is a great man:  
*ne subj-1*

When a verb is governed by two or more nouns, in the singular, it must be in the plural.

## EXAMPLE.

*mon père et ma mère m'aiment my father and mother love me*  
*tendrement, tenderly.*

## EXERCISE.

His uprightness and honesty, make him courted by  
*droiture f. pron. honnêteté faire rechercher de*  
 every body. Strength of body and of mind meet  
*art. f. art. celle art. se rencontrer*  
 not always together. A good heart and a noble soul are  
*ensemble. m. beau f. de art.*  
 precious gifts of nature.  
*= 2. don m. pl. 1 art —f.*

322. When a verb relates to subjects of different persons, it agrees with the first, rather than with the other two, and with the second rather than the third. The person addressed is named *first*, and the person addressing *last*. On this occasion, the pronoun plural *nous*, is generally placed before

the verb, as its principal subjects, if one of the several subjects, is in the first person, and the pronoun plural *vous*, if there is no first person.

## EXAMPLES.

*vous, votre frère et moi, nous lisons ensemble la brochure nouvelle,* *you, your brother, and I, read together the new pamphlet.*  
*vous et votre ami, vous viendrez avec moi,* *you and your friend will come with me.*

## EXERCISE.

You, your friend, and I, have each a different opinion. In  
*chacun* 2 *f. 1*  
 our childhood, you and I (were pleased) with playing toge-  
*enfance f. se plaire ind-2 à inf-1*  
 ther. Neither I, nor (any one else) have been able to un-  
*ni ni d'autres ne pouvoir ind-4 \* com-*  
 derstand (any thing) in that sentence, (Take good care), you  
*prendre 2 rien 1 à phrase f. se garder bien*  
 and your brother, not to (give way) to the impetuosity of your  
*\* de s'abandonner =*  
 disposition.  
*caractère m.*

323. When a verb has the relative pronoun *qui* for its subject, it is put in the same number and person as the noun, or pronoun, which is the antecedent of that relative.

## EXAMPLES.

*est-ce moi qui ai dit cette nou- is it I who told this news ?*  
*velle ?*  
*est-ce nous qui l'avons voulu ? is it we who desired it ?*  
*ceux qui aiment sincèrement la those who sincerely love virtue are*  
*vertu sont heureux, happy.*

## EXERCISE.

He that complains most of mankind, is not always he  
*celui se plaindre le plus art. homme pl.*  
 that (has most reason) to complain (of them). You that wish  
*être le plus fondé en vouloir*  
 to enrich your mind with thoughts vigorously conceived and  
*\* enrichir esprit de f. pl. fortement conçu f. pl.*  
 nobly expressed, read the works of Homer and Plato.  
*noblement exprimé ouvrage*

324. There are some cases in which a verb, although governed by several nouns in the singular, is not put in the third person plural. A few examples of such cases are here given, with remarks on the cause and nature of their deviation from the rule given, No. 322.



## EXAMPLES.

le roi <i>aussi bien que son ministre,</i>	<i>the king as well as his minister;</i>
<i>veut le bien public,</i>	<i>wishes for the public good.</i>
son honnêteté, <i>autant que son esprit,</i>	<i>his honesty, as much as his wit,</i>
<i>le fait rechercher,</i>	<i>makes him courted.</i>
l'envie, <i>comme l'ambition,</i>	<i>envy, like ambition, is a blind pas-</i>
<i>est une passion aveugle</i>	<i>sion.</i>
la séduction, <i>ou la terreur l'a en-</i>	<i>either persuasion; or terror, has</i>
<i>trainé dans le parti des rebelles,</i>	<i>drawn him into the party of the</i>
	<i>rebels.</i>

OBSERVE. *First*, that : *aussi bien que son ministre, autant que son esprit, comme l'ambition*, are, as it were, adverbial phrases, which might be placed at the end of the sentence *le roi veut le bien public, aussi bien que son ministre*, etc. and consequently that, although there are apparently two subjects, there is really but one.

*Secondly*, we do not affirm that *la seduction* in conjunction with *la terreur* has acted, but that either the one or the other has done so. There is consequently no unity in the action, no collective effort.

325. A verb may be in the singular, when preceded of nouns substantives in the plural.

biens, dignités, honneurs, <i>tout dis-</i>	<i>riches, dignities, honours, every</i>
<i>paraît, à la mort,</i>	<i>thing vanishes at death.</i>
jeux, conversations, spectacles, <i>rien,</i>	<i>games, conversations, shows, no-</i>
<i>ne la distraît,</i>	<i>thing diverts her.</i>
perfidies, noirceurs, incendies, mas-	<i>perfidies, enormities, conflagrations,</i>
sacres, <i>ce n'est là qu'une faible</i>	<i>massacres, all this is but a feeble</i>
<i>image, etc.</i>	<i>representation, etc.</i>
non-seulement toutes ses richesses	<i>not only all his riches and honours,</i>
et tous ses honneurs, <i>mais toute</i>	<i>but all his virtue vanishes.</i>
<i>sa vertu s'évanouit,</i>	

In the three first examples, all the things enumerated *biens, dignités, honneurs, jeux, conversations, spectacles*, are summed up in the words *tout, rien, ce n'est-là*, which, being singular, must necessarily have the verb they govern in the same number.

## EXERCISE.

1. Fear or inability prevented them from moving.
2. The fear of death, or rather, the love of life, began to revive in his bosom.
3. Alcibiades, as well as Plato, was among the disciples of Socrates.
4. Lycurgus, like Solon, was a wise legislator.
5. Euripides, as much as Sophocles, contributed to the glory of the Athenians.

6. Riches, dignities, honours, glory, pleasure, every things loses its charms from the moment we possess it, because none of those things can fill the heart of man.

- (1.) Inability, *impuissance* ; moving, *remuer*.
- (2.) Began to revive, *se réveiller* ; in, *au fond de* ; bosom, *cœur*.
- (3.) Among *au nombre de*.
- (6.) We, *on* ; none, *rien* ; those things, *tout cela*.

### 326. PECULIARITIES.

La gloire et la prospérité des méchants est courte.

It might have been *sont courtes* ; but as each subject may form a separate proposition, *la gloire des méchants est courte, la prospérité des méchants est courte*, Fénelon has put the verb in the singular as being applicable to each subject.

Racine has said :

Quelle était en secret ma honte et mes chagrins.

*Quels étaient* would have been more regular, but in point of elegance, and as a latinism, the verb has been made to agree with the first noun.

Ni l'un ni l'autre ne sera l'ambassadeur.

Ni la force ni la douceur n'y peuvent rien.

One alone can be the *ambassadeur*, and consequently the verb can only be applicable to one of them.

*Force* and *douceur* are both unavailing, consequently the verb is in the plural.

### 327. NOUNS OF MULTITUDE AND NOUNS COLLECTIVE PARTITIVE.

1. The words *armée*, army ; *peuple*, people ; *nation*, nation ; *parlement*, parliament ; *flotte*, fleet ; *assemblée*, assembly ; or any other nouns of multitude have the verb which they govern in the singular, especially when preceded of the definite article.

#### EXAMPLES.

l'assemblée a été tumultueuse,	<i>the assembly has been tumultuous.</i>
le peuple veut la paix,	<i>the people wish for peace.</i>
la nation aime son roi elle le	<i>the nation love their king they will</i>
protégera,	<i>protect him.</i>
un peuple de héros va naître,	<i>a nation of heroes will spring.</i>

2. Nouns collective partitive as *la plupart*, most part ; *quantité*, quantity ; *multitude*, multitude ; *nombre*, number ; *beaucoup*, much ; *peu*, few ; etc., etc., have the verb in the

plural, if they are qualified by a noun in the plural, otherwise the verb is in the singular.

## EXAMPLES.

la plupart du monde le croit,	<i>most people believe it.</i>
la plupart des hommes le pensent,	<i>most men think so.</i>
une troupe de jeunes gens couraient après lui,	<i>a crowd of young people ran after him.</i>

Whatever be the noun which follows *la moitié, le tiers, le quart*, the verb must be in the singular.

328. The words *infinité* and *la plupart*, used by themselves, require the verb to be in the plural, as ; *une infinité pensent, la plupart sont d'avis*, whenever *de personnes*, or *des hommes*, etc. are understood.

## EXERCISE.

1. *Many persons* experience that human life is, every where, a state in which much is to be endured, and little to be enjoyed.

2. *Many poets* think that poetry is the art of uniting pleasure with truth, by calling imagination to the help of reason.

3. *Few persons* consider that time, like money, may be lost by unreasonable avarice.

4. *So many years* of familiarity were as \* chains of iron which linked me to those men who beset me every moment.

5. *How many wise men* \* have thought that, to seclude one's self from the world, was to pull out the teeth of devouring animals, to take away from the wicked the use of his poniard, from calumny its poisons, and from envy its serpents !

6. *A company of young Phœnicians* of uncommon beauty, clad in fine linen, whiter than snow, danced a \* long while the dances of their own \* country, then those of Egypt, and lastly, those of Greece.

7. *A troop of nymphs*, crowned with flowers, whose lovely tresses flowed over the shoulders and played in the wind, swam in multitudes behind her car.

8. At the time of the invasion of Spain by the Moors, an *innumerable multitude of people* retired into the Asturias, and there proclaimed Pelagius king.

9. *A third part of the enemy* was left dead on the field of battle ; the rest surrendered at discretion.

10. *The innumerable crowd of carriages* which are to be seen in London during the winter, astonishes foreigners.

(1.) Much is, etc. (*one has a great deal of pains, and little of real enjoyments.*)

(3.) To be lost, *se perdre* ; unseasonable, *hors de propos*.

(4.) Familiarity, *habitude* ; linked, *lier* ; beset, *obséder*.

(5.) How many, *que de* ; to seclude one's self, *se retirer* ; pull out of, *arracher à* ; to take away from, *ôter à*.

(6.) Company, *troupe* ; clad in, *et vêtu de* ; linen, *lin*.

(7.) Lovely, *beau* ; tresses, *cheveu* ; flowed, *pendre* ; to play, *flotter* ; with, *au gré de* ; swam, *nager* ; shoals, *foule* ; car, *char*.



(8.) Moors, *Maure*; retired, *se retirer*; Asturias, *Asturies*; Pelagius, *Pélage*.

(9.) A third part, *un tiers*; enemy, pl.; surrendered, *se rendre*.

(10.) Crowd, *quantité*; which are, (*active voice on*).

#### PLACE OF THE SUBJECT WITH REGARD TO THE VERB.

329. The subject of the verb when a noun must always precede the verb, and cannot be separated from it, except by a negation, or personal pronoun in the dative or the accusative case.

#### EXAMPLES.

le roi est revenu,	<i>the king has returned.</i>
le roi ne reviendra pas,	<i>the king will not return.</i>
le roi lui a parlé,	<i>the king has spoken to him.</i>
le roi le lui a donné,	<i>the king has given it to him.</i>
le roi reviendra-t-il ?	<i>will the king return ?</i>
le roi le lui a-t-il donné ?	<i>has the king given it to him ?</i>
le roi ne le lui a-t-il pas donné ?	<i>has not the king given it to him ?</i>

330. When the subject is a pronoun, it precedes the verb, in the affirmative form, and follows it in the negative.

#### EXAMPLES.

je parle,	<i>I speak.</i>
parle-t-il ?*	<i>does he speak ?</i>
ne lui a-t-il pas parlé ?	<i>has he not spoken to him ?</i>

#### EXERCISE.

1. *Youth* is full of presumption; *it* expects every thing from itself: although frail, *it* thinks itself all-sufficient, and that *it* has nothing to fear.

2. *Commerce* is like certain springs; if *you* attempt to \* divert their course, *you* dry them up.

3. *It*, is enough that falsehood is falsehood, to be unworthy of a man who speaks in the \* presence of God, and who is to sacrifice every thing to truth.

4. The *ambition* and *avarice* of man are the sources of his unhappiness.

5. *They* punish, in Crete, three vices, which have remained unpunished in all other nations: ingratitude, dissimulation, and avarice.

6. Like the Numidian lion, goaded by cruel hunger, and rushing upon a flock of feeble sheep, *he* tears, *he* slays, *he* wallows in blood.

(1.) Full of presumption, *présomptueux*; expects, *se promettre*; itself all sufficient, *pouvoir tout*; that it has, *avoir*.

(2.) Springs, *source*; attempt, *vouloir*; dry up, *faire tarir*.

(3.) It is enough, *suffire*; falsehood, *mensonge*; is, *subj. in, en*; is to sacrifice, *doit*.

\* The use of the hyphen has been explained, No. 4.

(5.) Punished, *ind-2*; have remained, *être*; in, *chez*.

(6.) Like the, *semblable à un*; Numidian, *de Numidie*; goaded by, etc. (*that cruel hunger goads*) *dévoré*; rushing, (*which rushes upon*), *entrer dans*; tears, *déchirer*; slays, *égorger*; wallows, *nager*.

331. When an interrogation begins with *que, où, combien, à quoi*, the noun subject may be placed after the verb, and *il, elle, ils, elles* are suppressed.

## EXAMPLES.

Que dit votre ami ? à quoi s'occupe votre frère ? où demeure votre cousin ? combien coûte cet habit ?

332. Verbs of the first conjugation require the acute accent before *je*, in interrogations, *parlé-je, aimé-je*.

*Cours-je, dors-je, sens-je*, would be harsh; such questions are to be turned thus, *est-ce-que je cours ? est-ce que je dors ?*

## EXERCISE.

1. *Have you* forgotten all that Providence has done for you ? how *have you* escaped the shafts of your enemies ? how *have you* been preserved from the dangers which surrounded you on all sides ? *could you be* so blind as not to acknowledge and adore the all-powerful hand that has miraculously saved you ?

2. What *will posterity say* of you, if instead of devoting to the happiness of mankind the great talents which you have received from nature, you make use of them only to deceive and corrupt them.

3. Do not *the misfortunes* which we experience often contribute to our \* prosperity.

4. Why are *the works of nature* so perfect ? Because each work is a whole, and because she labours upon an eternal plan, from which she never deviates. Why, on the contrary, are *the productions* of man so imperfect ? It is because the human mind being unable to create any thing, and incapable of embracing the universe at a single glance, can \* produce only after having been enriched by experience and meditation.

(1.) Escaped, *échapper à*; shafts, *trait*; preserved, *garantir*; on all sides, *de toutes parts*; so as, *assez pour*; saved, *conserver*.

(2.) Devoting, *consacrer*; mankind, *homme*, pl.; deceive, *égarer*.

(3.) Experience, *éprouver*; contribute to, *tourner en*.

(4.) Because, *c'est que*; and because, *et que*; being unable, *ne pouvoir*; incapable, (*not being able*) at, *de*; glance, *vue*; enriched, *féconde*.

*Replied I, said I, says he*, used in narrations, are literally translated in French.

## EXAMPLES.

je meurs innocent, a dit Louis XVI. *I die innocent, said Louis XVI.*

je le veux bien, dit-il, *I am very willing said he.*

The subject of impersonal verbs is placed after the verb.

#### EXAMPLES.

il est arrivé de grands malheurs, *great misfortunes have happened.*  
il vint à ma voix un bon vieillard, *at my call, there came an old man.*

333. When the adverb and adjective *ainsi, tel*, begin the sentence, the subject is placed after the verb.

#### EXAMPLES.

tel était l'acharnement du soldat, *such was the fury of the soldier*  
que, etc. *that, etc.*  
ainsi finit cette sanglante tragédie, *thus ended that bloody tragedy.*

#### EXERCISE.

1. True glory, *said he* is founded on humanity; whoever prefers his own glory to the feelings of humanity, is a monster of pride, and not a man.

2. There have happened, for these \* ten years, *so many events* exceeding all probability, that posterity will find it very difficult to credit them.

3. *Such was that incorruptible Phocion*, who answered the deputies of Alexander, who were telling him that this powerful monarch loved him as the only honest man; well, then 2, let him allow me 1 to be and to appear so.

4. *Thus ended*, by the humiliation of Athens, *that dreadful war* of twenty-seven years, to \* which ambition gave rise, which hatred made atrocious, and which was as fatal to the Greeks, as their ancient confederation had proved advantageous to them.

(1.) Is founded, *ne se trouver pas hors de*; feelings, *sentiment*.

(2.) There have happened for, *il se passer depuis*; exceeding, *hors de*; probability, *vraisemblance*; will find very difficult, *avoir bien de la peine*; to credit, *ajouter foi à*.

(3.) Loved, *chérir*; honest man, *homme de bien*; well *ho!* to be so, *d'être tel*; appear so, *le paraître*.

(4.) Ended, *se terminer*; gave rise, *faire naître*; made, *rendre*; had proved, *être*.

After *aussi, peut-être, aussi bien*, the verb assumes the interrogative form. *Il est riche, aussi est-il recherché*, he is rich, and therefore sought after.

334. The noun or pronoun subject comes also after the imperative of *pouvoir, devoir, and faire*.

#### EXAMPLES.

puissent tous les peuples se convaincre de cette vérité, *may all nations be convinced of this truth.*  
dussé-je y périr, j'irai, *though I perish there, I will go,*  
fasse le ciel que . . . *heaven grant that . . .*



### EXERCISE.

- (1.) Grant, *faire* ; experience, *éprouver de*.  
(2.) 'To enjoy, *jouir de* ; happiness, *le bonheur que*.  
(3.) 'To give up, *renoncer à*.

### EXAMPLES.

### EXERCISE.

He has discovered to all other nations his ambitious  
*montrer art. \* peuple m. pl. = 2*

design of enslaving them, and has left  
*dessin m. l mettre dans l'esclavage inf-1 ne laisser*

us no means of defending our liberty, but by endeavouring  
*aucun moyen inf-1 que en tâcher inf-3*

to overturn his new kingdom. Homer represents Nestor as  
*de renverser royaume m.*

the man who restrained the ungovernable wrath of Achilles,  
*celui modérer ind-2 bouillant courroux m.*

the pride of Agememnon, the haughtiness of Ajax, and the  
*fierté f.*

impetuous courage of Diomend. He dared not lift up  
*= —m. l Diomède oser ind-2 lever*

his eyes, lest they should meet those of his  
*\* art. de peur de \* \* rencontrer inf-1*

c c 2

friend, whose very silence condemned him. He caresses  
 art. même 2 m. 1 ind-2  
 them, because he loves them.

336. When an interrogative sentence begins with *quel*,  
*de quel*, the object comes before the verb.

## EXAMPLES.

*quel objet voyez-vous ?*                      *what object do you see ?*  
*à quelle science vous appliquez-*      *to what science do you apply your-*  
*vous ?*    *self.*  
*de quelle affaire s'occupe votre*      *what is brother about ?*  
*frère ?*

337. Though the natural order of the ideas seems to require that the regimen direct be placed before the indirect, the perspicuity of the sentence does not allow it in all cases.

When a verb has two regimens, the shorter is generally placed first ; but if they be of equal length, the regimen direct will precede the indirect.

## EXAMPLES.

*les hypocrites s'étudient—à parer*      *hypocrites make it their study to*  
*le vice—des dehors de la*              *deck vice with the appearance of*  
*vertu,*    *virtue.*  
*les hypocrites s'étudient à pa-*      *hypocrites make it their study to*  
*rer—des dehors de la vertu—*              *deck with the appearance of virtue*  
*les vices les plus honteux et*              *the most shameful and most odi-*  
*les plus décriés,*                              *ous vices.*  
*l'ambition sacrifie—le présent—*      *ambition sacrifices the present to*  
*à l'avenir, mais la volupté sa-*              *the future, but pleasure sacri-*  
*crifie—l'avenir—au présent,*              *fices the future to the present.*

1. Illustrious examples teach us, that God has hurled from their throne princes who condemned his laws: he reduced to the condition of a beast the haughty Nebuchadnezzar, who wanted to usurp divine honours.

2. Wretched is \* the man who feeds his minds with chimeras.

3. Our interest should prompt us to prefer virtue to vice, wisdom to pleasure, and modesty to vanity.

(1.) Illustrious, *fameux* ; teach, *apprendre* ; hurled, *renverser* ; haughty, *superbe* ; Nabuchodonosor ; wanted, *vouloir*.

(2.) Feeds, *repâitre*.

(3.) Should, *devoir*. ind-1 ; prompt, *porter* ; pleasure, *volupté*.

338. A noun may be governed at the same time by two verbs, provided those verbs do not require different regimens.

## EXAMPLES.

*on doit aimer et respecter les*      *we ought to love and respect kings.*  
*rois,*

cet général attaqua et prit la ville, - *that general attacked and took the city.*

But we must not say :

cet officier attaqua et se rendit maître de la ville, *that officer attacked and made himself master of the city.*

But turn the sentence thus :

cet officier attaqua la ville et s'en rendit maître, *that officer attacked the city and made himself master of it.*

because *attaquer* is active, and *se rendre* requires *de*.

#### EXERCISE.

1. Luxury is like a torrent, which carries away, and overthrows every thing it meets.

2. Nothing can \* resist the operation of time ; it, at length, undermines, alters or destroys every thing.

3. Among the Spartans, public education had two objects : the first, to harden their bodies by fatigue ; the second, to excite and nourish, in their minds, the love of their country. and an enthusiasm for what is great.

(1.) Carries away, *entraîner* ; overthrows, *renverser* ; every thing, *tout ce que*.

(2.) Operation, *action* ; at length, *à la longue* ; undermine, *miner*.

(3.) Among the Spartans, *à Sparte* ; to, *de* ; harden, *endurcir* ; by *à* ; their must be rendered by the article ; for what is great, *des grandes choses*.

### 339. PASSIVE VERBS.

Passive verbs require the prepositions *de* or *par*, generally *de* with those verbs which express a moral action, and *par* with those which express a physical one.

#### EXAMPLES.

un jeune homme vertueux est estimé de tout le monde, *a virtuous young man is esteemed of all.*

la poudre à canon fut inventée par Berthold Schwartz, *gun powder was invented by B. Schwartz.*

In this sentence *votre ouvrage a été loué d'une manière fort délicate par un grand académicien*, *par* is used to avoid the repetition of *de*.

*Puristes* pretend we ought not to say *le monde à été créé par Dieu*, but *de Dieu*. This opinion has for its object to avoid an equivocation, with the oath or, rather, interjection, *pardieu* ! this is being over nice, as the words *par Dieu*, in the above sentence, convey no idea of irreverence, but on the contrary of admiration to God.



## EXERCISE.

The city of Troy was taken, plundered, and destroyed by the  
*Troie pris f. saccager détruit*  
 confederate Greeks, 1184 years before the Christian æra: this  
*confédéré 2 1 ans avant 2 ère f. 1*  
 event has been celebrated by the two great poets of Greece  
 art.  
 and Italy. You will only be beloved, esteemed, and  
 pr. art. *ne*  
 courted by men, (in proportion as) you join the  
*rechercher de que autant que joindre ind-7*  
 qualities of the heart to those of the mind. God pu-  
 = f, pl. pr. 3 pu-  
 nished the Jews every time that,  
*nir (passive voice ind-3 2) peuple Juif 1 toutes les fois*  
 deaf to the voice of the prophets, they fell into  
*sourc prophète sing. tomber ind-3. dans*  
 idolatry and impiety.  
 art. = art. =

## 340. NEUTER VERBS.

The nature of these verbs has been explained at full length, No. 96, 126. Their chief difficulty consists in the preposition which they require before the noun coming after them; pains must be taken to ascertain it, especially as it almost always differs from that which is used in English.

341. Some neuter verbs are used absolutely, as: *je dors*, I sleep; *je marche*, I walk.

## EXAMPLES.

*vous plaisez à cette dame, you please that lady.*  
*avez-vous pensé à mon affaire? have you thought of my affair?*

342. Some govern the proposition, *à*, such as: *plaire, obéir, résister, applaudir, croire, penser,*, etc. etc.\*

343. Others govern the proposition, *de*, such as: *jouir, se moquer, se servir, se tromper, se repentir, mourir, dépendre, avoir besoin,*, etc., etc.\*

---

\* The government of verbs is the greatest difficulty the English learner has to encounter in his study of the French language, as the correct construction of the whole sentence depends upon it. Suppose, for instance, you had to translate, *you have resisted orders on the execution of which our success depended*. If you have previously ascertained that *résister* governs the *dative* and *dépendre* the *genitive*, then you will say correctly, *vous avez résisté à des ordres de l'exécution desquels notre succès*

il jouit d'une bonne santé  
la fortune dont il jouit.

he enjoys good health.  
the fortune which he enjoys.

**OBSERVE.** That many neuter verbs have the reflected form, thus : *s'arrêter*, to stop ; *se plaire à*, to take pleasure in.

## EXERCISE.

This sentiment has pleased the king and all the nation.  
à à  
In his retirement he enjoys the faculties of his  
*dans retraite f. jouir de tout = f. pl.*  
soul. To slander (any one) is to assassinate him in cold blood.  
\* *médire de quelqu'un c'est* \* *de 2 sang 1*  
The honest man seldom (permits himself) to jest  
*rarement 2 se permettre 1 de \* art. plaisanterie*  
because he knows the most innocent jests may  
*f. pl. parce que savoir que f. pl. \* pouvoir*  
sometimes hurt the reputation. It is only in retirement  
*quelquefois nuire à f. ce ne que art.*  
that one truly enjoys one's self. His work has  
*on véritablement 2 jouir 1 de soi ouvrage m.*  
pleased every one, because it unites to real utility  
*à art. monde joindre un 2 = f. 1*  
the charms of style, and the beauties of senti-  
*agrément m. pl. art. m sing. art. pl.*  
ment.

344. *Neuter verbs*, do not all take the same auxiliary ; some have *avoir*, others have *être*.

## EXAMPLES.

ils sont partis, *They have gone*  
les soldats ont couru, *the soldiers have ran.*

Some in one sense, take the auxiliary, *être*, and in another, *avoir*.

## EXAMPLES.

1. ils ont échappé.
2. ils sont échappés.

*dépendait.* Neglect to ascertain this point, and you will translate literally thus : *vous avez résisté les ordres sur l'exécution desquels dépendait notre succès.*

The Dictionnaire des Verbes or Dictionary of French Verbs, showing their regimen, 1 vol. 12mo. will it is hoped, be found a great assistance to those who wish to write correctly.

The Familiar and Conversational exercises, containing a selection of about 150 pages of English sentences, chosen on account of their peculiarity of construction and frequent recurrence in every day's conversation, will also afford good and useful practice on this subject.

The first implies the *actual fact* of some people having escaped, the second implies the *state or position* of people having escaped.

These are points which require much attention, and we subjoin three lists of examples which the learner will do well to consult.\*

345. The neuter verbs which take the verb *être* are *aller*, *arriver*, *choir*, *convenir*, *déborder*, (to overflow) *décéder*, *devenir*, *échoir*, *éclore*, *intervenir*, *mourir*, *naître*, *partir*, *parvenir*, *provenir*, *repartir*, (to set off again), *résulter*, *retourner*, *revenir*, *survenir*, *tomber* and *venir*.

#### EXAMPLES.

les enfants <i>sont</i> allés au jardin,	<i>the children are gone to the garden.</i>
elle <i>était</i> arrivée avant moi,	<i>she had arrived before me.</i>
nous <i>sommes</i> convenus de nos torts,	<i>we have confessed our wrongs.</i>
la rivière <i>est</i> débordée,	<i>the river has overflowed.</i>
ces grands hommes <i>sont</i> tous décédés,	<i>those great men are all dead.</i>
les vrais littérateurs <i>sont</i> devenus rares,	<i>true learned men have become scarce.</i>
votre billet <i>sera</i> échu avant votre retour,	<i>your bill will fall due before you return.</i>
ces œufs <i>sont</i> éclos,	<i>those eggs are hatched.</i>
il <i>est</i> intervenu dans cette affaire,	<i>he has interfered in that affair.</i>
on dit que son père et sa mère <i>sont</i> morts,	<i>they say that his mother and father are dead.</i>
nos malheurs <i>sont</i> nés de nos dissensions,	<i>our misfortunes have sprung from our dissensions.</i>
ma sœur <i>était</i> partie avant lui,	<i>my sister had set off before him.</i>
elle <i>est</i> enfin parvenue à son but,	<i>she has at last obtained her end.</i>
les enfants qui <i>sont</i> provenus de ce mariage,	<i>the children that are issued from that marriage.</i>
ils <i>sont</i> repartis pour la campagne,	<i>they are gone into the country again.</i>
il en <i>est</i> résulté un grand inconvénient.	<i>a great inconvenience has been the result of it.</i>
nous <i>étions</i> retournés au château,	<i>we had all gone back to the castle.</i>
elles <i>seraient</i> revenues avec nous,	<i>they would have come back with us.</i>
cette agréable nouvelle <i>est</i> survenue ce matin,	<i>this agreeable news came this morning</i>
il a voulu courir et il <i>est</i> tombé,	<i>he would run, and he fell</i>
pourquoi <i>sont-ils</i> venus ici ?	<i>why did they come hither ?</i>

346. Neuter verbs, which take the verb *avoir*, are *comparaître*, *contrevenir*, *convenir*, *courir*, *échouer*, *paraître*, *subvenir*.

---

\* These lists are taken from Mr. Sievrac's edition.



## EXAMPLES.

les témoins <i>ont</i> comparu ce matin	<i>the witnesses have appeared this morning.</i>
ils <i>ont</i> contrevenu au principaux articles du traité,	<i>they have infringed the chief articles of the treaty.</i>
cette maison et cet ameublement m' <i>auraient</i> bien convenu,	<i>that house and furniture would have suited me much.</i>
les soldats <i>ont</i> couru vers leur général,	<i>the soldiers have run towards their general.</i>
un vaisseau américain <i>a</i> échoué devant le port,	<i>an American vessel has run aground near the port.</i>
nous <i>avons</i> paru quand on nous <i>a</i> appelés,	<i>we appeared, when we were called for.</i>
mon bon père <i>a</i> subvenu à tous mes besoins,	<i>my good father has provided for all my exigencies.</i>

S47. Neuter verbs which take either of the auxiliaries according to the idea expressed, *accoucher, accourir, accroître, apparaître, cesser, changer, commencer, croître, déchoir, demeurer, descendre, diminuer, disparaître, échapper, embellir, entrer, expirer, grandir, rajeunir, monter, passer, périr, recster, sonner, and vieillir.*

## EXAMPLES.

*With AVOIR (fact).*

j'*ai* accouru sur-le-champ à son secours,  
*I immediately ran to his assistance.*  
 il *a* accru sa fortune en bien peu de temps,  
*he has increased his fortune in a short time.*  
 il dit qu'un spectre lui *a* apparu pendant la nuit,  
*he says that a ghost has appeared to him during the night,*  
 la fièvre *a* cessé pendant une heure,  
*the fever has ceased for an hour.*  
 les circonstances *ont* changé la face des affaires,  
*circumstances have altered the face of affairs.*  
 le bal *a* commencé vers minuit,  
*the ball began towards midnight.*  
 cet enfant *a* crû pendant sa maladie,  
*that child has grown during his illness.*

*With ÊTRE (state).*

la garde *est* accourue sur-le-champ,  
*the guard ran up in all haste.*  
 son orgueil *est* accru avec ses richesses,  
*his pride has increased with his riches.*  
 Dieu *est* apparu à Moïse,  
*God has appeared to Moses.*  
 la fièvre *est* cessé depuis une heure,  
*the fever has ceased an hour ago.*  
 cette femme *est* changée à faire peur,  
*that woman is so altered as to frighten one.*  
 le bal *était* commencé lorsque nous entrâmes,  
*the ball had begun when we came in.*  
 cette plante *est* crûe prodigieusement,  
*that plant is prodigiously grown.*

depuis ce moment il a déchu de  
jour en jour,  
*he has been on the decay ever since.*  
j'ai demeuré vingt ans à Paris,  
*I have lived twenty years in Paris.*

ils ont descendu la montagne  
beaucoup plus vite qu'ils ne  
l'avaient montée,  
*they have descended the hill much  
quicker than they had ascended  
it.*

le prix du blé n'a pas diminué  
depuis six mois,  
*the price of wheat has not fallen  
for these six months.*

elle a disparu subitement,  
*she has disappeared all on a sud-  
den.*

ils ont échappé au danger,  
*they have escaped danger.*

elle a fort embelli pendant son  
voyage,  
*she is grown handsome on her  
journey.*

j'ai entré en ce lieu,  
*I have entered that place.*

Jésus-Christ a expiré sur la  
croix,

*Jesus-Christ expired on the cross.*

ce jeune homme a grandi depuis  
peu de temps,

*that young man has grown very  
lately,*

vous avez rajeuni dans votre  
voyage,

*you are grown younger in your  
journey.*

il a monté quatre fois à sa cham-  
bre pendant la journée,

*he went up into his room four  
times in the course of the day.*

la procession a passé sous mes  
fenêtres,

*the procession has passed under  
my window.*

ces malheureux ont tous péri  
dans le combat,

*those unfortunate men have all  
perished in the battle.*

il est bien déchu de son crédit,  
*he has lost much of his credit.*

il est demeuré à Paris pour a étu-  
dier la médecine,  
*he has remained in Paris to study  
physic.*

ils sont descendus,  
*they have come down.*

il est enfin diminué de moitié,  
*it has at last fallen by half,*

elle est disparue depuis quinze  
jours,  
*it is now a fortnight since she has  
disappeared.*

ils sont échappés depuis hier,  
*the have made their escape since  
yesterday.*

on croirait qu'elle est embellie,  
*one would think that she is grown  
handsomer.*

vous êtes entré, restez-y,  
*you are in, stay.*

la trêve est expirée,  
*the truce has expired.*

assurément vous êtes bien grandi,  
*indeed you are much grown.*

vous êtes rajeuni à mes yeux de  
dix ans,

*you are grown younger in my eyes  
by ten years.*

il est monté dans sa chambre et il  
y est resté,

*he is gone up into his room and has  
remained there.*

la procession est passée,  
*the procession has gone by.*

que sont devenus ces malheureux  
qu'on avait entassés dans vos  
prisons ? ils sont périés.

*what has become of those unfortunate  
men who had been heaped in your  
dungeons ? they are dead.*

combien de temps avez-vous resté en Angleterre ? <i>what stay did you make in Eng- land ?</i>	cent combattants sont restés sur la place, <i>one hundred combatants have re- mained on the field of battle.</i>
la pendule a sonné cinq heures, <i>the clock has struck five.</i>	trois heures étaient sonnées, lors- qu'on s'est mis à table, <i>it had struck three, when we sat down at meat.</i>
j'ai bien vieilli depuis deux ans, <i>I am grown much older within these two years.</i>	avouez que nous sommes bien vieillis, <i>confess that we are grown very old.</i>

## OF THE VERB BEING REGIMEN.

348. When two verbs come together the second may be, 1st, in the infinitive ; 2dly, in the indicative mood ; 3dly, in the subjunctive.

## OF THE VERB IN THE INFINITIVE AFTER ANOTHER.

349. The second verb is in the infinitive, when we speak of one person only, *i. e.* when the subject of both verbs is the same.

## EXAMPLES.

je veux sortir,	<i>I wish to go out.</i>
nous espérons voir le roi,	<i>we hope to see the king.</i>

The subject of *vouloir* and *sortir* is the same ; *I wish I may go out* ; so of *espérer*, *we hope we shall see the king.*

350. But here again is a difficulty for the learner ; the infinitive following is sometimes governed by the preposition *à*, sometimes by *de*, sometimes by *pour*, and sometimes there is no preposition at all.

## EXAMPLES.

j'aime à lire,	<i>I like to read.</i>
je crains de tomber,	<i>I fear to fall.</i>
je travaille pour vivre,	<i>I work to get my living.</i>
je dois partir,	<i>I am to go.</i>

This difference depends on the preceding verb of which the government must be ascertained.

351. *Aimer mieux, valoir mieux, aller, espérer, falloir, devoir, pouvoir, savoir, vouloir*, etc., require no preposition before the following infinitive.

## EXAMPLES.

j'aimerais mieux mourir,	<i>I had rather die.</i>
vous devriez sortir,	<i>you ought to go out.</i>



352. *Achever, finir, affecter, se dépêcher, se hâter, craindre, appréhender, désirer, etc.*, require the preposition *de*.

## EXAMPLES.

il affecte de l'aimer,	<i>he affects to like it.</i>
elle craignait de tomber,	<i>she feared to fall.</i>

353. *Aimer, apprendre, consentir, se plaire, s'apprêter, etc.* require *à*.

## EXAMPLES.

j'aime à danser,	<i>I like dancing.</i>
consentez-vous à l'épouser ?	<i>do you consent to marry her ?</i>

The preposition *pour* is used when *in order to*, is either expressed or understood in English.

## EXAMPLE.

il va à la campagne pour chasser, *he is going in the country to shoot.*

354. Verbs generally require, before the infinitive, the same preposition which they require before the noun.

## EXAMPLES.

je vous blâme de votre refus,	<i>I blame you for your refusal.</i>
je vous blâme de refuser.	<i>I blame you for refusing.</i>

355. Sometimes a verb governs two different prepositions, because it has two different acceptations.

*S'efforcer de*, to endeavour, is taken in the moral sense ; *s'efforcer à*, in the physical.

## EXAMPLES.

il s'efforce de plaire,	<i>he tries to please.</i>
il s'efforce à parler,	<i>he exerts himself to speak.</i>

These peculiarities of the language cannot be taught by rule ; they belong to individual words which must be consulted. See *Dictionnaire des verbes*.

## EXERCISE.

1. Do you prefer living\* in the country ?
2. Come, when you have done writing.
3. Are you afraid of falling ?
4. He cannot walk.
5. Does he not like travelling ?
6. She takes delight in teasing.
7. Has he not consented to pay you ?
8. They are gone to London to see if they can find a house for the season.
9. My sisters learn drawing.

10. I was getting ready to go out when he came.

11. They hope to arrive in time.

12. Make haste to get up and to dress.

(1.) Préférer, vivre ; *in*, à.

(2.) Finir, *ind*-8.

(3.) Craindre.

(4.) Pouvoir.

(5.) Aimer voyager.

(6.) Se plaire, tourmenter.

(7.) Consentir.

(8.) Aller, voir, pouvoir.

(9.) Apprendre, dessiner.

(10.) S'apprêter, sortir, venir,  
*ind*-4.

(11.) Espérer ; *in time*, à temps.

(12.) Se dépêcher, se lever,  
s'habiller.

#### OF THE VERB IN THE INDICATIVE AND THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

356. When the subjects of the two verbs are different, the second verb must be in the indicative mood or in the subjunctive.

##### EXAMPLES.

je crois que vous avez raison, *I think you are right.*  
je doute que vous ayez raison, *I doubt your being right.*

Here are two persons or subjects ; the one *thinking* and the other *not being right*.

357. The indicative mood is used after all verbs expressing an act of the mind, and when speaking *in an affirmative and positive manner* ; among such may be enumerated *croire, imaginer, concevoir, réfléchir, considérer, observer, remarquer, compter, espérer, démontrer, etc., etc.*

##### EXAMPLES.

je crois qu'il est venu, *I believe he has arrived.*  
espérons que la chose ira bien, *let us hope the thing will succeed.*

OBSERVE. That the conjunction *que* is never omitted in French.

358. If the same verbs are used interrogatively or negatively, they require the subjunctive mood after them.

##### EXAMPLES.

je ne crois pas qu'il soit venu *I do not think he is come*  
espérez-vous que la chose aille *do you expect the thing will go on*  
bien ? *well ?*

359. There are some verbs expressive of *fear, doubt, apprehension, desire*, which always have the subjunctive mood after them, whether in the affirmative or the negative form.\*

\* This is more fully explained at the article, subj. mood, No. 381.

## EXAMPLES.

je doute qu'il vienne	<i>I doubt his coming</i>
je crains que cela ne soit	<i>I fear its being so</i>

## EXERCISE.

1. She thinks you have not sufficiently attended to her interest ?
2. Do you imagine it is an easy thing to convince him ?
3. They say he is going abroad.
4. Do you imagine I have done it on purpose ?
4. I wish you may succeed, but I doubt it.
6. We fear he will come in our absence, and he will be vexed not to find us at home.

- (1.) Croire ; *to have attended*, s'être occupé de ; *interest*, intérêts.
- (2.) S'imaginer, chose facile, convaincre.
- (3.) Abroad, à l'étranger.
- (4.) *To do on purpose*, faire exprès.
- (5.) Désirer, réussir, douter de.
- (6.) Craindre, venir ; *vexed*, contrarié de.

## OF THE NATURE AND USE OF MOODS AND TENSES.

## OF THE INDICATIVE.

360. *The indicative* is the mood which declares affirmatively or negatively. It has eight tenses which are :

<i>the present</i>	je parle
<i>the imperfect</i>	je parlais
<i>the preterit definite</i>	je parlai
<i>the preterit indefinite</i>	j'ai parlé
<i>the preterit anterior</i>	j'eus parlé
<i>the pluperfect</i>	j'avais parlé
<i>the future simple</i>	je parlerai
<i>the future anterior</i>	j'aurai parlé

361. *The present* marks that a thing is *now* passing, that is, either existing or doing.

## EXAMPLES.

j'aime,	<i>I love, do love, am loved.</i>
ils jouent,	<i>they play, do play, are playing.</i>

361. *The present* may be used in speaking of a thing that is going to be done, or take place, as being more expressive than the future.

## EXAMPLE.

je suis de retour dans un moment, *I shall be back in an instant.*



It is also used, in a narrative, instead of the preterit, in order to give more force and vivacity to the description, and to make the thing, as it were, present.

## EXAMPLE.

le cheval blessé se démène et *the horse being wounded, struggled,*  
secoue son maître ; Cyrus *shook off his rider ; Cyrus fell.*  
tombe.

## EXERCISE.

1. *He* is in his chamber, where he *is relaxing* his mind from the fatigue of business, by some instructive and agreeable reading.

2. Truth, eternal by its nature, *is* immutable as God himself.

3. I never *let* a day *pass* without devoting an hour or two to reading the ancients.

4. It is this week that the new piece *comes* out.

5. The armies were in sight : nothing was heard on all sides but dreadful cries : the engagement began. Immediately a cloud of arrows *darkens* the air and *covers* the combatants ; nothing *is* heard but doleful cries of the dying, or the clattering of the arms of those who *fall* in the conflict ; the earth *groans* beneath a heap of dead bodies, and rivers of blood *stream* every where ; there *is* nothing in this confused mass of men enraged against one another but slaughter, despair, revenge, and brutal fury.

(1.) Is unbending, *délasser* ; reading, *lecture*.

(2.) By, *de* ; immutable, *immuable*.

(3.) Let devoting, *consacrer* ; reading, *la lecture de*.

(4.) Come out, *en donner*.

(5.) Sight, *présence* ; nothing was, etc., *on ne que*, ind-2 ; engagement began, *on en venir aux mains*, ind-3 ; cloud, *nuée* ; arrows, *trait* ; darkens, *obscurcir* ; nothing is etc., *on ne plus que* ; doleful, *plaintif* ; clattering, *bruit* ; conflict, *mêlée* ; groans, *gémir* ; beneath, *sous* ; heap, *monceau* ; rivers, *ruissseau* ; stream, *couler* ; there is nothing in, etc. *ce ne être dans* ; mass, *amas* ; enraged, *acharné* ; but, *que* ; slaughter, *massacre*.

362. The *imperfect je parlais*, I was speaking, I did speak, I used to speak, I spoke ; expresses a thing being done at the moment another takes place.

## EXAMPLE.

j'entrais au moment où vous *I came in at the moment you en-*  
êtes entré, *tered.*

The imperfect expresses also repetition, habit, description of things habitual and stationary.

## EXAMPLES.

je recevais de ses nouvelles *I heard from him every week.*  
toutes les semaines,

quand j'étais à Paris, j'allais *when I was in Paris I often went*  
souvent aux Champs Elysées, *to the Champs Elysées.*

voilà la place où elle aimait à s'asseoir, *this is the place where she liked to sit down.*  
 son père était fier, *his father was very proud.*  
 le livre était sur la table ; quel- *the book was laying upon the table,*  
 qu'un l'aura pris, *somebody must have taken it.*

## EXERCISE.

1. When I *was* at Paris I *went* every morning to take a walk in the *Champs Elysées*, or the *Bois de Boulogne* ; afterwards I *came* home, where I employed myself till dinner, either in reading or writing ; and, in the evening, I generally *went* for amusement to the French Theatre or the Opera.

2. When I *was* in the prime of life, like the light butterfly, I *fluttered* from object to object, without being able to settle to any thing : eager for pleasure, I *seized* every thing that *had* its appearance : alas ! how far *was* I then from foreseeing that I should deplore with so much bitterness the loss of that precious time.

3. For a short time after Abraham, the knowledge of the true God still *appeared* in Palestine and Egypt. Melchisedec, king of Salem, *was* the priest of the Most High God 1. Abimelech, king of Gerar, and his successor of the same name, *feared* God, *swore* by his name, and *reverenced* his power. But in Moses' time, the nations *adored* even beasts and reptiles. Every thing *was* God but God himself.

(1.) Take a walk, *se promener* ; in à ; came home, *rentrer chez soi* ; was busy, *s'occuper* ; reading, (*by the verb*) ; for amusement, *me délasser* ; French Theatre, *Comédie Française*.

(2.) Prime of life, *fleur de l'âge* ; butterfly, *papillon* ; fluttered, *voler* ; being able, *pouvoir* ; settle, *me fixer* ; eager for, *avide de* ; had its appearance, *m'en présentait l'image* ; how, *que* ; with so much bitterness, (*so bitterly*.)

(3.) Swore, *jurer* ; reverenced, *admirer* ; the nations, *on* ; even, *jusqu'à* ; but, *excepté*.

363. *The preterit definite, je parlai*, is used in speaking of things done during a period, *a year, a month or a week*, entirely elapsed, and when the precise moment is specified or understood in which the action took place.

## EXAMPLES.

je lui écrivis à mon arrivée à Bath, *I wrote to him on my arrival at Bath.*  
 nous nous rencontrâmes l'année dernière aux eaux, *we met last year at a watering place.*

This preterit has been called the *historical tense*, on account of its serving to express things which have happened at a period distant from the present.

## EXERCISE.

Amenophis *conceived* the design of making his son a conqueror. He *set about* it, after the manner of the Egyptians, that is, with great

ideas. All the children who were born on \* the same day as Sesostris, *were brought* to court by order of the king : he *had* them educated as his own children, and with the same care as Sesostris. When he *was* grown up, he made him serve his apprenticeship in a war against the Arabs : this young prince *learned* there to bear hunger and thirst, and *subdued* that nation, till then invincible. He afterwards *attacked* Lybia, and *conquered* it. After these successes, he *formed* the project of subduing the whole world. In consequence of this \*, he entered Ethyopia, which he *made* tributary. He *continued* his victories in Asia. Jerusalem *was* the first to feel the force of his arms : the rash Rehoboam *could* not resist him, and Sesostris *carried* away the riches of Solomon. He *penetrated* into the Indies, farther than Hercules and Bacchus, and farther than Alexander did afterward. The Scythians *obeyed* him as far as the Tanais ; Armenia and Cappadocia *were* subject to him. In a word, he *extended* his empire from the Ganges to the Danube.

Making, *faire de* ; set about it, *s'y prendre* ; after, *à* ; ideas, *pensée* ; brought, *amener* ; had educated, *faire élever* ; grown up, *grand* ; made serve, *fit faire* ; apprenticeship, *apprentissage* ; in, *par* ; entered, *entrer dans* ; made, *rendre* ; as far as, *jusqu'à* ; Cappadocia, *Cappadoce*.

364. *The preterit indifinite, j'ai parlé*, is the tense which is the most used in French ; it expresses things done, or which have happened in the course of the day, recently, within the week, the month or the year in which we are.

## EXAMPLE.

*j'ai rencontré votre frère ce matin, I met your brother this morning.*

The preterit indefinite is used also to express assertion of a thing having been done, without any reference to time.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>j'ai voyagé en Italie,</i>	<i>I travelled in Italy.</i>
<i>j'en ai parlé à votre oncle,</i>	<i>I have mentioned it to your uncle.</i>
<i>n'avez-vous remarqué aucune</i>	<i>have you noticed no mistakes ?</i>
<i>faute ?</i>	

It is also used figuratively instead of the future.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>avez-vous bientôt fini ?</i>	<i>shall you have done soon ?</i>
<i>oui, j'ai fini dans un moment,</i>	<i>yes, I shall have done in a minute.</i>

## EXERCISE.

1. Enflamed with the desire of knowing mankind, *I have travelled*, not only among the most polished nations, but even among the most barbarous, *I have observed* them in the different degrees of civilization, from the state of simple nature to the most perfect state of society, and wherever I went, the result *was* the same : that is to say, *I have* every where *seen* beings occupied in drying up the different sources of happiness that nature had placed within their reach.



2. I *have travelled* this year in Italy, where I *had* an\* opportunity of seeing several master-pieces of antiquity, and where I *made* a valuable collection of scarce medals. I there *admired* the perfection to which they *have brought* architecture, painting, and music; but what *pleased* me most there, was the beauty of the climate of Naples.

(1.) With, *de*; mankind, *homme*, *pl.* to *chez*; polished nations, *peuple policé*; barbarous, *nation sauvage*; from, *depuis*; simple, *pur*: to, *jusqu'à*; wherever I went, *dans tous les pays*; the result was the same, (*I had the same result*) in drying up *à tarir*; within their reach, *à leur portée*.

(2.) Opportunity, *occasion*; master-pieces, *chef-d'œuvres*; scarce, *rare*; pleased me most, *faire le plus de plaisir*; was, *ind-1*.

365. The two preterit anterior, *j'eus parlé*, *j'ai eu parlé*, are commonly used after an adverb of time, such as *dès que*, *aussitôt que*, *quand*.

#### EXAMPLES.

*dès que j'eus diné je sortis,*                      *as soon as I had dined I went out.*  
*dès que j'ai eu diné je suis sorti,*           *I did go out as soon as I had done dinner.*

There is the same difference between these two tenses as between the preterit definite and the preterit indefinite. The first, *j'eus parlé*, is principally used in reference to time long past; the second, *j'ai eu parlé*, is said of things recently occurred. The latter expresses also assertion of facts, as: *j'ai parlé*.

#### EXAMPLE.

*aujourd'hui j'ai eu déjeuné en dix minutes,*           *I was not more than ten minutes about my breakfast to day*

366. The pluperfect, *j'avais parlé*, expresses the completion of an action, at the moment another took place.

#### EXAMPLE.

*j'avais soupé quand il entra,*                      *I had done supper when he entered.*

It is generally preceded of *dès que*, *quand*, *lorsque*, *aussitôt que*, and, like the imperfect, serves to express habitual thing, repetition, and to describe.

#### EXAMPLES.

*j'allais à la chasse dès que j'avais déjeuné,*           *I went out shooting as soon as I had done breakfast.*

#### EXERCISE.

1. As soon as I *had examined* this phenomenon, I tried to find out its causes.

2. As soon as we *had crossed* the river, we found ourselves in a wood where there was not a single foot-path traced.

3. As soon as the great Sesostris *had satisfied* his ambition by the conquest of so many empires, he returned into Egypt, where he devoted the whole of the day to administering strict justice to his people, and, in the evening, he recreated himself by holding conferences with the learned, or by conversing with the most upright people of his kingdom.

4. I *had only received*, like most of the grandees, an education in which I *had imbibed* nothing but sentiments of pride and insensibility ; that is, they *had done* every thing in their power, to stifle in me the happy and benevolent dispositions which I *had received* from nature.

(1.) As soon as, *dès que* ; tried to find out, *en rechercher*,

(2.) Crossed, *traverser* ; found ourselves, *se trouver engagé* ; foot-path, *sentier de*.

(3.) The whole of the day, *jour entier* ; administering, *rendre* ; inf-1 ; strict, *exact* ; recreated, *délasser* ; by holding conferences, *à s'entretenir* ; upright, *honnête* ; people, *gens*.

(4.) Grandee, *grand* ; imbibed, *puiser* ; they, *on* ; in their power, *ce qu'on pouvoir*, ind-6 ; stifle, *étouffer* ; benevolent, *bienfaisant*.

367. The *future absolute*, *je parlerai*, is that tense which expresses that an action or event will take place, at a time which does not yet exist.

#### EXAMPLE.

j'irai demain à la campagne, *I shall go to-morrow into the country.*

The *future anterior* is the tense which expresses that at a time when a thing will take place, another thing will have already taken place.

#### EXAMPLE.

quand j'aurai fini je sortirai, *when I have done, I shall go out.*

368. It is customary in English, to put the *present tense* after *when*, it is not so in French, the *future tense* must always be used, if speaking of things to come.

#### EXAMPLES.

*I will show it to you when I have done,* je vous le montrerai, quand je l'aurai fini.  
*when he comes, do let me know,* quand il viendra, faites le moi savoir.

369. The *future* is also used after *si*, when it means *wether*, that is, when a doubt is expressed.

#### EXAMPLE.

je ne sais si mon père viendra, *I do not know whether my father will come.*

When *si* means *if* the *future* must not be used.

#### EXAMPLE.

nous irons à la campagne demain *we shall go into the county to-morrow*  
 s'il fait beau temps, *if it is fine.*

The future is used in French in rendering sentences like these, do as you please, *faites comme il vous plaira* or *comme vous voudrez*.

## EXERCISE.

1. Remember that youth is but a flower, which *will wither* almost as soon as it \* opens. Thou *wilt see thyself* gradually changed. Smiling graces, sweet pleasures, strength, health, and joy, *will vanish* like a pleasing dream; nothing but the sad remembrance will be left thee.

2. I *shall* next year *take* a journey into Greece, and I am preparing myself for it by reading the travels of the young Anacharsis.

3. When you *have read* the celebrated discourse of Bossuet on Universal History, and *studied* it in the causes of the rise and fall of states, you *will be* less astonished at the revolutions, more or less sudden, that modern empires have experienced, which appeared to you in the most flourishing state.

(1) Will wither, (*will be almost as soon withered as*, 47), *sécher*; opens, *éclore*; gradually, *insensiblement*; lively, *riant*; pleasing, *beau*; nothing will be left, *il n'en rester*.

(2.) Take, *faire*; for it, *y*; reading, *lecture de*; (*the travels*, *celui*.)

(3.) Have read, ind-8; and, *que vous*, ind-8; in it, *y*; rise, *grandeur*; fall, *chute*; sudden, *subite*; (*that have experienced the modern empires, which etc.*) appeared, ind-2.

ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES OF *JE PARLAIS*, *JE PARLAI*, *J'AI PARLÉ*

370. The choice of the proper tense, between *je parlais*, *j'ai parlé*, *je parlai* is so difficult for the learner, it requires such perfect understanding of the peculiar acceptation of each of them, that the following passages selected and analysed for their illustration, may prove useful in addition to the foregoing rules.

We read in Marmontel—

Célicour, à l'âge de quinze ans, Célicour, *at the age of fifteen*, had *avait été* dans le monde ce *been in the world what is called* qu'on appelle un petit prodige, *a little prodigy*.

The author uses the pluperfect, because he describes what was at a period of time anterior to all those which he is going to mention.

Again,

*il faisait* des vers les plus galants *he composed the most agreeable*  
*du monde*; *il n'y avait pas* *love-sonnets imaginable*: there  
*dans le voisinage* une jolie *was not a pretty woman in the*  
*femme* qu'il n'eût célébrée: *neighbourhood that he had not*  
*c'était* dommage de laisser tant *celebrated*; it was a pity to let  
*de talents enfouis* dans une pé- *so many talents be buried in a*  
*tite ville*; Paris *devait en être* *lille town*; Paris was the stage  
*le théâtre*. *on which they ought to be exhibited*.



Here the author makes use of the imperfect, because he speaks of the habitual occupation of Célicour.

## EXAMPLE.

et l'on *fit* si bien, que son père *and they contrived matters so, that*  
*se résolut* de l'y envoyer, *his father determined to send him*  
*there.*

Now, the author passes to the preterit definite, because he is no longer speaking of what was habitual or repeated, but of an action which once occurred, and long ago.

## EXAMPLE.

ce père *était* un honnête homme, *this father was a good sort of man,*  
*qui aimait* l'esprit sans en a- *who was fond of wit, without*  
*voir, et qui admirait, sans sa-* *having any, and admired, with-*  
*voir pourquoi, tout ce qui ve-* *out knowing why, every thing*  
*nait* de la capitale. *that came from the metropolis.*  
*Il avait même des relations littéraires, Nay, he even had some literary*  
*et du nombre de ses correspon-* *connexions, and among his corres-*  
*dants était un connaisseur* *pondents was a connoisseur of the*  
*nommé M. de Fintac, name of Fintac.*

Here again, the author resumes the form of the imperfect, as he is now speaking of the habitual state of Célicour's father, in his little town.

## EXAMPLE.

ce *fut* principalement à lui que *it was particularly to him that*  
*Célicour fut recommandé Célicour was recommended*

The form of the preterit definite is now resumed, because this is said of action passed at a time long elapsed.

And in Molière's *Fourberies de Scapin*, we read

comme nous sommes grands *as we are great friends, he imme-*  
*amis, il me fit aussitôt confi-* *diately imparted the secret of his*  
*dence de son amour, et me* *love to me, and took me to see*  
*mena voir cette fille que je* *that girl whom I certainly thought*  
*trouvai belle, à la vérité, mais* *pretty, but not so much as he wished*  
*non pas tant qu'il voulait que* *me to do.*  
*je la trouvasse,*

Here *fit*, *mena*, *trouvai* are all referring to actions past long ago, and they serve also to state facts but not to describe permanent things. *Voulait*, on the contrary, is in the imperfect, because it expresses the constant and continued desire of Léandre that his mistress should be thought pretty.

Again Scapin says :

c'est ce que je lui ai dit. *J'ai rejeté bien loin de pareilles propositions, et je lui ai bien fait entendre que vous n'étiez point une dupe, pour vous demander des cinq ou six cents pistoles. Enfin, après plusieurs discours voici où s'est réduit le résultat de notre conférence.* *that is what I said to him. I would not hear of such proposals, and I gave him to understand that you were not a dupe to ask you five or six hundred pistols. Finally, after several speeches, this is what has been the result of our interview.*

Here the preterit indefinite, *j'ai parlé* is used, because Scapin relates what he has done since he saw Argante, consequently in the course of the day in which he is speaking. There is no description of a continued state of things, except in *étiez*, which refers to the general character of Argante.

#### OF THE CONDITIONAL.

371. The *conditional* is the mood which affirms a thing would be on some conditions ; it has two tenses, the *present* and the *past*.

The *present of the conditional* (*je parlerais*) is that tense which expresses that a thing would take place on certain conditions.

##### EXAMPLE.

je ferais votre affaire avant peu, *I would settle your business before long, if it only depended upon me.*  
si elle dépendait uniquement  
de moi,

The *past of the conditional* (*j'aurais parlé*) is that tense which expresses that a thing would have taken place at a time which no longer exists, dependant on certain conditions.

##### EXAMPLE.

j'aurais, ou j'eusse \* fait votre affaire, si vous m'en aviez, ou m'en eussiez parlé, *I would have settled your business if you had mentioned it to me.*

372. The conditional is used to express a wish, as,  
que je serais, or, que j'aurais été content si j'avais réussi ! *how glad I should be, or should have been had I succeeded !*

---

\* Some writers, and Voltaire especially, often make use of this form, *j'eusse parlé*, for *j'aurais parlé*. It is here given as an example, but it will be well to follow the first.

AND after *si*, whether, expressing a doubt, as,

demandez-lui s'il serait venu	ask him whether he would have
avec nous, supposé qu'il n'eût	come with us, had he not been
pas eu affaire ?	engaged ?

373. It is used also before, or after the imperfect, or pluperfect of the indicative, when they are preceded by *si*, as,

nous nous épargnerions bien des	we should spare ourselves much pain
peines, si nous savions modérer	did we know how to moderate
nos désirs,	our desires.
vous auriez été plus heureux, si	you would have been more happy,
vous aviez suivi mes conseils,	if you had followed my advice.

374. After *quand*, *quand même* ; in the sense of *though even, were I to*.

#### EXAMPLE.

quand l'avare posséderait tout	were the miser to possess all the
l'or du monde, il ne serait pas	gold in the world, he would not
encore content,	be satisfied.

And in questions like the following, in the sense of *is it possible that, could I ? could you ? really*.

#### EXAMPLES.

croiriez-vous votre fils ingrat ?	could you think your son ungrateful ?
l'auriez-vous soupçonné d'un tel vice ?	could you have suspected him of such a vice ?

which means, *croyez-vous, pouvez-vous croire, etc. auriez-vous pu, etc.*

#### EXAMPLE.

serais-tu* vraiment son fils ?	can it really be that you should be his son ?
tu n'aurais * employé qu'une juste défense,	really, you had only recourse to self-defence.

#### EXERCISE.

1. If it *were* even possible for men always to act conformably to equity, as it is the multitude that must judge their conduct, the wicked would always blame and contradict them from malignity, and the good sometimes from mistake.

2. What false steps I *should have made* but for you, at my entrance into the world !

3. But for your counsels, I *should have failed* in this undertaking.

\* This is again a form much used by Voltaire it is not simply a question, but it expresses a feeling of surprise, of dread or of joy at the thing asserted.



4. How satisfied I *should have been*, if you had sooner informed me of your happiness !

5. If we give to infancy none but just and clear notions, *there would be* a much less considerable number of false wits in the world.

6. *Had* Alexander conquered the whole world, his ambition *would not have been* satisfied: he *would still have found* himself straitened in it.

7. *Could you believe* him vain enough to aspire to that high degree of honour ?

8. *Could you ever have thought* him capable of deserting the good cause, to go and side with rebels ?

9. *Would you renounce* being useful to the present generation because envy fastens on you ?

(1.) If even, *quand même*; were, cond-1; for men, (that men); to act, subj-2; judge, *juger de*; would blame, ind-7; contradict, *croiser*, ind-7.

(2.) What *que de*; steps, *démarche*; but for, *sans*.

(3.) But for, *sans*; failed, *échouer*.

(4.) How, *que*.

(5.) We, *on*; a much less considerable number, *bien moins*.

(6.) (When Alexander would have conquered); straitened, *trop à l'étroit*.

(8.) Deserting, *abandonner*; to go and side with, *pour se ranger sous les drapeaux de*.

(9.) Renounce, *renoncer à*; fastens, *s'attacher*; on you, *à vos pas*.

375. Foreigners are very apt to use the conditional after *si*, when meaning *supposé que*. They say,

*vous auriez vu le roi, si vous seriez venu,*      *you would have seen the king if you had come.*

This mistake cannot be made if attention is paid to the actual meaning of *si*, which signifies both *if* and *whether*; when it is taken in the acceptation of *whether* the conditional is used, not otherwise.

#### EXAMPLES.

*je ne savais si nous irons ou non,*      *I did not know whether we should go or no.*  
*si nous allions à la campagne, je vous en préviendrais,*      *if we went into the country, I would tell you of it.*

#### OF THE IMPERATIVE.

376. The *imperative* is that mood which commands, exhorts, entreats, forbids or reproves.

In many verbs a compound of the imperative may be used to express an injunction to have a thing done previously to another, as, *ayez dîné avant que je revienne*, have dined before I return.

## EXERCISE.

Be not fond of praise; but seek virtue, which  
 sing. *passionné pour* art. *louange* f. art.  
 procures it. Let us remember that unless virtue guide  
*attirer* *se souvenir* *à moins que* art. *ne*  
 us, our choice must be wrong. Let us not be deceived by  
*devoir* ind-1 *mauvais* *se laisser prendre à*  
 the first appearances of things; but let us take time, to  
 art. *se donner* art. *de*  
 fix our judgment. Arbiters of the destinies of men, do good  
*arbitre* — *née* art. art. *bien*  
 if you wish to be happy; do good, if you wish that your memory  
*vouloir* \*  
 should be honoured; do good, if you wish that heaven should  
 subj-1 art. sub.  
 open to you its eternal gates.  
 1 2 *porte* f. 1.

## OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

377. Remarks have already been made (No. 113) on the use of the subjunctive mood in French, and some examples have been given, by way of comparison, to show that the two languages by no means agree on this point. Many verbs in English, are put *in the future*, the *conditional* and the *present tense* which, in French, must be in the *subjunctive mood*. Thus,

je ne crois pas qu'il soit si âgé,	<i>I don't think he is so old.</i>
je ne crois pas qu'il vienne,	<i>I don't think he will come.</i>
je craignais qu'il ne vint,	<i>I feared he would come.</i>
elle est la plus jolie que je connaisse.	<i>she is the prettiest I know.</i>

Observe that the *present* and *future* are the same in the subjunctive mood, the context alone shows of which of the two we speak.

## EXAMPLES.

je ne crois pas qu'il vienne,	<i>I do not think he is coming.</i>
je ne crois pas qu'il vienne,	<i>I do not think he will come.</i>

The use of the present or of the past tenses of the subjunctive is determined by the preceding verb, as will be seen No. 388.

378. The subjunctive mood is used in French after the following conjunctions.

à moins que*	<i>unless</i>
afin que	<i>in order that</i>
à Dieu ne plaise que	<i>God forbid that</i>
au cas que	<i>in case</i>
avant que	<i>before</i>
bien que	<i>although</i>
bien loin que	<i>far from</i>
ce n'est pas que	<i>it is not that</i>
de crainte que*	<i>for fear that, lest</i>
de manière que	<i>so that, in a manner that</i>
de peur que*	<i>for fear that</i>
Dieu veuille que	<i>God grant that</i>
encore que	<i>although</i>
excepté que	<i>except</i>
jusqu'à ce que	<i>until</i>
loin que	<i>far from</i>
malgré que	<i>although, spite of</i>
moyennant que	<i>on consideration that</i>
non pas que	<i>not that</i>
plût à Dieu que	<i>would to God that</i>
posé le cas que	<i>suppose</i>
pour que	<i>in order that, that</i>
pour peu que	<i>ever so little</i>
pourvu que	<i>provided that</i>
que	<i>(in the place of another conjunction)</i>
quelque	<i>whatever, however</i>
quoique	<i>although</i>
sans que	<i>without</i>
si ce n'est que	<i>except that</i>
si non que	<i>but that</i>
soit que	<i>whether, or</i>
supposé que	<i>suppose</i>
tant s'en faut que	<i>far from it that</i>

## EXAMPLES.

entrez sans qu'il vous voie, *get in without his seeing you.*  
à Dieu ne plaise qu'il en soit ainsi, *God forbid it should be so.*

Those conjunctions which are marked \* require *ne* before the verb, though not having a negative sense.

## EXAMPLE.

allez doucement de peur qu'il ne vous entende, *go gently lest he should hear you.*

## EXERCISE.

Get up early to-morrow morning, that we start in good time. Shall the day pass away without my seeing you? God forbid that I should

---

\* *Ne* is frequently put before the verb which follows *avant que*; yet I believe it ought to be only whenever *avant que* may be rendered by *lest*, and when there is an apprehension that a thing should happen before another.



wrong a man who has ever showed me so much kindness. Make haste, lest he should set off without you. I shall wait until you have done.

379. It has been observed, (No. 357) that the conjunction *que*, used before the indicative mood, coming after a verb, expressing an act of the mind in the affirmative form is never to be omitted in French. This shows that that conjunction does not *in itself* govern the subjunctive mood, as is erroneously thought by most learners ; but there are, however, several cases in which *que* requires that mood after it. They are when *que* is used instead, or in the sense, of the following conjunctions : *à moins que*, *avant que*, *sans que*, *jusqu'à ce que*, *quoique*, *soit que*, which are themselves always followed by the subjunctive.

## EXAMPLES.

j'attendrai *que* la pluie soit passée *I shall wait until the rain be over.*  
*(jusqu'à ce que)*  
 je ne sortirai pas *que* vous ne *I shall not leave the house before*  
*m'avez payé (avant que)* *you pay me.*

## EXERCISE.

1. Give me your letter *that* I may send it to the post-office.
2. He says he will not marry *until* he has a profession.
3. He cannot play, but he hurts himself.
4. We shall not go into the country, *unless* he consents to come with us.

- (1.) *Que* for *afin*, *que* ; to send, *envoyer*.
- (2.) To marry, *se marier*, *que* for *avant que* *ne* ; profession, *état m.*
- (3.) Cannot, *il ne saurait*, *que* for *sans que-ne*.
- (4.) *Que* for *à moins que-ne* ; to consent, *consentir à* ; to come *y aller*.

380. When the conjunction *si* governs two verbs, the second must be in the subjunctive mood.

## EXAMPLE.

si votre frère vient demain, et qu'il *if* your brother comes to-morrow,  
 fasse beau temps, nous le mènerons à la chasse, *and the weather is fine, we will take him hunting.*

## EXERCISE.

1. If men were wise and followed the lights of reason, they would save themselves many troubles.
2. If you go to Paris, and will take me with you, I shall be most happy.

- (1.) *Etre*, ind. 2, *suivre* ; to save, *s'épargner*.
- (2.) To take, *mener* ; to be happy, *en être enchanté*.

381. An adjective in the superlative degree, requires that the verb following be in the subjunctive.

## EXAMPLE.

donnez-moi la meilleure plume que *give me the best pen you have.*  
vous ayez,

*Obs.* Among such adjectives must be included *le premier, le dernier, le seul, l'unique, personne.*

See No. 212.

382. The relative pronouns *que, qui*, following a negative phrase, govern the subjunctive mood.

## EXAMPLES.

il n'y avait là personne que je *there was there no one that I*  
connusse, *knew*  
ne pourriez-vous m'indiquer un *could not you recommend some*  
homme qui voulut se charger *man to me who would under-*  
de cette affaire. *take that business.*

383. *Qui, que*, require also the subjunctive when following a sentence expressing *a wish or a doubt* : *où*, for *in which*, has the same power.

## EXAMPLES.

indiquez-moi un endroit où l'on *tell me of a place where that can*  
puisse trouver cela, *be found.*  
choisissez une femme qui soit *choose a woman who is prudent.*  
prudente,

## EXERCISE.

1. The largest stage there is for virtue, is conscience.
  2. The motions of the planets are the most regular that we know.
  3. There is no one who, in such case, would neglect so important a matter.
  4. It may be said that the dog is the only animal whose faithfulness be proof.
  5. This is the largest elephant that ever was seen.
  6. Show me a man who calls himself perfectly happy.
- (1.) Stage, *théâtre*, m. there is, *y avoir*.
  - (2.) Motions, *mouvement*, m.
  - (3.) To neglect, *négliger* ; matter, *intérêt*, m.
  - (4.) *On peut dire*, to be proof, *soit à l'épreuve*.
  - (5.) *Turn*, that one has ever seen.
  - (6.) To call one's self, *se dire*.

384. There are also a great many verbs which govern the subjunctive mood ; they generally express *wish, determination, permission*, such as *désirer, souhaiter, prier, prétendre, vouloir, entendre, aimer, mieux que, souffrir, s'étonner, ordonner*, etc.

## EXAMPLES.

permettez que je vous dise ce qui *allow me to tell you what has*  
 est arrivé, *happened.*  
 je veux qu'il le fasse à l'instant, *I will have him do it this moment.*

*Nier, douter*, require the subjunctive, and, when used interrogatively or negatively, *ne* must precede the verb.

## EXAMPLES.

je nie que cela soit, *I deny its being so*  
 je ne nie pas que cela ne soit, *I do not deny but that it may be so.*  
 doutez-vous qu'il ne le fasse ? *do you question his doing it?*

*Craindre, appréhender, avoir peur, empêcher, trembler*, have also *ne* before the subjunctive except when they are in the negative form.

## EXAMPLES.

j'ai peur que cela ne vous fasse *I fear that it will give you pain.*  
 de la peine,  
 je n'ai pas peur que cela vous *I do not fear that it will give you*  
 fasse de la peine, *pain.*

## EXERCISE.

1. Do you doubt his coming ? No, I do not doubt but he will come after so pressing an invitation.
2. I am afraid he will see me.
3. Do not let that child ride this horse, I am afraid he will throw him down.
4. The rain prevented us from going out.
5. Can you prevent his doing what he pleases.
6. We all pray that he be soon relieved from his sufferings.
7. I do not like people to talk when I am reading.
8. Shall I read the letter aloud.

- (1.) *Douter que* ; to come, *venir*.
- (2.) To be afraid, *craindre*.
- (3.) To let, *permettre que* ; to ride, *monter* ; to throw down, *jeter à bas*.
- (4.) To prevent, *empêcher que* ; to go out, *sortir*.
- (5.) What he pleases, *ce que bon lui semble*.
- (6.) Relieved, *délivré* ; sufferings, *peines*.
- (7.) People, *on*.
- (8.) Shall I, *voulez-vous que*.

385. *Etre ravi, bien aise*, etc. etc. have been noticed,  
 No. 209.



REMARKS ON THE ENGLISH SIGNS OR AUXILIARIES  
*DO, DID, WILL, WOULD, SHOULD, CAN, COULD,*  
*MAY, MIGHT.\**

386. *Do, did, will, would, should, can, could, may, and might*, are sometimes to be considered as being, simply signs of tenses ; in other cases, they are real verbs.

There can be no difficulty about *do* and *did* ; these are mere expletives, denoting interrogation, negation, or merely emphasis, when they are joined to a verb.

EXAMPLES.

j'aime,	<i>I do love.</i>
j'aimais, or j'aimai,	<i>I did love.</i>
aimé-je ?	<i>do I love ?</i>
aimais-je, or aimai-je ?	<i>did I love ?</i>
je n'aime pas,	<i>I do not love.</i>
je n'aimais pas, or, je n'aimai pas,	<i>I did not love.</i>

In all these cases, they are not expressed in French.

But when they are followed by a noun, or a pronoun, in short, by any thing else, except the verb, with which they are connected, then they are real verbs, and mean, *faire*.

EXAMPLES.

faites-moi ce plaisir,	<i>do me that favour.</i>
il le fit,	<i>he did it.</i>
il fit plus qu'on n'eût pu espérer,	<i>he did more than could have been expected.</i>

*Should* is only a sign of the conditional, when it expresses a thing which may happen upon some condition, and, in fact, it is used for *would*.

EXAMPLE.

j'aimerais la vie champêtre, si mes affaires me permettaient de suivre mon goût,	<i>I should like a country life, if my affairs would permit me to in- dulge my inclinations.</i>
--	--

But when it implies duty or obligation, it is a distinct verb, and must be expressed by *devoir*, as,

nous ne devrions jamais nous écarter du sentier de la vertu,	<i>we should never swerve from the path of virtue.</i>
---	--

*Can, could, may and might*, are not so difficult as they appear at first sight ; because, in almost every instance, there is no impropriety in rendering them by the verb,

---

\* See the manner of rendering *might, should, ought*, No. 19 of Model Phrases on Difficulties, at the end.

*pouvoir*. In general, the first two imply a power, a possibility, a capability, etc. and the others a permission, probability, etc.

## EXAMPLES.

je puis le faire,	<i>I can do it.</i>
il pourrait le faire,	<i>he could do it.</i>
elle pourrait venir,	<i>she might come.</i>
elle aurait pu venir,	<i>she might have come.</i>
puis-je vous parler ?	<i>may I speak to you ?</i>

*Can* is rendered by *savoir*, when it is used for *to know how*.

## EXAMPLE.

elle sait chanter,	<i>she can sing.</i>
--------------------	----------------------

*Do, did, shall, will*, etc. in English, are sometimes used elliptically in answer to an interrogation, or in an affirmation. In such cases the full sense is always given in French, that is, the verb, which is understood in English, is repeated.

See No. 20 of models of phrases, at the end.

## EXAMPLE.

ferez-vous votre thème aujourd'hui ?—Oui, je le ferai,	<i>shall you do your exercise to-day ? yes, I shall.</i>
--	--

## CONCORD BETWEEN THE TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE.

387. When the first verb is in the imperfect, the preterit, or the pluperfect, the second verb is put in the imperfect, if we speak of the present time.

## EXAMPLE.

je croyais, j'ai cru, j'avais cru que vous étudiez les mathématiques,	<i>I thought, I have thought, I had thought that you were studying the mathematics</i>
--	--

And in the pluperfect, if we speak of past time.

## EXAMPLE.

il m'assura qu'il n'avait jamais tant ri,	<i>he assured me that he had never laughed so much.</i>
--	---

And in the present of the conditional, if we speak of a future time,

## EXAMPLE.

on m'a dit que votre frère vien- drait à Londres l'hiver pro- chain,	<i>I was told your brother would come to London next winter.</i>
--	--

But, although the first verb may be in some of these tenses, the second must be put in the present, when it relates to things of common occurrence, or states a fact of general application.

## EXAMPLE.

je vous disais, je vous ai dit, je	<i>I told you, I have told you, I had</i>
vous avais dit, que la santé fait	<i>told you, that health constitutes</i>
la félicité du corps, et le savoir	<i>the happiness of the body, and</i>
celle de l'ame,	<i>knowledge that of the soul.</i>

In phrases where the imperfect is preceded by *que*, it denotes, sometimes a thing past, sometimes a thing present. It denotes a thing past, when the verb which is joined to it by the conjunctive *que*, is in the present of the future.

## EXAMPLE.

vous savez, ou vous saurez que le	<i>you know or you must know that</i>
peuple Romain était aussi a-	<i>the Romans were a people as covet-</i>
vide qu'ambitieux	<i>ous as they were ambitious.</i>

But it denotes a thing present, when the verb, which precedes it, is in the imperfect, the preterit, or the pluperfect.

## EXAMPLES.

on disait, on a dit, on avait dit	<i>it was said, it has been said, it had</i>
que Phocion était le plus grand	<i>been said, that Phocian was the</i>
et le plus honnête homme de	<i>greatest and most upright man of</i>
son temps,	<i>his age.</i>
dès qu'on eut appris à Athènes	<i>as soon as it was known at Athens</i>
qu' Alcibiade était à Lacédé-	<i>that Alcibiades was at Lacedemon,</i>
monne, on se repentit de la pré-	<i>the Athenians repented the precipi-</i>
cipitation avec laquelle on l'a-	<i>tation with which they had con-</i>
vait condamné,	<i>demned him.</i>

Nevertheless, the imperfect denotes the past, in this last instance, when it signifies an action which was past before that, which is expressed by the first verb.

## EXAMPLE.

en lisant l'histoire des temps hé-	<i>in reading the history of heroic times,</i>
roïques, vous devez avoir re-	<i>you must have remarked that those</i>
marqué que ces hommes, dont	<i>men who have been made demi-</i>
on a fait des demi-dieux,	<i>gods, were ferocious and barbarous</i>
étaient des chefs féroces et	<i>chiefs, scarcely deserving the name</i>
barbares, dignes à peine du	<i>of men.</i>
nom d'homme,	

## EXERCISE.

1. *I thought you were not ignorant that, to teach others the principles of an art or science, one needs to have experience and skill.*



2. I have been told that your dearest occupation was to form your taste, your heart and your understanding.

3. Darius, in his flight, being \* reduced to the necessity of drinking water muddy and infected by dead bodies, affirmed that he never had drunk with so much pleasure.

4. Care has been taken to inculcate in me, from infancy, that I should succeed in the world, only in proportion as I should unite with the desire of pleasing, a great deal of gentleness and civility.

5. Ovid has said, that study softens the manners, and corrects every thing that is found in us rude and barbarous.

6. You know that those pretended heroes, of whom Pagan antiquity has made gods, were only barbarous and ferocious kings, who overran the earth, not so much to conquer as to ravage it, and who left every where traces of their fury and of their vices.

7 It has been said of Pericles, that his eloquence was like a thunderbolt, which nothing could resist.

8. As soon as Aristides had said, that the proposal of Themistocles was unjust, the whole people exclaimed, that they must not think of it any longer.

2. Had you read the history of the early ages, you would know that Egypt was the most enlightened country in the universe, and that whence knowledge spread into Greece and the neighbouring countries.

(1.) Were ignorant, *ignorer*; teach, *instruire dans*; needs, *avoir besoin*; skill, *habileté*.

(2.) I have, etc. (by the active voice) on.

(3.) Flight, *dérouté*; muddy, *bourbeux*; affirmed, *assurer*.

(4.) Care has, etc. (active voice) on avoir; in me, *me*; in proportion, *autant*; civility, *honnêteté*.

(5.) Corrects, *effacer*; is found, *se trouver de*.

(6.) Overran, *parcourir*; not so much, *moins*.

(7.) It, on; thunderbolt, *foudre*, m.; (to) which.

(8.) Exclaimed, *s'écrier*; they must, *falloir*, ind-2; of it, *y*; any longer, *plus*.

(9.) Ages, *temps*; whence, *celui d'où*; neighbouring, *circonvoisin*; countries, *lieu*.

#### CONCORD BETWEEN THE TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE AND THOSE OF THE INDICATIVE.

388. When the verb of the principal proposition is in the present, or future, that of the subordinate proposition is put in the present of the subjunctive, to express a thing present, or future; but in the preterit, to express a thing past, we say,

il faut que celui qui parle se mette à la portée de celui qui l'écoute, he that speaks should accommodate himself to the understanding of him that listens.

il voudra que votre frère soit de la partie, he will wish your brother to be one of the party.

But we must say,

pour s'être élevé à ce point de grandeur, il faut que Rome ait eu une suite non interrompue de grands hommes,	to have risen to that pitch of grandeur, Rome must have had an uninterrupted succession of great men.
---	---

**EXCEPTION.** Though the first verb be in the present, or future, yet the second may be put in the imperfect, or pluperfect of the subjunctive, when some conditional expression is introduced into the sentence.

#### EXAMPLES.

il n'est point d'homme, quelque mérite qu'il ait, qui ne fût très-mortifié, s'il savait tout ce qu'on pense de lui,	there is no man, whatever merit he may have, that would not feel very much mortified, were he to know all that is thought of him.
où trouvera-t-on un homme qui ne fût la même faute, s'il était exposé aux mêmes tentations ?	where will you find the man who would not have committed the same error, had he been exposed to the same temptations ?
je doute que votre frère eût réussi sans votre assistance.	I doubt whether your brother would have succeeded, had it not been for your assistance.

#### EXERCISE.

1. He who wishes to teach an art, must *know it* thoroughly, he must *give* none but clear, precise, and well-digested notions of it ; he must *instil* them, one by one, into the minds of his pupils, and, above all, he must not overburthen their memory with useless, or unimportant rules.

2. He *must yield* to the force of truth, when they *shall have suffered* it to appear in its real light.

3. There is no work, however perfect people may suppose it, that would not be liable to criticism, if it were examined with severity and in every point of view.

4. I doubt whether his piece would have had the approbation of *connaisseurs*, if he had not determined to make in it the changes you judged necessary.

(1.) It must (that he who, etc. know it); he must (not repeated), *que*; instil, *faire entrer*; by *à*; overburthen, *surcharger*; unimportant, *insignifiant*.

(2.) (It must, ind-7, that he); yield, *se rendre*; suffered, *permettre*; it to appear. (that it appear); real light, *vrai jour*.

(3.) Would be liable, *prêter*, subj-2; with severity, *à la rigueur*; in sous; point of view, *face*.

(4.) Approbation, *suffrage*; had determined, *se décider*; in it, *y*; judged, ind-4.

When the first verb is in the imperfect, the preterit, the pluperfect or the conditional, the second is put in the imperfect of the subjunctive, if we mean to express a thing present.



or future ; but it is put in the pluperfect, if we wish to express a thing that is past.

*Je voulais, j'ai voulu, j'eus voulu, je voudrais, or j'eusse voulu qu'il finissè cette affaire.*

*Je ne savais pas, je n'ai pas su, etc. que vous eussiez étudié les mathématiques.*

REMARK. With the preterit indefinite, the second verb is put in the present, if it expresses a thing of common occurrence.

#### EXAMPLES.

Dieu a entouré les yeux de tuni- ques fort minces, transpa- rentes au dehors, afin qu'on puisse voir à travers,	<i>God has surrounded the eyes with very thin tunics, transparent on the outside, that we may see through them.</i>
--	---

And in the preterit, if we mean to express a thing past,  
as,

il a fallu qu'il ait sollicité ses juges	<i>he must have been obliged to soli- cit his judges</i>
--	--

#### EXERCISE.

1. Mr. de Turenne never *would* buy any thing on credit, of tradesmen, for fear, said he, they *should lose* a great part of their demand, if he happened to be killed. All the workmen who were employed about his house, had orders to bring in their bills, before he set out for the campaign, and they were regularly paid.

2. *It would be better*, for a man who truly loves himself, *to lose* his life, then to forfeit his honour by some base and shameful action.

3. Lycurgus, in one of his laws, *had forbidden* the lighting of those who came from a feast in the evening, that the fear of not being able to reach their houses might *prevent* them from getting intoxicated.

4. People *used* the bark of trees, or skins, to write upon,\* before paper was known.

5. Go and \* ask that old man : for whom are you planting ? he will answer you : for the immortal gods, who *have ordered* both that I *should profit* by the labour of those that have preceded me, and that those who should come after me, *should profit* by mine.

(1.) Would, *vouloir*, ind-2 ; buy on credit, *prendre a crédit* ; of, *chez* ; happened, *venir* ; were employed, *travailler* ; about, *pour* ; bills, *mémoire* ; he, *on* ; set out for, *se mettre en*.

(2.) To lose, (that he *would lose*) ; forfeit, *ternir*.

(3.) In, *par* ; the lighting of, *que on éclairer*, subj-2 ; that, *afin que* ; reach their houses, *se rendre chez eux* ; getting intoxicated, *s'enivrer*.

(4.) People, *on* ; bark, *écorce* ; skins, *peau* ; known, *en usage*.

(5.) Have, ordered, *vouloir* ; both, *et* ; by, *de*.

The subjunctive is elegantly used in elliptical phrases, where the principal proposition is omitted, as,



qu'il vive ( <i>je souhaite qu'il,</i> )	<i>may he live!</i>
qu'il se soit oublié jusqu'à ce point! ( <i>je suis surpris qu'il</i> )	<i>that he should so forget himself.</i>
qui m'aime, me suive! ( <i>je veux que celui qui</i> )	<i>whoever loves me, let him follow me.</i>
heureux l'homme qui peut, ne fût-ce que dans sa vieillesse, jouir de toute la force de sa raison! ( <i>quand ce ne serait que</i> ),	<i>happy the man that can, were it only in his old age, enjoy the whole strength of his reason.</i>

### CONCORD BETWEEN THE TENSES OF THE DIFFERENT MOODS.

389. REMARK. Our intention is not to give the concord of all the tenses, but simply to mention some of the principal.

#### THE INDICATIVE

After the imperfect may come three tenses.

#### EXAMPLES.

<i>Je lisais</i>	{ <i>quand vous écriviez.</i>
	{ <i>quand vous avez écrit.</i>
	{ <i>quand vous écrivîtes.</i>

The preterit anterior requires the preterit definite, as, *quand j'eus fini, vous entrâtes.*

After the pluperfect may come, the preterit definite, the preterit indefinite, the preterit anterior, and the imperfect.

#### EXAMPLES.

<i>J'avais lu</i>	{ <i>quand vous entrâtes</i>
	{ <i>quand vous êtes entré</i>
	{ <i>quand vous fûtes entré</i>
	{ <i>quand vous entriez</i>

After the preterit anterior indefinite, comes the preterit indefinite, as, *quand j'ai eu diné, vous êtes entré.*

In conjunction with *si* for *supposé que*, the future absolute requires the present, and the future anterior, the preterit indefinite.

#### EXAMPLE.

*Vous partirez, si je veux*  
*Il sera parti, si vous l'avez voulu*

### CONCORD BETWEEN THE CONDITIONAL AND THE IMPERFECT AND THE CONDITIONAL.

The conditional, first and second, are used in conjunction with the imperfect, and the pluperfect governed by *si*.

## EXAMPLE.

*Vous partiriez, si je le voulais.*

*Vous seriez parti*  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{si je l'avais voulu} \\ \text{si je l'eusse voulu} \end{array} \right.$

The present of the conditional and the two past tenses of the conditional may be used in conjunction with each other.

## EXAMPLES.

*Quand l'avare posséderait tout l'or du monde, il ne serait pas encore content.*

*Quand Alexandre aurait conquis tout l'univers, il n'aurait pas été content.*

*Vous fussiez parti, si je l'eusse voulu.*

### CONCORD BETWEEN THE PRESENT AND THE FUTURE AND THE OTHER TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

391. These two tenses may be joined to all the tenses of the indicative and conditional.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>On dit</i> <i>On dira</i>	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \\ \\ \end{array} \right\} \text{ que}$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{vous partez aujourd'hui.} \\ \text{vous partirez demain.} \\ \text{vous serez parti, quand, etc.} \\ \text{vous partiez hier.} \\ \text{vous partîtes hier.} \\ \text{vous êtes parti ce matin.} \\ \text{vous fûtes parti hier, quand, etc.} \\ \text{vous étiez parti hier, quand, etc.} \\ \text{vous partiriez aujourd'hui, si, etc.} \\ \text{vous seriez parti hier, si, etc.} \\ \text{vous fussiez parti plutôt, si, etc.} \end{array} \right.$

REMARK. The same concord exists when the sentence is negative ; except that for the present absolute of the indicative, the present of the subjunctive is substituted. Instead of, *on ne dit pas que vous partez aujourd'hui*, the genius of the French language requires that we should say, *on ne dit pas que vous partiez aujourd'hui*.

The imperfect, the preterit definite, the preterit indefinite, and the pluperfect, are followed either by the imperfect, or the pluperfect.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>On disait</i> <i>On dit hier</i> <i>On a dit</i> <i>On avait dit</i>	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \right\}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \\ \\ \end{array} \right\} \text{ que}$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{vous partiez aujourd'hui.} \\ \text{vous étiez parti.} \end{array} \right.$

The future anterior requires the preterit indefinite, as, *on aura dit que vous avez menti.*

The conditional present may be followed by the present, the imperfect, the preterit indefinite, the pluperfect, the future of the indicative, as well as by the three conditionals.

#### EXAMPLES.

<i>On croirait</i>	{	<i>qu'il se trompe</i>
		<i>qu'il se trompait</i>
		<i>qu'il s'est trompé</i>
		<i>qu'il s'était trompé</i>
		<i>qu'il se trompera</i>
		<i>qu'il se tromperait, si, etc.</i>
		<i>qu'il se serait trompé, si, etc.</i>
		<i>qu'il se fût trompé, etc.</i>

The first conditional past may be followed by the imperfect, the pluperfect, as well as by the two other conditionals.

#### EXAMPLES.

<i>On aurait cru</i>	{	<i>qu'il tombait</i>
		<i>qu'il était tombé</i>
		<i>qu'il serait tombé</i>
		<i>qu'il fût tombé.</i>

The second conditional past may be joined to the same tenses.

### PRINCIPAL CONCORD WITH THE TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

392. To the present, the future absolute, and the future anterior of the indicative is generally joined the present of the subjunctive.

#### EXAMPLES.

<i>il veut</i>	}	<i>que vous partiez.</i>
<i>il voudra</i>		
<i>il aura voulu</i>		

To the imperfect, the preterit definite, the preterit indefinite, the pluperfect, and the preterit anterior may be joined the imperfect of the subjunctive.

#### EXAMPLES.

<i>je voulais</i>	}	<i>que vous partissiez.</i>
<i>je voulus</i>		
<i>j'ai voulu</i>		
<i>j'avais voulu</i>		
<i>j'eus voulu</i>		



To the future anterior the preterit of the subjunctive, as, *il aura voulu qu'il soit parti.*

The conditional present is accompanied either by the imperfect, or by the pluperfect of the subjunctive.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>je voudrais que</i>	{	<i>vous partissiez</i>
<i>j'aurais voulu</i>		<i>vous fussiez parti</i>
<i>j'eusse voulu</i>	{	<i>que vous fussiez parti.</i>

## OF THE INFINITIVE.

393. The *infinitive* is that mood which conveys the abstract idea of an action unconnected with time or persons ; thus, *aimer, parler*. The use of the infinitive after another verb, the prepositions *de, a, pour*, placed before it according as the case requires, etc. have been noticed No. 350, which see.

394. The participle present is used in English in many cases which require the infinitive in French. The principal and most common, are when the English participle is governed by a preposition. See Exception, 400.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>I blame you for having refused,</i>	<i>je vous blâme d'avoir refusé.</i>
<i>he has gone without speaking to</i>	<i>il est parti sans me parler.</i>
<i>me,</i>	
<i>she takes delight in teasing,</i>	<i>elle se plaît à tourmenter.</i>
<i>I like dancing,</i>	<i>j'aime à danser.</i>

Observe that the same, or the corresponding, prepositions are not always used, because, as it cannot too often be repeated, the two languages differ essentially in this point.

## EXERCISE.

We only shut our eyes to	truth	because	we	fear	to
<i>ne</i>	<i>* art.</i>	<i>art.</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>parce</i>	<i>que</i>
see ourselves as we are.					<i>de</i>
2 <i>nous</i> 1 <i>tel que</i>					
					<i>ind-2 encore</i>
when one of our friends came to join us.					
					<i>ind-3 *</i>
I did not think I was					<i>ind-2 *devoir</i>
to set out so soon.					
He promises every day that he will					
*		<i>art. pl.</i>	<i>de</i>	*	*
amend, but I do not rely upon his promises.					
<i>se corriger</i>	<i>compter</i>		<i>promesse</i>	<i>f. pl.</i>	<i>on</i>
of a secret expedition ; he hopes to be (in it).					
2	<i>—f. 1</i>	*	<i>en</i>		

seeing you very soon to terminate amicably his affair  
 inf. 1 *au premier jour pour* *à l'amiable*  
 with you. You expected to take a journey this year; but  
*s'attendre ind-2 faire voyage m.*  
 your father has changed his mind. He threatens to punish us se-  
*de \* avis de sé-*  
 verely, if we (fall again) into the same error.  
*vèrement retomber faute*

## OF THE PARTICIPLE.

395. The *participle* is a part of the verb which partakes of the properties both of a verb and adjective; of a verb, as it signifies action and state, of an adjective, as it expresses the quality of a person, or thing.

There are two participles, the *participle present*, and the *participle past*.

## OF THE PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

The *participle present* always terminates in *ant*: as *aimant, finissant, recevant, rendant*.

396. The *participle present* is undeclined, that is takes neither gender nor number, when it expresses an action, and may be turned by the present or the imperfect of the indicative mood, *une montagne*, or *des montagnes dominant* (i.e.) *qui dominant ou dominaient*) *sur des plaines immenses*, a mountain or mountains commanding immense plains; *un homme, des hommes, une femme, des femmes lisant, parlant, marchant*, (*qui lisent, qui parlaient, qui marchent*) a man, men, a woman, women reading, speaking, walking. But when, like an adjective, it expresses simply a quality, it takes both the gender and number of its substantive; as *un homme obligeant*, an obliging man; *une femme obligeante*, and obliging woman; *des tableaux parlants*, speaking portraits; *la religion dominante*, the established religion; *à la nuit tombante*, at night falling. It is known to partake of the nature of the adjective when it is put before the noun in English.

What grammarians call *gerund*, is nothing but the *participle present*, to which the word *en* is prefixed; *on se forme l'esprit en lisant de bons livres*, we form our minds by reading good books,

## EXERCISE,

'That mountain being very high, and thus commanding a vast  
*élevé ainsi dominer sur grand*

extent of country, was very well calculated for our observations.  
*étendue pays ind-2 \* propre à*  
 This woman is of a good disposition, obliging every one, when  
*caractère m. tout le monde quand*  
 ever she (has it in her power). They go cringing before the great,  
*le pouvoir ramper devant pl.*  
 that they may be insolent to their equals. The state of pure  
*afin de \* \* inf-1 pl. avec égal*  
 nature is the savage living in the desert, but living in his family,  
*famille f*  
 knowing his children, loving them, (making use) of speech, and  
*connaître user art. parole*  
 (making himself understood.) An agreeable languor impercep-  
*se faire entendre 2 langueur f. l. insensi-*  
 tibly (laying hold) of my senses, suspended the activity of my  
*blement s'emparer sens suspendre ind-3*  
 soul, and I fell (asleep). Time is a real blunderer, placing,  
*s'endormir ind-3 art. vrai brouillon mettre,*  
 replacing, ordering, disordering, impressing, erasing, approaching,  
*remettre, ranger déranger imprimer effacer approcher*  
 removing, add making all things good and bad; and almost always  
*éloigner rendre f. pl. quasi*  
 (impossible to be known again).  
*méconnaissable*

397. The participle present is frequently used in English as a substantive, which is not the case in French.

## EXAMPLE.

*his ruling passion is hunting, sa passion dominante est la chasse.*

When governed by a preposition, it is rendered in French by the infinitive. (No. 394.)

## EXAMPLES.

*prevent him from doing mischief, empêchez-le de faire le mal.*  
*there is a pleasure in silencing great talkers. il y a plaisir à fermer la bouche aux grands parleurs.*

398. The participle present frequently takes the place of the *indicative* in English; it must not then be rendered literally, but in the following manner.

## EXAMPLE.

*I met them riding post, je les ai rencontrés qui couraient la poste.*

399. Sometimes also it is used substantively with a possessive pronoun; then, it must be rendered in French by



the indicative or the subjunctive, according as the case requires.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>the fear of his coming (lest he should come) harrassed us,</i>	<i>la crainte qu'il ne vint nous tourmentait.</i>
<i>I doubt his being faithful.</i>	<i>je doute qu'il soit fidèle, etc.</i>
<i>what do you think of his writing to me?</i>	<i>que pensez-vous de cela? il m'a écrit. Savez-vous qu'il m'a écrit? qu'en pensez-vous?</i>

400. In No. 394, it has been said that the infinitive is used after prepositions in French, and not the participle present. The only exception to this rule is *en*.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>nous en parlerons en marchant,</i>	<i>we will talk about it as we walk.</i>
<i>on apprend en enseignant,</i>	<i>we learn by teaching others.</i>

401. The participle present always forming a phrase incidental and subordinate to another, must necessarily relate to the subject of the principal phrase, when it is not preceded by another noun, as in this sentence:—

<i>je ne puis vous accompagner à la campagne, ayant des affaires qui exigent ici ma présence,</i>	<i>I cannot accompany you into the country, having some business that requires my presence here.</i>
---	--

The participle present *ayant* relates to the subject *je*, since the subordinate proposition, formed by *ayant*, could have no kind of relation to the principal proposition, if it could not be resolved into this *parce que j'ai des affaires qui, etc.* But, in this sentence:

<i>combien voyons-nous de gens, qui, connaissant le prix du temps, le perdent mal-à-propos!</i>	<i>how many people do we see, who, knowing the value of time, waste it improperly!</i>
---	--

*Connaissant* relates to the substantive *gens*, because this is the word which it modifies, and because the relative *qui*, placed between that substantive, as the regimen, and the participle present, obviates every kind of ambiguity.

REMARKS. Two participles ought never to be used together without being united by a conjunction, as, etc,

## EXAMPLE.

<i>c'est un homme aimant et craignant Dieu,</i>	<i>he is a man loving and fearing God.</i>
---	--

2. The relative *en* ought never to be put either before a participle present, or before a gerund. We cannot say,

*Je vous ai remis mon fils entre les mains, en voulant faire quelque chose de bon,*

because the sense would be ambiguous : for, the meaning is not :

*As I wish to do something good, or, as I wish to do well, I have put my son into your hands.*

But,

*I have put my son into your hands; as I wish to make something of him:*

We should say : *Voulant en faire*, etc.

Likewise this sentence would be improper :

*Le prince tempère la rigueur du pouvoir, en en partageant les fonctions.*

On account of the repetition of the word *en*, used in two different senses, viz., as a preposition and a relative. Another turn must be then adopted, as,

*C'est en partageant les fonctions du pouvoir, qu'un prince en tempère la rigueur.*

#### OF THE PARTICIPLE PAST.

The participle past has various terminations ; as, *aimé fini, ouvert, dissous*, etc.

402. The participle past is sometimes declined, sometimes not, thus,

*Avez-vous mangé toutes les fraises que vous avez cueillies ce matin.*

*Avez-vous mangé, vous avez cueillies* are two verbs in the same tense, and person, yet one participle *mangé*, is undeclined, the other, *cueillies*, is feminine plural. This difference, apparently contradictory, is grounded upon a principle which must be explained.

#### OF THE PARTICIPLE WITH ETRE.

403. The participle past, when accompanied by the auxiliary verb *être*, agrees with its subject in gender and number.

#### EXAMPLES.

mon frère est tombé,  
mes frères sont tombés,  
ma sœur est tombée,  
mes sœurs sont tombées,  
la nuit sera bientôt passée,

*my brother is fallen.  
my brothers are fallen.  
my sister is fallen.  
my sisters are fallen.  
the night will soon be over.*

les spectacles sont fréquentés,  
cette fleur est fort recherchée,  
ils sont fort estimés,

the theatres are frequented.  
this flower is much sought after.  
they are very much esteemed.

There is an exception which is explained at No. 410,  
*participle past of Reflective Verbs.*

## EXERCISE.

Fire- arms were not known to the ancients. Ishmael, the  
art. *armé à feu* f. pl. ind-4 *connu de* *Ismâël*  
son of Abraham, is known among the Arabs, as (the man) from  
— *parmi* *Arabe* *celui*  
whom they sprung, and circumcision has remained (among  
*être sorti* art. f. *être demeuré* *leur*  
them) as the mark of their origin. Heaven is that permanent  
f. art. — 2  
city, (into which) the just are to be received after this life.  
*cité* f. 1 *où* pl. *devoir* \* *après*  
In Abraham's time, the threatenings of the true God were  
*du* 2 art. 1 *menace* f. pl. ind-2  
dreaded by Pharaoh, king of Egypt; but, in the time of Moses, all  
*redouté de Pharaon* *Moïse* art.  
nations were corrupted, and the world, which God has made to  
f. *perversi* *pour*  
manifest his power, was become a temple of idols. That dread-  
*pouvoir* m. *devenu* *ter-*  
ful crisis which threatened the state with instant destruc-  
*tible* 2 *crise* f. 1 ind. *de prochain* 2 f. 1  
tion, was happily soon over. She is come to bring us all  
ind-3 *heureusement* *passé* \*  
kinds of refreshments. The sciences have always been pro-  
*sorte* f. sing. *rafraîchissement* f. *pro-*  
tected by enlightened governments.  
*tégé* art. *éclairé* 2 1

## PARTICIPLE PAST WITH AVOIR.

404. A participle past with *avoir*, may be the compound tense of a *neuter verb*, or of an *active verb*.

405. The participle past of a neuter verb is invariable.

## EXAMPLE.

elle a dormi, she has slept.  
nous avons ri, we have laughed.  
ils ont pensé, they have thought

406. The participle past of an active verb is declined in one case, and not in the other.

*avez-vous mangé les fraises que vous avez cueillies.*

1. The participles never agree with the subject or nominative of the verb.



## EXAMPLES.

mon frère a écrit,	<i>my brother has written.</i>
mes frères ont écrit,	<i>my brother have written.</i>
ma sœur a écrit,	<i>my sister has written.</i>
les Amazones ont acquis de la célébrité,	<i>the Amazons have acquired celebrity.</i>
j'ai contraint les soldats à marcher,	<i>I have forced the soldiers to march.</i>

2. When it agrees it is with the accusative case or object. If it precede, it is not declined.

## EXAMPLES.

les soldats ont attaqué la ville,	<i>the soldiers have attacked the town.</i>
mes filles ont dessiné ces fleurs,	<i>my daughters have painted these flowers.</i>

## EXERCISE.

The Romans successively triumphed over the most warlike  
*Romain successivement 2 ind-4 1 de belliqueux 2*  
 nations. Lampridius relates that Adrian erected to Jesus  
*1 raconter Adrien élever ind-6*  
 Christ some temples, which (were still to be seen) in his  
*de art. on encore 2 voir ind-1 1 de*  
 time. Happy those princes who have never (made use) of their  
*\* art. user*  
 power but to do good! We have spent the whole day  
*pouvoir que pour art. bien journée f.*  
 in tormenting ourselves. One has seldom seen a great stock of  
*à inf-1 à nous 1 rarement fonds m.*  
 good sense in a man of imagination. The errors of Descartes proved  
*sens — = — \**  
 very useful to Newton.  
*beaucoup servir ind-4 —*

407. The participle past of an active verb agrees with the object or accusative when it follows it; that is, it agrees with the noun substantive, which is the antecedent of *que*, *me*, *te*, *se*, *le*, *la*, *nous*, *vous*, *les*.

## EXAMPLES.

les livres que j'ai lus	<i>the books which I have read.</i>
la lettre que j'ai écrite,	<i>the letter which I have written.</i>

*lus* agrees with *que* of which the antecedent is *livres*, m. pl.  
*Ecrite* agrees with *que* of which the antecedent is *lettre* f. s.

*Nous avons cueilli des fraises et nous les avons mangées.*

*Cueilli* is undeclined, because it precedes the object



it is joined are used impersonally, or when that participle is followed by the verb, which governs the noun, or pronoun preceding it.

## EXAMPLES.

les chaleurs excessives qu'il a fait cette été, ont beaucoup nui à la récolte,	<i>the excessive heats, which we have had this summer, have done great injury to the corn.</i>
quelle fâcheuse aventure vous est-il arrivé ?	<i>what unpleasant adventure have you met with ?</i>
la maison que j'ai fait bâtir,	<i>the house which I have ordered to be built.</i>
imitez les vertus que vous avez entendu louer,	<i>imitate the virtues which you have heard praised.</i>
les mathématiques que vous n'avez pas voulu que j'étudiasse,	<i>the mathematics which you would not permit me to study.</i>

To make a right application of the second part of this rule, we ought to examine whether we can put the regimen immediately after the participle. As we cannot say ; *J'ai fait la maison, vous avez entendu les vertus, vous n'avez pas voulu les mathématiques*, it follows that the regimen belongs to the second verb. Sometimes, however, the regimen may relate either to the participle, or to the following verb, according to the meaning of the speaker.

Thus, *je l'ai vu peindre*, means, I saw her picture drawn ; but *je l'ai vue peindre*, signifies, I saw her painting.

Sometimes it happens likewise, that, in sentences which seem to resemble each other, the regimen in one belongs to the participle, and in the other to the verb which follows it. For instance, this question, *avez-vous entendu chanter la nouvelle actrice ?* Have you heard the new actress sing ? Should be thus answered, *oui, je l'ai entendu chanter*, yes, I have : (I have heard her when she sang) but this question *avez-vous entendu chanter la nouvelle ariette ?* have you heard the new air sung ? must be answered, *oui je l'ai entendue chanter*, yes, I have. (I have heard it to be sung).

409. The participle past does not agree with the antecedent of *en*.

## EXAMPLE.

sachant que nous aimions le gibier, il nous en a envoyé un panier,	<i>knowing that we were fond of game, he sent us a basket full.</i>
--	---



## EXERCISE.

The great changes which (have taken place) in ad-  
*changement y avoir ind-4 art.*  
 ministration, have astonished many people. The heavy  
*bien des personnes grand*  
 rains which we have had in the spring, have been  
*pluie f. pl. \* il faire ind-4*  
 the cause of many diseases. The scarcity which there *was*  
*maladie f. pl. disette f. ind-4*  
 last winter, has afforded the opportunity of doing  
*art. dernier 2 1 donner occasion inf-1*  
 much good, What news has reached you? How many  
*bien est-il venu que de*  
 imprudent steps were taken on that occasion! How  
*faux démarche f. pl. il s'est faire en*  
 many large ships have been built in England within these fifty  
*gros il se construire ind-4 depuis \**  
 years! The figures which you have learned to draw are of  
*— apprendre dessiner*  
 great beauty. We ought never to swerve from the  
*un \* falloir ind-1 \* s'éloigner*  
 good path which we have begun to follow. The measures  
*route f. on mesure f. pl.*  
 which you advised me to adopt, have not succeeded.  
*conseiller ind-4 de prendre réussir*  
 The rule, which I have begun to explain, seems to me very  
*règle f. expliquer sembler*  
 easy to (be understood). You see that I have not (been mistaken)  
*saisir se tromper ind-4*  
 respecting the affairs which I had foreseen you would have  
*prévoir que*  
 in hand. I asked for some pencils, and he has sent  
*\* demander ind-4 envoyer*  
 me some very good ones.  
*en*

## PARTICIPLE PAST WITH REFLECTED VERBS.

410. It has been said, No. 121, that all active verbs may be used reflectedly.

The participle past of such verbs agrees with the subject or nominative.

## EXAMPLES.

elle s'est blessée, she has hurt herself.  
 nous nous sommes ennuyés, we have got tired.

Here *blessée, ennuyés*, agree with *se, nous*, of which *elle*,

*nous*, are the antecedents ; *se*, *nous* being also besides the accusative of *bless*, *ennuy*.

But here,

il s'est cassé la jambe, *he has broken his leg.*  
 Lucrece s'est donné la mort, *Lucretia destroyed herself.*

*Cassé*, *donné* are undeclined, because they precede *jambe*, *mort*, which are the objects or accusatives of the verbs *casser*, *donner*. *Se*, is also in both examples an indirect case or dative. But, speaking of the *broken leg* we say,

je ne sais comment il se l'est cassée, *I don't know how he broke it.*

Because *cassée* follows *la*, of which *jambe* is the antecedent.

#### EXERCISE.

Our troops have fought with great courage. They have not  
*se battre*  
 sufficiently made haste. Did not our sisters stop (on the)  
*se dépêcher s'arrêter en*  
 road. I have put my shoulder out of joint. Show me the hand  
*se démettre l'épaule*  
 which you have cut. The Amazons have made themselves  
*se couper se rendre*  
 famous by their courage. What strange fancies she has got  
*chimères se mettre*  
 into her head! I don't think you have cleaned your teeth  
*la se nettoyer*  
 this morning? Indeed I have cleaned them before I went out.  
*avant de sortir*

### CHAPTER VI.

#### GENERAL REMARKS ON THE USE AND MEANING OF SOME OF THE FRENCH PREPOSITIONS.

411. The office of prepositions is to connect two nouns substantives, and show the relation which they bear to one another.

412. Those who know Latin are apt to mistake the meaning of *à* and *de*; the former never means *from*, but *to*; it is the sign of the dative case; *de* means *of*, *from*, *with*, and is the sign of what is called the genitive and ablative cases, that is, it expresses, *possession*, *source*, *accompaniment*, *instrumentality*.

## EXAMPLES.

approchez-vous du feu,	<i>come near the fire.</i>
éloignez-vous du feu,	<i>go from the fire.</i>
il le fait de bon cœur,	<i>he does it with readiness.</i>
écrivez à Jean,	<i>write to John.</i>

*En* and *dans* have nearly the same meaning; but they differ in this, that former is used in a more vague, the latter in a more determinate sense.

## EXAMPLE.

*J'étais en Angleterre, dans la province de Middlesex.*

*À, en*, are rendered by *to* or *in* before names of countries and places, but they must not be used indifferently. *À* is used before proper names of places, *en* before names of countries, provinces.

## EXAMPLES.

il est allé en France,	<i>he is gone to France.</i>
elle est allée à Rome,	<i>she is gone to Rome.</i>
ils demeurent en Normandie,	<i>they live in Normandy.</i>
elles résident à Rouen,	<i>they live in or at Rouen.</i>

From what has just been said, it follows then that *en*, on account of its indeterminate nature ought not to be followed by the article, except in a small number of phrases sanctioned by usage.

## EXAMPLES.

*En la présence de Dieu ; en la grand' chambre du parlement, en l'absence d'un tel ; en l'année mil huit cent dix-sept, etc.*

with respect to the expressions.

*En l'honneur, en l'âge*, it is better to say, *à l'honneur, à l'âge*.

413. *Avant* is a preposition in this phrase.:

avant le jour,	<i>before day-light.</i>
----------------	--------------------------

But it is an adverb in this :

n'allez pas si avant,	<i>do not go so forward.</i>
-----------------------	------------------------------

*Autour* and *alentour*, must not be confounded ; *autour* is a preposition, and *alentour* an adverb.

## EXAMPLES.

tous les grands étaient autour du trône,	<i>all the grandees stood round the throne.</i>
le roi était sur son trône, et les grands étaient alentour,	<i>the king was upon the throne, and the grandees stood round,</i>



*Avant* and *auparavant* are not used indifferently.

*Avant* is followed by a regimen.

## EXAMPLES.

avant Pâques,	<i>before Easter.</i>
avant ce temps,	<i>before that time.</i>

*Auparavant* is followed by no regimen.

## EXAMPLE.

si vous partez, venez me voir	<i>if you set off, come and see me</i>
auparavant,	<i>first.</i>

*Prêt à* and *près de*, are not the same expressions. *Prêt* is an adjective.

je suis prêt à faire ce que vous	<i>I am ready to do what you please.</i>
voudrez,	

But *près* is a proposition :

mon ouvrage est près d'être	<i>my work is nearly finished.</i>
fini,	

*Au travers* and *à travers* differ in this: the first is followed by the preposition *de*, the second is not.

## EXAMPLE.

il se fit jour au travers des en-	} <i>he fought his way through the</i>
nemis,	
il se fit jour à travers les en-	} <i>enemy.</i>
nemis,	

*Avant* denotes priority of time and order.

## EXAMPLE.

*Il est arrivé avant moi*, l'article se met avant le nom.

*Devant* is used for *en présence*, *vis-à-vis*.

## EXAMPLE.

*Il a paru devant le juge ; il loge devant l'église.*

*Devant* is likewise a preposition marking order, and is the opposite of *après*.

## EXAMPLES.

il a le pas devant moi,	<i>he has precedence of me.</i>
si vous êtes pressé, courez de-	<i>If you are in a hurry, run be-</i>
vant,	<i>fore.</i>

*Envers* and *vers*, towards, are also different as to their meaning, the former is put before names of persons, with a moral sense, the other expresses motion, and is put before names of places and persons.

## EXAMPLES.

comportez-vous bien envers lui, *behave well towards him, with regard to him.*  
ils marchaient vers la ville, *they were marching towards the city.*  
elle s'avança vers moi, *she advanced towards me.*

## THE USE OF THE ARTICLE WITH PREPOSITIONS.

414. Some prepositions require the article before their regimen; others do not; and others again, sometimes admit, sometimes reject it.

The following prepositions generally require the article before the noun, which they govern.

ayant,	depuis,	envers,	nonobstant,	selon,
après,	devant,	excepté,	parmi,	suivant,
chez,	derrière	hors,	pendant,	touchant,
dans,	durant	hormis,	pour,	vers,
avant l'aurore,		chez le prince,		envers les pauvres,
après la promenade,		dans la maison,		devant l'église, etc.

There are, however, exceptions.

## EXAMPLES.

avant terme,	avant dîner,	pour lit une pailleasse,
avant midi,	après midi,	depuis minuit, etc.

A noun governed by the preposition *en*, is not, in general, preceded by the article.

## EXAMPLE.

En ville, en campagne, en extase, en songe, en pièces, etc.

*L'armée est entrée en campagne*, means the army has taken the field; but *M. N. est allé à la campagne*, means, Mr. N. is gone into the country.

These eleven prepositions *à, de, avec, contre, entre, malgré, outre, par, pour, sur, sans*, sometimes admit, sometimes reject the article before their regimen.

If the article is used in these phrases:

Jouer *sur* le velours.

St. Paul veut de la subordination *entre* la femme et le mari.

*Sans* les passions, où serait le mérite?

It is suppressed in,

Etre *sur* pied; un peu de façons ne gêne rien *entre* mari et femme.  
Vivre *sans* passions, c'est vivre *sans* plaisirs, et *sans* peines.

This difference arises of course from the noun being taken in a general and definite sense, or in a partial and restricted signification.

#### REPETITION OF THE PREPOSITIONS.

415. The prepositions *de*, *à* and *en*, must be repeated before all nouns which they govern.

#### EXAMPLES.

voyons qui l'emportera <i>de</i> vous,	<i>let us see which of us will excel,</i>
<i>de</i> lui, ou <i>de</i> moi,	<i>you, he, or I.</i>
elle a <i>de</i> l'honnêteté, <i>de</i> la douceur, <i>des</i> grâces, et <i>de</i> l'esprit.	<i>she has politeness, sweetness, grace, and abilities.</i>
la loi, que Dieu a gravée au fond de mon cœur, m'instruit de tout ce que je dois à l'auteur de mon être, <i>au</i> prochain, à moi-même,	<i>the law which God has deeply engraved on my heart instructs me in every thing I owe to the author of my being, to my neighbour, and to myself.</i>
<i>en</i> Asie, <i>en</i> Europe, <i>en</i> Afrique, et jusqu' <i>en</i> Amérique, on trouve le même préjugé	<i>in Asia, in Europe, in Africa, and even in America, we find the same prejudices.</i>

The other prepositions, especially those consisting of two syllables, are generally repeated—before nouns, which have meanings totally different; but seldom before nouns, that are nearly synonymous.

#### EXAMPLES.

rien n'est moins <i>selon</i> Dieu et <i>selon</i> le monde,	<i>nothing is less according to God and according to the world.</i>
cette action est contre l'honneur et contre toute espèce de principes,	<i>that action is contrary to honor and every kind of principle.</i>

But we ought to say,

il perd sa jeunesse <i>dans</i> la mollesse et la volupté,	<i>he wastes his youth in effeminacy and pleasure.</i>
notre loi ne condamne personne <i>sans</i> l'avoir entendu et examiné,	<i>our laws condemned nobody without having heard and examined him.</i>

#### OF THE GOVERNMENT OF PREPOSITIONS.

417. Some prepositions govern nouns without the help of another preposition.

#### EXAMPLES.

devant la maison,	<i>before the house.</i>
hormis son frère,	<i>except his brother.</i>
sans son épée,	<i>without his sword, etc.</i>

Others require the help of the preposition *de*.



## EXAMPLES.

près de la maison,	<i>near the house.</i>
à l'insu de son frère,	<i>unknown to his brother.</i>
au-dessus du pont,	<i>above the bridge, &amp;c.</i>

These four, *jusque*, *par rapport*, *quant* and *sauf* are followed by the preposition *à*.

## EXAMPLES.

jusqu'au mois prochain,	<i>till the next month.</i>
quant à moi,	<i>as for me, etc.</i>

Practice alone can teach these different regimens.

A noun may be governed by two prepositions, provided they do not require different regimens; thus we may say with propriety,

celui qui écrit selon les circon- stances, <i>pour</i> et <i>contre</i> un parti, est un homme bien mé- prisable,	<i>he who writes according to circum- stances, both for and against a party, is a very contemptible man.</i>
--	--

But it would be wrong to say,

Celui qui écrit *en faveur* et *contre* un parti, etc.

because *en faveur* requires the preposition *de*.

Prepositions which, with their regimen, express a circumstance, are generally placed as nearly as possible to the word to which that circumstance relates.

## EXAMPLES.

on voit des personnes qui, <i>avec</i> <i>beaucoup d'esprit</i> , commettent de très-grandes fautes,	<i>we see persons who, with a great deal of wit, commit very great faults.</i>
j'ai envoyé à la poste les lettres que vous avez écrites,	<i>I have sent to the post-office the letters which you have written.</i>
croyez-vous pouvoir ramener par la douceur ces esprits égarés?	<i>do you think you can reclaim by gentleness, those mistaken peo- ple?</i>

If we attempt to alter the place of these prepositions, we shall find that the sentences will become ambiguous.

## CHAPTER VII. OF THE ADVERBS.

### PLACE OF ADVERBS.

418. In simple tenses, the adverb is generally placed after the verb; and, the compound tenses, between the auxiliary and the participle.

## EXAMPLES.

l'homme le plus éclairé est ordi- nairement celui qui pense le plus modestement de lui-même,	<i>the man who is most learned is generally he who thinks most modestly of himself.</i>
avez-vous jamais vu un pédant plus absurde et plus vain ?	<i>have you ever seen a pédant more absurd and more vain ?</i>

Compound adverbs, or adverbial phrases are placed after the verb, and even after the participle past in a compound tense.

## EXAMPLE:

c'est à la mode,	<i>that is fashionable;</i>
il eût fallu se lever plus matin,	<i>it would have been necessary to rise earlier.</i>
nous nous sommes levés à la hâte,	<i>we got up hastily.</i>

EXCEPTIONS. 1.—Adverbs of order, rank, and those which express a determinate time, are placed either before, or after the verb.

## EXAMPLES.

nous devons premièrement faire notre devoir ; secondement cher- cher les plaisirs permis,	<i>we ought, first, to do our duty ; secondly, enjoy lawful pleasures.</i>
aujourd'hui il fait beau ; il pleu- vra peut-être demain.	<i>to day, it is fine ; it will rain per- haps to-morrow.</i>

2. These adverbs, *comment*, *où*, *d'où*, *par où*, *combien*, *pourquoi*, *quand*, used with, or without interrogation, are always placed before the verb which they modify.

## EXAMPLES.

comment vous portez-vous ?	<i>how do you do ?</i>
où allez-vous ?	<i>whither are you going ?</i>
il ne sait comment s'y prendre,	<i>he does not know how to set about it.</i>

The adverbs *très*, *fort*, *infiniment*, etc. are always placed before the adjective which they modify.

## EXAMPLE:

c'est une femme fort belle, très- sensible, et infiniment sage,	<i>she is a woman very beautiful, of great sensibility, and infinitely prudent.</i>
--	---

Adverbs of quantity and comparison and the adverbs of time *souvent*, *toujours*, *jamais*, are placed before the other adverbs.

## EXAMPLES.

si poliment, fort poliment, très-heureusement,	<i>so politely, very politely. very happily.</i>
---	--

le plus adroitement,	<i>the most skilfully.</i>
ils ne seront jamais étroitement unis,	<i>they never will be intimately united.</i>
ils sont toujours ensemble,	<i>they are always together.</i>
c'est souvent à l'improviste qu'il arrive,	<i>he often comes unexpectedly.</i>

*Souvent* may, however, be preceded by an adverb of quantity, or comparison, as *si souvent, assez souvent, fort souvent, plus souvent, moins souvent, trop souvent*.

When adverbs of quantity and comparison meet together in a sentence, the following is the order, which custom has established.

si peu,	bien peu	beaucoup* trop,	tant mieux,
trop peu,	bien plus,	beaucoup plus,	tant pis, etc.
très-peu,	bien davantage,	beaucoup moins,	

*Bien* before another adverb means *very much, quite*.

#### EXAMPLES.

bien assez,	<i>quite enough.</i>
bien tard,	<i>very late.</i>
bien moins,	<i>much less.</i>

When after the verb it signifies *well*.

#### EXAMPLES.

assez bien,	<i>pretty well.</i>
fort bien,	<i>very well.</i>

#### OF THE NEGATIVE *ne*.

419. It is customary to use two negatives in French, *ne* comes before the verb; *pas* or *point* comes after it. The French Academy have discussed the four following questions.

1. Which is the place of the negatives?
2. When is *pas* to be used in preference to *point* and *vice versa*?
3. When may both be omitted?
4. When *ought* both to be omitted?

As this subject is of very material importance, we shall treat it upon the plan of the Academy, and agreeably to their views.

---

\* *Beaucoup* is not, as the English *much* susceptible of being modified by any adverb preceding, thus *très-beaucoup, trop heureux*, etc., would be barbarisms.



FIRST QUESTION. Where is the place of the negatives ?

*Ne* is always prefixed to the verb ; but the place of *pas* and *point* is variable.

When the verb is in the infinitive, these are placed indifferently before, or after it ; for we say,

Pour ne point voir, or, pour ne voir pas.

In the other moods, except the imperative, the tenses are either simple, or compound. In the simple tenses, *pas* or *point* is placed after the verb.

EXAMPLE.

Il ne parle pas ; ne parle-t-il pas ?

In the compound tenses, it is placed between the auxiliary and the participle.

EXAMPLE.

Il n'a pas parlé ; n'a-t-il pas parlé ?

In the imperative, it is placed after the verb.

EXAMPLE.

Ne badinez pas. Ne vous en allez pas.

SECOND QUESTION. When is *pas*, to be used in preference to *point*, and *vice versâ* !

*Point* is a stronger negative than *pas* : besides, it denotes something permanent : *il ne lit point*, means he *never* reads.

*Pas* denotes something accidental ; *il ne lit pas*, means, he does not read *now*, or he is not reading.

*Point de* denotes an absolute negation. To say :

*Il n'a point d'esprit*, is to say, he has no wit at all.

*Pas de*, allows some sort of restriction. To say :

*Il n'a pas d'esprit*, is to say, he has nothing of what can be called wit.

Hence the Academy concludes, that *pas* is more proper.

1. Before *plus*, *moins*, *si*, *autant*, and other words denoting comparison.

EXAMPLE.

Milton n'est pas moins sublime *Milton is not less sublime than*  
qu'Homère, *Homer.*

## 2. Before nouns of number.

## EXAMPLE.

il n'y a pas dix ans, *It is not ten years, ago.*

*Point* is elegantly used,

## 1. At the end of a sentence.

## EXAMPLE.

on s'amusait à ses dépens, et il *they were amusing themselves at*  
ne s'en apercevait point, *his expense, and he did not per-*  
*ceive it.*

## 2. In elliptical sentences.

## EXAMPLE.

je croyais avoir à faire à un hon- *I thought I had to deal with an*  
nête homme ; mais point, *honest man ; but no.*

## 3. In answer to interrogative sentences.

## EXAMPLE.

irez-vous ce soir au parc ?— *shall you go this evening to the*  
point, *park ?—no.*

The Academy also observes, that when *pas* or *point* is introduced into interrogative sentences, it is with meanings somewhat different. We make use of *point*, when we have any doubt on our minds.

## EXAMPLE.

n'avez-vous point été là ? *have you not been there ?*

But we use *pas*, when we are persuaded.

## EXAMPLE.

n'avez-vous pas été là ? *but you have been there, have not*  
*you ?*

THIRD QUESTION. When may both *pas* and *point* be omitted ?

They may be suppressed,

1. After the words *cesser*, *oser*, and *pouvoir* ; but this omission is only for the sake of elegance.

## EXAMPLES.

je ne cesse de m'en occuper, *I incessantly think about it.*  
je n'ose vous en parler, *I dare not speak to you about it.*  
je ne puis y penser sans frémir, *I cannot think of it without shud-*  
*dering.*

We likewise say, but only in familiar conversation,  
ne bougez, *do not stir.*

## 2. In expressions of this kind,

y a-t-il un homme dont elle ne *is there a man that she does not*  
médise ? *slander ?*  
avez-vous un ami qui ne soit *have you a friend but is not like-*  
des miens ? *wise mine ?*

FOURTH QUESTION. When ought both *pas* and *point* to be omitted ?

They are omitted,

420. When the extent which we mean to give to the negative is sufficiently expressed either by the words which restrict it, by words which exclude all restriction, or when the verb is joined to an adverb, or pronoun having a negative sense, as, *jamais, plus, aucun, personne, rien, nul, nullement* ; and also to the words *bien, goutte, mot*, which in some cases, have been through custom considered as negatives.

To exemplify the first part of this remark, we say,

### EXAMPLES.

je ne sors guère, *I go out but seldom.*  
je ne sortirai de trois jours, *I shall not go out for three days.*

To exemplify the second, we say,

### EXAMPLES.

je n'y vais jamais, *I never go there.*  
je n'y pense plus, *I think no more of it.*  
nul ne sait s'il est digne d'a- *nobody knows whether he be de-*  
mour, ou de haine, *serving of love, or hatred.*  
n'employez aucun de ces strata- *use none of these stratagems.*  
gèmes,  
il ne plaît à personne, *he pleases nobody.*  
rien n'est plus charmant, *nothing is more charming.*  
je n'y pense nullement, *I do not think of it at all.*

To exemplify the third, we say,

### EXAMPLES.

il n'y voit goutte, *he cannot see at all.*  
je n'en ai cueilli brin, *I did not gather a sprig.*  
il ne dit mot, *he speaks not a word.*

But if to *mot* we join an adjective of number, *pas* must be added, as



## EXAMPLES.

il ne dit pas un mot qui n'inté-    *he speaks not a word but what is*  
     resse,                                    *interesting.*  
 dans ce discours, il n'y a pas    *in that speech, there are not three*  
     trois mots à reprendre,        *words that are exceptionable.*

421. The substantive which follows a negative phrase is governed by the preposition *de*.

## EXAMPLES.

il n'a jamais d'argent,            *he never has any money.*  
 n'avez-vous pas de cheval ?    *have you got no horse ?*  
 il ne fait pas de démarche inu-   *he does not take any useless step.*  
     tile,

If, after such sentences as we have just mentioned, either the conjunction *que*, or the relative pronouns *qui* or *dont*, should introduce a negative sentence, then in this last, *pas* and *point* are omitted.

## EXAMPLES.

je ne fais jamais d'excès que je   *I never committed any excess, without*  
     n'en sois incommodé,            *being ill after it.*  
 je ne vois personne qui ne vous   *I see nobody but what commends*  
     loue,                                *you.*

422. When two negatives are joined by *ni*, *pas* is omitted.

## EXAMPLE.

je ne l'aime ni ne l'estime,        *I neither love nor esteem him.*

When the conjunction *ni* is repeated, *pas* is also left out.

## EXAMPLES.

ni l'or ni la grandeur ne nous ren-   *neither gold nor greatness can*  
     dent heureux,                    *make us happy.*  
 il n'est ni prudent ni sage,        *he is neither prudent nor wise.*  
 il n'a ni dettes ni procès,        *he has neither debts nor lawsuits.*

*Pas* is used, when *ni* is not repeated, and when it serves only to unite two members of a negative sentence.

## EXAMPLE.

je n'aime pas ce vain étalage    *I do not like that vain display of*  
     d'érudition prodiguée sans choix    *erudition lavished without choice*  
     et sans goût, ni ce luxe de        *and without taste, nor that pomp*  
     mots qui ne disent rien,        *of words which have no meaning.*

*Pas* is omitted when the question used for *pourquoi* begins with *que*, and after *à moins que*, *si*, instead of *pourquoi*, and with *à moins que*, or *si* used instead of it.

## EXAMPLES.

que n'êtes-vous aussi posé que votre frère ?	<i>why are you not as sedate as your brother?</i>
je ne sortirai pas à moins que vous ne veniez me prendre,	<i>I shall not go out, unless you come to fetch me.</i>
je n'irai pas chez lui, s'il ne m'y engage,	<i>I shall not go to his house, if he do not invite me.</i>

With *ne—que* used instead of *seulement*, and in the sense of *only, but*, *pas* is not used.

## EXAMPLE.

une jeunesse qui se livre à ses passions, ne transmet à la vieil- lesse qu'un corps usé,	<i>youth, which abandons itself to its passions, transmits to old age nothing but a worn-out body.</i>
--	--

*Ne*, before, and *que*, after the verb in the sense of *nothing but* does not require *pas*.

## EXAMPLE.

il ne fait que rire,	<i>he does nothing but laugh.</i>
----------------------	-----------------------------------

*Pas* is again omitted when that conjunction may be changed into *sinon*, or *si ce n'est*.

## EXAMPLES.

il ne tient qu'à vous de réussir,	<i>the success wholly depends upon you.</i>
trop de maîtres à la fois ne ser- vent qu'à embrouiller l'esprit,	<i>too many masters at once only serve to perplex the mind.</i>

With a verb in the preterit, preceded by the conjunction *depuis que*, or by the verb *il y a*, denoting a certain duration of time, *pas* and *point* are omitted.

## EXAMPLES.

comment vous êtes-vous porté depuis que je ne vous ai vu ?	<i>how have you been since I saw you ?</i>
il y a trois mois que je ne vous ai vu,	<i>I have not seen you for these three months.</i>

But they are not omitted, when the verb is in the present.

## EXAMPLES.

comment vit-il depuis que nous ne le voyons point ?	<i>how does he live now we do not see him ?</i>
il y a six mois que nous ne le voyons point,	<i>we have not seen him these six months.</i>

It has been seen, No. 211, that *ne* is used in comparative sentences, but as it has not then a negative sense, *pas*, *point* are of course omitted.

## EXAMPLES.

on méprise ceux qui parlent au-	<i>we despise those who speak diffe-</i>
trement qu'ils ne pensent,	<i>rently from what they think.</i>
il écrit mieux qu'il ne parle,	<i>he writes better than he speaks.</i>
c'est pire qu'on ne le disait,	<i>it is worse than was said.</i>
c'est autre chose que je ne	<i>it is different from what I thought.</i>
croyais,	
peu s'en faut qu'on ne m'ait	<i>I have been very near being de-</i>
trompé,	<i>ceived.</i>

*Ne* is also used before the subjunctive mood after certain verbs noticed No. 384, in which case *pas*, *point*, are also omitted.

## EXAMPLES.

je ne doute pas qu'il ne vienne,	<i>I doubt not that he will come.</i>
ne désespérez pas que ce moyen,	<i>do not despair of the success of</i>
ne vous réussisse,	<i>these means.</i>
je ne nie pas, <i>ou</i> , je ne discon-	<i>I do not deny but that it may be so.</i>
viens pas que cela ne soit,	
j'empêcherai bien que vous ne	<i>I shall prevent your being of the</i>
soyez du nombre,	<i>number.</i>
prenez garde qu'on ne vous sé-	<i>take care that they do not corrupt</i>
duise,	<i>you.</i>
prenez garde que vous ne m'en-	<i>mind you do not understand what</i>
tendiez pas,	<i>I mean.</i>
il craint que son frère ne l'aban-	<i>he is afraid his brother should for-</i>
donne,	<i>sake him.</i>
je crains que mon ami ne meure,	<i>I fear my friend will die.</i>

The Academy says, that after *nier*, *douter*, *disconvenir*, *ne* may be omitted.

## EXAMPLES.

Je ne nie pas, *ou*, je ne disconviens pas que cela soit.

When we say, *de crainte qu'il ne perde son procès*, we express a fear lest he should lose his law-suit.

When we say, *de crainte qu'il ne soit pas puni*, we express an apprehension, lest he should escape punishment.

REMARK. In these phrases,

je crains que mon ami ne meure,	<i>I am afraid my friend will die.</i>
vous empêchez qu'on ne chante,	<i>you prevent them from singing.</i>

*Ne* has the meaning of the *ne* of the Latin language, which equally governs the subjunctive mood.

423. The conditional of *savoir* is frequently used negatively, instead of *pouvoir* in which case *pas*, *point* are omitted.

## EXAMPLE.

je ne saurais en venir à bout	<i>I cannot accomplish it.</i>
-------------------------------	--------------------------------



When *ne savoir* means *être incertain*, it is best to omit *pas* and *point*.

## EXAMPLES.

je ne sais où le prendre,	<i>I do not know where to find him.</i>
il ne sait ce qu'il dit,	<i>he does not know what he says.</i>

But *pas* and *point* must be used when *savoir* is taken in its true meaning, to know.

## EXAMPLE.

je ne sais pas le Français,	<i>I do not know French.</i>
-----------------------------	------------------------------

We also say, without *pas* or *point*,

ne vous déplaît, ne vous en dé-	<i>by your leave, under favour, or</i>
plaît,	<i>let it not displease you.</i>

*Plus* and *davantage* must not be used indifferently. *Plus* is followed by the preposition *de*, or the conjunction *que*.

## EXAMPLES.

il a plus de brillant que de solide,	<i>he has more brilliancy than solidity.</i>
il se fie plus à ses lumières qu'à	<i>he relies more upon his own know-</i>
celles des autres,	<i>ledge than upon that of others.</i>

*Davantage* is used alone and at the end of sentences.

## EXAMPLE.

la science est estimable, mais la	<i>learning is estimable, but virtue is</i>
vertu l'est davantage,	<i>still more so.</i>

Although *davantage* cannot be followed by the preposition *de*, it may be preceded by the pronoun *en*.

## EXAMPLE.

je n'en dirai pas davantage,	<i>I shall not say any more about it,</i>
------------------------------	---

It is incorrect to use *davantage* for *le plus*. We must say,

de toutes les fleurs d'un parterre,	<i>of all the flowers of a parterre, the</i>
l'anémone est celle qui me plaît le	<i>anemone is that which pleases me</i>
plus.	<i>most.</i>

424. *Si*, *aussi*, *tant*, and *autant*, are always followed by the conjunction *que*, expressed or understood.



## EXAMPLES.

QUE	expressing comparison	{ l'Asie est plus grande que l'Europe. }	Asia is larger than Europe.
	for rien que	{ on ne parle que de la nouvelle victoire. }	they talk of nothing but the new victory.
	je souhaite que	{ qu'il vive pour, je souhaite qu'il vive. }	may he live, for, I wish that he may live.
	à moins que	{ cela ne finira pas qu'il ne vienne. }	there will be no end to it, unless he come.
	avant que	{ qu'il fasse le moindre excès, il est malade. }	if he commits the least excess, he is ill.
	sans que	{ qu'il perde, ou qu'il gagne son procès, c'est un homme ruiné. }	whether he gains, or loses his lawsuit, he is a ruined man.
	dès que	{ attendez qu'il vienne. }	wait till he comes.
	aussitôt que	{ que ne se corrige-t-il pas méchant qu'il est. }	why does he not reform? wicked as he is.
	si, or quand	{ que Dieu est grand ! }	how great is the Almighty!
	soit que	{ que je hais les méchants ! }	how much I hate the wicked!

Another very frequent use of this conjunction is to save the repetition of *comme*, *parce que*, *puisque*, *quand*, *quoique*, *si*, etc. when, to phrases beginning with these words, others are added under the same regimen, by means of the conjunction *et*.

## EXAMPLE.

si l'on aimait son pays et qu'on en désirât sincèrement la gloire, if we loved our country, and sincerely wished its glory, we should  
on se conduirait de manière, act so as, etc.  
etc.

426. *Particular construction* with *que* before a noun or an infinitive.

## EXAMPLE.

c'est un homme singulier que votre frère, your brother is a strange man.

For *votre frère est un homme singulier.*



## EXAMPLE.

c'était quelque chose que d'avoir *having begun was already some-*  
commencé, *thing.*

For *avoir commencé était déjà quelque chose.*

## EXERCISE.

We have every thing to fear from his wisdom, even more  
*encore*  
than from his power. What men term greatness, glory,  
*ce que art. appeler*  
power, profound policy, is in the eyes of God *only*  
*profond politique, f. à*  
misery, weakness, and vanity. *May* they understand, at last,  
*comprendre*  
that without internal peace there is no  
*avec soi-même 2 art. 1 point*  
happiness. *May* she be as happy as she deserves to be.  
*de de le*  
Never write *before* you have thoroughly examined  
*sous toutes ses faces 2 1*  
the subject which you propose to treat. *Let* him but hear  
*se proposer de traiter \**  
the least noise, his terrified imagination presents to him nothing  
*bruit effrayé 2 f. 1 \* \**  
but monsters. Do not sift this question, *till*  
*ne que de art. approfondir*  
I can (be your guide). Do not go out *till* your brother  
*ne subj-1 vous mettre sur la voie*  
comes in. *Why* does he not (take advantage) of his youth,  
*ne rentrer, \* profiter*  
(in order to) acquire the knowledge he wants? This  
*pour connaissance pl. dont avoir besoin?*  
town is a very pretty place. My uncle was a terrible man when  
he was in a passion.

Full as he was of his prejudices, he would not own  
*Rempli ind-2 préjugé ind 3 convenir de*  
(any thing). Full of self-love (as he is), expect nothing  
*rien pétri 1 3 2 de*  
good (from him). *How* beautiful is that cultivated nature  
*en 1 6 5 2 4 3*  
*How*, by the care of man, *is* it brilliantly and richly adorned!  
*par f. pompeusement orné*  
Had profound philosophy presided at the formation of  
*si \* de ind-6 à*  
languages, and *had* they carefully examined the elements of  
*art. langue avec soin subj-4 → m.*

speech, not only in their relations (to one another), but also  
 art. *discours non* *entr'eux* *encore*  
 in themselves, it is not (to be doubted) that languages  
*en* *m.* *douteux* *art.*  
 would present principles more simple, and at the  
*offrir subj-2 de art.*  
 same time, more luminous.

## GOVERNMENT OF CONJUNCTIONS.

427. The conjunctions which unite sentences to one another, are followed either by the *infinitive*, the *indicative*, or the *subjunctive*.

Those that are followed by an infinitive, are,

1. Such as are distinguished from prepositions, only by being followed by a verb.

## EXAMPLE.

il faut se reposer après avoir *one ought to rest after having laboured.*  
*travaillé,*

2. Those which have the preposition *de* after them.

## EXAMPLE.

il travaille afin de vous surpasser, *he works that he may surpass you.*

## EXERCISE.

They were going to spend a few days in town,  
*ne \* ind-2 \* passer \* quelques à art.*  
 only *that* they might return with more pleasure to  
*que pour \* \* se retrouver inf-1 dans*  
 their charming solitude. Many persons work only (*in order to*)  
*ne que afin de*  
 acquire consideration and riches, but the honest and  
*de art. pr. art. 2 et*  
 human man spends (so much) time in study, only  
*sensible 3 1 ne employer tant de à art. que*  
 to be useful to his fellow-creatures. I reveal to you the  
*pour semblables dévoiler*  
 plot which your enemies have concerted in secret *in*  
*trame f. ourdir art. ténèbres f. pl.*  
 order to warn you against their artifices.  
*prémunir*

428. Conjunctions that govern the indicative,

bien attendu que,	autant que,	puisque,	peut-être que,
à condition que,	non plus que,	lorsque	comme,
à la charge que,	autre que,	pendant que,	comme si

de même que,	paree que	tandis que,	quand,
ainsi que,	attendu que	durant que,	pourquoi
aussi bien que,	vu que,	tant que,	comment, etc.

They are followed by the indicative, because the principal sentence, which they unite with that which is incidental, expresses the affirmation in a direct, positive and independent manner.

The use of the six following conjunctions,

si non que	de sorte que,	tellement que,
si ce n'est que,	en sorte que,	de manière que,

varies according to the meaning expressed by the principal sentence.

#### EXAMPLE OF THE INDICATIVE.

je ne lui ai répondu autre chose,  
*si non que j'avais exécuté ses ordres,*

*I made him no other answer, but that I had executed his orders.*

#### EXAMPLE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

je ne veux autre chose, *si non que*  
vous travailliez avec plus d'ardeur.

*I desire nothing else but that you would study with greater ardour.*

The indicative is required, in the first sentence, by the verb *j'ai répondu* expressing a positive affirmation, and the subjunctive in the second, because *je veux* expresses a command, or desire.

#### EXERCISE.

When you have a more extensive knowledge of geometry,  
ind-7 2 1 art, f.  
and algebra, I shall give you a few lessons in astronomy, and optics. From your mind, heart, and taste  
pr. art. algèbre f. \* quelque de  
pr. optique pron. pron.  
while you are still young. Do not keep truth a prisoner,  
encore retenir art. \* captive  
though you should (draw upon you) a cloud of enemies.  
quand devoir cond-1 s'attirer nuée f.  
I will give you this fine picture upon condition that you  
tableau m. à  
keep it as a testimony of my friendship.  
conserver ind-7 témoignage m.

429. The conjunctions which govern the subjunctive are,

soit que,	jusqu'à ce que,	supposé que,	afin que,
sans que,	encore que,	au cas que,	de peur que
pour que,	à moins que,	avant que,	de crainte que,
quoique,	pourvu que	non pas que	etc.



They require the conjunctive, as they always imply doubt, desire, ignorance. See No. 378.

EXERCISE.

You know too well the value of time, to make  
*connaître* *prix m. art.* *pour que être 2*  
it necessary to tell you to (make a good use of) it. Study only  
*il 1* *de* *de* *bien employer*  
great models, *lest* those which are but middling  
*art.* *de peur que* \* *médiocre ne*  
should spoil your taste, before it be entirely formed. I  
*gâter subj-1*  
(make not the least doubt) that your method will succeed,  
*ne douter nullement* *f. ne subj-1*  
provided it be well known. Several phenomena of nature are  
*f.* *art.*  
easy (to be explained), supposing the principle of universal  
*(by the active)* *art. 2*  
gravitation to be true.  
*f. 1 \**

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES ON THE NINE PARTS OF SPEECH.

*The Good Mother.*

What a fine morning! said the amiable Charlotte to her  
*matinée f. ind-3*  
brother George. Come let us go into the garden and enjoy  
*sing.* \* *inf-1*  
the magnificent sight of rich and abundant nature.  
*de 2* *spectacle m. 1* *une 2* *fertile 3 1*  
We will gather the freshest and sweetest flowers. We  
*y cueillir frais 2* *art. adv. odorant 3. f. pl. 1.*  
will make a nosegay, which we will offer to mamma. You  
*bouquet m.* *maman sing.*  
know she is fond of flowers. This attention will give her  
*savoir que aimer faire lui*  
pleasure. Ah! brother, it will obtain us a smile, a caress,  
*mon f. valoir sourire m. f.*  
perhaps even a kiss. Ah! sister, replied George, your  
*baiser m. ma répondre ind-3 sing.*  
proposal delights me; let us run, let us hasten, that we may  
*projet enchanter courir voler afin de \* \**  
offer her, (when she gets up), this tribute of our gratitude and our  
*lui à son lever hommage —*  
love. Full of this idea, Charlotte and George hastened  
*plein se hâter ind-3 de se ren-*  
into the garden. Charlotte gathered violets jessamine  
*dre ind-3 de art. pr. art.*

and young rose-buds which (had but just begun) to  
 pr. *de 2 bouton m. 1 ne commencer que ind-2*  
 open their purple cups, while George prepared  
*entr'ouvrir de pourpre 2 calice 1 ind-2 de art.*  
 green sprigs of myrtle and thyme, intended to hold up the  
*verdoyant 2 jet m. 1 myrte pr. thym destiné soutenir*  
 flowers. Never had these amiable children exerted themselves  
*1 ind-2 3 2 travailler*  
 with (so much) zeal and ardour. Satisfaction and pleasure were  
*tant de zèle pr. art. f. art. m. ind-2*  
 painted in all their features, sparkled in their eyes, and added still to  
*peint trait m. pétiller*  
 their beauty.

While they (were engaged) (in this manner), their mother, who  
*s'occuper ind-2*  
 had seen them in the garden, came to join them. (As soon as)  
*ind-3 \* joindre dès que*  
 they perceived her, they flew to her, and said: (Ah! mamma, how  
*ind-3 ind-3 elle lui que*  
 glad we are to see you! how (impatient we were) for this  
*aise 3 1 2 de il tardait à notre impatience d'avoir*  
 pleasure. In the pleasing expectation (of it) we (were preparing) this  
*ce doux attente f. \* ind-2*  
 nosegay for you. What satisfaction should we have had in  
*f. ne pas à*  
 presenting it to you! Look at these rose-buds, these violets, this jes-  
*offrir voir \**  
 samine, this myrtle, and this thyme. Well, we intended them  
*Eh! bien, destiner ind-2*  
 for you. These flowers, coming from us, would have been dear to you.  
*\* cher*

In wearing them, you would have said: My children (were think-  
*En porter inf. 2 s'occuper*  
 ing) of me while I slept. I am always as present to their  
*ind-2 dormir ind-2*

minds as to their hearts. They love me, and it is by giving me every  
*s.*

day new proofs of their affection, that they acknowledge th  
*art. pl. de preuve f. reconnaître*  
 care I have taken of them in their childhood, and all th  
*soin m. pl. que*  
 marks of tenderness I am unceasingly giving them.  
*que ne cesser de inf-1 leur.*

My dear children, replied the mother, embracing them  
*répondre ind-3 en embrasser*  
 how happy you make all my days! your gratitude, your tende  
*quel charme répandre sur \**

ness, your attention to me, make me forget my former misfortunes,  
 pl. *pour* *oublier* *ancien malheur* m.  
 and open my heart again to the sweet impressions of pleasure.  
*rouvrir* \* f. art.  
 May Heaven continue to bless my labour! May it be  
*Pouvoir* subj-1 art. *continuer de* *soin* *Pouvoir*  
 your guide and your support in the career which (will soon be opened)  
 = *soutien* *carrière* f. *aller* ind-1 *s'ouvrir*  
 to you! may it complete its kindness by preserving you  
*devant* *mettre le comble à* *bienfait* pl. *en garantir* inf-2  
 from the dangers to which you cannot fail to be soon  
*de* \* *ne pas tarder* ind-7  
 exposed! Alas! I shudder (at them) beforehand, my dear children;  
*frémir* *en* *d'avance*  
 the moment is come when you must enter the world. Your  
*où* *devoir* *dans*  
 persons, your birth, and your fortune call you there, and insure  
*figure* sing. *naissance* *appeler* *y* *assurer*  
 you a distinguished rank (in it), I cannot always be your guide.  
 2 m. 1 *y* ind-7  
 Young and inexperienced, you will find yourself surrounded  
*sans expérience* *aller* ind-1 inf-1 *entouré*  
 by every kind of temptation. (Every thing), even  
*sorte* f. *séduction* *tout* *jusque à* art. m.  
 vice, presents itself there under an agreeable form, and  
*offrir* *y* *sous* \* *de* art. \* pl. 1  
 almost always in the shape of pleasure, which has (so many)  
*sous* *image* art. *tant de*  
 attractions for youth. They will try to mislead you, to  
*attrait* f. art. *jeunesse* f. *On* *chercher* *égarer*  
 corrupt you; they (will make use of) artifice, raillery, and  
*employer* art. art. =  
 even the mask of virtue. If you abandon yourselves  
*jusque à* *masque* m. art. *se laisser aller*  
 to first impressions, you are lost. The poison of example will  
 art.  
 insinuate itself into your hearts, will corrupt the innocence and  
*se glisser* *altérer*  
 purity (of them) and will substitute violent passions for  
*en* *de* art. *déchirant* 2 f. pl. 1 *à*  
 the sweet affections which have hitherto made your happiness.  
*doux* *faire*  
 Do not imagine, my dear children, that, in placing before your  
*croire* *en mettre sous*  
 eyes a picture of the dangers of the world, my intention  
*le tableau* m.  
 is to prohibit you every kind of pleasure. God for-  
 subj-1 *de interdire* *espèce* f. *à* *ne plaire*  
 I I





benevolence with which I (have always) inspired you and  
*bienveillance* 1 \* *ne point cesser* ind-4 *de* inf-1  
of which I have seen you give (so many) proofs, (remove  
*tant de* *preuve rassurer* 1  
already every fear) (I might have) upon that subject: but will  
*d'avance* 3 *me* 2 *sur* *point* m.  
you not yield to other vices not less dangerous? Cruel idea,  
*de* *non* f.  
terrible uncertainty? If this misfortune were to happen,  
*affreux* f. \* \* *arriver* ind-2  
ah! my dear children, instead of being the joy and conso-  
art. f.  
lation of my life, you would be the torment, the shame and the  
*honte* f.  
disgrace (of it). You would poison my days, and you  
*opprobre* *en* *empoisonner*  
would plunge a dagger into the very bosom which gave  
*porter* art. *mort* f. *même* 2 *sein* m. 1 ind-3  
you life. But whither is my tenderness for you carrying me?  
art. *où* \* *emporter*  
No, my children, no, I have nothing to fear; you love me (too  
*Non*  
much) to wish to grieve me so cruelly; and I shall have  
*trop pour vouloir* \*  
the pleasure, (as long as) I live, of seeing you walk in the ways  
*tant que* ind-7 *sentier*  
of honour and virtue.  
art. pr. art.

---

## CHAPTER IX.

### OF GRAMMATICAL CONSTRUCTION.

430. Grammatical construction is the order which the genius of a language has assigned, in speech, to the different sorts of words into which it is distinguished. Construction is sometimes mistaken for syntax; but there is this difference: the latter consists in the rules which we are to observe, in order to express the relations of words one to another, whereas grammatical construction consists in the various arrangements which are allowed while we observe the rules of syntax. Now this arrangement is irrevocably fixed, not only as phrases may be interrogative, imperative, or expositive, but also as each of these kinds may be affirmative, or negative.

In sentences simply interrogative, the subject is either a noun, or pronoun.

If the subject, be a noun, the following is the order to be observed : first, the noun, then the verb, then the corresponding personal pronoun, the adverb, if any, and the regimen in the simple tenses : in the compound tenses, the pronoun and the adverb are placed between the auxiliary and the participle.

## EXAMPLE.

les lumières sont-elles un bien pour	<i>are sciences an advantage to na-</i>
les peuples ? ont-elles jamais	<i>tions ? Have they ever contri-</i>
contribué à leur bonheur ?	<i>buted to their happiness ?</i>

If the subject be a pronoun, the verb begins the series, and the other words follow in the order already pointed out.

## EXAMPLES.

vous plairez-vous toujours à mé-	<i>will you always take pleasure in</i>
dire ?	<i>slandering ?</i>
aurez-vous bientôt fini ?	<i>shall you have soon done ?</i>

N. B.—[When the verb is reflected, the pronoun forming the regimen begins the series, this pronoun always preserves its place before the verb, except in sentences simply imperative.]

In interrogative sentences, with a negation, the same order is observed ; but *ne* is placed before the verb, and *pas* or *point*, after the verb in the simple tenses, and between the auxiliary and the participle in the compound tenses.

## EXAMPLES.

votre frère ne viendra-t-il pas de-	<i>will not your brother come to-mor-</i>
main ?	<i>row ?</i>
n'aurez-vous pas bientôt fini ?	<i>shall not you have soon done ?</i>

REMARK.—There are in French several other ways of interrogating.

## 1. With an absolute pronoun.

## EXAMPLE.

qui vous a dit cela ? or qui est-ce	<i>who told you that ?</i>
qui vous a dit cela ?	

2. With the demonstrative pronoun *ce*.

## EXAMPLES.

est-ce vous ?	<i>is it you ?</i>		est-ce qu'il pleut ?	<i>does it rain ?</i>
---------------	--------------------	--	----------------------	-----------------------



## 3. With an interrogative verb.

## EXAMPLES.

pourquoi ne vient-il pas ?	<i>why does he not come ?</i>
comment vous trouvez-vous ?	<i>how do you find yourself ?</i>

Hence we see that the absolute pronouns and the interrogative adverbs always begin the sentence : but the demonstrative pronoun *ce* always follows the verb.

In sentences, simply imperative, the verb is always placed first, in the first and second persons ; but in the third, it comes after the conjunction *que* and the noun or pronoun.

## EXAMPLES.

allons là,	<i>let us go there.</i>
venez ici,	<i>come here.</i>
qu'ils y aillent,	<i>let them go there.</i>
que Pierre aille à Londres,	<i>let Peter go to London.</i>

With negation, *ne* and *pas* are placed as in interrogative sentences.

For the place of the pronouns, No. 218.

Sentences are expositive, when we speak without either interrogating, or commanding. The following is the order of the words in those which are affirmative : the subject, the verb, the adverb, the participle, and the regimen.

## EXAMPLES.

un bon prince mérite l'amour de ses sujets et l'estime de tous les peuples,	<i>a good prince deserves the love of his subjects, and the esteem of all nations.</i>
César eût inutilement passé le Rubicon, s'il y eût eu de son temps des Fabius,	<i>Cæsar would have crossed the Rubi- con to no purpose, had there been Fabii in his time.</i>

The negative sentences differ from this construction, only as *ne* is always before the verb, and *pas*, or *point*, either after the verb, or between the auxiliary and the participle.

## EXAMPLES.

un homme riche ne fait pas tou- jours le bien qu'il pourrait,	<i>a rich man does not always do all the good he might.</i>
Cicéron n'eût pas peut-être été un si grand orateur, si le désir de s'élever aux premières dig- nités n'eût enflammé son âme,	<i>Cicero would not perhaps have been so great an orator, had not the desire of rising to the first digni- ties inflamed his soul.</i>

Sentences are either simple, or compound. They are simple when they contain only one subject and one attribute.

## EXAMPLES.

vous lisez,  
vous êtes jeune,

*you read.*  
*you are young.*

They are compound, when they reunite several subjects with one attribute, or several attributes with one subject, or several attributes with several subjects, or several subjects with several attributes.

This sentence, *Pierre et Paul sont heureux*, is compound by having two subjects ; this, *cette femme est jolie, spirituelle et sensible*, is compound by having more than one attribute ; and this, *Pierre et Paul sont spirituels et savants*, is composed at once of several subjects and several attributes.

A sentence may be compound in various other ways ; by the subject, by the verb, or by the attribute.

By the subject, when this is restricted by an incidental proposition.

## EXAMPLE.

Dieu, qui est bon.

By the verb, when it is modified by some circumstance of time, order, etc.

## EXAMPLE.

Dieu, qui est bon, n'abandonne jamais.

By the attribute, when this attribute is modified by a regimen which is itself restricted.

## EXAMPLE.

Dieu, qui est bon, n'abandonne jamais les hommes, qui mettent sincèrement leur confiance en lui.

These simple, or compound sentences may be joined to others by a conjunction.

## EXAMPLES.

quand on aime l'étude, le temps *when we love study, time flies without*  
passe sans qu'on s'en aper- *our perceiving it.*  
çoive,

The two partial phrases here form but one.

When a sentence is composed of two partial phrases, joined by a conjunction, harmony and perspicuity generally require the shortest to go first.

## EXAMPLES.

quand les passions nous quit-	<i>when our passions leave us, we in</i>
tent, nous nous flattons en	<i>vain flatter ourselves that it is</i>
vain, que c'est nous qui les	<i>we that leave them.</i>
quittons,	
on n'est point à plaindre, quand,	<i>he is not to be pitied, who for</i>
au défaut de plaisirs réels, on	<i>want of real pleasure, finds</i>
trouve le moyen de s'occuper	<i>means to amuse himself with</i>
de chimères,	<i>chimeras.</i>

Periods result from the union of several partial phrases, the whole of which make a complete sense. Periods, to be clear, require the shortest phrases to be placed first. The following example of this is taken from Fléchier.

N'attendez pas, Messieurs,

1. Que j'ouvre une scène tragique ;
2. Que je représente ce grand homme étendu sur ses propres trophées ;
3. Que je découvre ce corps pâle et sanglant, auprès duquel fume encore la foudre qui l'a frappé ;
4. Que je fasse crier son sang comme celui d'Abel, et que j'expose à vos yeux les images de la religion et de la patrie éplorée.

This admirable period is composed of four members, which go on gradually increasing. It is a rule not to give more than four members to a period, and to avoid multiplying incidental sentences.

Obscurity in style is generally owing to those small phrases which divert the attention from the principal sentences, and make us lose sight of them.

The construction which we have mentioned is called direct, or regular, because the words are placed in those sentences according to the order which has been pointed out. But this order may be altered in certain cases, and then the construction is called indirect, or irregular. Now, it may be irregular, by *inversion*, by *ellipsis*, by *pleonasm*, or by *symploce*; these are what are called the four figures of words.

---

 INVERSION.

431. *Inversion* is the transposition of a word into a place, different from that which, by usage, is properly assigned to it. This ought never to be done except when it introduces more perspicuity, energy, or harmony into the language ; for it is a defect in construction, whenever the connexion subsisting between words is not easily perceived.



There are two kinds of inversion : the one, by its boldness seems to be confined to poetry : the other is frequently employed even in prose.

We shall speak here of the latter kind only.

The following inversions are authorized by custom.

The subject by which a verb is governed may with propriety be placed after it.

#### EXAMPLE.

tout ce que lui promet l'amitié des Romains, *all that the friendship of the Romans promises him.*

REMARK. This inversion is a rule of the art of speaking and writing, whenever the subject is modified by an incidental sentence, long enough to make us lose sight of the connexion between the verb governed and the subject governing.

The noun governed by the prepositions *de* and *à* may likewise be very properly placed before the verb.

#### EXAMPLES.

d'une voix entrecoupée de sanglots, ils s'écrièrent, *in a voice interrupted by sobs, they exclaimed,*  
à tant d'injures, qu'a-t-elle répondu ? *to so much abuse, what answer did she give.*

The verb is likewise elegantly preceded by the prepositions *après, dans, par, sous, contre*, etc. and the nouns which they govern, as well as by the conjunctions *si, quand, parce que, puisque, quoique, lorsque*, etc.

#### EXAMPLES.

par la loi du corps, je tiens à ce monde qui passe, *by the law of the body, I am connected with this passing world.*  
puisqu'il le veut, qu'il le fasse, *since he wishes it, let him do it.*

#### OF THE ELLIPSIS.

432. *Ellipsis* is the omission of a word, or even several words, which are necessary to make the construction full and complete. An ellipsis is bad, if the mind does not easily and rapidly supply the words omitted.

#### EXAMPLE.

j'accepterais les offres de Darius, si j'étais Alexandre :— *I would accept the offers of Darius, if I were Alexander :—*  
et moi aussi, si j'étais Parménion, *and so would I, if I were Parmenio.*

Here the mind easily supplies the words, *je les accepte-rais* in the second member.

The ellipsis is very common in answers to interrogative sentences.

## EXAMPLE.

quand viendrez-vous ?—demain, *when will you come?—to-morrow.*  
that is, *je viendrai demain.*

In order to know whether an ellipsis be good, the words that are understood must be supplied. It is correct, whenever the construction completely expresses the sense denoted by the words which are supplied ; otherwise it is not exact.

## OF THE PLEONASM.

433. *Pleonasm*, in general, is a superfluity of words : in order to constitute this figure good, it must be sanctioned by custom, which never permits its use, except it give greater energy to language, or express, in a clearer manner, the internal feeling with which we are affected.

## EXAMPLES.

Et que m'a fait à moi cette Troie où je cours !  
Je me meurs. S'il ne veut pas vous le dire, je vous le dirai, moi.  
Je l'ai vu de mes propres yeux.  
Je l'ai entendu de mes propres oreilles.

—*A moi*, in the first sentence ;—*me*, in the second ;—*moi*, in the third ;—*de mes propres yeux*, in the fourth ; and—*de mes propres oreilles*, in the fifth, are employed merely for the sake of energy, or to manifest an internal feeling ; but this manner of speaking is sanctioned by custom.

REMARK. Expletives must not be mistaken for pleonasm.

## EXAMPLE.

c'est une affaire, où il y va du salut *it is an affair in which the safety*  
de l'état, *of the state is concerned.*

Which is better than *c'est une affaire, où il va*, etc. that is, than omitting *y*, which is in reality useless on account of *où* : this is a mode of expression from which it is not allowed to deviate.

## OF THE SYLLEPSIS.

434. The syllepsis is a figure by which a word relates more to our meaning, than to the literal expressions, as in these phrases :

Il est onze heures ; l'an mil sept cent quatre-vingt-dix-neuf.

When using them, the mind, merely intent upon precise meaning, pays no attention to either the number, or the gender of *heure* and *an*.

There is likewise a syllepsis in these sentences :

Je crains qu'il ne vienne.

J'empêcherai qu'il ne vous nuise.

J'ai peur qu'il ne m'oublie, etc.

Full of a wish that the event may not take place, we are willing to do all we can, that nothing should present an obstacle to that wish. This is the cause of the introduction of the negative, which, although unnecessary to complete the sense, yet must be preserved for the sake of the idiom.

There is again a very elegant syllepsis in sentences like the following from Racine :

Entre le *peuple* et vous, vous prendrez Dieu pour juge ;

Vous souvenant, mon fils, que caché sous ce lin,

Comme *eux* vous fûtes pauvre, et, comme *eux*, orphelin.

The poet forgets that he has been using the word *peuple* : nothing remains in his mind but *des pauvres* and *des orphelins*, and it is with that idea of which he is full that he makes the pronoun *eux* agree. For the same reason, Bossuet and Mézengui have said,

Quand le *peuple Hébreu* entra dans la terre promise, tout y célébrait *leurs* ancêtres.—BOSSUET.

Moïse eut recours au Seigneur, et lui dit : que ferai-je à *ce peuple* ? bientôt *ils* me lapideront.—MÉZENGUI.

*Leurs* and *ils* stand for *les Hébreux*.

## CHAPTER X.

## OF GRAMMATICAL DISCORDANCES, AMPHIBOLOGIES, AND GALLICISMS.

435 We have chiefly to take notice of two incorrect modes of construction, which are contrary to the principles laid down in the preceding chapters—grammatical discordances, and—amphibologies.



## OF DISCORDANCES.

In general, there is a discordance in language, when the words, which compose the various members of a sentence, or period, do not agree with each other, either because their construction is contrary to analogy, or because they bring together dissimilar ideas, between which the mind perceives an opposition, or can see no manner of affinity.

The following examples will serve to illustrate this :

Notre réputation ne dépend pas des louanges qu'on nous donne, mais des actions louables que nous faisons.

This sentence is not correct, because the first member being negative, and the second affirmative, cannot come under the government of the same verb. It ought to be :

notre réputation dépend, non *our reputation depends, not upon*  
des louanges qu'on nous *the praises which are bestowed*  
donne, mais des actions, etc. *on us, but upon the praiseworthy*  
*actions which we perform.*

But the most common discordances are those which arise from the wrong use of tenses, as in this sentence :

Il regarde votre malheur comme une punition du peu de complaisance que *vous avez* eu pour lui, dans le temps qu'il vous *pria* etc.

Because the two preterits, definite and indefinite, cannot well agree together ; it should be :

Que vous eûtes pour lui dans le temps qu'il vous pria.

There is discordance in this sentence :

On en ressentit autant de joie que d'une victoire complète dans un autre temps.

Because the verb cannot be understood after the *que* which introduces the second member of the comparison, when that verb is to be a different tense ; it should be :

On en ressentit autant de joie qu'on en aurait ressenti, etc.

This line of Racine,

Le flot, qui l'apporta, recule épouvanté.

is also incorrect, because the form of the present cannot associate with that of the preterit definite ; it should have been : *qui l'a apporté*.

## OF AMPHIBOLOGIES.

436. Amphibology, in language, is when a sentence is so constructed as to be susceptible of two different interpre-

tations : this must be carefully avoided. As we speak only to be understood, perspicuity is the first and most essential quality of language ; we should always recollect that *what is not clearly expressed in any language, is no language at all.*

Amphibology are occasioned,—1. By the misuse of—moods, and—tenses. 2. Of—personal pronouns, *il, le, la*, etc. 3. Of—possessive pronouns, *son, sa, ses*, etc. 4. By giving a wrong place to nouns.

---

EXAMPLES.

*Of an Amphibology of the first Kind.*

Qu'ai-je fait, *pour venir* accabler en ces lieux  
Un héros, sur qui seul j'ai pu tourner les yeux ?—RACINE.

*Pour venir* forms an amphibology, because we do not know whether it relates to the person who speaks, or to the person spoken to : it should have been : *pour que vous veniez.*

---

EXAMPLES.

*Of an Amphibology of the second Kind.*

César voulut premièrement surpasser Pompée ; les grandes richesses de Crassus *lui* firent croire, qu'*il* pourrait partager la gloire de ces deux grands hommes.

This sentence is faulty in its construction, because the pronouns *il* and *lui* seem to relate to *César*, although the sense obliges us to refer them to *Crassus*.

---

EXAMPLE.

*Of an Amphibology of the third Kind.*

Valère alla chez Léandre ; il y trouva *son* fils.

The pronoun *son* is ambiguous, because we do not know which it relates, to *Valère*, or to *Léandre*.

---

EXAMPLE.

*Of an Amphibology of the fourth Kind.*

J'ai envoyé les lettres, que j'ai écrites, à la poste.

*A la poste*, thus placed, is equivocal, because we do not know whether it is meant that the letters have been *written* at the post-office, or *sent* to the post-office.

## OF GALLICISMS.

In the “Grammaire Philosophique et Littéraire,” four sorts of Gallicisms have been pointed out. Notice will be taken here of those only which have reference to construction.

The gallicisms of construction are, in general, irregularities and deviations from the customary rules of syntax: there are some, however, which are mere ellipses, and those which can only be attributed to the caprice of custom.

**GENERAL PRINCIPLE.** Every gallicism of construction, which renders the meaning of the sentence obscure, ought to be condemned. Those only ought to be allowed which do not impair perspicuity, by introducing irregularity of construction, and which are, at the same time, sanctioned by long practice.

According to this principle, this elliptic gallicism is now rejected:

Et qu'ainsi ne soit, *meaning* ce que je vous dis est si vrai que, because it renders the sentence obscure. For instance:

J'étais dans ce jardin, *et qu'ainsi ne soit*, voilà une fleur que j'y ai cueillie, *that is*, et pour preuve de cela, voilà une fleur, etc.

Molière and La Fontaine seem to have been the last great writers that have used this expression.

One of the most common gallicisms is that in which the impersonal verb *il y a*, is used for *il est*, *il existe*. These expressions:

Il y avait une fois un roi;—il y a cent à parier contre un, are gallicisms. There are two in the following sentence:  
il n'y a pas jusqu'aux enfants, *even children will meddle with it*.  
qui ne s'en mêlent,

The verb *falloir* forms a sort of gallicism with the pronoun *en*, when it is conjugated like pronominal verbs with the double pronouns *il se*.

## EXAMPLE.

Il s'en faut, il s'en fallait, etc.

It then means *to be wanting*, and when preceded by an adverb of quantity, the first pronoun is omitted.



## EXAMPLE.

Peu s'en faut, tant s'en faut.

These several manners of using the verb *falloir* will be found in the following sentences :

## EXAMPLES.

il s'en faut bien qu'il soit aussi habile qu'il croit l'être,	<i>he is far from being so clever as he thinks.</i>
peu s'en est fallu qu'il n'ait succombé dans cette entreprise,	<i>he was very near falling in that undertaking.</i>
il ne s'en est presque rien fallu qu'il n'ait été tué,	<i>he was as near as possible being killed.</i>
vous dites qu'il s'en faut vingt livres que la somme entière n'y soit, mais vous vous trompez, il ne peut pas s'en falloir tant,	<i>you say it wants twenty pounds to complete the sum, but you are mistaken, it cannot want so much.</i>
son rhume est entièrement guéri, ou peu s'en faut,	<i>his cold is entirely cured, or very near.</i>
que s'en est-il fallu que ces deux amis ne se soient brouillés ?	<i>how near were these two friends quarrelling ?</i>
je ne suis pas content de votre application à l'étude, tant s'en faut,	<i>I am not satisfied with your application to study, far from it.</i>
tant s'en faut que cette comédie me plaise, elle me semble au contraire détestable,	<i>so far from this play pleasing me, I think it insufferable.</i>
il s'en fallait beaucoup que je vous approuvasse dans cette circonstance,	<i>I was far from approving your conduct on that occasion.</i>

## The sentences :

il n'est rien moins que généreux, vous avez beau dire, à ce qu'il me semble,	<i>he is far from being generous. you may say what you please, but, etc. by what I can see, as the matter appears to me, etc.</i>
nous voilà à nous lamenter,	<i>we began to lament, here we are lamenting, crying, etc.</i>
qu'est-ce que de nous !	<i>what wretched beings we are, etc. etc.</i>
are also gallicisms.	

The use which is made of the preposition *en*, in many sentences, is likewise another source of gallicisms ; some of this kind will be found in the following expressions :

à qui en avez-vous ?	<i>whom are you angry with ?</i>
où en veut-il venir ?	<i>what does he aim at ? what would he be at ?</i>
il lui en veut,	<i>he owes him a grudge.</i>

The preposition *en* changes, also, sometimes, the signification of verbs, and then gives rise to gallicisms.

The conjunction *que* produces as great a number of gallicisms.

## EXAMPLES.

c'est une terrible passion que le	<i>gaming is a terrible passion.</i>
jeu,	
c'est donc en vain que je tra-	<i>it is in vain then that I work.</i>
vaille,	
ce n'est pas trop que cela,	<i>that is not too much.</i>
il n'est que d'avoir du courage,	<i>there is nothing like having courage.</i>

See No. 426.

Many others will be found in the use which is made of the prepositions *à, de, dans, après*, etc. but enough has been said on this subject.

Gallicisms are of very great use in the simple style: therefore La Fontaine and Mme. de Sévigné abound in them. The common style has not so many, and the solemn oratorical but few, and these even of a peculiar nature. Only two examples of this kind, both taken from the tragedy of Iphigenia, by Racine, will be here inserted.

Avez-vous pu penser qu'au sang d'Agamemnon  
Achille préférât une fille sans non,  
*Qui*, de tout son destin, ce qu'elle a pu comprendre,  
C'est qu'elle sort d'un sang, etc.

And,

*Je ne sais qui m'arrête* et retient mon courroux,  
*Que* par un prompt avis de tout ce qui se passe,  
*Je ne cours* des dieux divulguer la menace.

In the first sentence, *qui* is the subject though without relating to any verb; and in the second, *je ne sais qui m'arrête que je ne cours*, is contrary to the rules of common construction. "But," says Vaugelas, "the extraordinary phrases, far from being faulty, possess the more beauty, as they belong to a particular kind of language."

## FREE EXERCISES.

## I.

## MADAME DE MAINTENON TO HER BROTHER.

We can only be 1 unhappy by our own fault; this shall always be my text, and my reply to your lamentations. Recollect 2, my dear brother, the voyage to America, the misfortunes of our father, of our infancy and our youth 3; and you will bless Providence instead of murmuring against fortune. Ten years ago, we were both very far (below our present situation 4;) and our hopes were so feeble 5, that we limited our wishes to an (income of three thousand livres 6.) At present we have four times that sum 7, and our desires are not yet satisfied! we enjoy the happy mediocrity which you have so often extolled 8; let us be content. If possessions 9 come to us, let us receive them from the hand of God, but let not our views be 10 too extravagant 11. We have (every thing necessary 12) and comfortable 13; all the rest is covetousness 14; all these desires of greatness spring from 15 a restless heart. Your debts are all paid, and you may live elegantly 16, without contracting more 17. What have you to desire? must 18 schemes 19 of wealth and ambition occasion 20 the loss of your repose and your health? read the life of St. Louis; you will see how unequal 21 the greatness of this world is to the desires of the human heart; God only can satisfy them 22. I repeat it, you are only unhappy by your own fault. Your uneasiness 23 destroys your health, which you ought to preserve, if it were 24 only because I love you. Watch 25 your temper 26; if you can render it less splenetic 27 and less gloomy, (you will have gained a great advantage 28). This is not the work of reflection only;

- 
1. On ne être—que. 2. Songer à. 3. The misfortunes of our infancy and those of our, etc. 4. Du point où nous sommes aujourd'hui. 5. Si peu de chose. 6. Trois mille livres de rente. 7. That sum, en . . plus. 8. Have so often extolled, vanter si fort, ind-2. 9. Possessions, biens. 10. Let us not have views. 11. Trop vaste. 12. Le nécessaire. 13. De commode. 14. Covetousness, cupidité. 15. Spring from, partir du vide de. 16. Déléciatement. 17. Constructing more, en faire de nouvelles. 18. Must, faut-il que. 19. Projet. 20. Occasion, coûter, subj-1. 21. Unequal, au-dessous de. 22. Satisfy them, le rassasier. 23. Uneasiness, inquiétude pl. 24. If it were, quand ce être, cond-1. 25. Travailler sur. 26. Humeur. 27. Bileux. 28. Ce être



exercise, amusement, and a regular life, (are necessary for the purpose 29.) You cannot think well (whilst your health is affected 30; when the body is debilitated 31, the mind is without vigour. Adieu! write to me more frequently, and in a style less gloomy.

---

## II.

## THE CONVERT.

## AN EASTERN TALE.

Divine mercy I had brought a vicious man into a society of sages, whose morals were holy and pure. He was affected by their virtues; it was not long 2 before 3 he imitated them and lost his old habits: he became just, sober, patient, laborious and benevolent. His deeds nobody could deny, but they were attributed 4 to odious motives. They praised his good actions, without loving his person: they would always judge him by what he had been, not by what he had become. This injustice filled him with grief; he shed tears in the bosom of an ancient sage, more just and more humane than the others. "O my son," said the old man to him, "thou art better than thy reputation; be thankful to God for it. Happy the man who can say: my enemies and my rivals censure in me vices of which I am not guilty. What matters 5 it, if thou art good, that men persecute thee as wicked?—Hast thou not, to comfort thee, the two best witnesses of thy actions, God and thy conscience?"

SAINT-LAMBERT.

---

Mr. de Montausier has written a letter to Monseigneur upon the taking of Philipsbourg, which very much pleases me. "Monseigneur, I do not compliment you on the capture of Philipsbourg; you had a good army, bombs, canon, and Vauban; neither shall I compliment you upon your valour; for that is an hereditary virtue in your family, But I rejoice that you are liberal, generous, humane, and that you know how to recompense the services of those who behave well: it is for this that I congratulate you."

SÉVIGNÉ.

---

un grand point de gagné. 29. Il y faut de. 30. Tant que vous se porter mal. 31. *Debilitated*, dans l'abattement.

1. Miséricorde. 2. Ne pas tarder. 3. A inf. 4. On donner des motifs. 5. Importer.

## III.

## THE GOOD MINISTER.

AN EASTERN TALE.

The great Aaron Raschild began to suspect that his vizier Giafar was not deserving of the confidence which he had reposed in him. The women of Aaron, the inhabitants of Bagdad, the courtiers, the dervises, censured the vizier with bitterness. The calif loved Giafar; he would not condemn him upon the clamours of the city and the court; he visited his empire; every where he saw the land well cultivated, the country smiling, the cottages opulent, the useful arts honoured, and youth full of gaiety. He visited his fortified cities and sea-ports; he saw numerous ships, which threatened the coasts of Africa and of Asia; he saw warriors disciplined and content; these warriors, the seamen and the peasantry, exclaimed: "O God, pour thy blessings upon the faithful, by giving them a calif like Aaron, and a vizier like Giafar." The calif, affected by these exclamations, enters a mosque, falls upon his knees, and cries out: "Great God, I return thee thanks: thou hast given me a vizier of whom my courtiers speak ill, and my people speak well."

SAINT-LAMBERT.

Providence leads us with so much goodness through the different periods of our life, that we (are not sensible of our progress 1.) This loss takes place gently 2, it is imperceptible, it is the shadow of the sun-dial whose motion we do not see. If, at twenty years of age, we could see 3 in a mirror the face we shall have at three-score, we (should be shocked at the contrast 4) and terrified at our own figure; but it is day by day that we advance: we are to-day as we were yesterday and shall be to-morrow as we are to-day; so we go forward without perceiving it, and this is a miracle of that Providence which I adore.

SÉVIGNÉ.

## IV.

## THE MAGNIFICENT PROSPECT.

This beautiful house was on the declivity of a hill, from whence you beheld the sea, sometimes clear and smooth as

- |                            |                         |            |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|------------|
| 1. Ne le sentir quasi pas. | 2 Va doucement.         | 3. On nous |
| faire voir.                | 4 Tomber à la renverse. |            |

glass, sometimes idly 1 irritated against the rocks on which it broke, bellowing 2 and swelling its waves like mountains. On another side was seen a river, in which were islands bordered with blooming limes, and lofty poplars, which raised their proud heads to the very clouds. The several channels, which formed those islands, seemed sporting 3 in the plain. Some rolled their limpid waters with rapidity; some had a peaceful and still course; others, by long windings, ran back again, to reascend as it were, to their source, and seemed not to have power to leave these enchanting borders. At a distance were seen hills and mountains, which were lost in the clouds, and formed, by their fantastic figure, as delightful a horizon (as the eye could wish to behold. 4) The neighbouring mountains were covered with verdant (vine branches, 5) hanging in festoons; the grapes brighter than purple, could not conceal themselves under the leaves, and the vine was overloaded with its fruit. The fig, the olive, the pomegranate, and all other trees, overspread the plain, and made it one large garden. FENELON.

Long hopes wear out 7 joy, as long maladies wear out pain.

All philosophic systems are only good when one (has no use for them 8.)

### A GENERAL VIEW OF NATURE.

With what magnificence does nature shine 1 upon earth! A pure light, extending from east to west, gilds successively the two hemispheres of this globe; an element, transparent and light, surrounds it; a gentle fecundating heat animates, gives being 2 to the seeds of life: salubrious running streams contribute to their preservation and growth; eminences diversified over the level land, arrest the vapours of the air, make these springs inexhaustible and always new; immense cavities made to receive them divide the continents. The extent of the sea is as great as that of the earth: it is not a cold, barren element; it is a new empire, as rich, as populous as the first. The finger of God has marked their boundaries.

The earth, rising above the level of the sea, is secure 3

1. Follement. 2. En gémir. 3. Se jouer. 4. A souhait pour le plaisir de. 5. Pampré, m. 6. Vigne. f. 7. User. 8. N'en avoir que faire.

1. Ne briller pas. 2. Faire éclore. 3. A l'abri de.



from its eruptions: its surface, enamelled with flowers, adorned with everspringing verdure, peopled with thousands and thousands of species of different animals, is a place of rest, a delightful abode, where man, placed in order to second nature, presides over all beings. The only one among them all, capable of knowing and worthy of admiring. God has made him spectator of the universe, and a witness of his wonders. The divine spark with which he is animated enables him to participate in the divine mysteries: it is by this light that he thinks and reflects; by it he sees and reads in the book of the universe, as in a copy of the Deity.

Nature is the exterior throne of the divine Majesty: the man who contemplates, who studies it, rises by degrees to the interior throne of Omnipotence. Made to adore the Creator, the vassal of heaven, sovereign of the earth, he ennobles, peoples, enriches it; he establishes among living beings order, subordination, harmony; he embellishes nature herself; he cultivates, extends, and polishes it; lops off the thistle and the briar, and multiplies the grape and the rose.

BUFFON.

#### IV.

#### ANOTHER GENERAL VIEW OF NATURE.

Trees, shrubs, and plants are the ornaments and clothing 1 of the earth. Nothing is so melancholy 2 as the prospect of a country naked and bare 3, exhibiting to the eye nothing but stones, mud, and sand. But, vivified by nature, and clad 4 in its nuptial robe, amidst the course of streams and the singing of birds, the earth presents to man, in the harmony of the three kingdoms, a spectacle full of life, of interest and charms, the only spectacle in the world of which his eyes and heart are never weary 5.

• The more a (contemplative man's soul is fraught with sensibility 6), the more he yields to the extacies which this harmony produces in him. A soft and deep melancholy then takes possession of his senses, and, in an intoxication of delight, he loses himself in the immensity of that beautiful system, with which he feels himself identified. Then, every particular object escapes him, he sees and feels nothing but in the whole. Some circumstance must contract his ideas and circumscribe his imagination, before 7 he can observe by parcels that universe which he was endeavouring to embrace.

J. J. ROUSSEAU.

1. Vêtement      2. Triste.      3. Pelé.      4. Revêtu.      5. Se lasser.      6. Contemplateur avoir l'âme sensible.      7. Pour qu'il.

## VII.

## CULTIVATED NATURE.

How beautiful is cultivated nature ! And, by the labours of man, how brilliant it is, and how pompously adored ! He himself is its chief ornament, its noblest part ; by multiplying himself, he multiplies the most precious germ ; she also seems to multiply with him ; by his art, he (brings forth to view 1) all that she concealed 2 in her bosom. How many unknown treasures ! What new riches ! Flowers, fruits, seeds brought to perfection, multiplied to infinity ; the useful species of animals transported, propagated, increased without number ; the noxious species reduced, confined, banished : gold, and iron more necessary than gold, extracted from the bowels of the earth ; torrents confined 3, rivers directed, contracted 4 ; the sea itself subjected, explored 5, crossed, from one hemisphere to the other ; the earth accessible in every part, and every where rendered equally cheerful and fruitful : in the vallies, delightful meadows ; in the plains, rich pastures and still richer harvests ; hills covered with vines and fruits ; their summits crowned with useful trees and young forests ; deserts changed into cities inhabited by an immense population, which, continually circulating, spreads itself from these centres to their extremities ; roads opened and frequented, communications established every where, as so many witnesses of the strength and union of society : a thousand other monuments of power and glory sufficiently demonstrate that man, possessing dominion over the earth, has changed, renewed the whole of its surface, and that, at all times, he shares the empire of it with nature.

## VIII.

## THE SAME SUBJECT CONTINUED.

However, man only reigns by right of conquest : he rather enjoys than possesses, and he can preserve only by means of continued labour. If this ceases every thing droops, every thing declines, every thing changes and again returns 1 under the hand of nature ; she reassumes her rights, erases the work of man, covers with dust and moss his most pompous monuments, destroys them in time, and leaves him nothing but the regret of having lost, through his fault what his ancestors had

- |                    |             |             |              |
|--------------------|-------------|-------------|--------------|
| 1. Mettre au jour. | 2. Recéler. | 3. Contenu. | 4. Resserré. |
| 5. Reconnu.        |             |             |              |
| 1. Rentrer.        |             |             |              |



conquered by their labours. Those times, in which man loses his dominion, those barbarous 2 ages, during which every thing is seen to perish, are always preceded by war, and accompanied by scarcity and depopulation. Man, who can do nothing but by number, who is strong only by union, who can be happy only by peace, is mad enough to arm himself for his misery, and to fight for his ruin. Impelled by an insatiable thirst of having, blinded by ambition still more insatiable, he renounces all the feelings of humanity, turns all his strength against himself, seeks mutual destruction, actually 3 destroys himself; and, after these periods of blood and carnage, when the smoke of glory has vanished, he contemplates with a sad eye, the earth wasted, the arts buried, nations scattered, the people weakened, his own happiness ruined, and his real power annihilated.

BUFFON.

## IX.

### INVOCATION TO THE GOD OF NATURE.

Almighty God whose presence alone supports nature, and maintains the harmony of the laws of the universe: Thou, who from the immoveable throne of the empyrean, seest the celestial spheres roll under thy feet, without shock or confusion: who, from the bosom of repose, reproducest every moment their immense movements, and alone governest, in profound peace, that infinite number of heavens and worlds; restore at length tranquillity to the agitated earth! let it be silent at thy voice; let discord and war cease their proud clamours! God of goodness, author of all beings, thy paternal eye takes in 1 all the objects of the creation; but man is thy chosen being; thou hast illumined 2 his soul with a ray of thy immortal light: complete the measure of thy kindness by penetrating his heart with a ray of thy love: this divine sentiment, diffusing itself every where, will reconcile opposite natures; man will no longer dread the sight of man; his hand will no longer wield the murderous steel 3; the devouring flames of war will no longer dry up 4 the sources of population: the human species, now weakened, mutilated, mowed down in the blossom, will spring a new and 5 multiply without number; nature, overwhelmed under the weight of scourges 6, will soon re-assume, with a new life, its former

- |                 |                       |                             |
|-----------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| 2. De barbarie. | 3. En effet.          |                             |
| 1. Embrasser.   | 2. Eclairer.          | 3. Le fer.... armer sa main |
| 4. Tarir.       | 5. Germer de nouveau. | 6. Fléau.                   |



fruitfulness ; and we, beneficent God, will second it, we will cultivate it, we will contemplate it incessantly, that we may every moment offer thee a new tribute of gratitude and admiration.

BUFFON.

## X.

Happy they who are disgusted with 1 turbulent pleasures, and know how to be contented 2 with the sweets of an innocent life ! Happy they who delight in being instructed 3, and who take a pleasure 4 in storing their minds with knowledge ! Wherever adverse fortune may throw them, they always carry entertainment with them ; and the disquiet which preys upon others, even in the midst of pleasures, is unknown to those who can employ themselves in reading. Happy they who love to read, and are not like me deprived of the ability. As these thoughts were passing in my mind, I went into a gloomy forest, where I immediately perceived an old man holding a book in his hand. The forehead of this sage was broad, bald, and a little wrinkled : a white beard hung down to his girdle ; his stature was tall and majestic ; his complexion still fresh and ruddy, his eyes lively and piercing, his voice sweet, his words plain and charming. I never saw so venerable an old man. He was a priest of Apollo, and officiated 5 in a marble temple, which the kings of Egypt had dedicated to that God in this forest. The book which he held in his hand was a collection of hymns in honour of the Gods.

He accosted me in a friendly manner ; and we discoursed together. He related things past so well, that they seemed present, and yet with such brevity that his account never tired me. He foresaw the future by his profound knowledge, which made him know men, and the designs of which they are capable. With all this wisdom he was cheerful and complaisant, and the sprightliest youth has not so many graces as this man had at so advanced an age. He accordingly loved young men when they were teachable 6, and had a taste for study and virtue.

FENELON.

## XI.

### THOUGHTS ON POETRY.

Wherever I went, I found that poetry was considered as

- |                    |                     |                 |
|--------------------|---------------------|-----------------|
| 1. Se dégoûter de. | 2. Se contenter de. | 3. S'instruire. |
| 4. Se plaire.      | 5. Servir.          | 6. Docile.      |

the highest learning 1, and regarded with a veneration (somewhat approaching to 2) that which men would pay to angelic nature.

It yet fills me with wonder, that, in almost all countries, the most ancient poets are considered as the best; whether (it be that 3) every kind of knowledge is an acquisition gradually attained, any poetry is a gift conferred at once, or that the first poetry of every nation surprised them as a novelty, and retained the credit by consent, which it received by accident at first, or whether, as the province 4 of poetry is to describe nature and passion, which are always the same, the first writers (took possession 5) of (the most striking objects for description 6) and (the most probable occurrences for fiction 7,) and left nothing to those that followed them, but transcription 8 of the same events, and new combinations 9 of the same images. Whatever be the reason, it is commonly observed, that the early writers are in possession of nature, and their followers 10 of art: that the first excel in strength and invention, and the latter in elegance and refinement.

I was desirous to add my name to this illustrious fraternity 11. I read all the poets of Persia and Arabia, and was able to repeat by memory the volumes that are suspended in the mosque of Mecca. But I soon found that no man was ever great by imitation. My desire of excellence 12 impelled 13 me to transfer 14 my attention to nature and to life 15. Nature was to be my subject, and men to be my auditors: I could never describe what I had not seen: I could not hope (to move those with delight or terror 16) whose interests and opinions I did not understand 17.

## XII.

### THE SAME SUBJECT CONTINUED.

Being now resolved to be a poet, I saw every thing (with a new purpose 18;) my sphere of attention was suddenly magnified: no kind of knowledge (was to be overlooked 19.) I ranged mountains and deserts for 20 images and resemblances and (picture upon my mind 21) every tree of the forest

1. Partie la plus sublime de la littérature. 2. Qui tenait de. 3. Ce vienne de ce que. 4. But. 5. S'emparer. 6. Objets qui fournissaient les plus riches descriptions. 7. Evénements qui prêtaient le plus à la fiction. 8. De copier. 9. Faire de nouvelles combinaisons. 10. Successeurs. 11. Famille. 12. Exceller. 13. Engager. 14. Reporter...sur. 15. Tableau de la vie. 16. Réveiller le plaisir ou la terreur dans ceux. 17. Ne connaître ni. 18. Sous un nouveau jour. 19. Je ne devais négliger. 20. Pour recueillir. 21. Pénétrer mon



and flower of the valley. I observed with equal care the crags of the rock and the pinnacles of the palace. Sometimes I wandered along the mazes of the rivulet and sometimes watched the changes of the summer-clouds. To a poet nothing can be useless. Whatever is beautiful, and whatever is dreadful, must be familiar to his imagination; he must (be conversant 22) with all that (is awfully vast or elegantly little 23). The plants of the garden, the animals of the wood, the minerals of the earth, and the meteors of the sky, must all concur to store his mind with inexhaustible variety; for every idea is useful for the (enforcement or decoration 24) of moral or religious truth; and he who knows most, will have most power 25 of diversifying his scenes 26, and gratifying his reader with remote allusions and unexpected instructions.

All the appearances of nature (I was, therefore, careful to study,) 27, and every country which I have surveyed has contributed something to my poetical powers.

In so wide a survey, interrupted the prince, you must surely have left much unobserved. I have lived, till now, within the circuit of these mountains, and yet cannot walk abroad without the sight of something which I had never beheld before, or never heeded 28.

### XIII.

#### THE SAME SUBJECT CONTINUED.

The business of a poet, said Imlac, is to examine, not the individual, but the species; to remark general properties and (large appearances 29:) he does not number the streaks of the tulip, or describe the different shades in the verdure of the forest. He is to exhibit, in his portraits of nature, such prominent and striking features, as 30 recal the original to every mind; and must neglect the minuter discrimination 31, which one may have remarked, and another neglected, for those characters 32 which are alike obvious 33 to vigilance 34 and carelessness 35.

But the knowledge of nature is only half 36 the task of a

esprit du tableau de. 22. Bien connaître. 23. Etonne par sa grandeur, ou charme par son élégante petitesse. 24. Fortifier, ou embellir. 25. Ressources pour. 26. Tableau. 27. Etudier avec soin toutes les etc. 28. Remarquer. 29. Considérer les objets en grand. 30. De ces traits saillants et frappants qui, etc. etc. 31. Ces petits détails. 32. Pour s'appliquer à caractériser, etc. etc. 33. Frappe également. 34. Œil observateur. 35. Esprit insouciant. 36. The half of.



poet: he must be acquainted likewise with all the modes 37 of life. His character requires that he estimate 38 the happiness and misery of every condition: observe the power of all the passions, in all their combinations, and trace the changes 39 of the human mind, as they are modified by various institutions, and accidental influences of climate or custom; from the sprightliness of infancy to the despondence of decrepitude. He must divest himself 40 of the prejudices of his age or country; he must consider right and wrong 41 in their abstracted and invariable state 42; he must disregard present laws and opinions, and rise to general and transcendent truths, which will always be the same; he must, therefore, (content himself with the slow progress of his name 43,) to condemn the applause of his own time, and commit his claims to the justice of posterity. He must write as the interpreter of nature, and the legislator of mankind, and consider himself as presiding 44 over the thoughts and manners of future generations, as a being superior to time and place.

His labour is not yet at an end; he must know many languages and many sciences; and, that his style may be worthy of his thoughts, he must, by incessant practice, familiarize himself to every delicacy of speech and grace of harmony.

S. JOHNSON.

#### XIV.

First follow nature and your judgment frame  
 By her just standard, which is still the same;  
 Unerring nature, still divinely bright,  
 One clear, unchanged, and universal light,  
 Life, force, and beauty, must to all impart;  
 At once the source, and end, and test of art.  
 Art, from that fund, each just supply provides:  
 Works without show, and without pomp presides:  
 In some fair body thus th' informing soul  
 With spirits feeds, with vigour fills the whole,  
 Each motion guides, and every nerve sustains

37. Tous les différents aspects. 38. Apprécier. 39. Suivre les vicissitudes. 40. Se dépouiller. 41. Ce qui est juste ou injuste. 42. Abstraction faite de ces divers préjugés.. 43. Se résigner à voir son nom percer difficilement. 44. Influencer.

1. Light, clear, immutable, and universal nature, which never errs, and shines always with a divine splendour, must impart to all she does life, force and beauty.

2. She is at once the source, etc. etc.

Itself unseen, but in th' effect remains. 3  
 Some, to whom heav'n in wit has been profuse,  
 Want as much more to turn it to its use :  
 For wit and judgment often are at strife,  
 Tho' meant each other's aid, like man and wife. 4  
 'Tis more to guide, than spur the muse's steed ;  
 Restrain his fury, than provoke his speed : 5  
 The winged courser, like a gen'rous horse,  
 Shows most true mettle, when you check its course. 6

---

3. So in a fair body, unseen itself, but always sensible by its effects, the soul continually acting, feeds the whole with spirits, fills it with vigour, guides every motion of it, and sustains every nerve.

4. Some to whom heaven has given wit with profusion, want as much yet to know the use they ought to make of it ; for wit and judgment, though made, like man and wife, to aid each other, are often in opposition.

5. It is more difficult to guide than spur the courser of the muses, and to restrain its ardour than provoke its impetuosity.

6. The winged courser is like a generous horse : the more we strive to stop it in its rapid course, the more it shows unconquerable vigour.

### 437. EXAMPLES OF PHRASES ON THE PRINCIPAL DIFFICULTIES OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE.

N.B.—It is strongly recommended that these examples be learnt by heart. They will also be found very useful, in point of reference, whenever the learner is at a loss on some point of grammar or construction. The better to enable him to find what he wants, the different chapters have been numbered, and will be found minutely described in the Table of Contents.

#### 1. *Sur les Collectifs Partitifs.*

La plupart des fruits verts sont d'un goût austère.

La plupart des gens ne se conduisent que par intérêt.

La plupart du monde se trompe.

Il méprise par philosophie les honneurs, que la plupart du monde recherche.

Il devait me fournir tant d'arbres; mais j'en ai rejeté la moitié qui ne valait rien.

Un grand nombre de spectateurs ajoutait à la beauté du spectacle.

Toute sorte de livres ne sont pas également bons.

Beaucoup de personnes se sont présentées.

Bien des personnes se font des principes à leur fantaisie.

#### On the Collective Partitives.

*The greater part of green fruit is of a harsh taste.*

*Most people are guided only by interest.*

*The greater part of mankind are in error.*

*As a true philosopher he despises those honours which mankind in general court.*

*He was to furnish me so many trees, but I refused half of them which were good for nothing.*

*A considerable number of spectators added to the splendour of the scene.*

*Every kind of books are not equally good.*

*Many people presented themselves.*

*Many persons form principles to themselves, according to their fancy.*

#### 2. *Sur quelques Verbes qu'on ne peut conjuguer avec Avoir sans faire des barbarismes.*

Il lui est échu une succession du chef de sa femme.

Il est bien déchu de son crédit.

Ne sommes-nous pas convenus du prix?

N'est-il pas intervenu dans cette affaire, comme il l'avait promis?

Il est survenu à l'improviste.

#### 2. On some verbs which cannot be conjugated with the verb Avoir, without making barbarous phrases.

*An estate fell to him in right of his wife.*

*He has lost much of his credit.*

*Have we not agreed about the price?*

*Did he not interfere in that affair as he had promised?*

*He came up unawares.*



La neige, qui est tombée ce matin, a adouci le temps.

Que de neige il est tombé ce matin !

Toutes les dents lui sont tombées.

Ce propos n'est pas tombé à terre.

Etes-vous allé voir votre ami ?

Ils sont arrivés à midi et sont repartis de suite.

Ces fleurs sont à peine écloses.

Il est né de parents vertueux, qui n'ont rien négligé pour son éducation.

Mademoiselle votre sœur est-elle rentrée ?

Madame votre mère n'est-elle pas encore venue ?

### 3. Sur les Mots de Quantité.

Il a beaucoup d'esprit, mais encore plus d'amour-propre.

Il a assez d'argent pour ses menus plaisirs.

Il y avait bien du monde à l'Opéra.

Il y avait hier au Parc je ne sais combien de gens.

Il boit autant d'eau que de vin.

Il a tant d'amis qu'il ne manquera de rien.

Personne n'y a plus d'intérêt que lui.

Il n'a pas plus d'esprit qu'il n'en faut.

Trop de loisir perd souvent la jeunesse.

J'y ai bien moins d'intérêt que vous.

### 4. Sur les Pronoms Personnels.

Sors et te retire.

Cours vite et ne t'amuse point

Il dit aujourd'hui une chose et demain il se démentira.

Il s'est démenti lui-même.

*The snow which fell this morning has softened the weather.*

*How much snow has fallen this morning !*

*All his teeth have fallen out.*

*That remark was not allowed to escape.*

*Have you been to see your friend ?*

*They arrived at noon and set out again immediately.*

*These flowers are scarcely blown.*

*He was born of virtuous parents, who bestowed on him the best education.*

*Is your sister returned ?*

*Is not your mother come yet ?*

### On Words of Quantity.

*He has a great deal of sense but still more vanity.*

*He has pocket-money enough for his pleasures.*

*There were a great many people at the Opera.*

*There were I do not know how many people in the park yesterday.*

*He drinks as much water as wine.*

*He has so many friends that he will want for nothing.*

*Nobody has more interest there than he.*

*He is not overburthened with sense.*

*Too much leisure time is frequently the ruin of youth.*

*I am much less concerned in it than you.*

### On the Personal Pronouns.

*Go out and retire.*

*Go quick and do not loiter.*

*He advances a thing to-day, and will contradict himself to-morrow.*

*He has contradicted himself.*

La jeunesse est naturellement emportée ; elle a besoin de quelque entrave qui la retienne,

Il ne peut voir personne dans la prospérité sans lui porter envie.

Ce que vous me dites est une énigme pour moi,

C'est un homme extrême en tout ; il aime et il hait avec fureur.

Si vous n'y avez jamais été, je vous y mènerai.

Je l'ai connu doux et modeste ; il s'est bien gâté dans le commerce de ses nouveaux amis.

Elle n'est pas encore revenue du saisissement, que lui a causé cette nouvelle.

Il menace de l'exterminer, lui et toute sa race.

Si vous n'avez que faire de ce livre-là, prêtez-le-moi.

Je lui avais envoyé un diamant, il l'a refusé, je le lui ai renvoyé.

Il apprend facilement et oublie de même.

Je lui pardonne facilement d'avoir voulu se faire auteur ; mais je ne saurais lui pardonner toutes les puérités dont il a farci son livre.

Je me plains à vous de vous-même.

Si vous ne voulez pas être pour lui, au moins ne soyez pas contre.

Quand sera-ce que vous viendrez nous voir ?

5. Sur soi, lui, soi-même, et lui-même.

Quand on a pour soi le témoignage de sa conscience, on est bien fort.

L'estime de toute la terre ne sert de rien à un homme qui n'a pas le témoignage de sa conscience pour lui.

Un homme fait mille fautes, parce qu'il ne fait point de réflexions sur lui.

*Youth is naturally hasty, it needs some curb to restrain it.*

*He can see the prosperity of nobody, without envying them.*

*What you tell me is a perfect riddle to me.*

*He is a man that carries every thing to excess ; he is alike violent in his love and in his hatred.*

*If you have never been there, I will take you.*

*I knew him when he was gentle and modest ; he has been much corrupted by associating with his new acquaintances.*

*She is not yet recovered from the consternation into which that news threw her.*

*He threatens to exterminate him and all his family.*

*If you have done with this book, lend it me.*

*I had sent him a diamond, and he refused it, but I sent him it back again.*

*He learns easily and forgets the same.*

*I can easily pardon him for having attempted to turn author ; but I cannot pardon him all the absurdities with which he has stuffed his book.*

*I complain to you of yourself.*

*If you will not be for him, at least do not be against him.*

*When will you come to see us ?*

*On soi, lui, soi-même, and lui-même.*

*The approbation of our conscience imparts great courage.*

*The good opinion of the whole world is of no use to a man who has not the approbation of his own conscience.*

*A man commits a thousand faults, because he does not reflect on future consequences.*



On fait mille fautes, quand on ne fait aucune réflexion sur soi.

Il aime mieux dire du mal de lui-même, que de n'en point parler.

L'égoïste aimera mieux dire du mal de soi-même, que de n'en point parler.

On a souvent besoin d'un plus petit que soi.

Un prince a souvent besoin de beaucoup de gens plus petits que lui.

C'est un bon moyen de s'élever soi-même, que d'exalter ses pareils ; et un homme adroit s'élève ainsi lui-même.

#### 6. Sur les Pronoms Relatifs.

Il n'y a rien de si capable d'efféminer le courage, que l'oisiveté et les délices.

Il faut empêcher que la division, qui est dans cette famille, n'éclate.

Il y a bien des événements que l'on suppose se passer pendant les entr'actes.

Je le trouvais qui s'habillait.

Qui le tirera de cet embarras, le tirera d'une grande misère.

Ceux-là sont véritablement heureux, qui croient l'être.

Il n'y a que la vertu, qui puisse rendre un homme heureux en cette vie.

Il n'y a règle si générale, qui n'ait son exception.

C'est un orateur qui se pose et qui ne se trouble jamais.

Il n'y a pas dans le cœur humain de repli, que Dieu ne connaisse.

On n'a trouvé que quelques fragments du grand ouvrage qu'il avait promis.

La faute, que vous avez faite, est plus importante que vous ne pensez.

Les premières démarches qu'on fait dans le monde, ont beaucoup

*We commit a thousand faults, when we neglect to reflect on ourselves.*

*He had rather speak ill of himself than not talk of himself at all.*

*The selfish man prefers speaking ill of himself rather than not be the subject of his own conversation.*

*We frequently want the assistance of one who is below ourselves.*

*A prince frequently needs the assistance of many persons inferior to himself.*

*It is an excellent method of exalting ourselves to exalt our equals, and a man of address by this means exalts himself.*

#### On the Relative Pronouns.

*Nothing is so calculated to enervate the mind as idleness and pleasure.*

*The dissension in that family must be prevented from becoming public.*

*There are many events in a piece which are supposed to happen between the acts.*

*I found him dressing.*

*Whoever extricates him from this difficulty, will relieve him from much distress.*

*Those are really happy, who think themselves so.*

*Virtue alone can render a man happy in this life.*

*There is no rule so general but it admits of exceptions.*

*He is an orator who is master of himself, and who is never embarrassed.*

*There is no recess of the human heart but God perceives it.*

*Only some fragments of the great work he had promised have been found.*

*The error you have committed is of more consequence than you imagine.*

*The first steps we take on entering the world have consider-*



d'influence sur le reste de la vie.

Cette farce est une des plus risibles qu'on ait encore vues.

Amassez-vous des trésors que les vers et la rouille ne puissent point gâter, et que les voleurs ne puissent point dérober.

L'incertitude, où nous sommes de ce qui doit arriver, fait que nous ne saurions prendre des mesures justes.

Je m'étonne qu'il ne voie pas le danger où il est.

L'homme dont vous parlez n'est plus ici.

Celui de qui je tiens cette nouvelle ne vous est pas connu,

Celui à qui ce beau château appartient ne l'habite presque jamais.

Ce sont des événements auxquelles il faut bien se soumettre.

C'est ce à quoi vous ne pensez guère.

#### 7. Sur les pronoms Démonstratifs.

Ne point reconnaître la divinité, c'est renoncer à toutes les lumières de la raison.

Mentir, c'est mépriser Dieu et craindre les hommes.

Il y a des épidémies morales, et ce sont les plus dangereuses.

Je crois que ce que vous dites, est bien éloigné de ce que vous pensez.

Les hommes n'aiment ordinairement que ceux qui les flattent.

Celui qui persuade à un autre de faire un crime n'est guère moins coupable que celui qui le commet.

Penser ainsi, c'est s'aveugler soi-même.

Ce qu'on rapporte de lui est inconcevable.

Ce qui m'afflige, c'est de voir le triomphe du crime.

able influence on the rest of our lives.

That farce is one of the most truly comic that ever was seen.

Lay up for yourselves treasures which neither moth nor rust can corrupt, and which thieves cannot steal.

Our uncertainty as to what shall happen makes us incapable of properly providing against it.

I am astonished he does not see the danger he is in.

The man whom you are speaking of, is not here now.

The person from whom I received the intelligence is not known to you.

The proprietor of that beautiful seat seldom resides there.

These are events to which we must submit.

It is what you seldom think of.

#### On the Demonstrative Pronouns.

Not to acknowledge the divinity, is totally to renounce the light of reason.

To lie is to despise God and to fear man.

There are moral contagious diseases, and they are the most dangerous.

What you advance is, I think, widely different from your sentiments.

Men in general love only those who flatter them.

He who persuades another to the commission of a crime, is hardly less guilty than he who commits it.

To think in this manner is to be wilfully blind.

The reports concerning him are hardly conceivable.

What distresses me is to see guilt triumphant.

Connaissiez-vous la jeune Emilie ; c'est une enfant dont tout le monde dit du bien.

Imitez en tout votre amie ; elle est douce, appliquée, honnête et compatissante.

8. *Sur le Verbe avoir employé à l'Impersonnel.*

*Remarque.*—Quand le verbe *avoir* s'emploie à l'impersonnel, c'est dans le sens d'*être*, et alors il se joint toujours avec *y*.

*Il y a un an que je ne vous ai vu.*

Y a-t-il des nouvelles ?

Non, il n'y en a pas, du moins que je sache.

N'y a-t-il pas cinquante-quatre milles de Londres à Brighton ?

*Il y avait déjà beaucoup de monde lorsque j'arrivai.*

Il n'y avait hier presque personne au Parc.

Y avait-il de grands débats ?

N'y avait-il pas beaucoup de curieux.

Je l'avais vu il y avait à peine vingt-quatre heures.

Il n'y avait pas deux jours qu'il avait dîné chez moi.

Y avait-il si long-temps que vous ne l'aviez vu ?

*Il y eut hier un bal chez Mr. un tel,*

Il n'y eut pas hier de spectacle.

Y eut-il beaucoup de confusion et de désordre ?

N'y eut-il pas un beau feu d'artifice ?

*Il y a eu aujourd'hui une foule immense à la promenade.*

Il n'y a pas eu de bal, comme on l'avait annoncé.

Est-il vrai qu'il y a eu un duel ?

N'y a-t-il pas eu dans sa conduite un peu trop d'emportement ?

Quand *il y eut eu* une explication, les esprits se calmèrent.

N'y avait-il pas eu un plus grand nombre de spectateurs ?

*Do you know little Emily ? she is a child of whom every body speaks well.*

*Imitate your friend in every thing ; she is gentle, assiduous, polite and compassionate.*

On the Verb *Avoir*, to have, employed impersonally.

*When the verb avoir is used impersonally it signifies être, to be, and in this sense it is always accompanied by the adverb y.*

*It is a twelvemonth since I saw you.*

*Is there any news ?*

*No, there is none at least that I know.*

*Is not it fifty-four miles from London to Brighton ?*

*There were already a great many people when I arrived.*

*There was hardly any body in the Park yesterday.*

*Were there violent debates ?*

*Were there not many spectators ?*

*I had seen him scarcely four-and-twenty hours before.*

*He had dined with me not two days before.*

*Was it so long since you had seen him ?*

*There was yesterday a ball at Mr. A's.*

*There was no play yesterday.*

*Was there a great deal of confusion and disorder.*

*Were there not beautiful fireworks ?*

*There was an immense crowd to-day in the public walks.*

*There has not been any ball as had been mentioned.*

*Is it true that there has been a duel ?*

*Was there not rather too much hastiness in his behaviour ?*

*After there had been an explanation, tranquillity was restored.*

*Was not there a greater number of spectators ?*



*Il y aura demain un simulacre de combat naval.*

*Il n'y aura aucun de vous.*

*Y aura-t-il une bonne récolte cette année ?*

*N'y aura-t-il pas quelqu'un de votre famille ?*

*A coup sûr il y aura eu bien du désordre ?*

*Sur cent personnes, il n'y en aura pas eu dix de satisfaites.*

*Y aura-t-il eu un bon soupé ?*

*N'y aura-t-il eu pas de mécontents ?*

*Il y avait de la malhonnêteté dans ce procédé.*

*Il n'y aurait pas grand mal à cela.*

*Y aurait-il quelqu'un assez hardi pour l'attaquer ?*

*N'y aurait-il pas quelqu'un assez charitable pour l'avertir de ce qu'on dit de lui ?*

*Il y aurait eu de l'imprudence à cela.*

*Il n'y aurait pas eu tant de mésintelligence, si l'on m'en avait cru.*

*Il n'y aurait pas eu dix personnes.*

*Y aurait-il eu de l'inconvénient.*

*N'y aurait-il pas eu de jaloux pour le traverser dans ses projets ?*

*Je ne crois pas qu'il y ait un spectacle plus magnifique.*

*Je désirerais qu'il y eût moins de fausseté dans le commerce de la vie.*

*Je n'ai pas oui-dire qu'il y ait eu hier des nouvelles du continent.*

*Auriez-vous cru qu'il y eût eu tant de personnes compromises dans cette affaire ?*

*To-morrow there will be a mock sea-fight.*

*There will be none of you.*

*Will not there be a good harvest this year ?*

*Will not there be some of your family ?*

*There must certainly have been much disorder.*

*Out of a hundred persons there will not have been ten satisfied.*

*Will there have been a good supper ?*

*Will there not have been some dissatisfied people ?*

*Such a step would have been uncivil.*

*There would be no great harm in that.*

*Would there be any one bold enough to attack him ?*

*Would there be nobody kind enough to acquaint him with what is said of him ?*

*There would have been some imprudence in that.*

*There would not have been so great a misunderstanding had I been believed.*

*There would not have been ten persons.*

*Would there have been any inconvenience ?*

*Would there not have been some envious persons to thwart him in his designs ?*

*I do not think there can be a more superb spectacle.*

*I wish there was less duplicity in the concerns of life.*

*I have not heard that there was any news from the continent yesterday.*

*Could you have thought so many persons would have been exposed in that affair ?*

### 9 Phrases Diverses.

*Sa vie, ses actions, ses paroles, son air même et sa démarche, tout prêche, tout édifie en lui.*

### Promiscuous Phrases.

*His life, his actions, his very look and deportment, every thing in him instructs and edifies.*



On craignait qu'il n'arrivât quelque désordre dans l'assemblée, mais toutes choses s'y passèrent fort doucement.

La vigne et le lierre s'entortillaient autour des ormes.

On ne disconvient point qu'il ne soit brave, mais il est un peu trop fanfaron.

Le cadet est riche, mais l'aîné l'est encore davantage.

Le ciel est couvert de nuages, et l'orage est prêt à fondre.

Après qu'il eut franchi les Alpes avec ses troupes, il entra en Italie.

La frugalité rend les corps plus sains et plus robustes.

Ce discours est peut-être un des plus beaux morceaux d'éloquence, qu'il y ait jamais eus.

C'est un homme qui aime la liberté; il ne se gêne pour qui que ce soit.

Il est plus haut que moi de deux doigts.

Irez-vous vous exposer à la barbarie et à l'inhospitalité de ces peuples?

A la longue, les erreurs disparaissent, et la vérité surnage.

Si vous le prenez avec moi sur ce ton de fierté, je serai aussi fier que vous.

C'est un homme rigide, qui ne pardonne rien, ni aux autres ni à lui-même.

Les uns montent, les autres descendent, ainsi va la roue de la fortune.

Je ne vois rien de solide dans tout ce que vous me proposez.

L'art n'a jamais rien produit de plus beau.

Lequel est-ce des deux qui a tort?

On aime quelquefois la trahison, mais on hait toujours les traîtres.

*It was apprehended some disorder would take place in the assembly; but every thing went off very quietly.*

*The vine and the ivy twist round the elms.*

*They do not deny that he is brave; but he boasts rather too much.*

*The youngest is rich; but the eldest is still more so.*

*The sky is covered with clouds; and the storm is preparing to burst.*

*After having crossed the Alps with his troops, he entered Italy.*

*Temperance imparts an increase of health and strength to the body.*

*This speech is perhaps one of the finest pieces of eloquence that were ever delivered.*

*He is a man fond of liberty, he will be constrained by nobody.*

*He is taller than I by two inches.*

*Will you go and expose yourself to the barbarity and inhospitality of those nations?*

*In time, errors vanish and truth survives.*

*If you treat me with that haughtiness, I can be as haughty as you.*

*He is a stern man, who pardons nothing either in himself or others.*

*Some rise, others descend; thus goes the wheel of fortune.*

*I see nothing certain in all you propose to me.*

*It is one of the finest productions of art.*

*Which of the two is in the wrong?*

*We sometimes like treason, but we always hate the traitor.*

10 *Continuation.*

L'éléphant se sert de sa trompe pour prendre et pour enlever tout ce qu'il veut.

Plus j'examine cette personne, plus je crois l'avoir vue quelque part.

La nuit vint, de façon que je fus contraint de me retirer.

Il faut vivre de façon qu'on ne fasse tort à personne.

Elle sut qu'on attaquait son mari; elle courut aussitôt tout éperdue pour le secourir.

Je trouvais ses parents tout éplorés.

\* Cet arbre pousse ses branches toutes droites.

J'en ai encore la mémoire tout fraîche.

Il a voulu faire voir par cet essai qu'il pouvait réussir en quelque chose de plus grand.

Il fut blessé au front et mourut de cette blessure.

Ces chevaux prirent le mors aux dents et entraînèrent le carrosse.

C'est un homme qui compose sans chaleur, ni imagination : tout ce qu'il écrit est froid et plat.

Ce bâtiment a plus de profondeur que de largeur.

Cet homme est un prodige de savoir, de science, de valeur, d'esprit et de mémoire.

Il est attaché à l'un et à l'autre, mais plus à l'un qu'à l'autre.

Ils ont bien l'air l'un de l'autre.

Si l'on ruine cet homme-là, le contre-coup retombera sur vous.

Il serait mort, si on ne l'eût assisté avec soin.

Ce poème serait parfait, si les incidents, qui le font languir, n'interrompaient la continuité de l'action.

11. *Continuation.*

Quand je le voudrais, je ne le pourrais pas.

*Continuation.*

*The elephant makes use of his trunk to take and lift anything he pleases.*

*The more I look at that person the more I think I have seen him somewhere.*

*Night came on, so that I was obliged to retire.*

*We must live in such a manner as to injure nobody.*

*She knew her husband was attacked, and in a state of distraction, ran to his assistance.*

*I found her relations all in tears.*

*The branches of that tree grow quite straight.*

*It is still quite fresh on my memory.*

*He wished to show by that attempt that he could succeed in an enterprise of more consequence.*

*He was wounded in the forehead, and died of his wound.*

*Those horses ran away with the carriage.*

*He is a man that writes without the least warmth or animation; all his productions are cold and insipid.*

*That building has more depth than it has breadth.*

*That man is a prodigy of knowledge, judgment, courage, sense, and memory.*

*He is attached to both, but to one more than the other.*

*They very much look like one another.*

*If that man is ruined, his misfortune will recoil upon you.*

*He would have died if he had not been kindly assisted.*

*That would be a perfect poem, if the incidents which give a heaviness to it, did not break the connexion of the subject.*

*Continuation.*

*If I were disposed, I could not do it.*



Je serai toujours votre ami, quand même vous ne le voudriez pas.

Quand vous auriez réussi, que vous en serait-il revenu ?

Quand on découvrirait votre démarche, on ne pourrait la blâmer.

Quand vous auriez consulté quelqu'un sur votre mariage, vous n'auriez pas mieux réussi.

Le tonnerre et l'éclair ne sont sensibles que par la propagation du bruit et de la lumière jusqu'à l'œil et à l'oreille.

Le langage de la prose est plus simple et moins figuré que celui des vers.

Le commencement de son discours est toujours assez sage ; mais, dans la suite, à force de vouloir s'élever, il se perd dans les nues : on ne sait plus ni ce qu'on voit, ni ce qu'on entend.

C'est une faute excusable dans un autre homme, mais à un homme aussi sage que lui, elle ne se peut pardonner.

Il ne suffit pas de paraître honnête homme, il faut l'être.

Il nous a reçus avec bonté, et nous a écoutés avec patience.

Tout y est si bien peint qu'on croit voir ce qu'il décrit.

On ne pense rien de vous, qui ne vous soit glorieux.

Les eaux de citernes ne sont que des eaux de pluie ramassées.

S'il n'est pas fort riche, du moins a-t-il de quoi vivre honnêtement.

Quel quantième du mois avons-nous ?

Il lui tarde qu'il ne soit majeur, il compte les jours et les mois.

Des qualités excellentes, jointes à de rares talents, font le parfait mérite.

Il a une mauvaise qualité, s'est qu'il ne saurait garder un secret.

*I shall ever be your friend, even though you should not wish it.*

*Though you had succeeded, what were you to have derived from it ?*

*Should the steps you have taken be discovered they could not be blamed.*

*Had you consulted somebody about your marriage, you could not have succeeded better.*

*Thunder and lightning are only perceptible by the transmission of sound and light to the ear and eye.*

*Prose language is much more simple and less figurative than poetry*

*The beginning of his speech is always tolerably sensible : but afterwards, by affecting the sublime, he loses himself, and we no longer understand either what we see or hear.*

*This fault would be excusable in another man, but in a man of his sense it is unpardonable.*

*It is not enough to appear to be an honest man, we must be so.*

*He received us with kindness and heard us patiently.*

*Every thing in it is so well delineated you think you see what he describes.*

*They think nothing of you but what is to your honour.*

*Cistern water is generally only rain water collected.*

*If he is not rich at least he has enough to live upon respectably.*

*What day of the month is it ?*

*He longs to be of age and counts the days and months.*

*Excellent qualities joined to distinguished talents constitute perfect merit.*

*He has one bad quality, he cannot keep a secret.*



12. *Modèles de Phrases dans lesquelles, on doit faire usage de l'Article.*

*L'Homme* est sujet à bien des vicissitudes,

*Les hommes* d'un vrai génie sont rares.

*Les hommes* à imagination sont rarement heureux.

*L'homme* dont vous parlez, est un de mes amis.

*La vie* est un mélange de biens et de maux.

*La perfection* en tout genre est le but auquel on doit tendre.

*La beauté, les grâces et l'esprit* sont des avantages bien précieux quand ils sont relevés par la modestie.

Voilà *des tableaux* d'une grande beauté.

Faites-vous *des principes*, dont vous ne vous écartiez jamais.

Cet arbre porte *des fruits* excellents.

Ces raisons sont *des conjectures* bien faibles.

Servez-vous *des termes* établis par l'usage.

On doit éviter l'air de *l'affectation*.

Le *Jupiter* de Phidias était d'une grande beauté.

*Continuation des mêmes Phrases.*

*La mémoire* est le trésor de l'esprit, le fruit de l'attention et de la réflexion.

J'achetai hier *des gravures* précieuses et rares.

*La France* est le plus beau pays de l'Europe.

L'intérêt de l'Allemagne était opposé à celui de la Russie.

La longueur de l'Angleterre du nord au sud est de 360 milles et sa largeur de l'est à l'ouest est de 300.

Il arrive de la Chine, du Japon, et des Indes Orientales, etc.

Il arrive de l'Amérique, de la Barbade, de la Jamaïque, etc.

Examples of Phrases in which the Article is used.

*Man* is liable to a variety of changes.

*Men* of real genius are scarce.

*Men* of visionary character are seldom happy.

*The man* you speak of is a friend of mine.

*Life* is a compound of good and evil.

*Perfection* in every thing ought to be our object.

*Beauty, gracefulness, and wit,* are valuable endowments when heightened by modesty.

*These* are very beautiful pictures.

*Establish* rules for yourself, and never deviate from them.

*This tree* bears very excellent fruit.

*These reasons* are very idle conjectures.

*Use* the expressions established by custom.

*We* ought to avoid the appearance of affectation.

*The Jupiter* of Phidias was extremely beautiful.

The same Phrases continued.

*Memory* is the treasure of the mind, the result of attention and reflection.

*I yesterday* bought some valuable and scarce engravings.

*France* is the finest country in Europe.

*The German* interest was contrary to the Russian.

*The length* of England from north to south is 360 miles, and its breadth from east to west is 300.

*He* comes from China, Japan, and the East Indies.

*He* comes from America, Barbadoes, Jamaica, etc.

Il vient de la Flandre Française.

Il s'est établi dans la province de Middlesex.

Des petits-mâtres sont des êtres insupportables dans la société.

C'est l'opinion des nouveaux philosophes.

Elle a bien de la grâce dans tout ce qu'elle fait.

Cette étoffe se vend une guinée l'aune.

Ce vin coûte 70 livres sterlings la pièce.

13. *Modèles de Phrases dans lesquelles on ne doit pas faire usage de l'Article.*

Nos connaissances doivent être tirés de principes évidents.

Cet arbre porte d'excellents fruits.

Ces raisons sont de faibles conjectures.

Evitez tout ce qui a un air d'affectation.

Ces exemples peuvent servir de modèles.

Il a une grande présence d'esprit.

La mémoire de raison et d'esprit est plus utile que les autres sortes de mémoire.

Peu de personnes réfléchissent sur la rapidité de la vie.

Que d'événements inconcevables se sont succédés les uns aux autres !

Il y a plus d'esprit, mais moins de connaissance, dans ce siècle que dans le siècle dernier.

On ne vit jamais autant d'effronterie.

Je pris hier beaucoup de peine pour rien.

Candia est une des îles les plus agréables de la Méditerranée.

Il arrive de Perse, d'Italie, d'Espagne, etc.

Il est revenu de Suisse, d'Allemagne, etc.

He comes from French Flanders.

He has settled in the county of Middlesex.

Coxcombs are insufferable beings in society.

It is the opinion of the new philosophers.

She does every thing most gracefully.

This stuff sells at a guinea the ell.

This wine costs seventy pounds the hogshead.

Examples of phrases in which the Article is omitted.

Our knowledge ought to be derived from evident principles.

This tree produces excellent fruit.

These reasons are idle conjectures.

Avoid whatever bears the appearance of affectation.

These examples may serve as models.

He has great presence of mind.

The memory of reason and sense is more useful than any other kind of memory.

Few people reflect on the rapidity of life.

How many inconceivable events have followed in succession !

There's more wit but less knowledge in this age than in the last.

So much assurance never was met with.

I took a great deal of trouble yesterday about nothing.

Candia is one of the most agreeable islands in the Mediterranean.

He comes from Persia, Italy, and Spain, etc.

He is returned from Switzerland, Germany, etc.



Les vins de France seront chers cette année ; les vignes ont coulé.

L'empire d'Allemagne est composé de grands et de petits états.

Les chevaux d'Angleterre sont excellents.

Après mon départ de Suisse je me retirerai à Rome.

14. *Continuation des mêmes Phrases.*

Vous trouverez ce passage page 120, livre premier, chapitre dix.

Il s'est retiré en Angleterre.

Il vit dans sa retraite en vrai philosophe.

Quand il réfléchit sur sa conduite, il en eut honte.

C'est un homme qui cherche fortune.

Il entend malice à tout.

Ne portez envie à personne.

Si vous promettez, tenez parole.

Dans les affaires importantes ne vous décidez jamais sans prendre conseil.

Courage, soldats, tenons fermes ; la victoire est à nous.

Cette femme n'a ni grâce ni beauté.

Monseigneur le duc, etc. prince du sang, alla hier à la campagne.

Montrer tant de faiblesse, c'est n'être pas homme.

Cet homme est une espèce de misanthrope, dont les brusqueries sont quelque fois très-plaisantes.

L'ananas est une sorte de fruit très-commun aux Antilles.

C'est un genre de vie qui ne me plaît point.

15. *Continuation des mêmes phrases.*

Cette dame plaît à tout le monde par son honnêteté et sa douceur.

Tout homme a des défauts plus ou moins sensibles,

French wines will be dear this year ; the vines have ran.

The German empire is composed of great and small states.

The English horses are excellent.

On my leaving Switzerland, I retired to Rome.

Continuation of the same Phrases.

You will find this passage in page 120, book the first, chapter the tenth.

He has retired to England.

He lives in his retreat, like a real philosopher.

When he reflected on his conduct, he was ashamed of it.

He is a man that seeks fortune, he his a fortune hunter.

He puts a malicious construction on every thing.

Envy nobody.

If you promise, keep your word.

In matters of consequence never decide without advice.

Cheer up, soldiers, let us continue firm, the day is our own.

This woman is destitute both of grace and beauty.

The duke of, etc. a prince of the blood, went yesterday into the country.

To shew so much weakness is not a thing like a man.

This man is a kind of misanthropist, whose oddities are sometimes comical.

The pine-apple is a kind of fruit very common in the Antilles.

It is a kind of life that is not agreeable to me.

The same sentences continued.

This lady pleases every one for her good breeding and mildness.

Every man has defects more or less obvious.



*Cette conduite augmentait chaque jour le nombre de ses amis.*

*Tout les biens nous viennent de Dieu.*

*Vénus était la déesse de la beauté, et la mère de l'amour et des grâces.*

*Selon les païens Jupiter était le premier des dieux.*

*Apollon était frère jumeau de Diane.*

*Rubens a été un grand peintre.*

*Homère et Virgile sont les deux plus grands poètes épiques.*

*Londres est la plus belle ville que je connaisse.*

*L'eau de rivière est douce, et l'eau de mer est salée.*

*C'est un excellent poisson de mer.*

*Voilà une superbe table de marbre.*

*L'eau de Seine est celle qu'on préfère à Paris.*

*Pauvreté n'est pas vice.*

*Citoyens, étrangers, grands, peuples, se sont montrés sensibles à cette perte.*

*This behaviour daily increased the number of his friends.*

*Every blessing comes from God.*

*Venus was the goddess of beauty and the mother of love and the graces.*

*According to the Heathens, Jupiter was the first of the gods.*

*Appollo was twin brother to Diana.*

*Rubens was a great painter.*

*Homer and Virgil are the two greatest epic poets.*

*London is the finest city that I know.*

*River water is sweet, and sea water is salt.*

*It is an excellent sea fish.*

*There is a suberb marble table.*

*The water of the Seine is preferred at Paris.*

*Poverty is not a vice.*

*Citizens, strangers, grandees, people, have shewn themselves sensible of this loss.*

# 16. *Modèles de Phrases sur le pronom Le.*

*Est-ce-là votre opinion?—ne doutez point que ce ne la soit.*

*Sont-ce-là vos domestiques?—oui, ce les sont.*

*Mesdames, êtes-vous les étrangères qu'on m'a annoncées?—oui, nous les sommes.*

*Madame, êtes-vous la malade pour laquelle on m'a appelé?—oui, je la suis.*

*Madames, êtes-vous la mère de cet enfant?—oui, je la suis.*

*Mesdame, êtes-vous contentes de cette musique?—oui, nous le sommes.*

*Elles est malheureuse, et je crains bien, qu'elle ne le soit toute sa vie.*

*Madam, êtes-vous mère?—oui, je le suis.*

## Forms of Phrases upon the pronoun *Le*.

*Is that your opinion?—do not question it.*

*Are those your servants?—yes, they are.*

*Ladies, are you the strangers that have been announced to me? yes, we are.*

*Madam, are you the sick person for whom I have been called? yes, I am.*

*Madame, are you the mother of this child?—yes, I am.*

*Ladies, are you pleased with this music?—yes, we are.*

*She is unhappy, and I much fear she will continue so for life.*

*Madam, are you a mother?—yes, I am.*

Madame, depuis quel temps êtes-vous mariée ?—je le suis depuis un an.

Y a-t-il long-temps que vous êtes arrivée ?—je le suis depuis quinze jours.

Aristote croyait que le monde était de tout éternité ; mais Platon ne le croyait pas.

Quoique cette femme montre plus de fermeté que les autres, elle n'est pas pour cela la moins affligée.

Cette femme a l'art de répandre des larmes dans le temps même qu'elle est le moins affligée.

17. *Modèles de Phrases sur les différentes règles du participe passé.*

La nouvelle pièce a-t-elle été applaudie ?

Vos y parents seront-ils arrivés à temps ?

Elle s'est donnée de belles robes.

Elles nous ont apporté de superbes œillets.

Cette ruse ne lui a pas réussi.

La vie tranquille que j'ai menée depuis dix ans, a beaucoup contribué à me faire oublier mes malheurs.

Les lettres que j'ai reçues, m'ont beaucoup affligée.

Que de peines vous vous êtes données !

Quelle tâche vous vous êtes imposée !

C'est une satire que j'ai retrouvée dans mes papiers.

Les lettres qu'a écrites Pliny le jeune, quelque agréables qu'elles soient, se ressentent néanmoins un peu de la décadence du goût parmi les Romains.

Je ne serais pas entré avec vous dans tous ces détails de grammaire, si je ne les avais crus nécessaires.

L'Égypte s'était rendue célèbre par la sagesse de ses lois, long-

*Madam, how long have you been married ? I have been married a year.*

*Have you long been arrived ?—a fortnight.*

*Aristotle believed the world to have been from all eternity, but Plato did not.*

*Although this woman shows more resolution than the others, she is nevertheless not the least distressed.*

*This woman had the art of shedding tears, even when she is least distressed.*

Forms of Phrases upon the different rules of the participle past.

*Did the new piece meet with applause ?*

*Will your relations arrive there in time ?*

*She has given herself fine gowns.*

*They have brought us beautiful pinks.*

*He has not succeeded in this stratagem.*

*The quiet life I have led these ten years has greatly contributed to make me forget my misfortunes.*

*The letters I have received have greatly distressed me.*

*What a deal of trouble you have given yourself !*

*What a task you have imposed on yourself !*

*It is a satire that I have again found within my papers.*

*The letters which the younger Pliny has written, however agreeable they may be, savour nevertheless a little of the decline of taste among the Romans.*

*I would not have entered into these grammatical details with you, had I not thought them necessary.*

*Egypt had become celebrated for the wisdom of its laws, long*



temps avant que la Grèce sortit de la barbarie.

C'est une des plus grandes merveilles qu'on ait vues.

L'homme de lettres, dont vous m'avez parlé, a un gout exquis.

Vous avez très-bien instruit vos élèves.

Lucrece s'est donné la mort.

La sécheresse qu'il y a eu au printemps a fait périr tous les fruits.

Je n'ai point réussi, malgré les mesures que vous m'avez conseillé de prendre.

Quelle aventure vous est-il arrivée ?

Cette femme s'est proposée pour modèle à ses enfants.

Cette femme s'est proposé d'enseigner la géographie et l'histoire à ses enfants.

18. *Modèles de Phrases sur les principaux rapports des modes et des temps.*

Je l'attendais depuis long-temps quand il vint me joindre.

Il sortit au moment même que j'entrais.

Je commençais à avoir des craintes sur la réussite de votre affaire, lorsque j'ai reçu votre lettre.

Dès que j'eus fait quelques visites indispensables, je rentrai chez moi, et je ne sortis plus.

J'avais déjà tout préparé pour mon départ, lorsque des affaires imprévues m'ont forcé à le différer de quelques jours.

Vous étiez déjà sorti, quand je me présentai chez vous.

J'avais déjà livré à l'impression mon ouvrage, lorsque vous me demandiez si je le donnerais bientôt au public.

Lorsque j'ai eu terminé mon affaire, vous avez commencé la vôtre.

Lorsque j'eus déjeuné, je montai à cheval, et je fus à Londres.

before Greece had emerged from barbarism.

It is one of the greatest wonders that has ever been seen.

The man of letters you spoke to me of has an excellent taste.

You have taught your pupils extremely well.

Lucretia killed herself.

The dry weather we had in the spring has destroyed all the fruit.

I have not succeeded notwithstanding the steps you advised me to take.

What adventures have you met with ?

This woman proposed herself as a model for her children.

This woman proposed to teach geography and history to her children.

Forms of Phrases upon the principal relations of moods and tenses.

I had waited a long time for him, when he came to me.

He was going out at the time I was entering.

I was beginning to be apprehensive of the success of your business when I received your letter.

As soon as I had paid some indispensable visits, I went home and did not go out afterwards.

I had already made every preparation for my departure, when some unexpected business occurred that obliged me to defer it for some days.

You were already gone out when I called upon you.

My work had been sent to be printed, when you asked me if I should soon bring it out.

When I had terminated my business, you began yours.

When I had done breakfast, I got on horseback, and went to London.



Lorsque j'aurai lu la nouvelle pièce, je vous dirai avec franchise ce que j'en pense.

19. *Modèles de Phrases sur l'emploi des Auxiliaires* aller, venir de, devoir, pouvoir.

Je vais partir à l'instant même.

Nous allions vous expliquer cela en deux mots.

Nous allons nous mettre à table lorsqu'il est entré.

J'allais lui offrir mon bras, lorsque je m'aperçus de ma méprise.

On allait en venir aux mains, mais la nuit venant à tomber, on remit l'attaque au lendemain.

Je viens de les voir ensemble.

Elle vient de se marier avec un homme fort riche.

Leur père vient de mourir, ainsi il n'est pas probable qu'elles aillent en société.

Mon frère venait de sortir.

Nous venions de dîner.

Si vous avez quelque chose à leur dire, je m'en chargerai, je dois les voir aujourd'hui.

Vous ne devez pas lui répondre ainsi.

Dois je attendre ?

Elle doit avoir quinze ans au moins.

Il doit être à la maison car je ne l'ai pas vu sortir.

Je devais sortir, mais le mauvais temps m'en a empêché.

Ne deviez-vous pas vous mettre en route lundi dernier.

Ils devaient m'en prévenir.

Cela devait être le meilleur parti.

Vous devriez lui dire la vérité.

Devrais-je obéir à des ordres si injustes.

Il aurait dû revenir de suite.

*When I have read the new play, I will candidly give you my opinion of it.*

Examples on the use of the Auxiliaries *aller, venir de, devoir, pouvoir,*

*I am off this very instant.*

*We will explain it to you in two words.*

*We were going to sit down to table when he entered.*

*I was on the point of offering my arm to her, when I saw my mistake.*

*They were on the moment of engaging, but night falling, they put off the attack until the next day.*

*I have this moment seen them together.*

*She has just married a very rich man.*

*Their father has recently died, it is not likely therefore they should go into company.*

*My brother had just gone out.*

*We had not long dined.*

*If you have any message to send to them, I will take it, for I am to see them to-day.*

*You are not to answer him in this manner.*

*Am I to wait, or must I wait ?*

*She must be fifteen at least.*

*He must be at home, for I did not see him go out.*

*I intended to go out, I was to have gone out, but the bad weather prevented me.*

*Where you not to have set off on Monday last.*

*They ought to have told me of it.*

*That must have been the best determination.*

*You should speak the truth to him.*

*Ought I to obey such unjust orders ?*

*He ought to have returned directly.*

Nous n'aurions pas dû dépenser follement.

Mon frère pourrait vous reconduire.

Nous pourrions lui en parler, lorsqu'il sera moins occupé.

Ne pourrions-nous pas passer par Bath ?

Il me semble qu'elle aurait pu mieux faire.

Les troupes auraient pu débarquer sur nos côtes.

*We ought not to have spent extravagantly.*

*My brother must see you home.*

*We might mention it to him when he is less engaged.*

*Might we not return through Bath ?*

*It appears to me that she might have done better.*

*The troops might have landed on our coasts.*

20. *Models to show how to render will, shall, would, should, elliptically used.*

Iriez-vous à Rome, si vous le pouviez ?—oui, j'irais.

Auriez-vous consenti à ces conditions, si on vous les avait proposées ? oui, sans doute.

Irez-vous demain à Londres, si vous le pouvez ?—oui, j'irai.

Il sera sûrement parti, si vous l'avez voulu.

J'ai bien dormi, mais non pas lui.

N'a-t-il pas une jolie terre en Normandie ? oui, Monsieur.

Nous avons été au spectacle hier au soir. Vraiment ! or ah !

Elle n'a pas de fortune. Vraiment !

Mes compliments chez vous. Je n'y manquerai pas.

Je dis qu'il y était ; mais ma sœur dit que non.

Je vous dis que oui, et moi, je vous dis que non.

Vous eussiez laissé échapper une occasion si favorable, si l'on ne vous eût averti à temps.

*Would you go to Rome if it were in your power ? yes, I would.*

*Would you have agreed to these terms, had they been proposed to you ? Yes I would.*

*Shall you go to London tomorrow, if you can ? yes, I shall.*

*He will certainly have set out, if you have wished it.*

*I have slept well, but he has not.*

*Has he not a pretty estate in Normandy ? yes, he has.*

*We went to the play last night. Did you ?*

*She has no fortune of her own. Has she not ?*

*My compliments at home. I will.*

*I say he was there, but my sister says he was not.*

*I tell you it is, and I tell you it is not.*

*You would have let so favourable an opportunity slip, had you not been warned in time.*

21. *Continuation des mêmes Phrases.*

On dit que vous partez aujourd'hui pour Paris.

Tout le monde soutient que vous accepterez la place qu'on vous offre.

On soupçonne que vous aviez hier reçu cette agréable nouvelle quand on vous rencontra.

The same Phrases continued,

*It is said that you set off to-day for Paris.*

*Every one maintains that you will accept the place that is offered to you.*

*It is suspected that you had received this agreeable intelligence when you were met yesterday.*



Beaucoup de vos amis croient que vous partîtes hier pour la campagne.

Le bruit se répand que vous avez fait une grosse perte.

J'apprends dans l'instant que vous fussiez parti il y a trois jours, si des engagements, que vous aviez contractés depuis long-temps, ne vous avaient retenu.

N'est-il pas vrai que vous partiriez aujourd'hui, si vous le pouviez ?

Est-il vrai que vous seriez parti depuis long-temps pour la campagne, si votre amour pour les arts ne vous avait retenu à la ville ?

Je ne crois pas que vous partiez, quoique tout le monde l'assure.

Je ne croyais pas qu'il fût si-tôt de retour.

Il a fallu qu'il ait eu affaire à bien des personnes.

Je doute que votre ami fût venu à bout de ses projets, s'il n'avait pas été fortement protégé.

Il n'est point d'homme, quelque mérite qu'il ait, qui ne fût très-mortifié, s'il savait tout ce qu'on pense de lui.

Vous ne vous persuadiez pas que les affaires pussent si mal tourner.

## 22. Modèles de Phrases sur la Négative Ne.

Il n'y a *pas* beaucoup d'argent chez les gens de lettres.

Il n'y a *point* de ressource dans une personne qui n'a *point* d'esprit.

C'est à tort que vous l'accusez de jouer ; je vous assure qu'il ne joue *point*.

Entrez dans le salon ; vous pourrez lui parler ; il ne joue *pas*.

*Many of your friends believe that you set out yesterday for the country.*

*There is a report that you have met with a considerable loss.*

*I have this moment learnt that you would have set out three days since, had not engagements which you had formed long ago, detained you.*

*It is not true that you would set out to-day, if you could ?*

*Is it true that you would have set out for the country long since, had not your love for the arts detained you in town ?*

*I do not imagine that you will set out, although every body asserts it.*

*I did not believe he had gone back so soon.*

*He must have had business with a great many people.*

*I doubt that your friend would have succeeded in his plans, had he not been strongly patronised.*

*There is not a man, whatever merit he may possess, that would not be very much mortified, were he to know every thing that is thought of him.*

*You never persuaded yourself that matters could have taken so unfortunate a turn.*

## Forms of Phrases upon the negative Ne.

*There is not much money to be found among men of letters.*

*There are no resources in a person deprived of sense.*

*You accuse him wrongfully of gaming ; I assure you he never does.*

*Go into my room, you may speak to him ; he is not playing.*



Si pour avoir du bien, il en coûte à la probité, je n'en veux *point*.

Rien n'est sûr avec les capricieux: vous croyez être bien en faveur; *point* du tout: l'instant de la plus belle humeur est suivi de la plus fâcheuse.

Vous ne cessez de nous répéter les mêmes choses.

Je n'aurais osé vous en parler le premier.

Malgré ses protections il n'a pu réussir dans ses projets.

Cet ouvrage serait fort bon, n'était la négligence du style.

Y a-t-il quelqu'un dont elle ne médise?

J'ai pris tant de goût pour une vie retirée, que je ne sors presque *jamais*.

Voilà ce qui s'est passé; n'en parlez à personne.

Mon parti est pris; ne n'en parlez *plus*.

N'employez aucun de ces moyens; ils sont indignes de vous.

Rien n'est plus joli.

Je ne dis rien que je ne pense.

Je ne fais *jamais* d'excès que je n'en sois incommodé.

### 23 Continuation des mêmes Phrases.

C'est un homme pour qui je n'ai ni amour, ni estime.

Il n'est ni assez prudent ni assez éclairé.

Je vous assure que je ne le fréquente ni ne le vois.

Ne faire que parcourir les différentes branches des connaissances humaines sans

*I do not wish to make a fortune, if it can only be done at the expense of honesty.*

*Nothing is certain with capricious people: you think yourself in favour, by no means: the moment of the best humour is followed by that of the worst.*

*You are constantly repeating the same thing to us.*

*I should not have dared to be the first to speak to you of it.*

*With all his interest he has not been able to succeed in his plans.*

*This work would be very good, were it not for the negligence of the style.*

*Is there any one she does not slander?*

*I have acquired so great a taste for retirement, that I seldom go out.*

*This is what has passed; do not mention it to any one.*

*My resolution is fixed; talk to me no more of it.*

*Do not employ any one of these measures, they are unworthy of you.*

*Nothing is more beautiful.*

*I never speak but what I think.*

*I never commit any excess without suffering by it.*

### Continuation of the same Phrases.

*He is a man for whom I have neither love nor esteem.*

*He is neither sufficiently prudent nor enlightened.*

*I assure you I neither associate with him nor see him.*

*To go through the different branches of human knowledge only, without fixing upon any*

s'arrêter à aucune, c'est moins chercher à s'instruire, qu'à tuer le temps.

*Que n'êtes-vous toujours aussi complaisant ?*

Il ne le fera pas à moins que vous ne l'y engagiez.

Il n'ira pas, si vous ne l'en priez.

Il nous a menacés de se venger ; nous n'avons fait qu'en rire.

Trop d'insouciance ne peut que nuire.

*Que devenez-vous ? il y a trois mois que nous ne vous avons vu ?*

Comment vous êtes-vous porté depuis que nous ne vous avons vu ?

C'est bien pire qu'on ne le disait.

Peu s'en faut que je n'aie donné tête baissée dans le piège.

Dites la vérité en toute occasion ; on méprise toujours ceux qui parlent autrement qu'il ne pensent.

*Ne désespérez pas que la vérité ne se fasse jour à la longue.*

Je ne disconviens pas que la chose ne soit ainsi.

Prenez garde qu'on ne vous entraîne dans quelque fausse démarche.

*J'empêcherai bien qu'on ne vous nuise dans cette affaire.*

Il craint qu'on ne le soupçonne d'avoir trempé dans ce complot.

On lui a donné d'excellents conseils, de crainte qu'il ne manquât l'occasion de faire connaître ce qu'il est en état de faire.

*one of them, is not to seek for instruction, but to kill time.*

*Why are you not at all times equally obliging ?*

*He will not do it, unless you persuade him to it.*

*He will not go, if you do not request it of him.*

*He has threatened us with vengeance ; we only laughed at him.*

*Too great supineness cannot but be hurtful.*

*What has become of you ? we have not seen you these three months.*

*How have you been since we saw you ?*

*It is much worse than was said.*

*I was near running headlong into the snare.*

*Tell the truth on all occasions : those who speak what they do not think are always despised.*

*Do not despair that truth will appear in time.*

*I do not deny but the thing may have been so.*

*Take care that you are not led into some false step.*

*I shall prevent them from doing you any harm in this business.*

*He is apprehensive that he is suspected of being concerned in this plot.*

*They have given him excellent advice, lest he should lose the opportunity of showing what he was capable of doing.*



J'y ai long-temps travaillé ;  
je ne saurais en venir à bout.

Vous feriez mieux de vous  
taire ; vous ne savez ce que  
vous dites.

Vous ne sauriez me faire  
un plus grand plaisir.

*I have been long employed  
about it ; I cannot accom-  
plish it.*

*You had better be silent,  
you do not know what you are  
saying.*

*You cannot do me a great-  
er favour.*

24. *Phrases sur quelques Dé-  
licatesses de la Langue  
Française.*

Phrases on some Niceties of  
the French Language.

Irez-vous ce soir à l'opé-  
ra ?—oui, j'irai.

Iriez-vous avec plaisir à  
Rome ?—oui, j'irais.

La justice qui nous est  
quelquefois refusée par nos  
contemporains, la postérité  
sait nous la rendre.

Cette grandeur qui vous  
étonne si fort, il la doit à vo-  
tre nonchalance.

Il périt, ce héros, si cher à  
son pays.

Je l'avais bien prévu que ce  
haut degré de grandeur serait  
la cause de sa ruine.

Citoyens, étrangers, enne-  
mis, peuples, rois, empereurs,  
le plaignent et le révèrent.

L'assemblée finie, chacun  
se retira chez soi.

Heureux le peuple qu'un  
sage roi gouverne.

Il refusa les plus grands  
honneurs, content de les mé-  
riter.

Prières, remontrances, com-  
mandements, tout est inutile.

Le vent renverse tours, ca-  
banes, palais, églises.

Notre réputation ne dépend  
pas du caprice des hommes ;  
mais elle dépend des actions  
louables que nous faisons.

*Shall you go to the opera  
this evening ?—yes, I shall.*

*Would you cheerfully go to  
Rome ?—yes, I would.*

*Posterity knows how to do  
us that justice which is some-  
times refused us by our con-  
temporaries.*

*That greatness which so  
much astonishes you he owes  
to your indifference.*

*That hero, so dear to his  
country perished.*

*I foresaw that the greatness  
of his elevation would be his  
ruin.*

*Citizens, strangers, ene-  
mies, nations, kings, empe-  
rors, pity and respect him.*

*The assembly being over,  
each returned home.*

*Happy are the people who  
are governed by a wise king.*

*He refused the greatest ho-  
nors, satisfied with having  
deserved them.*

*Entreaties, remonstrances,  
injunctions, all are useless.*

*The wind overturns towers,  
cottages, palaces, churches.*

*Our reputation does not de-  
pend on the caprice of men,  
but on the commendable ac-  
tions we perform.*



Il y a beaucoup de choses qu'il n'importe point du tout de savoir.

La vue de l'esprit a plus d'étendue que la vue du corps.

Ce qui sert à la vanité, n'est que vanité.

Tout ce qui n'a que le monde pour fondement, se dissipe et s'évanouit avec le monde.

C'est le privilège des grands hommes de vaincre l'envie ; le mérite la fait naître, le mérite la fait mourir.

L'amour-propre est plus habile que le plus habile homme du monde.

En quittant le monde, on ne quitte le plus souvent ni les erreurs, ni les folles passions du monde.

*They are many things which it is of no consequence at all to know.*

*The eye of the mind reaches much farther than the bodily eye.*

*What promotes vanity is only vanity.*

*All that is confined to this lower world disperses and vanishes with the world.*

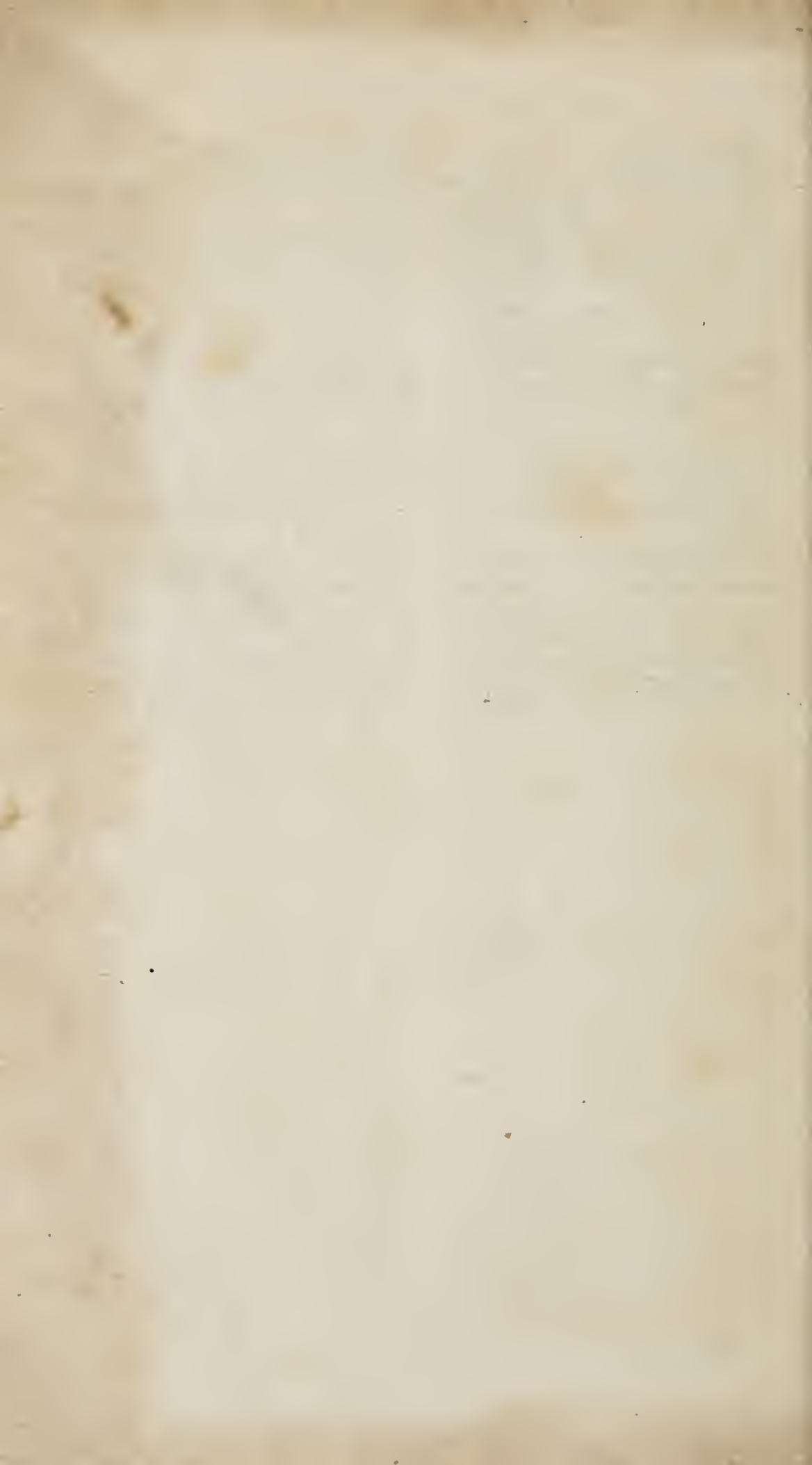
*It is the prerogative of great men to conquer envy : merit gives it birth, and merit destroys it.*

*Self-love is more ingenious than the most ingenious man in the world.*

*In renouncing the world we generally renounce neither the errors nor foolish passions of the world.*

END.










$\frac{15}{2}$   


---

 $\frac{3}{4}$  3  
 $\frac{3}{4}$  3  
 $\frac{3}{4}$  3  
 $\frac{3}{4}$  3  
 $\frac{3}{4}$  3  
 $\frac{3}{4}$  3  
 $\frac{3}{4}$  3

184

  
 $\frac{3}{4}$

$\frac{3}{4}$

$\frac{153}{5}$   
 $\frac{1}{4} 8$

~~15~~  
 $\frac{3}{4} 8$   
 666666



